

**MICROCHIP**

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 28/44-Pin, General Purpose, 16-Bit Flash Microcontrollers with Cryptographic Engine, ISO 7816, USB On-The-Go and XLP Technology

### Cryptographic Engine

- AES Engine with 128, 192 or 256-Bit Key
- Supports ECB, CBC, OFB, CTR and CFB128 modes
- DES/Triple DES (TDES) Engine: Supports 2-Key and 3-Key EDE or DED TDES
- Supports up to Three Unique Keys for TDES
- Programmatically Secure
- True Random Number Generator
- Pseudorandom Number Generator
- Non-Readable, On-Chip, OTP Key Storages

### Universal Serial Bus Features

- USB v2.0 On-The-Go (OTG) Compliant
- Dual Role Capable; can Act as Either Host or Peripheral
- Low-Speed (1.5 Mb/s) and Full-Speed (12 Mb/s) USB Operation in Host mode
- Full-Speed USB Operation in Device mode
- High-Precision PLL for USB
- USB Device mode Operation from FRC Oscillator:
  - No crystal oscillator required
- Supports up to 32 Endpoints (16 bidirectional):
  - USB module can use any RAM locations on the device as USB endpoint buffers
- On-Chip USB Transceiver
- Supports Control, Interrupt, Isochronous and Bulk Transfers
- On-Chip Pull-up and Pull-Down Resistors

### Extreme Low-Power Features

- Multiple Power Management Options for Extreme Power Reduction:
  - VBAT allows the device to transition to a backup battery for the lowest power consumption with RTCC
  - Deep Sleep allows near total power-down, with the ability to wake-up on internal or external triggers
  - Sleep and Idle modes selectively shut down peripherals and/or core for substantial power reduction and fast wake-up
  - Doze mode allows CPU to run at a lower clock speed than peripherals
- Alternate Clock modes allow On-the-Fly Switching to a Lower Clock Speed for Selective Power Reduction
- Extreme Low-Power Current Consumption for Deep Sleep:
  - WDT: 270 nA @ 3.3V typical
  - RTCC: 400 nA @ 32 kHz, 3.3V typical
  - Deep Sleep current: 40 nA, 3.3V typical

| Device          | Memory                |                  | Pins | Analog Peripherals |             |           | Digital Peripherals |                    |                   |     |                   |           |               | USB OTG | Deep Sleep w/VBAT | AES/DES Cryptographic |
|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------|------|--------------------|-------------|-----------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-----|-------------------|-----------|---------------|---------|-------------------|-----------------------|
|                 | Program Flash (bytes) | Data RAM (bytes) |      | 10/12-Bit A/D (ch) | Comparators | CTMU (ch) | Input Capture       | Output Compare/PWM | I <sup>2</sup> C™ | SPI | UART w/IrDA® 7816 | EPMP/PSPP | 16-Bit Timers |         |                   |                       |
| PIC24FJ128GB204 | 128K                  | 8K               | 44   | 12                 | 3           | 12        | 6                   | 6                  | 2                 | 3   | 4                 | Y         | 5             | Y       | Y                 | Y                     |
| PIC24FJ128GB202 | 128K                  | 8K               | 28   | 9                  | 3           | 9         | 6                   | 6                  | 2                 | 3   | 4                 | N         | 5             | Y       | Y                 | Y                     |
| PIC24FJ64GB204  | 64K                   | 8K               | 44   | 12                 | 3           | 12        | 6                   | 6                  | 2                 | 3   | 4                 | Y         | 5             | Y       | Y                 | Y                     |
| PIC24FJ64GB202  | 64K                   | 8K               | 28   | 9                  | 3           | 9         | 6                   | 6                  | 2                 | 3   | 4                 | N         | 5             | Y       | Y                 | Y                     |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## Analog Features

- 10/12-Bit, 12-Channel Analog-to-Digital (A/D) Converter:
  - Conversion rate of 500 ksps (10-bit), 200 ksps (12-bit)
  - Conversion available during Sleep and Idle
- Three Rail-to-Rail, Enhanced Analog Comparators with Programmable Input/Output Configuration
- Three On-Chip Programmable Voltage References
- Charge Time Measurement Unit (CTMU):
  - Used for capacitive touch sensing, up to 12 channels
  - Time measurement down to 100 ps resolution
  - Operation in Sleep mode

## Peripheral Features

- Up to Five External Interrupt Sources
- Peripheral Pin Select (PPS); Allows Independent I/O Mapping of many Peripherals
- Five 16-Bit Timers/Counters with Prescaler:
  - Can be paired as 32-bit timers/counters
- Six-Channel DMA supports All Peripheral modules:
  - Minimizes CPU overhead and increases data throughput
- Six Input Capture modules, each with a Dedicated 16-Bit Timer
- Six Output Compare/PWM modules, each with a Dedicated 16-Bit Timer
- Enhanced Parallel Master/Slave Port (EPMP/EPSP)
- Hardware Real-Time Clock/Calendar (RTCC):
  - Runs in Sleep, Deep Sleep and VBAT modes
- Three 3-Wire/4-Wire SPI modules:
  - Support four Frame modes
  - Variable FIFO buffer
  - I<sup>2</sup>S mode
  - Variable width from 2-bit to 32-bit
- Two I<sup>2</sup>C™ modules Support Multi-Master/Slave mode and 7-Bit/10-Bit Addressing
- Four UART modules:
  - Support RS-485, RS-232 and LIN/J2602
  - On-chip hardware encoder/decoder for IrDA®
  - Smart Card ISO 7816 support on UART1 and UART2 only:
    - T = 0 protocol with automatic error handling
    - T = 1 protocol
    - Dedicated Guard Time Counter (GTC)
    - Dedicated Waiting Time Counter (WTC)
  - Auto-wake-up on Auto-Baud Detect (ABD)
  - 4-level deep FIFO buffer
- Programmable 32-Bit Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) Generator
- Digital Signal Modulator provides On-Chip FSK and PSK Modulation for a Digital Signal Stream
- High-Current Sink/Source (18 mA/18 mA) on All I/O Pins
- Configurable Open-Drain Outputs on Digital I/O Pins
- 5.5V Tolerant Inputs on Most Pins

## High-Performance CPU

- Modified Harvard Architecture
- Up to 16 MIPS Operation @ 32 MHz
- 8 MHz Internal Oscillator:
  - 96 MHz PLL option
  - Multiple clock divide options
  - Run-time self-calibration capability for maintaining better than  $\pm 0.20\%$  accuracy
  - Fast start-up
- 17-Bit x 17-Bit Single-Cycle Hardware Fractional/Integer Multiplier
- 32-Bit by 16-Bit Hardware Divider
- 16 x 16-Bit Working Register Array
- C Compiler Optimized Instruction Set Architecture (ISA)
- Two Address Generation Units (AGUs) for Separate Read and Write Addressing of Data Memory

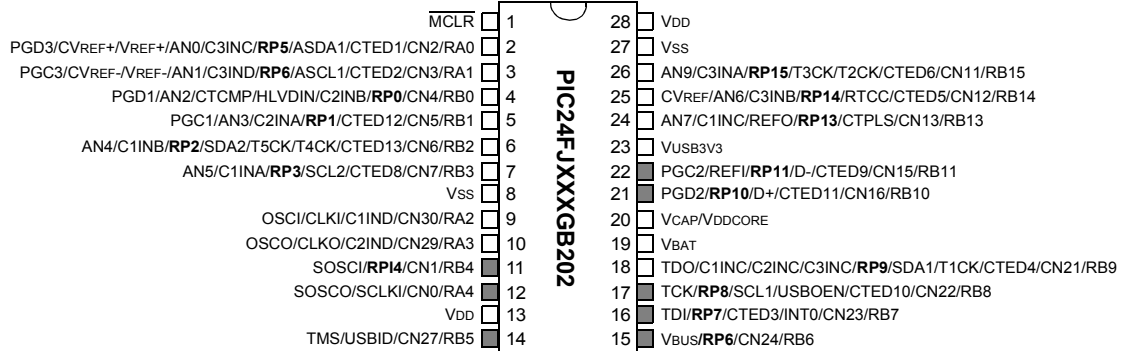
## Special Microcontroller Features

- Supply Voltage Range of 2.0V to 3.6V
- Two On-Chip Voltage Regulators (1.8V and 1.2V) for Regular and Extreme Low-Power Operation
- 20,000 Erase/Write Cycle Endurance Flash Program Memory, Typical
- Flash Data Retention: 20 Years Minimum
- Self-Programmable under Software Control
- Programmable Reference Clock Output
- In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) and In-Circuit Emulation (ICE) via 2 Pins
- JTAG Programming and Boundary Scan Support
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) Operation:
  - Detects clock failure and switches to on-chip, Low-Power RC Oscillator
- Power-on Reset (POR), Power-up Timer (PWRT) and Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
- Separate Brown-out Reset (BOR) and Deep Sleep Brown-out Reset (DSBOR) Circuits
- Programmable High/Low-Voltage Detect (HLVD)
- Flexible Watchdog Timer (WDT) with its Own RC Oscillator for Reliable Operation
- Standard and Ultra Low-Power Watchdog Timers (ULPW) for Reliable Operation in Standard and Deep Sleep modes

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## Pin Diagrams

**28-Pin SPDIP,  
SOIC, SSOP<sup>(1)</sup>**



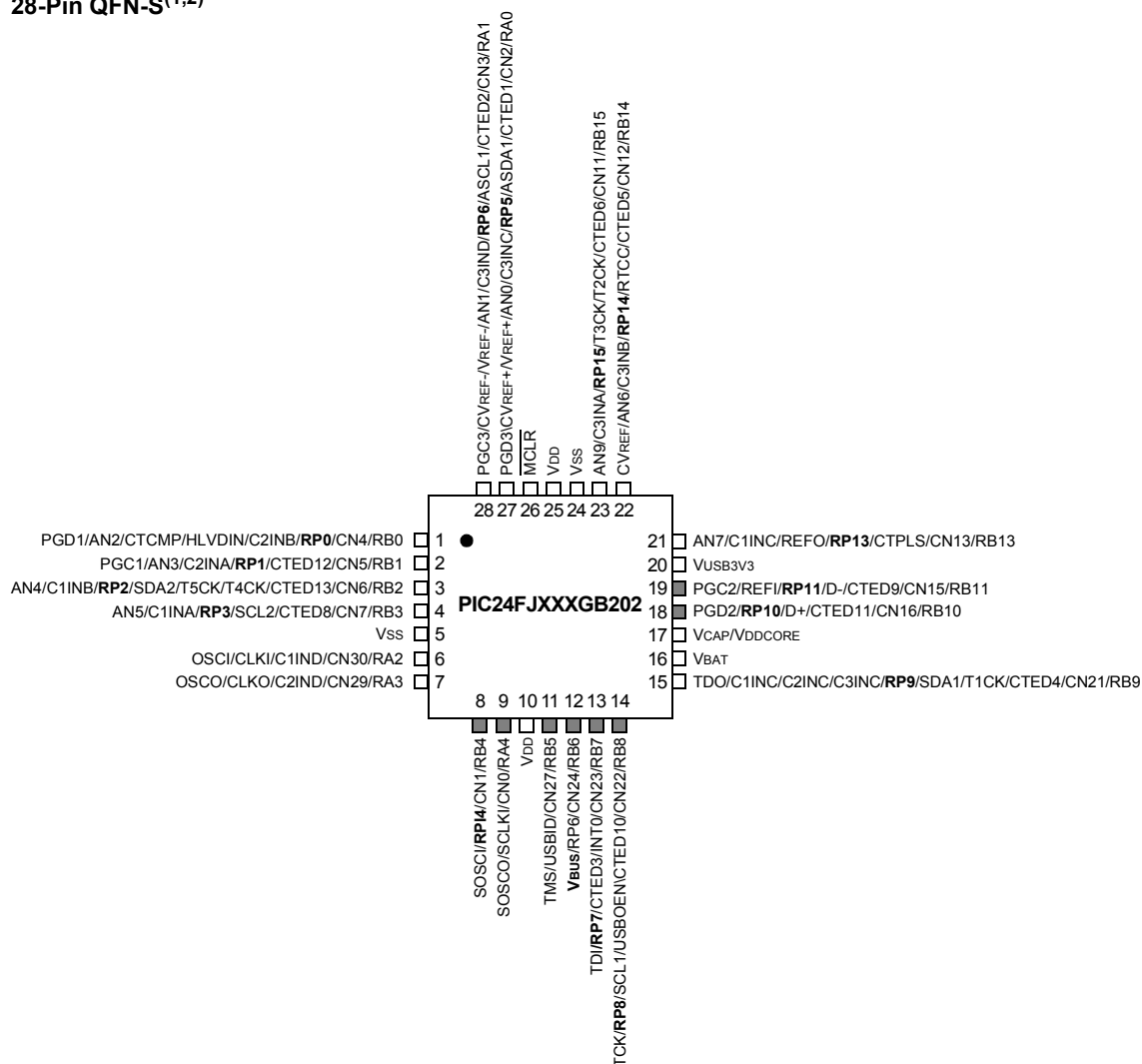
**Legend:** **RPn** represents remappable peripheral pins.

**Note 1:** Gray shading indicates 5.5V tolerant input pins.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## Pin Diagrams (Continued)

28-Pin QFN-S<sup>(1,2)</sup>



**Legend:** RPn represents remappable peripheral pins.

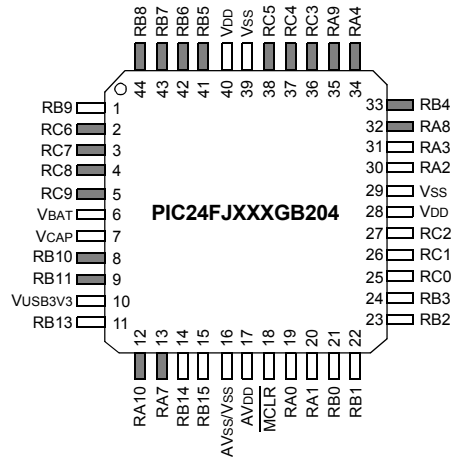
**Note 1:** Gray shading indicates 5.5V tolerant input pins.

**Note 2:** The back pad on QFN devices should be connected to Vss.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## Pin Diagrams (Continued)

44-Pin TQFP,  
44-Pin QFN<sup>(1,2,3)</sup>



- Note**
- 1: Gray shading indicates 5.5V tolerant input pins.
  - 2: The back pad on QFN devices should be connected to Vss.
  - 3: See [Table 1](#) for complete pinout descriptions.

**TABLE 1: PIC24FJXXXGB204 PIN FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS**

| Pin | Function  | Pin | Function  |
|-----|---|-----|---|
| 1   | C1INC/C2INC/C3INC/ <b>RP9</b> /SDA1/T1CK/CTED4/PMD3/CN21/RB9                      | 23  | AN4/C1INB/ <b>RP2</b> /SDA2/T5CK/T4CK/CTED13/CN6/PMD2/RB2 |
| 2   | <b>RP22</b> /PMA1/PMALH/CN18/RC6  | 24  | AN5/C1INA/ <b>RP3</b> /SCL2/CTED8/CN7/PMWR/RB3            |
| 3   | <b>RP23</b> /PMA0/PMALL/CN17/RC7  | 25  | AN10/ <b>RP16</b> /PMBE1/CN8/RC0                          |
| 4   | <b>RP24</b> /PMA5/CN20/RC8  | 26  | AN11/ <b>RP17</b> /CN9/RC1                                |
| 5   | <b>RP25</b> /CTED7/PMA6/CN19/RC9  | 27  | AN12/ <b>RP18</b> /PMACK1/CN10/RC2                        |
| 6   | VBAT  | 28  | VDD   |
| 7   | VCAP  | 29  | VSS   |
| 8   | <b>RP10</b> /CTED11/CN16/PGD2/D+/RB10   | 30  | OSCI/C1IND/CLKI/PMCS1/CN30/RA2                            |
| 9   | REFI/ <b>RP11</b> /CTED9/CN15/PGC2/D-/RB11  | 31  | OSCO/C2IND/CLKO/CN29/RA3                                  |
| 10  | VUSB3V3   | 32  | TDO/PMA8/CN34/RA8   |
| 11  | AN7/C1INC/REFO/ <b>RP13</b> /CTPLS/PMRD/CN13/RB13                                 | 33  | SOSCI/CN1/ <b>RP14</b> /RB4                               |
| 12  | TMS/PMA2/PMALU/CN36/RA10  | 34  | SOSCO/SCLKI/CN0/RA4                                       |
| 13  | TCK/PMA7/CN33/RA7   | 35  | TDI/PMA9/CN35/RA9   |
| 14  | CVREF/AN6/C3INB/ <b>RP14</b> /RTCC/CTED5/CN12/RB14                                | 36  | <b>RP19</b> /PMBE0/CN28/RC3                               |
| 15  | AN9/C3INA/ <b>RP15</b> /T3CK/T2CK/CTED6/PMA14/CS1/CN11/PMCS/PMCS1/RB15            | 37  | <b>RP20</b> /PMA4/CN25/RC4                                |
| 16  | AVSS/VSS  | 38  | <b>RP21</b> /PMA3/CN26/RC5                                |
| 17  | AVDD  | 39  | VSS   |
| 18  | MCLR  | 40  | VDD   |
| 19  | CVREF+/VREF+/AN0/C3INC/ <b>RP5</b> /ASDA1 <sup>(1)</sup> /CTED1/CN2/PMD7/PGD3/RA0 | 41  | CN27/USBID/RB5  |
| 20  | CVREF-/VREF-/AN1/C3IND/ <b>RP6</b> /ASCL1 <sup>(1)</sup> /CTED2/CN3/PGC3/RA1      | 42  | PMD6/CN24/VBus/RB6  |
| 21  | AN2/CTCMP/C2INB/ <b>RP0</b> /CN4/PGD1/HLVDIN/PMD0/RB0                             | 43  | <b>RP7</b> /CTED3/INT0/CN23/PMD5/RB7                      |
| 22  | AN3/C2INA/ <b>RP1</b> /CTED12/CN5/PMD1/PGC1/RB1                                   | 44  | <b>RP8</b> /SCL1/CTED10/PMD4/CN22/USBOEN/RB8              |

**Legend:** **RPn** represents remappable peripheral pins.

**Note 1:** Alternative multiplexing for SDA1 and SCL1 when the I2C1SEL Configuration bit is set.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## Table of Contents

|      |   |     |
|------|---|-----|
| 1.0  | Device Overview .....   | 9   |
| 2.0  | Guidelines for Getting Started with 16-Bit Microcontrollers ..... | 23  |
| 3.0  | CPU .....   | 29  |
| 4.0  | Memory Organization .....   | 35  |
| 5.0  | Direct Memory Access Controller (DMA) .....                       | 71  |
| 6.0  | Flash Program Memory .....  | 79  |
| 7.0  | Resets .....  | 85  |
| 8.0  | Interrupt Controller .....  | 91  |
| 9.0  | Oscillator Configuration .....                                    | 147 |
| 10.0 | Power-Saving Features .....                                       | 161 |
| 11.0 | I/O Ports .....   | 173 |
| 12.0 | Timer1 .....  | 201 |
| 13.0 | Timer2/3 and Timer4/5 .....                                       | 205 |
| 14.0 | Input Capture with Dedicated Timers .....                         | 211 |
| 15.0 | Output Compare with Dedicated Timers .....                        | 217 |
| 16.0 | Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) .....                           | 227 |
| 17.0 | Inter-Integrated Circuit™ (I <sup>2</sup> C™) .....               | 245 |
| 18.0 | Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART) .....          | 253 |
| 19.0 | Universal Serial Bus with On-The-Go Support (USB OTG) .....       | 265 |
| 20.0 | Data Signal Modulator (DSM) .....                                 | 299 |
| 21.0 | Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP) .....                        | 303 |
| 22.0 | Real-Time Clock and Calendar (RTCC) .....                         | 315 |
| 23.0 | Cryptographic Engine .....  | 329 |
| 24.0 | 32-Bit Programmable Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) Generator ..... | 345 |
| 25.0 | 12-Bit A/D Converter with Threshold Detect .....                  | 351 |
| 26.0 | Triple Comparator Module .....                                    | 371 |
| 27.0 | Comparator Voltage Reference .....                                | 377 |
| 28.0 | Charge Time Measurement Unit (CTMU) .....                         | 379 |
| 29.0 | High/Low-Voltage Detect (HLVD) .....                              | 387 |
| 30.0 | Special Features .....  | 389 |
| 31.0 | Development Support .....   | 403 |
| 32.0 | Instruction Set Summary .....                                     | 407 |
| 33.0 | Electrical Characteristics .....                                  | 415 |
| 34.0 | Packaging Information .....                                       | 447 |
|      | Appendix A: Revision History .....                                | 465 |
|      | Index .....   | 467 |
|      | The Microchip Web Site .....                                      | 475 |
|      | Customer Change Notification Service .....                        | 475 |
|      | Customer Support .....  | 475 |
|      | Product Identification System .....                               | 477 |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## TO OUR VALUED CUSTOMERS

It is our intention to provide our valued customers with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip products. To this end, we will continue to improve our publications to better suit your needs. Our publications will be refined and enhanced as new volumes and updates are introduced.

If you have any questions or comments regarding this publication, please contact the Marketing Communications Department via E-mail at [docerrors@microchip.com](mailto:docerrors@microchip.com). We welcome your feedback.

### Most Current Data Sheet

To obtain the most up-to-date version of this data sheet, please register at our Worldwide Web site at:

<http://www.microchip.com>

You can determine the version of a data sheet by examining its literature number found on the bottom outside corner of any page. The last character of the literature number is the version number, (e.g., DS30000000A is version A of document DS30000000).

### Errata

An errata sheet, describing minor operational differences from the data sheet and recommended workarounds, may exist for current devices. As device/documentation issues become known to us, we will publish an errata sheet. The errata will specify the revision of silicon and revision of document to which it applies.

To determine if an errata sheet exists for a particular device, please check with one of the following:

- Microchip's Worldwide Web site; <http://www.microchip.com>
- Your local Microchip sales office (see last page)

When contacting a sales office, please specify which device, revision of silicon and data sheet (include literature number) you are using.

### Customer Notification System

Register on our web site at [www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com) to receive the most current information on all of our products.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 1.0 DEVICE OVERVIEW

This document contains device-specific information for the following devices:

- PIC24FJ64GB202
- PIC24FJ128GB202
- PIC24FJ64GB204
- PIC24FJ128GB204

The PIC24FJ128GB204 family expands the capabilities of the PIC24F family by adding a complete selection of Cryptographic Engines, ISO 7816 support and I<sup>2</sup>S support to its existing features. This combination, along with its ultra low-power features, Direct Memory Access (DMA) for peripherals and USB On-The-Go, make this family the new standard for mixed-signal PIC<sup>®</sup> microcontrollers in one economical and power-saving package.

### 1.1 Core Features

#### 1.1.1 16-BIT ARCHITECTURE

Central to all PIC24F devices is the 16-bit modified Harvard architecture, first introduced with Microchip's dsPIC<sup>®</sup> Digital Signal Controllers (DSCs). The PIC24F CPU core offers a wide range of enhancements, such as:

- 16-bit data and 24-bit address paths with the ability to move information between data and memory spaces
- Linear addressing of up to 12 Mbytes (program space) and 32 Kbytes (data)
- A 16-element Working register array with built-in software stack support
- A 17 x 17 hardware multiplier with support for integer math
- Hardware support for 32 by 16-bit division
- An instruction set that supports multiple addressing modes and is optimized for high-level languages, such as 'C'
- Operational performance up to 16 MIPS

#### 1.1.2 XLP POWER-SAVING TECHNOLOGY

The PIC24FJ128GB204 family of devices introduces a greatly expanded range of power-saving operating modes for the ultimate in power conservation. The new modes include:

- Retention Sleep with essential circuits being powered from a separate low-voltage regulator
- Deep Sleep without RTCC for the lowest possible power consumption under software control
- VBAT mode (with or without RTCC) to continue limited operation from a backup battery when VDD is removed

Many of these new low-power modes also support the continuous operation of the low-power, on-chip Real-Time Clock/Calendar (RTCC), making it possible for an application to keep time while the device is otherwise asleep.

Aside from these new features, PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices also include all of the legacy power-saving features of previous PIC24F microcontrollers, such as:

- On-the-Fly Clock Switching, allowing the selection of a lower power clock during run time
- Doze Mode Operation, for maintaining peripheral clock speed while slowing the CPU clock
- Instruction-Based Power-Saving Modes, for quick invocation of Idle and the many Sleep modes

#### 1.1.3 OSCILLATOR OPTIONS AND FEATURES

All of the devices in the PIC24FJ128GB204 family offer five different oscillator options, allowing users a range of choices in developing application hardware. These include:

- Two Crystal modes
- Two External Clock (EC) modes
- A Phase-Locked Loop (PLL) frequency multiplier, which allows clock speeds of up to 32 MHz
- A Fast Internal Oscillator (FRC) – Nominal 8 MHz output with multiple frequency divider options and automatic frequency self-calibration during run time
- A separate Low-Power Internal RC Oscillator (LPRC) – 31 kHz nominal for low-power, timing-insensitive applications.

The internal oscillator block also provides a stable reference source for the Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM). This option constantly monitors the main clock source against a reference signal provided by the internal oscillator and enables the controller to switch to the internal oscillator, allowing for continued low-speed operation or a safe application shutdown.

#### 1.1.4 EASY MIGRATION

Regardless of the memory size, all devices share the same rich set of peripherals, allowing for a smooth migration path as applications grow and evolve. This extends the ability of applications to grow from the relatively simple, to the powerful and complex, yet still selecting a Microchip device.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## 1.2 DMA Controller

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices also add a Direct Memory Access (DMA) Controller to the existing PIC24F architecture. The DMA acts in concert with the CPU, allowing data to move between data memory and peripherals without the intervention of the CPU, increasing data throughput and decreasing execution time overhead. Six independently programmable channels make it possible to service multiple peripherals at virtually the same time, with each channel peripheral performing a different operation. Many types of data transfer operations are supported.

## 1.3 USB On-The-Go (OTG)

USB On-The-Go provides on-chip functionality as a target device compatible with the USB 2.0 standard, as well as limited stand-alone functionality as a USB embedded host. By implementing USB Host Negotiation Protocol (HNP), the module can also dynamically switch between device and host operation, allowing for a much wider range of versatile USB-enabled applications on a microcontroller platform.

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices also incorporate an integrated USB transceiver and precision oscillator, minimizing the required complexity of implementing a complete USB device, embedded host, dual role or On-The-Go application.

## 1.4 Cryptographic Engine

The Cryptographic Engine provides a new set of data security options. Using its own free-standing state machines, the engine can independently perform NIST standard encryption and decryption of data, independently of the CPU.

Support for True Random Number Generation (TRNG) and Pseudorandom Number Generation (PRNG); NIST SP800-90 compliant.

## 1.5 Other Special Features

- **Peripheral Pin Select (PPS):** The Peripheral Pin Select feature allows most digital peripherals to be mapped over a fixed set of digital I/O pins. Users may independently map the input and/or output of any one of the many digital peripherals to any one of the I/O pins.
- **Communications:** The PIC24FJ128GB204 family incorporates a range of serial communication peripherals to handle a range of application requirements. There are two independent I<sup>2</sup>C™ modules that support both Master and Slave modes of operation. Devices also have, through the PPS feature, four independent UARTs with built-in IrDA® encoders/decoders, ISO 7816 Smart Card support (UART1 and UART2 only) and three SPI modules with I<sup>2</sup>S and variable data width support.
- **Analog Features:** All members of the PIC24FJ128GB204 family include a 12-bit A/D Converter module and a triple comparator module. The A/D module incorporates a range of new features that allows the converter to assess and make decisions on incoming data, reducing CPU overhead for routine A/D conversions. The comparator module includes three analog comparators that are configurable for a wide range of operations.
- **CTMU Interface:** In addition to their other analog features, members of the PIC24FJ128GB204 family include the CTMU interface module. This provides a convenient method for precision time measurement and pulse generation, and can serve as an interface for capacitive sensors.
- **Enhanced Parallel Master/Parallel Slave Port:** This module allows rapid and transparent access to the microcontroller data bus, and enables the CPU to directly address external data memory. The parallel port can function in Master or Slave mode, accommodating data widths of 4, 8 or 16 bits, and address widths of up to 23 bits in Master modes.
- **Real-Time Clock and Calendar (RTCC):** This module implements a full-featured clock and calendar with alarm functions in hardware, freeing up timer resources and program memory space for use by the core application.
- **Data Signal Modulator (DSM):** The Data Signal Modulator (DSM) allows the user to mix a digital data stream (the “modulator signal”) with a carrier signal to produce a modulated output.

## 1.6 Details on Individual Family Members

Devices in the PIC24FJ128GB204 family are available in 28-pin and 44-pin packages. The general block diagram for all devices is shown in [Figure 1-1](#).

The devices are differentiated from each other in six ways:

1. Flash program memory (64 Kbytes for PIC24FJ64GB2XX devices and 128 Kbytes for PIC24FJ128GB2XX devices).
2. Available I/O pins and ports (21 pins on two ports for 28-pin devices, 35 pins on three ports for 44-pin devices).
3. Available Input Change Notification (ICN) inputs (20 on 28-pin devices and 34 on 44-pin devices).
4. Available remappable pins (14 pins on 28-pin devices and 24 pins on 44-pin devices).
5. Analog input channels for the A/D Converter (12 channels for 44-pin devices and 9 channels for 28-pin devices).

All other features for devices in this family are identical. These are summarized in [Table 1-1](#) and [Table 1-2](#).

A list of the pin features available on the PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices, sorted by function, is shown in [Table 1-3](#). Note that this table shows the pin location of individual peripheral features and not how they are multiplexed on the same pin. This information is provided in the pinout diagrams in the beginning of the data sheet. Multiplexed features are sorted by the priority given to a feature, with the highest priority peripheral being listed first.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 1-1: DEVICE FEATURES FOR THE PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY: 44-PIN DEVICES**

| Features   | PIC24FJ64GB204   | PIC24FJ128GB204 |
|--|--|-----------------|
| Operating Frequency  | DC – 32 MHz  |                 |
| Program Memory (bytes)   | 64K  | 128K            |
| Program Memory (instructions)                                    | 22,016   | 44,032          |
| Data Memory (bytes)  | 8K   |                 |
| Interrupt Sources (soft vectors/<br>NMI traps)                   | 72 (68/4)  |                 |
| I/O Ports  | Ports A, B, C  |                 |
| Total I/O Pins   | 34   |                 |
| Remappable Pins  | 24 (23 I/Os, 1 Input only)   |                 |
| Timers:  |  |                 |
| Total Number (16-bit)  | 5 <sup>(1)</sup>   |                 |
| 32-Bit (from paired 16-bit timers)                               | 2  |                 |
| Input Capture w/Timer Channels                                   | 6 <sup>(1)</sup>   |                 |
| Output Compare/PWM Channels                                      | 6 <sup>(1)</sup>   |                 |
| Input Change Notification Interrupts                             | 34   |                 |
| Serial Communications:   |  |                 |
| UART   | 4 <sup>(1)</sup>   |                 |
| SPI (3-wire/4-wire)  | 3 <sup>(1)</sup>   |                 |
| I <sup>2</sup> C™  | 2  |                 |
| Digital Signal Modulator (DSM)                                   | Yes  |                 |
| Parallel Communications (EPMP/PSP)                               | Yes  |                 |
| JTAG Boundary Scan   | Yes  |                 |
| 12-Bit SAR Analog-to-Digital (A/D)<br>Converter (input channels) | 12   |                 |
| Analog Comparators   | 3  |                 |
| CTMU Interface   | 12 Channels  |                 |
| Resets (and Delays)  | Core POR, VDD POR, VBAT POR, BOR, RESET Instruction,<br>MCLR, WDT; Illegal Opcode, REPEAT Instruction,<br>Hardware Traps, Configuration Word Mismatch<br>(OST, PLL Lock) |                 |
| Instruction Set  | 76 Base Instructions, Multiple Addressing Mode Variations  |                 |
| Packages   | 44-Pin TQFP and QFN  |                 |
| Cryptographic Engine   | Supports AES with 128, 192 and 256-Bit Key, DES and TDES,<br>True Random and Pseudorandom Number Generator,<br>On-Chip OTP Storage                                       |                 |
| USB  | USB Full-Speed and Low-Speed Compatible, On-The-Go (OTG) USB   |                 |
| RTCC   | Yes  |                 |

**Note 1:** Peripherals are accessible through remappable pins.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

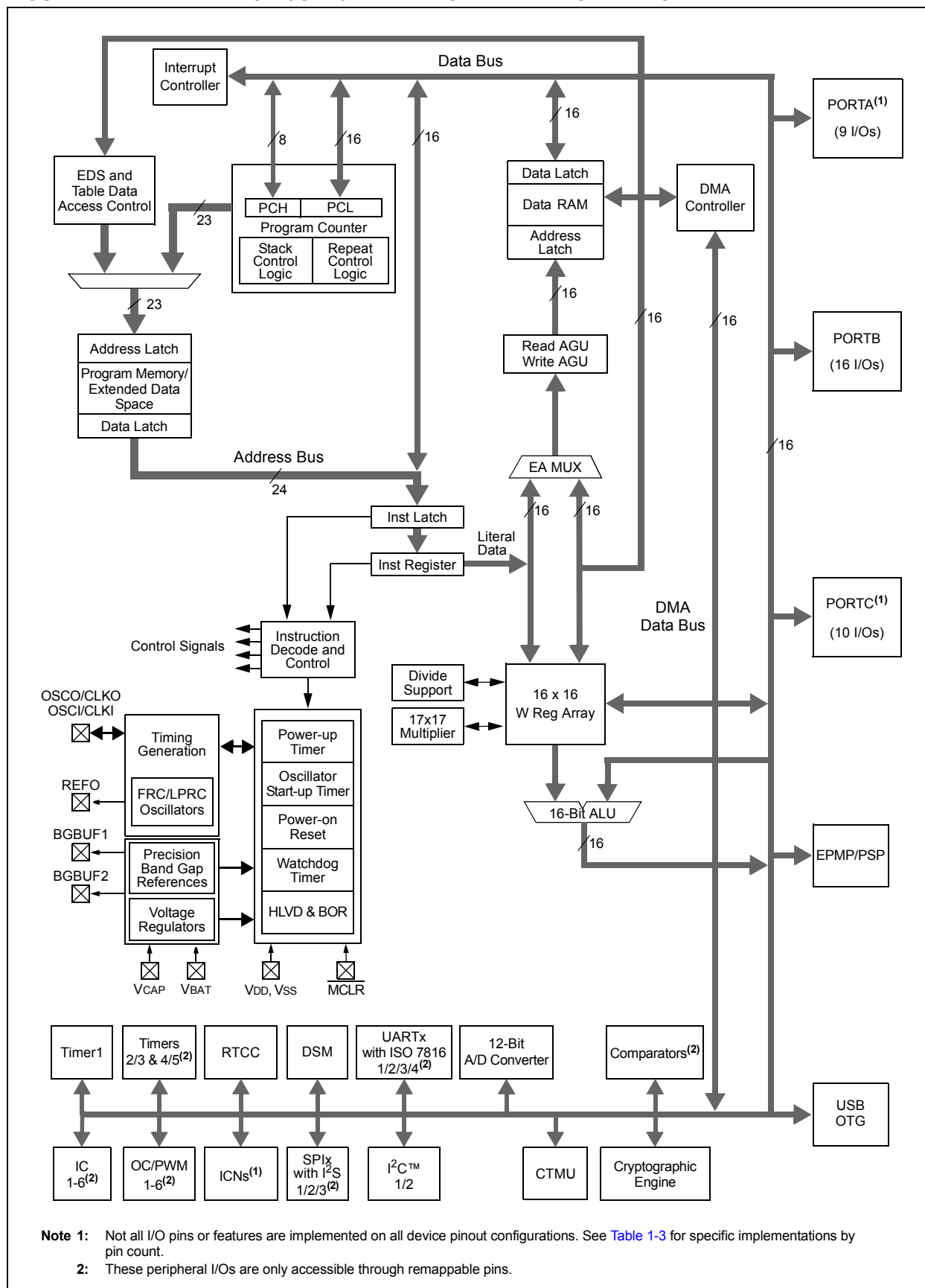
**TABLE 1-2: DEVICE FEATURES FOR THE PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY: 28-PIN DEVICES**

| Features   | PIC24FJ64GB202  | PIC24FJ128GB202 |
|--|---|-----------------|
| Operating Frequency  | DC – 32 MHz   |                 |
| Program Memory (bytes)   | 64K   | 128K            |
| Program Memory (instructions)                                    | 22,016  | 44,032          |
| Data Memory (bytes)  | 8K  |                 |
| Interrupt Sources (soft vectors/<br>NMI traps)                   | 72 (68/4)   |                 |
| I/O Ports  | Ports A, B  |                 |
| Total I/O Pins   | 20  |                 |
| Remappable Pins  | 15 (14 I/Os, 1 Input only)  |                 |
| Timers:  |   |                 |
| Total Number (16-bit)  | 5 <sup>(1)</sup>  |                 |
| 32-Bit (from paired 16-bit timers)                               | 2   |                 |
| Input Capture w/Timer Channels                                   | 6 <sup>(1)</sup>  |                 |
| Output Compare/PWM Channels                                      | 6 <sup>(1)</sup>  |                 |
| Input Change Notification Interrupts                             | 20  |                 |
| Serial Communications:   |   |                 |
| UART   | 4 <sup>(1)</sup>  |                 |
| SPI (3-wire/4-wire)  | 3 <sup>(1)</sup>  |                 |
| I <sup>2</sup> C™  | 2   |                 |
| Digital Signal Modulator (DSM)                                   | Yes   |                 |
| JTAG Boundary Scan   | Yes   |                 |
| 12-Bit SAR Analog-to-Digital (A/D)<br>Converter (input channels) | 9   |                 |
| Analog Comparators   | 3   |                 |
| CTMU Interface   | 9 Channels  |                 |
| Resets (and Delays)  | Core POR, VDD POR, VBAT POR, BOR, RESET Instruction, MCLR, WDT; Illegal Opcode, REPEAT Instruction, Hardware Traps, Configuration Word Mismatch (OST, PLL Lock) |                 |
| Instruction Set  | 76 Base Instructions, Multiple Addressing Mode Variations   |                 |
| Packages   | 28-Pin SPDIP, SSOP, SOIC and QFN-S  |                 |
| Cryptographic Engine   | Supports AES with 128, 192 and 256-Bit Key, DES and TDES, True Random and Pseudorandom Number Generator, On-Chip OTP Storage                                    |                 |
| USB  | USB Full-Speed and Low-Speed Compatible, On-The-Go (OTG) USB  |                 |
| RTCC   | Yes   |                 |

**Note 1:** Peripherals are accessible through remappable pins.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 1-1: PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY GENERAL BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 1-3: PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY PINOUT DESCRIPTION**

| Pin Function | Pin Number/Grid Locator       |                 |                    | I/O | Input Buffer | Description                          |
|--------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----|--------------|--------------------------------------|
|              | 28-Pin<br>SPDIP/SOIC/<br>SSOP | 28-Pin<br>QFN-S | 44-Pin<br>TQFP/QFN |     |              |                                      |
| AN0          | 2                             | 27              | 19                 | I   | ANA          | 12-Bit SAR A/D Converter Inputs.     |
| AN1          | 3                             | 28              | 20                 | I   | ANA          |                                      |
| AN2          | 4                             | 1               | 21                 | I   | ANA          |                                      |
| AN3          | 5                             | 2               | 22                 | I   | ANA          |                                      |
| AN4          | 6                             | 3               | 23                 | I   | ANA          |                                      |
| AN5          | 7                             | 4               | 24                 | I   | ANA          |                                      |
| AN6          | 25                            | 22              | 14                 | I   | ANA          |                                      |
| AN7          | 24                            | 21              | 11                 | I   | ANA          |                                      |
| AN9          | 26                            | 23              | 15                 | I   | ANA          |                                      |
| AN10         | —                             | —               | 25                 | I   | ANA          |                                      |
| AN11         | —                             | —               | 26                 | I   | ANA          |                                      |
| AN12         | —                             | —               | 27                 | I   | ANA          |                                      |
| ASCL1        | 3                             | 28              | 20                 | —   | —            | Positive Supply for Analog modules.  |
| ASDA1        | 2                             | 27              | 19                 | —   | —            |                                      |
| AVDD         | —                             | —               | 17                 | P   | ANA          | Positive Supply for Analog modules.  |
| AVSS         | —                             | 24              | 16                 | P   | ANA          | Ground Reference for Analog modules. |
| C1INA        | 7                             | 4               | 24                 | I   | ANA          | Comparator 1 Input A.                |
| C1INB        | 6                             | 3               | 23                 | I   | ANA          | Comparator 1 Input B.                |
| C1INC        | 24                            | 15              | 1                  | I   | ANA          | Comparator 1 Input C.                |
| C1IND        | 9                             | 6               | 30                 | I   | ANA          | Comparator 1 Input D.                |
| C2INA        | 5                             | 2               | 22                 | I   | ANA          | Comparator 2 Input A.                |
| C2INB        | 4                             | 1               | 21                 | I   | ANA          | Comparator 2 Input B.                |
| C2INC        | 18                            | 15              | 1                  | I   | ANA          | Comparator 2 Input C.                |
| C2IND        | 10                            | 7               | 31                 | I   | ANA          | Comparator 2 Input D.                |
| C3INA        | 26                            | 23              | 15                 | I   | ANA          | Comparator 3 Input A.                |
| C3INB        | 25                            | 22              | 14                 | I   | ANA          | Comparator 3 Input B.                |
| C3INC        | 2                             | 15              | 1                  | I   | ANA          | Comparator 3 Input C.                |
| C3IND        | 3                             | 28              | 20                 | I   | ANA          | Comparator 3 Input D.                |
| CLKI         | 9                             | 6               | 30                 | I   | ANA          | Main Clock Input Connection.         |
| CLKO         | 10                            | 7               | 31                 | O   | —            | System Clock Output.                 |

**Legend:** ST = Schmitt Trigger input  
ANA = Analog input  
I<sup>2</sup>C = ST with I<sup>2</sup>C™ or SMBus levels

TTL = TTL compatible input  
O = Output

I = Input  
P = Power

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 1-3: PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)**

| Pin Function | Pin Number/Grid Locator       |                 |                    | I/O | Input Buffer | Description                           |
|--------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----|--------------|---------------------------------------|
|              | 28-Pin<br>SPDIP/SOIC/<br>SSOP | 28-Pin<br>QFN-S | 44-Pin<br>TQFP/QFN |     |              |                                       |
| CN0          | 12                            | 9               | 34                 | —   | —            | Interrupt-on-Change Inputs.           |
| CN1          | 11                            | 8               | 33                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN2          | 2                             | 27              | 19                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN3          | 3                             | 28              | 20                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN4          | 4                             | 1               | 21                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN5          | 5                             | 2               | 22                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN6          | 6                             | 3               | 23                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN7          | 7                             | 4               | 24                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN8          | —                             | —               | 25                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN9          | —                             | —               | 26                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN10         | —                             | —               | 27                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN11         | 26                            | 23              | 15                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN12         | 25                            | 22              | 14                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN13         | 24                            | 21              | 11                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN15         | 22                            | 19              | 9                  | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN16         | 21                            | 18              | 8                  | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN17         | —                             | —               | 3                  | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN18         | —                             | —               | 2                  | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN19         | —                             | —               | 5                  | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN20         | —                             | —               | 4                  | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN21         | 18                            | 15              | 1                  | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN22         | 17                            | 14              | 44                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN23         | 16                            | 13              | 43                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN24         | 15                            | 12              | 42                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN25         | —                             | —               | 37                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN26         | —                             | —               | 38                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN27         | 14                            | 11              | 41                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN28         | —                             | —               | 36                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN29         | 10                            | 7               | 31                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN30         | 9                             | 6               | 30                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN33         | —                             | —               | 13                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN34         | —                             | —               | 32                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN35         | —                             | —               | 35                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CN36         | —                             | —               | 12                 | —   | —            |                                       |
| CTCMP        | 4                             | 1               | 21                 | I   | ANA          | CTMU Comparator 2 Input (Pulse mode). |

**Legend:** ST = Schmitt Trigger input

ANA = Analog input

I<sup>2</sup>C = ST with I<sup>2</sup>C™ or SMBus levels

TTL = TTL compatible input

O = Output

I = Input

P = Power

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 1-3: PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)**

| Pin Function | Pin Number/Grid Locator |              |                 | I/O | Input Buffer | Description   |
|--------------|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----|--------------|---|
|              | 28-Pin SPDIP/SOIC/SSOP  | 28-Pin QFN-S | 44-Pin TQFP/QFN |     |              |   |
| CTED1        | 2                       | 27           | 19              | I   | ANA          | CTMU External Edge Inputs.  |
| CTED2        | 3                       | 28           | 20              | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTED3        | 16                      | 13           | 43              | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTED4        | 18                      | 15           | 1               | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTED5        | 25                      | 22           | 14              | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTED6        | 26                      | 23           | 15              | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTED7        | —                       | —            | 5               | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTED8        | 7                       | 4            | 24              | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTED9        | 22                      | 19           | 9               | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTED10       | 17                      | 14           | 44              | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTED11       | 21                      | 18           | 8               | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTED12       | 5                       | 2            | 22              | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTED13       | 6                       | 3            | 23              | I   | ANA          |   |
| CTPLS        | 24                      | 21           | 11              | O   | —            | CTMU Pulse Output.  |
| CVREF        | 25                      | 22           | 14              | O   | ANA          | Comparator Voltage Reference Output.  |
| CVREF+       | 2                       | 27           | 19              | I   | ANA          | Comparator Voltage Reference (high) Input.                                    |
| CVREF-       | 3                       | 28           | 20              | I   | ANA          | Comparator Voltage Reference (low) Input.                                     |
| D+           | 21                      | 18           | 8               | I/O | —            | USB Differential Plus Line (internal transceiver).                            |
| D-           | 22                      | 19           | 9               | I/O | —            | USB Differential Minus Line (internal transceiver).                           |
| INT0         | 16                      | 13           | 43              | I   | ST           | External Interrupt Input 0.   |
| HLVDIN       | 4                       | 1            | 21              | I   | ANA          | High/Low-Voltage Detect Input.  |
| MCLR         | 1                       | 26           | 18              | I   | ST           | Master Clear (device Reset) Input. This line is brought low to cause a Reset. |
| OSCI         | 9                       | 6            | 30              | I   | ANA          | Main Oscillator Input Connection.   |
| OSCO         | 10                      | 7            | 31              | O   | —            | Main Oscillator Output Connection.  |
| PGC1         | 5                       | 2            | 22              | I/O | ST           | In-Circuit Debugger/Emulator/ICSP™ Programming Clock.                         |
| PGC2         | 22                      | 19           | 9               | I/O | ST           |   |
| PGC3         | 3                       | 28           | 20              | I/O | ST           |   |
| PGD1         | 4                       | 1            | 21              | I/O | ST           |   |
| PGD2         | 21                      | 18           | 8               | I/O | ST           |   |
| PGD3         | 2                       | 27           | 19              | I/O | ST           |   |

**Legend:** ST = Schmitt Trigger input

ANA = Analog input

I<sup>2</sup>C = ST with I<sup>2</sup>C™ or SMBus levels

TTL = TTL compatible input

O = Output

I = Input

P = Power

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 1-3: PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)**

| Pin Function     | Pin Number/Grid Locator |              |                 | I/O | Input Buffer | Description   |
|------------------|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----|--------------|---|
|                  | 28-Pin SPDIP/SOIC/SSOP  | 28-Pin QFN-S | 44-Pin TQFP/QFN |     |              |   |
| PMA0/PMALL       | —                       | —            | 3               | O   | —            | Parallel Master Port Address.   |
| PMA1/PMALH       | —                       | —            | 2               | O   | —            |   |
| PMA14/PMCS/PMCS1 | —                       | —            | 15              | O   | —            |   |
| PMA2/PMALU       | —                       | —            | 12              | O   | —            |   |
| PMA3             | —                       | —            | 38              | O   | —            |   |
| PMA4             | —                       | —            | 37              | O   | —            |   |
| PMA5             | —                       | —            | 4               | O   | —            |   |
| PMA6             | —                       | —            | 5               | O   | —            |   |
| PMA7             | —                       | —            | 13              | O   | —            |   |
| PMA8             | —                       | —            | 32              | O   | —            |   |
| PMA9             | —                       | —            | 35              | O   | —            |   |
| PMACK1           | —                       | —            | 27              | I   | ST/TTL       | Parallel Master Port Acknowledge Input 1.   |
| PMBE0            | —                       | —            | 36              | O   | —            | Parallel Master Port Byte Enable 0 Strobe.  |
| PMBE1            | —                       | —            | 25              | O   | —            | Parallel Master Port Byte Enable 1 Strobe.  |
| PMCS1            | —                       | —            | 30              | I/O | ST/TTL       | Parallel Master Port Chip Select 1 Strobe.  |
| PMD0             | —                       | —            | 21              | I/O | ST/TTL       | Parallel Master Port Data (Demultiplexed Master mode) or Address/Data (Multiplexed Master modes). |
| PMD1             | —                       | —            | 22              | I/O | ST/TTL       |   |
| PMD2             | —                       | —            | 23              | I/O | ST/TTL       |   |
| PMD3             | —                       | —            | 1               | I/O | ST/TTL       |   |
| PMD4             | —                       | —            | 44              | I/O | ST/TTL       |   |
| PMD5             | —                       | —            | 43              | I/O | ST/TTL       |   |
| PMD6             | —                       | —            | 20              | I/O | ST/TTL       |   |
| PMD7             | —                       | —            | 19              | I/O | ST/TTL       |   |
| PMRD             | —                       | —            | 11              | O   | —            | Parallel Master Port Read Strobe.   |
| PMWR             | —                       | —            | 24              | O   | —            | Parallel Master Port Write Strobe.  |
| RA0              | 2                       | 27           | 19              | I/O | ST           | PORTA Digital I/Os.   |
| RA1              | 3                       | 28           | 20              | I/O | ST           |   |
| RA2              | 9                       | 6            | 30              | I/O | ST           |   |
| RA3              | 10                      | 7            | 31              | I/O | ST           |   |
| RA4              | 12                      | 9            | 34              | I   | ST           |   |
| RA7              | —                       | —            | 13              | I/O | ST           |   |
| RA8              | —                       | —            | 32              | I/O | ST           |   |
| RA9              | —                       | —            | 35              | I/O | ST           |   |
| RA10             | —                       | —            | 12              | I/O | ST           |   |

**Legend:** ST = Schmitt Trigger input      TTL = TTL compatible input      I = Input  
ANA = Analog input      O = Output      P = Power  
I<sup>2</sup>C = ST with I<sup>2</sup>C™ or SMBus levels

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 1-3: PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)**

| Pin Function | Pin Number/Grid Locator |              |                 | I/O | Input Buffer | Description             |
|--------------|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----|--------------|-------------------------|
|              | 28-Pin SPDIP/SOIC/SSOP  | 28-Pin QFN-S | 44-Pin TQFP/QFN |     |              |                         |
| RB0          | 4                       | 1            | 21              | I/O | ST           | PORTB Digital I/Os.     |
| RB1          | 5                       | 2            | 22              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB2          | 6                       | 3            | 23              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB3          | 7                       | 4            | 24              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB4          | 11                      | 8            | 33              | I   | ST           |                         |
| RB5          | 14                      | 11           | 41              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB6          | 15                      | 12           | 42              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB7          | 16                      | 13           | 43              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB8          | 17                      | 14           | 44              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB9          | 18                      | 15           | 1               | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB10         | 21                      | 18           | 8               | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB11         | 22                      | 19           | 9               | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB13         | 24                      | 21           | 11              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB14         | 25                      | 22           | 14              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RB15         | 26                      | 23           | 15              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RC0          | —                       | —            | 25              | I/O | ST           | PORTC Digital I/Os.     |
| RC1          | —                       | —            | 26              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RC2          | —                       | —            | 27              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RC3          | —                       | —            | 36              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RC4          | —                       | —            | 37              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RC5          | —                       | —            | 38              | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RC6          | —                       | —            | 2               | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RC7          | —                       | —            | 3               | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RC8          | —                       | —            | 4               | I/O | ST           |                         |
| RC9          | —                       | —            | 5               | I/O | ST           |                         |
| REFI         | 22                      | 19           | 9               | —   | —            | Reference Clock Input.  |
| REFO         | 24                      | 21           | 11              | —   | —            | Reference Clock Output. |

**Legend:** ST = Schmitt Trigger input

ANA = Analog input

I<sup>2</sup>C = ST with I<sup>2</sup>C™ or SMBus levels

TTL = TTL compatible input

O = Output

I = Input

P = Power

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 1-3: PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)**

| Pin Function | Pin Number/Grid Locator       |                 |                    | I/O | Input Buffer     | Description                                 |
|--------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----|------------------|---|
|              | 28-Pin<br>SPDIP/SOIC/<br>SSOP | 28-Pin<br>QFN-S | 44-Pin<br>TQFP/QFN |     |                  |   |
| RP0          | 4                             | 1               | 21                 | I/O | ST               | Remappable Peripheral (input or output).    |
| RP1          | 5                             | 2               | 22                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP2          | 6                             | 3               | 23                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP3          | 7                             | 4               | 24                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP5          | 2                             | 27              | 19                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP6          | 3,15                          | 28              | 20                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP7          | 16                            | 13              | 43                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP8          | 17                            | 14              | 44                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP9          | 18                            | 15              | 1                  | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP10         | 21                            | 18              | 8                  | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP11         | 22                            | 19              | 9                  | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP13         | 24                            | 21              | 11                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP14         | 25                            | 22              | 14                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP15         | 26                            | 23              | 15                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP16         | —                             | —               | 25                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP17         | —                             | —               | 26                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP18         | —                             | —               | 27                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP19         | —                             | —               | 36                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP20         | —                             | —               | 37                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP21         | —                             | —               | 38                 | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP22         | —                             | —               | 2                  | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP23         | —                             | —               | 3                  | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP24         | —                             | —               | 4                  | I/O | ST               |   |
| RP25         | —                             | —               | 5                  | I/O | ST               |   |
| RPI4         | 11                            | 8               | 33                 | I   | ST               | Remappable Peripheral (input).              |
| RTCC         | 25                            | 22              | 14                 | O   | —                | Real-Time Clock Alarm/Seconds Pulse Output. |
| SCL1         | 17                            | 14              | 44                 | I/O | I <sup>2</sup> C | I2C1 Synchronous Serial Clock Input/Output. |
| SCL2         | 7                             | 4               | 24                 | I/O | I <sup>2</sup> C | I2C2 Synchronous Serial Clock Input/Output. |
| SCLKI        | 12                            | 9               | 34                 | I   | —                | Secondary Oscillator Digital Clock Input.   |
| SDA1         | 18                            | 15              | 1                  | I/O | I <sup>2</sup> C | I2C1 Data Input/Output.                     |
| SDA2         | 6                             | 3               | 23                 | I/O | I <sup>2</sup> C | I2C2 Data Input/Output.                     |
| SOSCI        | 11                            | 8               | 33                 | I   | ANA              | Secondary Oscillator/Timer1 Clock Input.    |
| SOSCO        | 12                            | 9               | 34                 | O   | ANA              | Secondary Oscillator/Timer1 Clock Output.   |

**Legend:** ST = Schmitt Trigger input  
ANA = Analog input  
I<sup>2</sup>C = ST with I<sup>2</sup>C™ or SMBus levels

TTL = TTL compatible input  
O = Output

I = Input  
P = Power

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 1-3: PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)**

| Pin Function | Pin Number/Grid Locator |              |                 | I/O | Input Buffer | Description  |
|--------------|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----|--------------|--|
|              | 28-Pin SPDIP/SOIC/SSOP  | 28-Pin QFN-S | 44-Pin TQFP/QFN |     |              |  |
| T1CK         | 18                      | 15           | 1               | I   | ST           | Timer1 Clock.  |
| T2CK         | 26                      | 23           | 15              | I   | ST           | Timer2 Clock.  |
| T3CK         | 26                      | 23           | 15              | I   | ST           | Timer3 Clock.  |
| T4CK         | 6                       | 3            | 23              | I   | ST           | Timer4 Clock.  |
| T5CK         | 6                       | 3            | 23              | I   | ST           | Timer5 Clock.  |
| TCK          | 17                      | 14           | 13              | I   | ST           | JTAG Test Clock/Programming Clock Input.                   |
| TDI          | 16                      | 13           | 35              | I   | ST           | JTAG Test Data/Programming Data Input.                     |
| TDO          | 18                      | 15           | 32              | O   | —            | JTAG Test Data Output.                                     |
| TMS          | 14                      | 11           | 12              | I   | —            | JTAG Test Mode Select Input.                               |
| USBID        | 14                      | 11           | 41              | I   | ST           | USB OTG ID (OTG mode only).                                |
| USBOEN       | 17                      | 14           | 44              | O   | —            | USB Output Enable Control (for external transceiver).      |
| VBAT         | 19                      | 16           | 6               | P   | —            | Backup Battery (B+) Input (1.2V nominal).                  |
| VBUS         | 15                      | 12           | 42              | P   | —            | USB Voltage, Host mode (5V).                               |
| VCAP         | 20                      | 17           | 7               | P   | —            | External Filter Capacitor Connection.                      |
| VDD          | 13,28                   | 25           | 28,40           | P   | —            | Positive Supply for Peripheral Digital Logic and I/O Pins. |
| VDDCORE      | 20                      | 17           | 7               | —   | —            | Microcontroller Core Supply Voltage.                       |
| VREF+        | 2                       | 27           | 19              | I   | ANA          | A/D Reference Voltage Input (+).                           |
| VREF-        | 3                       | 28           | 20              | I   | ANA          | A/D Reference Voltage Input (-).                           |
| VSS          | 8,27                    | 5,24         | 29,39           | P   | —            | Ground Reference for Logic and I/O Pins.                   |
| VUSB3V3      | 23                      | 20           | 10              | P   | —            | USB Transceiver Power Input Voltage (3.3V nominal).        |

**Legend:** ST = Schmitt Trigger input

ANA = Analog input

I<sup>2</sup>C = ST with I<sup>2</sup>C™ or SMBus levels

TTL = TTL compatible input

O = Output

I = Input

P = Power

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 2.0 GUIDELINES FOR GETTING STARTED WITH 16-BIT MICROCONTROLLERS

### 2.1 Basic Connection Requirements

Getting started with the PIC24FJ128GB204 family of 16-bit microcontrollers requires attention to a minimal set of device pin connections before proceeding with development.

The following pins must always be connected:

- All VDD and VSS pins (see [Section 2.2 “Power Supply Pins”](#))
- All AVDD and AVSS pins, regardless of whether or not the analog device features are used (see [Section 2.2 “Power Supply Pins”](#))
- MCLR pin (see [Section 2.3 “Master Clear \(MCLR\) Pin”](#))
- ENVREG/DISVREG and VCAP/VDDCORE pins (see [Section 2.4 “Voltage Regulator Pins \(ENVREG/DISVREG and VCAP/VDDCORE\)”](#))

These pins must also be connected if they are being used in the end application:

- PGECx/PGEDx pins used for In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) and debugging purposes (see [Section 2.5 “ICSP Pins”](#))
- OSCI and OSCO pins when an external oscillator source is used (see [Section 2.6 “External Oscillator Pins”](#))

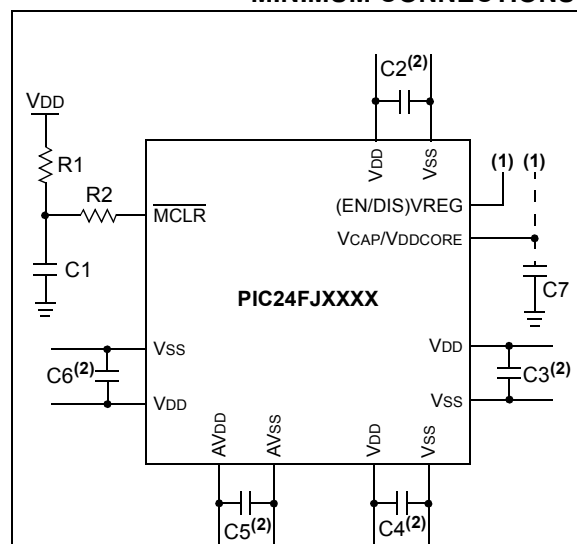
Additionally, the following pins may be required:

- VREF+/VREF- pins used when external voltage reference for analog modules is implemented

**Note:** The AVDD and AVSS pins must always be connected, regardless of whether any of the analog modules are being used.

The minimum mandatory connections are shown in [Figure 2-1](#).

FIGURE 2-1: RECOMMENDED MINIMUM CONNECTIONS



**Key (all values are recommendations):**

C1 through C6: 0.1  $\mu$ F, 20V ceramic

C7: 10  $\mu$ F, 6.3V or greater, tantalum or ceramic

R1: 10 k $\Omega$

R2: 100 $\Omega$  to 470 $\Omega$

**Note 1:** See [Section 2.4 “Voltage Regulator Pins \(ENVREG/DISVREG and VCAP/VDDCORE\)”](#) for the explanation of the ENVREG/DISVREG pin connections.

**2:** The example shown is for a PIC24F device with five VDD/VSS and AVDD/AVSS pairs. Other devices may have more or less pairs; adjust the number of decoupling capacitors appropriately.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 2.2 Power Supply Pins

### 2.2.1 DECOUPLING CAPACITORS

The use of decoupling capacitors on every pair of power supply pins, such as VDD, VSS, AVDD and AVSS is required.

Consider the following criteria when using decoupling capacitors:

- **Value and type of capacitor:** A 0.1  $\mu\text{F}$  (100 nF), 10-20V capacitor is recommended. The capacitor should be a low-ESR device with a resonance frequency in the range of 200 MHz and higher. Ceramic capacitors are recommended.
- **Placement on the printed circuit board:** The decoupling capacitors should be placed as close to the pins as possible. It is recommended to place the capacitors on the same side of the board as the device. If space is constricted, the capacitor can be placed on another layer on the PCB using a via; however, ensure that the trace length from the pin to the capacitor is no greater than 0.25 inch (6 mm).
- **Handling high-frequency noise:** If the board is experiencing high-frequency noise (upward of tens of MHz), add a second ceramic type capacitor in parallel to the above described decoupling capacitor. The value of the second capacitor can be in the range of 0.01  $\mu\text{F}$  to 0.001  $\mu\text{F}$ . Place this second capacitor next to each primary decoupling capacitor. In high-speed circuit designs, consider implementing a decade pair of capacitances as close to the power and ground pins as possible (e.g., 0.1  $\mu\text{F}$  in parallel with 0.001  $\mu\text{F}$ ).
- **Maximizing performance:** On the board layout from the power supply circuit, run the power and return traces to the decoupling capacitors first, and then to the device pins. This ensures that the decoupling capacitors are first in the power chain. Equally important is to keep the trace length between the capacitor and the power pins to a minimum, thereby reducing PCB trace inductance.

### 2.2.2 TANK CAPACITORS

On boards with power traces running longer than six inches in length, it is suggested to use a tank capacitor for integrated circuits including microcontrollers to supply a local power source. The value of the tank capacitor should be determined based on the trace resistance that connects the power supply source to the device, and the maximum current drawn by the device in the application. In other words, select the tank capacitor so that it meets the acceptable voltage sag at the device. Typical values range from 4.7  $\mu\text{F}$  to 47  $\mu\text{F}$ .

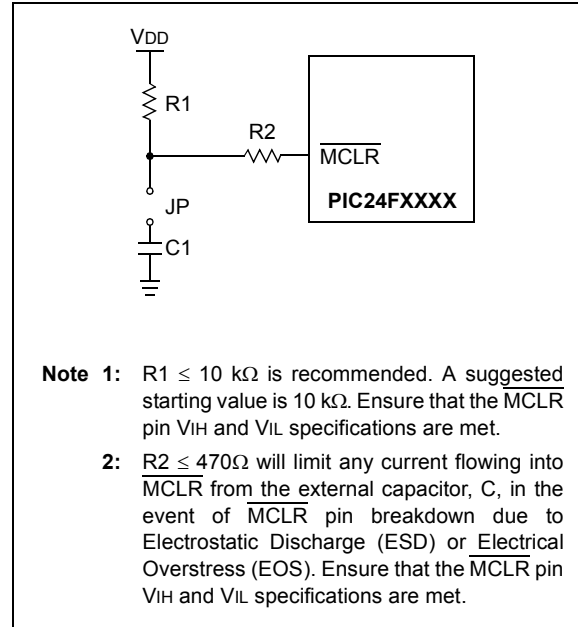
## 2.3 Master Clear ( $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ ) Pin

The  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  pin provides two specific device functions: device Reset, and device programming and debugging. If programming and debugging are not required in the end application, a direct connection to VDD may be all that is required. The addition of other components, to help increase the application's resistance to spurious Resets from voltage sags, may be beneficial. A typical configuration is shown in Figure 2-1. Other circuit designs may be implemented, depending on the application's requirements.

During programming and debugging, the resistance and capacitance that can be added to the pin must be considered. Device programmers and debuggers drive the  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  pin. Consequently, specific voltage levels ( $V_{IH}$  and  $V_{IL}$ ) and fast signal transitions must not be adversely affected. Therefore, specific values of R1 and C1 will need to be adjusted based on the application and PCB requirements. For example, it is recommended that the capacitor, C1, be isolated from the  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  pin during programming and debugging operations by using a jumper (Figure 2-2). The jumper is replaced for normal run-time operations.

Any components associated with the  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  pin should be placed within 0.25 inch (6 mm) of the pin.

**FIGURE 2-2: EXAMPLE OF  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  PIN CONNECTIONS**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 2.4 Voltage Regulator Pins (ENVREG/DISVREG and VCAP/VDDCORE)

**Note:** This section applies only to PIC24FJ devices with an on-chip voltage regulator.

The on-chip voltage regulator enable/disable pin (ENVREG or DISVREG, depending on the device family) must always be connected directly to either a supply voltage or to ground. The particular connection is determined by whether or not the regulator is to be used:

- For ENVREG, tie to VDD to enable the regulator, or to ground to disable the regulator
- For DISVREG, tie to ground to enable the regulator or to VDD to disable the regulator

Refer to [Section 30.2 “On-Chip Voltage Regulator”](#) for details on connecting and using the on-chip regulator.

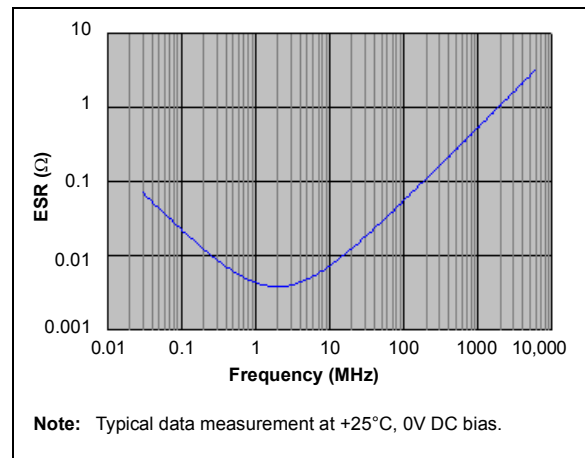
When the regulator is enabled, a low-ESR ( $< 5\Omega$ ) capacitor is required on the VCAP/VDDCORE pin to stabilize the voltage regulator output voltage. The VCAP/VDDCORE pin must not be connected to VDD and must use a capacitor of 10  $\mu\text{F}$  connected to ground. The type can be ceramic or tantalum. Suitable examples of capacitors are shown in [Table 2-1](#). Capacitors with equivalent specification can be used.

Designers may use [Figure 2-3](#) to evaluate ESR equivalence of candidate devices.

The placement of this capacitor should be close to VCAP/VDDCORE. It is recommended that the trace length not exceed 0.25 inch (6 mm). Refer to [Section 33.0 “Electrical Characteristics”](#) for additional information.

When the regulator is disabled, the VCAP/VDDCORE pin must be tied to a voltage supply at the VDDCORE level. Refer to [Section 33.0 “Electrical Characteristics”](#) for information on VDD and VDDCORE.

**FIGURE 2-3: FREQUENCY vs. ESR PERFORMANCE FOR SUGGESTED VCAP**



**TABLE 2-1: SUITABLE CAPACITOR EQUIVALENTS**

| Make      | Part #             | Nominal Capacitance | Base Tolerance | Rated Voltage | Temp. Range   |
|-----------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| TDK       | C3216X7R1C106K     | 10 $\mu\text{F}$    | $\pm 10\%$     | 16V           | -55 to +125°C |
| TDK       | C3216X5R1C106K     | 10 $\mu\text{F}$    | $\pm 10\%$     | 16V           | -55 to +85°C  |
| Panasonic | ECJ-3YX1C106K      | 10 $\mu\text{F}$    | $\pm 10\%$     | 16V           | -55 to +125°C |
| Panasonic | ECJ-4YB1C106K      | 10 $\mu\text{F}$    | $\pm 10\%$     | 16V           | -55 to +85°C  |
| Murata    | GRM32DR71C106KA01L | 10 $\mu\text{F}$    | $\pm 10\%$     | 16V           | -55 to +125°C |
| Murata    | GRM31CR61C106KC31L | 10 $\mu\text{F}$    | $\pm 10\%$     | 16V           | -55 to +85°C  |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 2.4.1 CONSIDERATIONS FOR CERAMIC CAPACITORS

In recent years, large value, low-voltage, surface-mount ceramic capacitors have become very cost effective in sizes up to a few tens of microfarad. The low-ESR, small physical size and other properties make ceramic capacitors very attractive in many types of applications.

Ceramic capacitors are suitable for use with the internal voltage regulator of this microcontroller. However, some care is needed in selecting the capacitor to ensure that it maintains sufficient capacitance over the intended operating range of the application.

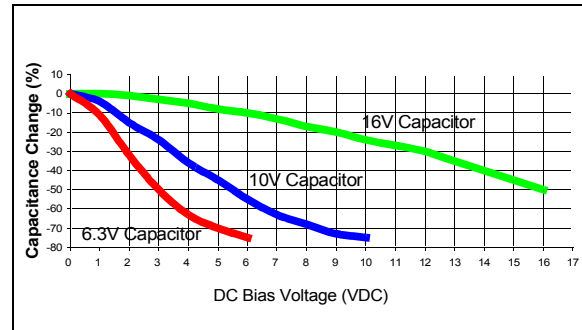
Typical low-cost, 10  $\mu\text{F}$  ceramic capacitors are available in X5R, X7R and Y5V dielectric ratings (other types are also available, but are less common). The initial tolerance specifications for these types of capacitors are often specified as  $\pm 10\%$  to  $\pm 20\%$  (X5R and X7R), or  $-20\%/+80\%$  (Y5V). However, the effective capacitance that these capacitors provide in an application circuit will also vary based on additional factors, such as the applied DC bias voltage and the temperature. The total in-circuit tolerance is, therefore, much wider than the initial tolerance specification.

The X5R and X7R capacitors typically exhibit satisfactory temperature stability (ex:  $\pm 15\%$  over a wide temperature range, but consult the manufacturer's data sheets for exact specifications). However, Y5V capacitors typically have extreme temperature tolerance specifications of  $+22\%/ -82\%$ . Due to the extreme temperature tolerance, a 10  $\mu\text{F}$  nominal rated Y5V type capacitor may not deliver enough total capacitance to meet minimum internal voltage regulator stability and transient response requirements. Therefore, Y5V capacitors are not recommended for use with the internal regulator if the application must operate over a wide temperature range.

In addition to temperature tolerance, the effective capacitance of large value ceramic capacitors can vary substantially, based on the amount of DC voltage applied to the capacitor. This effect can be very significant, but is often overlooked or is not always documented.

Typical DC bias voltage vs. capacitance graph for X7R type capacitors is shown in [Figure 2-4](#).

**FIGURE 2-4: DC BIAS VOLTAGE vs. CAPACITANCE CHARACTERISTICS**



When selecting a ceramic capacitor to be used with the internal voltage regulator, it is suggested to select a high-voltage rating, so that the operating voltage is a small percentage of the maximum rated capacitor voltage. For example, choose a ceramic capacitor rated at 16V for the 2.5V or 1.8V core voltage. Suggested capacitors are shown in [Table 2-1](#).

## 2.5 ICSP Pins

The PGECx and PGEDx pins are used for In-Circuit Serial Programming (ICSP) and debugging purposes. It is recommended to keep the trace length between the ICSP connector and the ICSP pins on the device as short as possible. If the ICSP connector is expected to experience an ESD event, a series resistor is recommended, with the value in the range of a few tens of ohms, not to exceed 100 $\Omega$ .

Pull-up resistors, series diodes and capacitors on the PGECx and PGEDx pins are not recommended as they will interfere with the programmer/debugger communications to the device. If such discrete components are an application requirement, they should be removed from the circuit during programming and debugging. Alternatively, refer to the AC/DC characteristics and timing requirements information in the respective device Flash programming specification for information on capacitive loading limits and pin input voltage high ( $V_{IH}$ ) and input low ( $V_{IL}$ ) requirements.

For device emulation, ensure that the "Communication Channel Select" (i.e., PGECx/PGEDx pins), programmed into the device, matches the physical connections for the ICSP to the Microchip debugger/emulator tool.

For more information on available Microchip development tools connection requirements, refer to [Section 31.0 "Development Support"](#).

## 2.6 External Oscillator Pins

Many microcontrollers have options for at least two oscillators: a high-frequency Primary Oscillator and a low-frequency Secondary Oscillator (refer to [Section 9.0 “Oscillator Configuration”](#) for details).

The oscillator circuit should be placed on the same side of the board as the device. Place the oscillator circuit close to the respective oscillator pins with no more than 0.5 inch (12 mm) between the circuit components and the pins. The load capacitors should be placed next to the oscillator itself, on the same side of the board.

Use a grounded copper pour around the oscillator circuit to isolate it from surrounding circuits. The grounded copper pour should be routed directly to the MCU ground. Do not run any signal traces or power traces inside the ground pour. Also, if using a two-sided board, avoid any traces on the other side of the board where the crystal is placed.

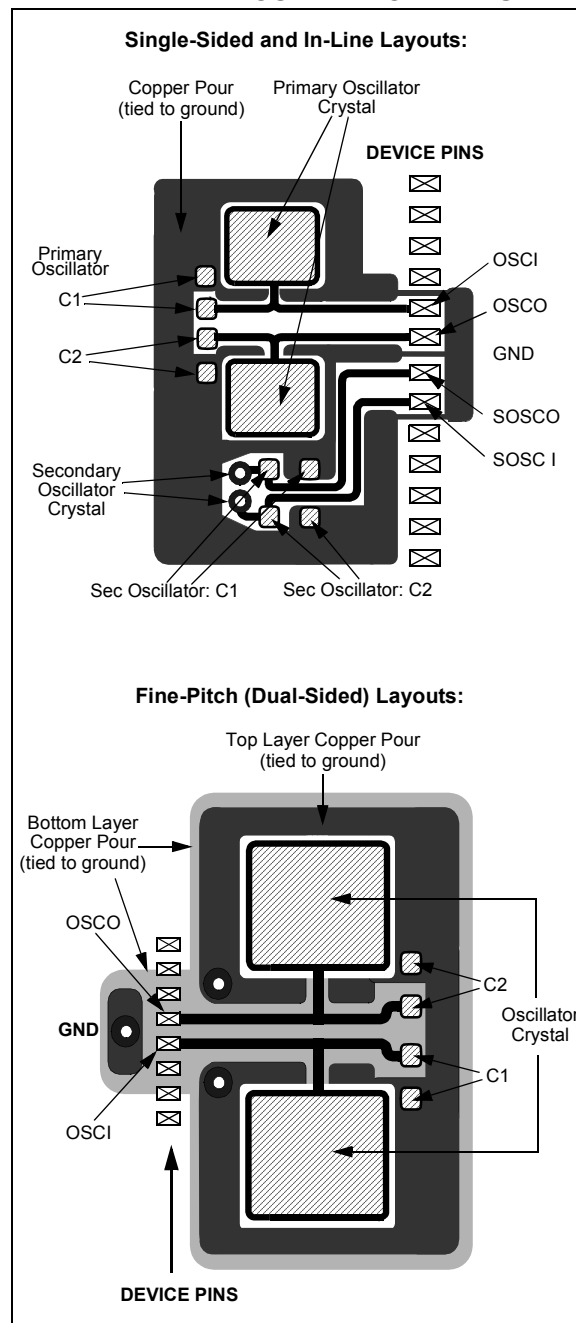
Layout suggestions are shown in [Figure 2-5](#). In-line packages may be handled with a single-sided layout that completely encompasses the oscillator pins. With fine-pitch packages, it is not always possible to completely surround the pins and components. A suitable solution is to tie the broken guard sections to a mirrored ground layer. In all cases, the guard trace(s) must be returned to ground.

In planning the application's routing and I/O assignments, ensure that adjacent port pins, and other signals in close proximity to the oscillator, are benign (i.e., free of high frequencies, short rise and fall times and other similar noise).

For additional information and design guidance on oscillator circuits, please refer to these Microchip Application Notes, available at the corporate web site ([www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com)):

- AN826, “Crystal Oscillator Basics and Crystal Selection for rPIC™ and PICmicro® Devices”
- AN849, “Basic PICmicro® Oscillator Design”
- AN943, “Practical PICmicro® Oscillator Analysis and Design”
- AN949, “Making Your Oscillator Work”

**FIGURE 2-5: SUGGESTED PLACEMENT OF THE OSCILLATOR CIRCUIT**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## 2.7 Configuration of Analog and Digital Pins During ICSP Operations

If an ICSP compliant emulator is selected as a debugger, it automatically initializes all of the A/D input pins (ANx) as “digital” pins. Depending on the particular device, this is done by setting all bits in the ADxPCFG register(s) or clearing all bits in the ANSx registers.

All PIC24F devices will have either one or more ADxPCFG registers, or several ANSx registers (one for each port); no device will have both. Refer to [Section 11.2 “Configuring Analog Port Pins \(ANSx\)”](#) for more specific information.

The bits in these registers that correspond to the A/D pins that initialized the emulator must not be changed by the user application firmware; otherwise, communication errors will result between the debugger and the device.

If your application needs to use certain A/D pins as analog input pins during the debug session, the user application must modify the appropriate bits during initialization of the A/D module, as follows:

- For devices with an ADxPCFG register, clear the bits corresponding to the pin(s) to be configured as analog. Do not change any other bits, particularly those corresponding to the PGECx/PGEDx pair, at any time.
- For devices with ANSx registers, set the bits corresponding to the pin(s) to be configured as analog. Do not change any other bits, particularly those corresponding to the PGECx/PGEDx pair, at any time.

When a Microchip debugger/emulator is used as a programmer, the user application firmware must correctly configure the ADxPCFG or ANSx registers. Automatic initialization of this register is only done during debugger operation. Failure to correctly configure the register(s) will result in all A/D pins being recognized as analog input pins, resulting in the port value being read as a logic ‘0’, which may affect user application functionality.

## 2.8 Unused I/Os

Unused I/O pins should be configured as outputs and driven to a logic low state. Alternatively, connect a 1 k $\Omega$  to 10 k $\Omega$  resistor to Vss on unused pins and drive the output to logic low.

## 3.0 CPU

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information on the CPU, refer to the “*dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual*”, “**CPU with Extended Data Space (EDS)**” (DS39732). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The PIC24F CPU has a 16-bit (data) modified Harvard architecture with an enhanced instruction set and a 24-bit instruction word with a variable length opcode field. The Program Counter (PC) is 23 bits wide and addresses up to 4M instructions of user program memory space. A single-cycle instruction prefetch mechanism is used to help maintain throughput and provides predictable execution. All instructions execute in a single cycle, with the exception of instructions that change the program flow, the double-word move (MOV.D) instruction and the table instructions. Overhead-free program loop constructs are supported using the REPEAT instructions, which are interruptible at any point.

PIC24F devices have sixteen, 16-bit Working registers in the programmer's model. Each of the Working registers can act as a Data, Address or Address Offset register. The 16<sup>th</sup> Working register (W15) operates as a Software Stack Pointer (SSP) for interrupts and calls.

The lower 32 Kbytes of the Data Space (DS) can be accessed linearly. The upper 32 Kbytes of the Data Space are referred to as Extended Data Space to which the extended data RAM, EPMP memory space or program memory can be mapped.

The Instruction Set Architecture (ISA) has been significantly enhanced beyond that of the PIC18, but maintains an acceptable level of backward compatibility. All PIC18 instructions and addressing modes are supported, either directly, or through simple macros. Many of the ISA enhancements have been driven by compiler efficiency needs.

The core supports Inherent (no operand), Relative, Literal and Memory Direct Addressing modes, along with three groups of addressing modes. All modes support Register Direct and various Register Indirect modes. Each group offers up to seven addressing modes. Instructions are associated with predefined addressing modes depending upon their functional requirements.

For most instructions, the core is capable of executing a data (or program data) memory read, a Working register (data) read, a data memory write and a program (instruction) memory read per instruction cycle. As a result, three parameter instructions can be supported, allowing trinary operations (that is,  $A + B = C$ ) to be executed in a single cycle.

A high-speed, 17-bit x 17-bit multiplier has been included to significantly enhance the core arithmetic capability and throughput. The multiplier supports Signed, Unsigned and Mixed mode, 16-bit x 16-bit or 8-bit x 8-bit, integer multiplication. All multiply instructions execute in a single cycle.

The 16-bit ALU has been enhanced with integer divide assist hardware that supports an iterative non-restoring divide algorithm. It operates in conjunction with the REPEAT instruction looping mechanism and a selection of iterative divide instructions to support 32-bit (or 16-bit), divided by 16-bit, integer signed and unsigned division. All divide operations require 19 cycles to complete but are interruptible at any cycle boundary.

The PIC24F has a vectored exception scheme with up to 8 sources of non-maskable traps and up to 118 interrupt sources. Each interrupt source can be assigned to one of seven priority levels.

A block diagram of the CPU is shown in [Figure 3-1](#).

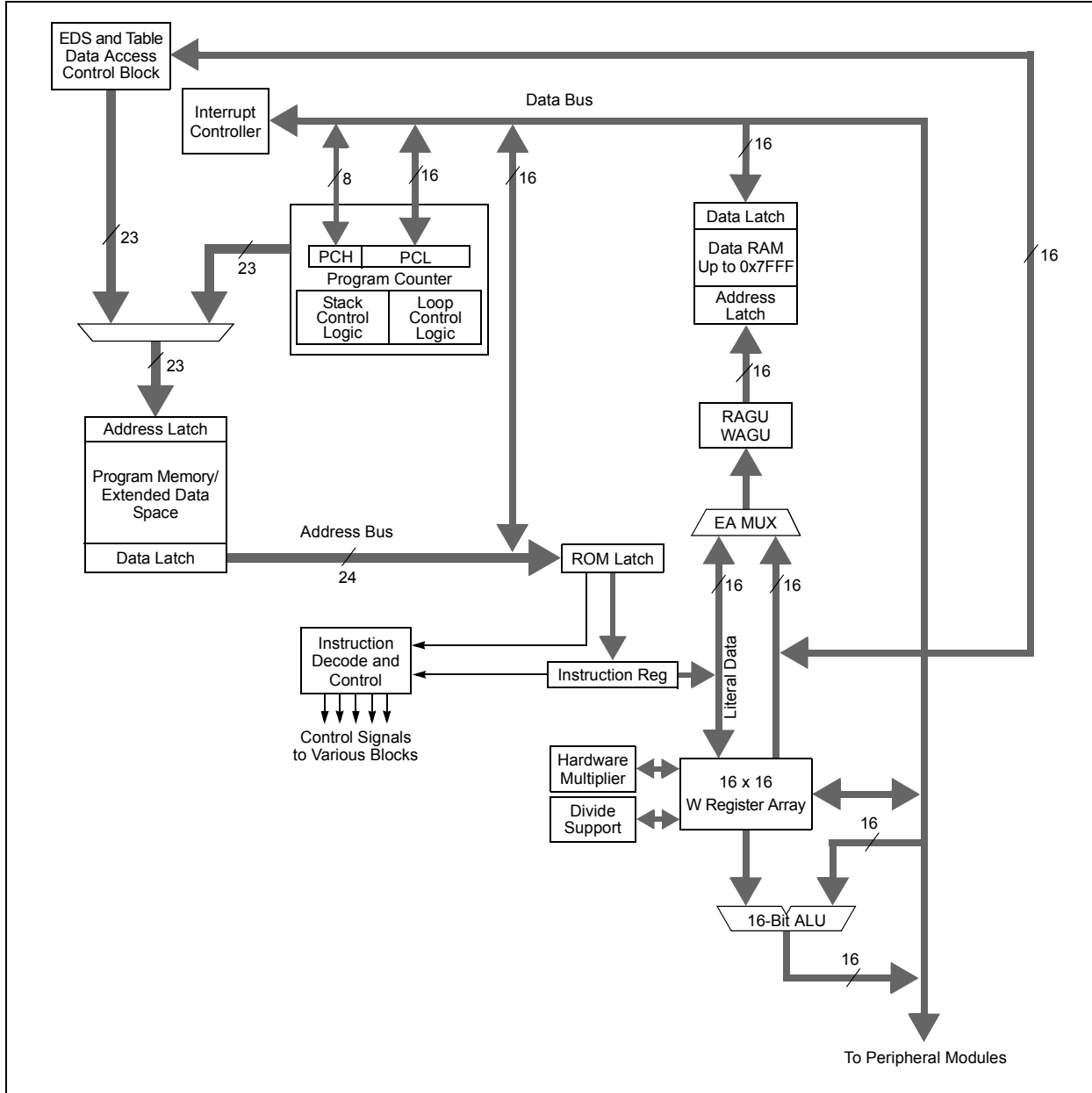
### 3.1 Programmer's Model

The programmer's model for the PIC24F is shown in [Figure 3-2](#). All registers in the programmer's model are memory-mapped and can be manipulated directly by instructions.

A description of each register is provided in [Table 3-1](#). All registers associated with the programmer's model are memory-mapped.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 3-1: PIC24F CPU CORE BLOCK DIAGRAM**

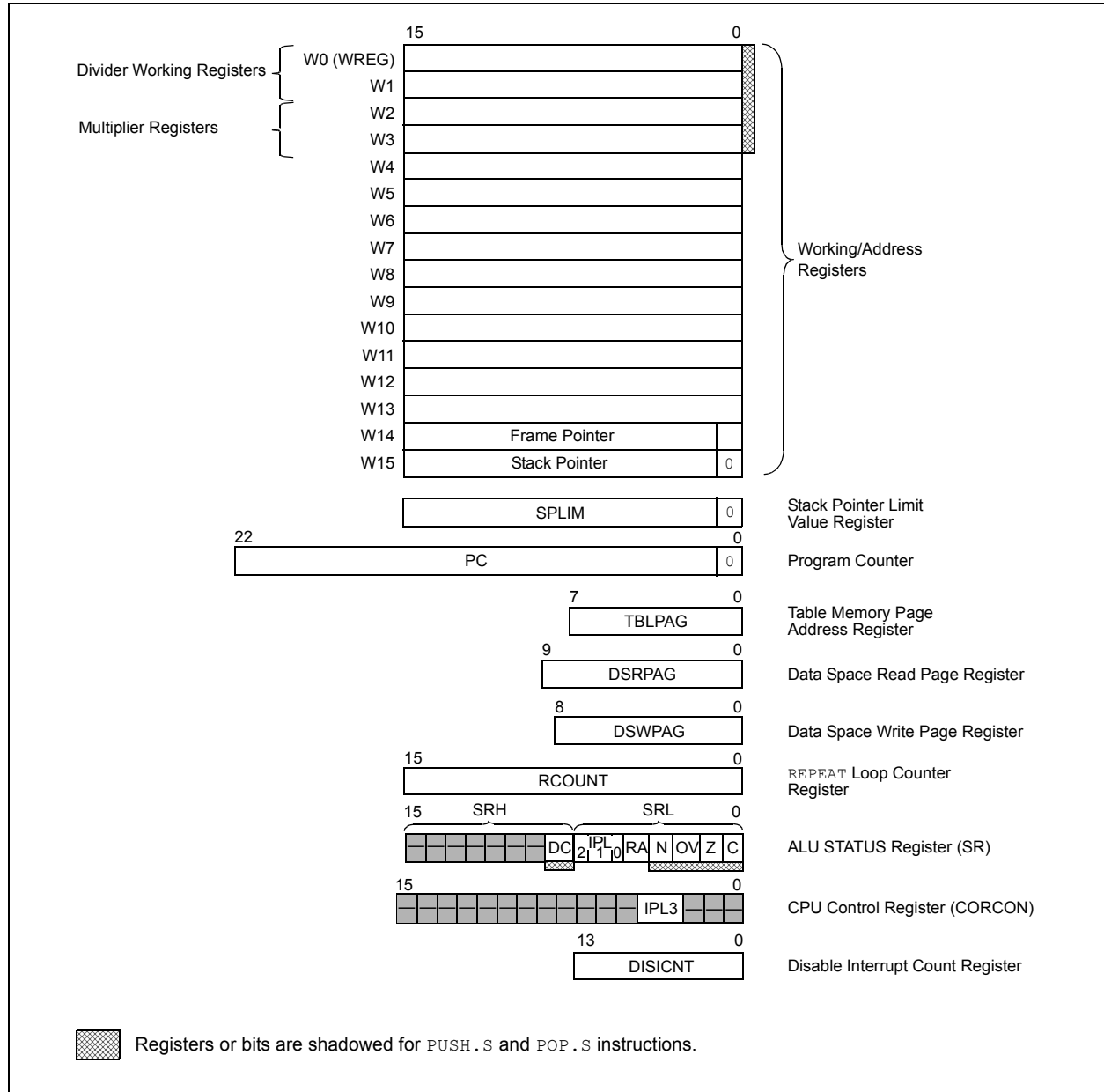


**TABLE 3-1: CPU CORE REGISTERS**

| Register(s) Name | Description                        |
|------------------|------------------------------------|
| W0 through W15   | Working Register Array             |
| PC               | 23-Bit Program Counter             |
| SR               | ALU STATUS Register                |
| SPLIM            | Stack Pointer Limit Value Register |
| TBLPAG           | Table Memory Page Address Register |
| RCOUNT           | REPEAT Loop Counter Register       |
| CORCON           | CPU Control Register               |
| DISICNT          | Disable Interrupt Count Register   |
| DSRPAG           | Data Space Read Page Register      |
| DSWPAG           | Data Space Write Page Register     |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 3-2: PROGRAMMER'S MODEL**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 3.2 CPU Control Registers

### REGISTER 3-1: SR: ALU STATUS REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | DC    |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|                      |                      |                      |     |       |       |       |       |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| IPL2 <sup>(2)</sup>  | IPL1 <sup>(2)</sup>  | IPL0 <sup>(2)</sup>  | RA  | N     | OV    | Z     | C     |
| bit 7                |                      |                      |     |       |       |       | bit 0 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-9 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 8 **DC:** ALU Half Carry/Borrow bit

1 = A carry out from the 4<sup>th</sup> low-order bit (for byte-sized data) or 8<sup>th</sup> low-order bit (for word-sized data) of the result occurred

0 = No carry out from the 4<sup>th</sup> or 8<sup>th</sup> low-order bit of the result has occurred

bit 7-5 **IPL<2:0>:** CPU Interrupt Priority Level Status bits<sup>(1,2)</sup>

111 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 7 (15); user interrupts are disabled

110 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 6 (14)

101 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 5 (13)

100 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 4 (12)

011 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 3 (11)

010 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 2 (10)

001 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 1 (9)

000 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 0 (8)

bit 4 **RA:** REPEAT Loop Active bit

1 = REPEAT loop is in progress

0 = REPEAT loop is not in progress

bit 3 **N:** ALU Negative bit

1 = Result was negative

0 = Result was not negative (zero or positive)

bit 2 **OV:** ALU Overflow bit

1 = Overflow occurred for signed (2's complement) arithmetic in this arithmetic operation

0 = No overflow has occurred

bit 1 **Z:** ALU Zero bit

1 = An operation, which affects the Z bit, has set it at some time in the past

0 = The most recent operation, which affects the Z bit, has cleared it (i.e., a non-zero result)

bit 0 **C:** ALU Carry/Borrow bit

1 = A carry out from the Most Significant bit (MSb) of the result occurred

0 = No carry out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred

**Note 1:** The IPLx Status bits are read-only when NSTDIS (INTCON1<15>) = 1.

**Note 2:** The IPLx Status bits are concatenated with the IPL3 Status (CORCON<3>) bit to form the CPU Interrupt Priority Level (IPL). The value in parentheses indicates the IPL when IPL3 = 1.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 3-2: CORCON: CPU CORE CONTROL REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |                     |     |     |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|---------------------|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/C-0               | r-1 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | IPL3 <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |                     |     |     | bit 0 |

|                   |                   |                                    |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | C = Clearable bit | r = Reserved bit                   |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit  | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set  | '0' = Bit is cleared               |
|                   |                   | x = Bit is unknown                 |

bit 15-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3 **IPL3:** CPU Interrupt Priority Level Status bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is greater than 7  
 0 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 7 or less

bit 2 **Reserved:** Read as '1'

bit 1-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**Note 1:** The IPL3 bit is concatenated with the IPL<2:0> bits (SR<7:5>) to form the CPU Interrupt Priority Level; see [Register 3-1](#) for bit description.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 3.3 Arithmetic Logic Unit (ALU)

The PIC24F ALU is 16 bits wide and is capable of addition, subtraction, bit shifts and logic operations. Unless otherwise mentioned, arithmetic operations are 2's complement in nature. Depending on the operation, the ALU may affect the values of the Carry (C), Zero (Z), Negative (N), Overflow (OV) and Digit Carry (DC) Status bits in the SR register. The C and DC Status bits operate as Borrow and Digit Borrow bits, respectively, for subtraction operations.

The ALU can perform 8-bit or 16-bit operations, depending on the mode of the instruction that is used. Data for the ALU operation can come from the W register array, or data memory, depending on the addressing mode of the instruction. Likewise, output data from the ALU can be written to the W register array or a data memory location.

The PIC24F CPU incorporates hardware support for both multiplication and division. This includes a dedicated hardware multiplier and support hardware for 16-bit divisor division.

### 3.3.1 MULTIPLIER

The ALU contains a high-speed, 17-bit x 17-bit multiplier. It supports unsigned, signed or mixed sign operation in several multiplication modes:

- 16-bit x 16-bit signed
- 16-bit x 16-bit unsigned
- 16-bit signed x 5-bit (literal) unsigned
- 16-bit unsigned x 16-bit unsigned
- 16-bit unsigned x 5-bit (literal) unsigned
- 16-bit unsigned x 16-bit signed
- 8-bit unsigned x 8-bit unsigned

### 3.3.2 DIVIDER

The divide block supports 32-bit/16-bit and 16-bit/16-bit signed and unsigned integer divide operations with the following data sizes:

1. 32-bit signed/16-bit signed divide
2. 32-bit unsigned/16-bit unsigned divide
3. 16-bit signed/16-bit signed divide
4. 16-bit unsigned/16-bit unsigned divide

The quotient for all divide instructions ends up in W0 and the remainder in W1. The 16-bit signed and unsigned `DIV` instructions can specify any W register for both the 16-bit divisor (Wn), and any W register (aligned) pair (W(m + 1):Wm) for the 32-bit dividend. The divide algorithm takes one cycle per bit of divisor, so both 32-bit/16-bit and 16-bit/16-bit instructions take the same number of cycles to execute.

### 3.3.3 MULTI-BIT SHIFT SUPPORT

The PIC24F ALU supports both single bit and single-cycle, multi-bit arithmetic and logic shifts. Multi-bit shifts are implemented using a shifter block, capable of performing up to a 15-bit arithmetic right shift, or up to a 15-bit left shift, in a single cycle. All multi-bit shift instructions only support Register Direct Addressing for both the operand source and result destination.

A full summary of instructions that use the shift operation is provided in [Table 3-2](#).

**TABLE 3-2: INSTRUCTIONS THAT USE THE SINGLE BIT AND MULTI-BIT SHIFT OPERATION**

| Instruction | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| ASR         | Arithmetic Shift Right Source register by one or more bits. |
| SL          | Shift Left Source register by one or more bits.             |
| LSR         | Logical Shift Right Source register by one or more bits.    |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 4.0 MEMORY ORGANIZATION

As Harvard architecture devices, PIC24F microcontrollers feature separate program and data memory spaces and buses. This architecture also allows direct access of program memory from the Data Space (DS) during code execution.

### 4.1 Program Memory Space

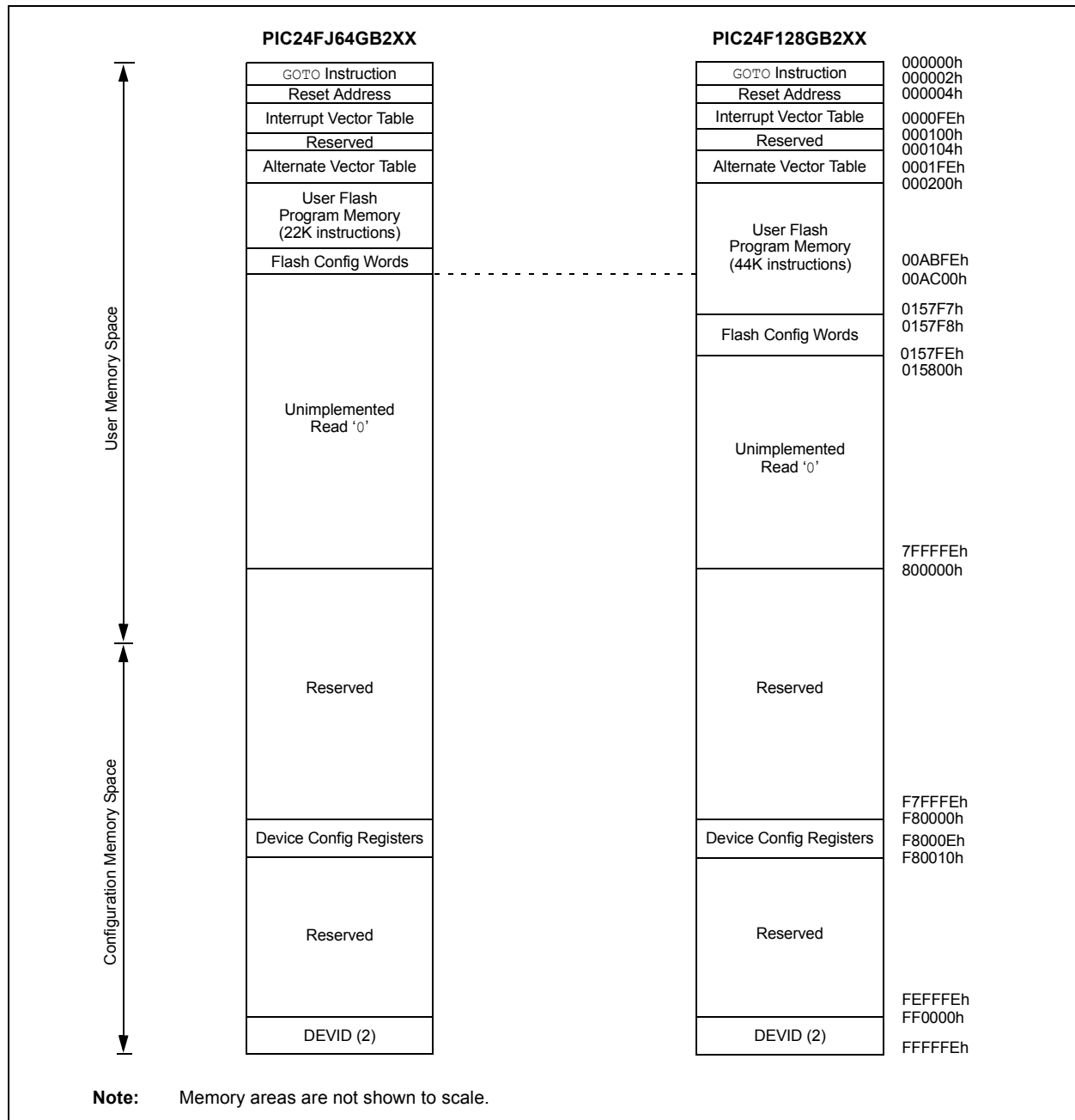
The program address memory space of the PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices is 4M instructions. The space is addressable by a 24-bit value derived

from either the 23-bit Program Counter (PC) during program execution, or from table operation or Data Space remapping, as described in [Section 4.3 “Interfacing Program and Data Memory Spaces”](#).

User access to the program memory space is restricted to the lower half of the address range (000000h to 7FFFFFFh). The exception is the use of TBLRD/TBLWT operations, which use TBLPAG<7> to permit access to the Configuration bits and Device ID sections of the configuration memory space.

Memory maps for the PIC24FJ128GB204 family of devices are shown in [Figure 4-1](#).

**FIGURE 4-1: PROGRAM SPACE MEMORY MAP FOR PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY DEVICES**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 4.1.1 PROGRAM MEMORY ORGANIZATION

The program memory space is organized in word-addressable blocks. Although it is treated as 24 bits wide, it is more appropriate to think of each address of the program memory as a lower and upper word, with the upper byte of the upper word being unimplemented. The lower word always has an even address, while the upper word has an odd address (Figure 4-2).

Program memory addresses are always word-aligned on the lower word and addresses are incremented or decremented by two during code execution. This arrangement also provides compatibility with data memory space addressing and makes it possible to access data in the program memory space.

## 4.1.2 HARD MEMORY VECTORS

All PIC24F devices reserve the addresses between 000000h and 000200h for hard-coded program execution vectors. A hardware Reset vector is provided to redirect code execution from the default value of the PC on device Reset to the actual start of code. A GOTO instruction is programmed by the user at 000000h with the actual address for the start of code at 000002h.

PIC24F devices also have two Interrupt Vector Tables (IVTs), located from 000004h to 0000FFh and 000100h to 0001FFh. These vector tables allow each of the many device interrupt sources to be handled by separate ISRs. A more detailed discussion of the Interrupt Vector Tables is provided in Section 8.1 “Interrupt Vector Table”.

## 4.1.3 FLASH CONFIGURATION WORDS

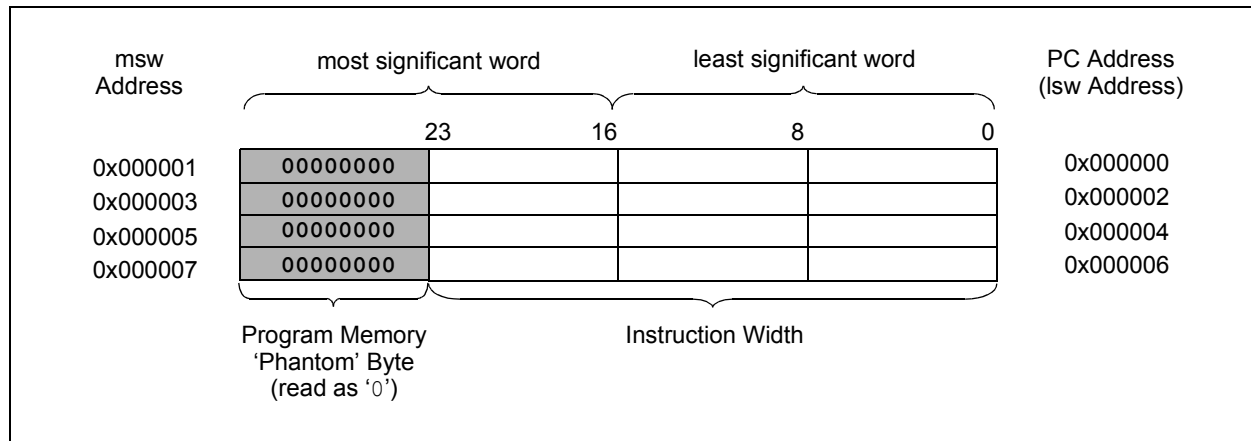
In PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices, the top four words of on-chip program memory are reserved for configuration information. On device Reset, the configuration information is copied into the appropriate Configuration register. The addresses of the Flash Configuration Word for devices in the PIC24FJ128GB204 family are shown in Table 4-1. Their location in the memory map is shown with the other memory vectors in Figure 4-1.

The Configuration Words in program memory are a compact format. The actual Configuration bits are mapped in several different registers in the configuration memory space. Their order in the Flash Configuration Words does not reflect a corresponding arrangement in the configuration space. Additional details on the device Configuration Words are provided in Section 30.0 “Special Features”.

**TABLE 4-1: FLASH CONFIGURATION WORDS FOR PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY DEVICES**

| Device          | Program Memory (Words) | Configuration Word Addresses |
|-----------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| PIC24FJ64GB2XX  | 22,016                 | 00ABF8h:00ABFEh              |
| PIC24FJ128GB2XX | 44,032                 | 0157F8h:0157FEh              |

**FIGURE 4-2: PROGRAM MEMORY ORGANIZATION**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 4.2 Data Memory Space

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “*dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual*”, “**Data Memory with Extended Data Space (EDS)**” (DS39733). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The PIC24F core has a 16-bit wide data memory space, addressable as a single linear range. The Data Space (DS) is accessed using two Address Generation Units (AGUs), one each for read and write operations. The Data Space memory map is shown in Figure 4-3.

The 16-bit wide data addresses in the data memory space point to bytes within the Data Space. This gives a DS address range of 64 Kbytes or 32K words. The lower half (0000h to 7FFFh) is used for implemented (on-chip) memory addresses.

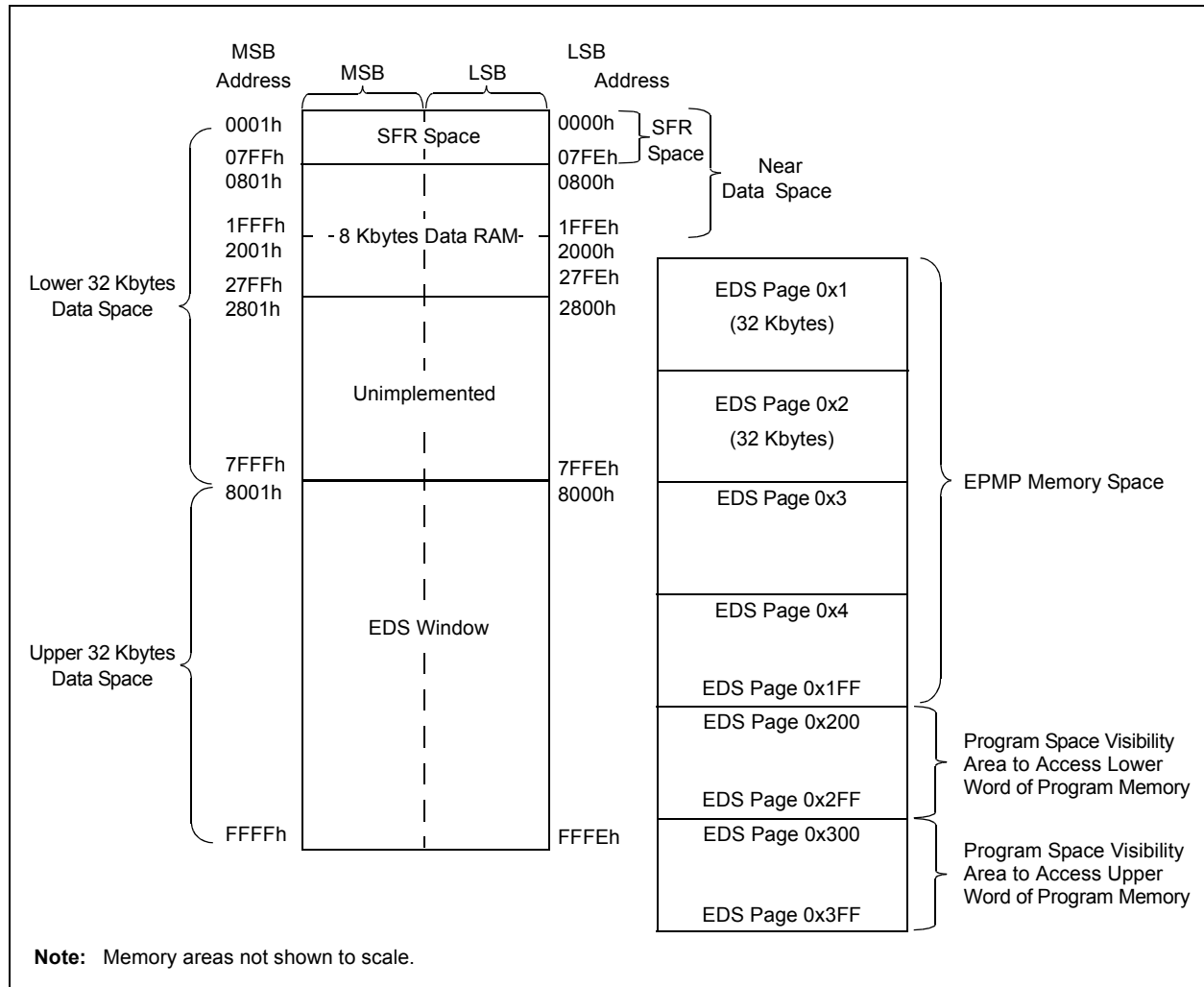
The upper half of data memory address space (8000h to FFFFh) is used as a window into the Extended Data Space (EDS). This allows the microcontroller to directly access a greater range of data beyond the standard 16-bit address range. EDS is discussed in detail in Section 4.2.5 “**Extended Data Space (EDS)**”.

The lower half of DS is compatible with previous PIC24F microcontrollers without EDS. All PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices implement 8 Kbytes of data RAM in the lower half of DS, from 0800h to 27FFh.

### 4.2.1 DATA SPACE WIDTH

The data memory space is organized in byte-addressable, 16-bit wide blocks. Data is aligned in data memory and registers as 16-bit words, but all Data Space Effective Addresses (EAs) resolve to bytes. The Least Significant Bytes (LSBs) of each word have even addresses, while the Most Significant Bytes (MSBs) have odd addresses.

**FIGURE 4-3: DATA SPACE MEMORY MAP FOR PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY DEVICES**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 4.2.2 DATA MEMORY ORGANIZATION AND ALIGNMENT

To maintain backward compatibility with PIC® MCUs and improve Data Space memory usage efficiency, the PIC24F instruction set supports both word and byte operations. As a consequence of byte accessibility, all Effective Address (EA) calculations are internally scaled to step through word-aligned memory. For example, the core recognizes that Post-Modified Register Indirect Addressing mode [Ws++] will result in a value of Ws + 1 for byte operations and Ws + 2 for word operations.

Data byte reads will read the complete word, which contains the byte, using the LSB of any EA to determine which byte to select. The selected byte is placed onto the LSB of the data path. That is, data memory and registers are organized as two parallel, byte-wide entities with shared (word) address decode but separate write lines. Data byte writes only write to the corresponding side of the array or register which matches the byte address.

All word accesses must be aligned to an even address. Misaligned word data fetches are not supported, so care must be taken when mixing byte and word operations or translating from 8-bit MCU code. If a misaligned read or write is attempted, an address error trap will be generated. If the error occurred on a read, the instruction underway is completed; if it occurred on a write, the instruction will be executed but the write will not occur. In either case, a trap is then executed, allowing the system and/or user to examine the machine state prior to execution of the address Fault.

All byte loads into any W register are loaded into the LSB. The Most Significant Byte (MSB) is not modified.

A Sign-Extend (SE) instruction is provided to allow users to translate 8-bit signed data to 16-bit signed values. Alternatively, for 16-bit unsigned data, users can clear the MSB of any W register by executing a Zero-Extend (ZE) instruction on the appropriate address.

Although most instructions are capable of operating on word or byte data sizes, it should be noted that some instructions operate only on words.

## 4.2.3 NEAR DATA SPACE

The 8-Kbyte area, between 0000h and 1FFFh, is referred to as the Near Data Space. Locations in this space are directly addressable via a 13-bit absolute address field within all memory direct instructions. The remainder of the Data Space is addressable indirectly. Additionally, the whole Data Space is addressable using MOV instructions, which support Memory Direct Addressing with a 16-bit address field.

## 4.2.4 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER (SFR) SPACE

The first 2 Kbytes of the Near Data Space, from 0000h to 07FFh, are primarily occupied with Special Function Registers (SFRs). These are used by the PIC24F core and peripheral modules for controlling the operation of the device.

SFRs are distributed among the modules that they control and are generally grouped together by the module. Much of the SFR space contains unused addresses; these are read as '0'. A diagram of the SFR space, showing where the SFRs are actually implemented, is shown in Table 4-2. Each implemented area indicates a 32-byte region where at least one address is implemented as an SFR. A complete list of implemented SFRs, including their addresses, is shown in Table 4-3 through Table 4-33.

**TABLE 4-2: IMPLEMENTED REGIONS OF SFR DATA SPACE**

| SFR Space Address |          |  |          |  |      |     |      |  |            |  |      |  |        |  |                       |  |
|-------------------|----------|--|----------|--|------|-----|------|--|------------|--|------|--|--------|--|-----------------------|--|
|                   | xx00     |  | xx20     |  | xx40 |     | xx60 |  | xx80       |  | xxA0 |  | xxC0   |  | xxE0                  |  |
| 000h              | Core     |  |          |  |      |     | ICN  |  | Interrupts |  |      |  |        |  |                       |  |
| 100h              | System   |  | NVM/RTCC |  | PMP  |     | CRC  |  | PMD        |  | I/O  |  | Crypto |  |                       |  |
| 200h              | A/D/CTMU |  |          |  | CMP  |     | TMR  |  | OC         |  |      |  | IC     |  | I <sup>2</sup> C™/DSM |  |
| 300h              | SPI      |  |          |  |      | PPS |      |  |            |  |      |  |        |  |                       |  |
| 400h              | USB      |  |          |  |      | DMA |      |  |            |  |      |  |        |  |                       |  |
| 500h              | UART     |  |          |  | —    |     |      |  |            |  |      |  |        |  |                       |  |
| 600h              | —        |  |          |  |      |     |      |  |            |  |      |  |        |  |                       |  |
| 700h              | —        |  |          |  |      |     |      |  |            |  |      |  |        |  |                       |  |

**Legend:** — = No implemented SFRs in this block

**TABLE 4-3: CPU CORE REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15                             | Bit 14 | Bit 13                              | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9  | Bit 8   | Bit 7                              | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--|---|------------------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------|
| WREG0     | 0000 | Working Register 0                 |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG1     | 0002 | Working Register 1                 |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG2     | 0004 | Working Register 2                 |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG3     | 0006 | Working Register 3                 |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG4     | 0008 | Working Register 4                 |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG5     | 000A | Working Register 5                 |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG6     | 000C | Working Register 6                 |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG7     | 000E | Working Register 7                 |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG8     | 0010 | Working Register 8                 |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG9     | 0012 | Working Register 9                 |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG10    | 0014 | Working Register 10                |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG11    | 0016 | Working Register 11                |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG12    | 0018 | Working Register 12                |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG13    | 001A | Working Register 13                |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG14    | 001C | Working Register 14                |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| WREG15    | 001E | Working Register 15                |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0800       |
| SPLIM     | 0020 | Stack Pointer Limit Value Register |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | xxxx       |
| PCL       | 002E | Program Counter Low Word Register  |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| PCH       | 0030 | —                                  | —      | —                                   | —      | —      | —      | —  | —   | Program Counter High Word Register |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| DSRPAG    | 0032 | —                                  | —      | —                                   | —      | —      | —      | Extended Data Space Read Page Address Register |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0001       |
| DSWPAG    | 0034 | —                                  | —      | —                                   | —      | —      | —      | —  | Extended Data Space Write Page Address Register |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0001       |
| RCOUNT    | 0036 | REPEAT Loop Counter Register       |        |                                     |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | xxxx       |
| SR        | 0042 | —                                  | —      | —                                   | —      | —      | —      | —  | DC  | IPL2                               | IPL1  | IPL0  | RA    | N     | OV    | Z     | C     | 0000       |
| CORCON    | 0044 | —                                  | —      | —                                   | —      | —      | —      | —  | —   | —                                  | —     | —     | —     | IPL3  | r     | —     | —     | 0004       |
| DISICNT   | 0052 | —                                  | —      | Disable Interrupts Counter Register |        |        |        |  |   |                                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | xxxx       |
| TBLPAG    | 0054 | —                                  | —      | —                                   | —      | —      | —      | —  | —   | Table Memory Page Address Register |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; r = reserved bit, do not modify; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

TABLE 4-4: ICN REGISTER MAP

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15  | Bit 14  | Bit 13  | Bit 12                 | Bit 11  | Bit 10                 | Bit 9                  | Bit 8                 | Bit 7   | Bit 6   | Bit 5   | Bit 4                  | Bit 3                  | Bit 2                  | Bit 1                  | Bit 0   | All Resets |
|-----------|------|---------|---------|---------|------------------------|---------|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|---------|---------|---------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|---------|------------|
| CNPD1     | 0056 | CN15PDE | —       | CN13PDE | CN12PDE                | CN11PDE | CN10PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN9PDE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN8PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN7PDE  | CN6PDE  | CN5PDE  | CN4PDE                 | CN3PDE                 | CN2PDE                 | CN1PDE                 | CN0PDE  | 0000       |
| CNPD2     | 0058 | —       | CN30PDE | CN29PDE | CN28PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN27PDE | CN26PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN25PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN24PDE               | CN23PDE | CN22PDE | CN21PDE | CN20PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN19PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN18PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN17PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN16PDE | 0000       |
| CNPD3     | 005A | —       | —       | —       | —                      | —       | —                      | —                      | —                     | —       | —       | —       | CN36PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN35PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN34PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN33PDE <sup>(1)</sup> | —       | 0000       |
| CNEN1     | 0062 | CN15IE  | —       | CN13IE  | CN12IE                 | CN11IE  | CN10IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN9IE <sup>(1)</sup>   | CN8IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN7IE   | CN6IE   | CN5IE   | CN4IE                  | CN3IE                  | CN2IE                  | CN1IE                  | CN0IE   | 0000       |
| CNEN2     | 0064 | —       | CN30IE  | CN29IE  | CN28IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN27IE  | CN26IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN25IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN24IE                | CN23IE  | CN22IE  | CN21IE  | CN20IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN19IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN18IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN17IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN16IE  | 0000       |
| CNEN3     | 0066 | —       | —       | —       | —                      | —       | —                      | —                      | —                     | —       | —       | —       | CN36IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN35IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN34IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN33IE <sup>(1)</sup>  | —       | 0000       |
| CNPU1     | 006E | CN15PUE | —       | CN13PUE | CN12PUE                | CN11PUE | CN10PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN9PUE <sup>(1)</sup>  | CN8PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN7PUE  | CN6PUE  | CN5PUE  | CN4PUE                 | CN3PUE                 | CN2PUE                 | CN1PUE                 | CN0PUE  | 0000       |
| CNPU2     | 0070 | —       | CN30PUE | CN29PUE | CN28PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN27PUE | CN26PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN25PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN24PUE               | CN23PUE | CN22PUE | CN21PUE | CN20PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN19PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN18PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN17PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN16PUE | 0000       |
| CNPU3     | 0072 | —       | —       | —       | —                      | —       | —                      | —                      | —                     | —       | —       | —       | CN36PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN35PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN34PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | CN33PUE <sup>(1)</sup> | —       | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**Note 1:** These bits are unimplemented in 28-pin devices, read as '0'.

**TABLE 4-5: INTERRUPT CONTROLLER REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14     | Bit 13     | Bit 12     | Bit 11   | Bit 10     | Bit 9      | Bit 8      | Bit 7   | Bit 6     | Bit 5     | Bit 4     | Bit 3     | Bit 2       | Bit 1     | Bit 0     | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------|------------|------------|------------|----------|------------|------------|------------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| INTCON1   | 0080 | NSTDIS | —          | —          | —          | —        | —          | —          | —          | —       | —         | —         | MATHERR   | ADDRERR   | STKERR      | OSCFail   | —         | 0000       |
| INTCON2   | 0082 | ALTVT  | DISI       | —          | —          | —        | —          | —          | —          | —       | —         | —         | INT4EP    | INT3EP    | INT2EP      | INT1EP    | INT0EP    | 0000       |
| IFS0      | 0084 | —      | DMA1IF     | AD1IF      | U1TXIF     | U1RXIF   | SPI1TXIF   | SPI1IF     | T3IF       | T2IF    | OC2IF     | IC2IF     | DMA0IF    | T1IF      | OC1IF       | IC1IF     | INT0IF    | 0000       |
| IFS1      | 0086 | U2TXIF | U2RXIF     | INT2IF     | T5IF       | T4IF     | OC4IF      | OC3IF      | DMA2IF     | —       | —         | —         | INT1IF    | CNIF      | CMIF        | MI2C1IF   | SI2C1IF   | 0000       |
| IFS2      | 0088 | —      | DMA4IF     | PMP1IF     | —          | —        | OC6IF      | OC5IF      | IC6IF      | IC5IF   | IC4IF     | IC3IF     | DMA3IF    | CRYROLLIF | CRYFREEIF   | SPI2TXIF  | SPI2IF    | 0000       |
| IFS3      | 008A | —      | RTCIF      | DMA5IF     | SPI3RXIF   | SPI2RXIF | SPI1RXIF   | —          | KEYSTRIF   | CRYDNIF | INT4IF    | INT3IF    | —         | —         | MI2C2IF     | SI2C2IF   | —         | 0000       |
| IFS4      | 008C | —      | —          | CTMUIF     | —          | —        | —          | —          | HLVDIF     | —       | —         | —         | —         | CRCIF     | U2ERIF      | U1ERIF    | —         | 0000       |
| IFS5      | 008E | —      | —          | —          | —          | SPI3TXIF | SPI3IF     | U4TXIF     | U4RXIF     | U4ERIF  | USB1IF    | I2C2BCIF  | I2C1BCIF  | U3TXIF    | U3RXIF      | U3ERIF    | —         | 0000       |
| IFS6      | 0090 | —      | —          | —          | —          | —        | FSTIF      | —          | —          | —       | —         | —         | —         | —         | —           | —         | —         | 0000       |
| IFS7      | 0092 | —      | —          | —          | —          | —        | —          | —          | —          | —       | —         | JTAGIF    | —         | —         | —           | —         | —         | 0000       |
| IEC0      | 0094 | —      | DMA1IE     | AD1IE      | U1TXIE     | U1RXIE   | SPI1TXIE   | SPI1IE     | T3IE       | T2IE    | OC2IE     | IC2IE     | DMA0IE    | T1IE      | OC1IE       | IC1IE     | INT0IE    | 0000       |
| IEC1      | 0096 | U2TXIE | U2RXIE     | INT2IE     | T5IE       | T4IE     | OC4IE      | OC3IE      | DMA2IE     | —       | —         | —         | INT1IE    | CNIE      | CMIE        | MI2C1IE   | SI2C1IE   | 0000       |
| IEC2      | 0098 | —      | DMA4IE     | PMP1IE     | —          | —        | OC6IE      | OC5IE      | IC6IE      | IC5IE   | IC4IE     | IC3IE     | DMA3IE    | CRYROLLIE | CRYFREEIE   | SPI2TXIE  | SPI2IE    | 0000       |
| IEC3      | 009A | —      | RTCIE      | DMA5IE     | SPI3RXIE   | SPI2RXIE | SPI1RXIE   | —          | KEYSTRIE   | CRYDNIE | INT4IE    | INT3IE    | —         | —         | MI2C2IE     | SI2C2IE   | —         | 0000       |
| IEC4      | 009C | —      | —          | CTMUIE     | —          | —        | —          | —          | HLVDIE     | —       | —         | —         | —         | CRCIE     | U2ERIE      | U1ERIE    | —         | 0000       |
| IEC5      | 009E | —      | —          | —          | —          | SPI3TXIE | SPI3IE     | U4TXIE     | U4RXIE     | U4ERIE  | USB1IE    | I2C2BCIE  | I2C1BCIE  | U3TXIE    | U3RXIE      | U3ERIE    | —         | 0000       |
| IEC6      | 00A0 | —      | —          | —          | —          | —        | FSTIE      | —          | —          | —       | —         | —         | —         | —         | —           | —         | —         | 0000       |
| IEC7      | 00A2 | —      | —          | —          | —          | —        | —          | —          | —          | —       | —         | JTAGIE    | —         | —         | —           | —         | —         | 0000       |
| IPC0      | 00A4 | —      | T1IP2      | T1IP1      | T1IP0      | —        | OC1IP2     | OC1IP1     | OC1IP0     | —       | IC1IP2    | IC1IP1    | IC1IP0    | —         | INT0IP2     | INT0IP1   | INT0IP0   | 4444       |
| IPC1      | 00A6 | —      | T2IP2      | T2IP1      | T2IP0      | —        | OC2IP2     | OC2IP1     | OC2IP0     | —       | IC2IP2    | IC2IP1    | IC2IP0    | —         | DMA0IP2     | DMA0IP1   | DMA0IP0   | 4444       |
| IPC2      | 00A8 | —      | U1RXIP2    | U1RXIP1    | U1RXIP0    | —        | SPI1TXIP2  | SPI1TXIP1  | SPI1TXIP0  | —       | SPI1IP2   | SPI1IP1   | SPI1IP0   | —         | T3IP2       | T3IP1     | T3IP0     | 4444       |
| IPC3      | 00AA | —      | —          | —          | —          | —        | DMA1IP2    | DMA1IP1    | DMA1IP0    | —       | AD1IP2    | AD1IP1    | AD1IP0    | —         | U1TXIP2     | U1TXIP1   | U1TXIP0   | 0444       |
| IPC4      | 00AC | —      | CNIP2      | CNIP1      | CNIP0      | —        | CMIP2      | CMIP1      | CMIP0      | —       | MI2C1IP2  | MI2C1IP1  | MI2C1IP0  | —         | SI2C1IP2    | SI2C1IP1  | SI2C1IP0  | 4444       |
| IPC5      | 00AE | —      | —          | —          | —          | —        | —          | —          | —          | —       | —         | —         | —         | —         | INT1IP<2:0> |           |           | 0004       |
| IPC6      | 00B0 | —      | T4IP2      | T4IP1      | T4IP0      | —        | OC4IP2     | OC4IP1     | OC4IP0     | —       | OC3IP2    | OC3IP1    | OC3IP0    | —         | DMA2IP2     | DMA2IP1   | DMA2IP0   | 4444       |
| IPC7      | 00B2 | —      | U2TXIP2    | U2TXIP1    | U2TXIP0    | —        | U2RXIP2    | U2RXIP1    | U2RXIP0    | —       | INT2IP2   | INT2IP1   | INT2IP0   | —         | T5IP2       | T5IP1     | T5IP0     | 4444       |
| IPC8      | 00B4 | —      | CRYROLLIP2 | CRYROLLIP1 | CRYROLLIP0 | —        | CRYFREEIP2 | CRYFREEIP1 | CRYFREEIP0 | —       | SPI2TXIP2 | SPI2TXIP1 | SPI2TXIP0 | —         | SPI2IP2     | SPI2IP1   | SPI2IP0   | 4444       |
| IPC9      | 00B6 | —      | IC5IP2     | IC5IP1     | IC5IP0     | —        | IC4IP2     | IC4IP1     | IC4IP0     | —       | IC3IP2    | IC3IP1    | IC3IP0    | —         | DMA3IP2     | DMA3IP1   | DMA3IP0   | 4444       |
| IPC10     | 00B8 | —      | —          | —          | —          | —        | OC6IP2     | OC6IP1     | OC6IP0     | —       | OC5IP2    | OC5IP1    | OC5IP0    | —         | IC6IP2      | IC6IP1    | IC6IP0    | 0444       |
| IPC11     | 00BA | —      | —          | —          | —          | —        | DMA4IP2    | DMA4IP1    | DMA4IP0    | —       | PMP1P2    | PMP1P1    | PMP1P0    | —         | —           | —         | —         | 0440       |
| IPC12     | 00BC | —      | —          | —          | —          | —        | MI2C2IP2   | MI2C2IP1   | MI2C2IP0   | —       | SI2C2IP2  | SI2C2IP1  | SI2C2IP0  | —         | —           | —         | —         | 0440       |
| IPC13     | 00BE | —      | CRYDNIP2   | CRYDNIP1   | CRYDNIP0   | —        | INT4IP2    | INT4IP1    | INT4IP0    | —       | INT3IP2   | INT3IP1   | INT3IP0   | —         | —           | —         | —         | 4440       |
| IPC14     | 00C0 | —      | SPI2RXIP2  | SPI2RXIP1  | SPI2RXIP0  | —        | SPI1RXIP2  | SPI1RXIP1  | SPI1RXIP0  | —       | —         | —         | —         | —         | KEYSTRIP2   | KEYSTRIP1 | KEYSTRIP0 | 4404       |
| IPC15     | 00C2 | —      | —          | —          | —          | —        | RTCIP2     | RTCIP1     | RTCIP0     | —       | DMA5IP2   | DMA5IP1   | DMA5IP0   | —         | SPI3RXIP2   | SPI3RXIP1 | SPI3RXIP0 | 0444       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; r = reserved bit, maintain as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-5: INTERRUPT CONTROLLER REGISTER MAP (CONTINUED)**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14    | Bit 13    | Bit 12    | Bit 11 | Bit 10     | Bit 9   | Bit 8   | Bit 7   | Bit 6       | Bit 5     | Bit 4     | Bit 3   | Bit 2       | Bit 1     | Bit 0     | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------|------------|---------|---------|---------|-------------|-----------|-----------|---------|-------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| IPC16     | 00C4 | —      | CRCIP2    | CRCIP1    | CRCIP0    | —      | U2ERIP2    | U2ERIP1 | U2ERIP0 | —       | U1ERIP2     | U1ERIP1   | U1ERIP0   | —       | —           | —         | —         | 4440       |
| IPC18     | 00C8 | —      | —         | —         | —         | —      | —          | —       | —       | —       | —           | —         | —         | —       | HLVDIP<2:0> |           |           | 0004       |
| IPC19     | 00CA | —      | —         | —         | —         | —      | —          | —       | —       | —       | CTMUIP<2:0> |           |           | —       | —           | —         | —         | 0040       |
| IPC20     | 00CC | —      | U3TXIP2   | U3TXIP1   | U3TXIP0   | —      | U3RXIP2    | U3RXIP1 | U3RXIP0 | —       | U3ERIP2     | U3ERIP1   | U3ERIP0   | —       | —           | —         | —         | 4440       |
| IPC21     | 00CE | —      | U4ERIP2   | U4ERIP1   | U4ERIP0   | —      | USB1IP2    | USB1IP1 | USB1IP0 | —       | I2C2BCIP2   | I2C2BCIP1 | I2C2BCIP0 | —       | I2C1BCIP2   | I2C1BCIP1 | I2C1BCIP0 | 4444       |
| IPC22     | 00D0 | —      | SPI3TXIP2 | SPI3TXIP1 | SPI3TXIP0 | —      | SPI3IP2    | SPI3IP1 | SPI3IP0 | —       | U4TXIP2     | U4TXIP1   | U4TXIP0   | —       | U4RXIP2     | U4RXIP1   | U4RXIP0   | 4444       |
| IPC26     | 00D8 | —      | —         | —         | —         | —      | FSTIP<2:0> |         |         | —       | —           | —         | —         | —       | —           | —         | —         | 0400       |
| IPC29     | 00DE | —      | —         | —         | —         | —      | —          | —       | —       | —       | JTAGIP<2:0> |           |           | —       | —           | —         | —         | 0040       |
| INTTREG   | 00E0 | CPUIRQ | r         | VHOLD     | —         | ILR3   | ILR2       | ILR1    | ILR0    | VECNUM7 | VECNUM6     | VECNUM5   | VECNUM4   | VECNUM3 | VECNUM2     | VECNUM1   | VECNUM0   | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; r = reserved bit, maintain as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-6: TIMER REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15   | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------|
| TMR1      | 024C | Timer1 Register  |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| PR1       | 024E | Timer1 Period Register                                     |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | FFFF       |
| T1CON     | 0250 | TON  | —      | TSIDL  | —      | —      | —      | TECS1 | TECS0 | —     | TGATE | TCKPS1 | TCKPS0 | —     | TSYNC | TCS   | —     | 0000       |
| TMR2      | 0252 | Timer2 Register  |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| TMR3HLD   | 0254 | Timer3 Holding Register (for 32-bit timer operations only) |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| TMR3      | 0256 | Timer3 Register  |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| PR2       | 0258 | Timer2 Period Register                                     |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | FFFF       |
| PR3       | 025A | Timer3 Period Register                                     |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | FFFF       |
| T2CON     | 025C | TON  | —      | TSIDL  | —      | —      | —      | TECS1 | TECS0 | —     | TGATE | TCKPS1 | TCKPS0 | T32   | —     | TCS   | —     | 0000       |
| T3CON     | 025E | TON  | —      | TSIDL  | —      | —      | —      | TECS1 | TECS0 | —     | TGATE | TCKPS1 | TCKPS0 | —     | —     | TCS   | —     | 0000       |
| TMR4      | 0260 | Timer4 Register  |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| TMR5HLD   | 0262 | Timer5 Holding Register (for 32-bit operations only)       |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| TMR5      | 0264 | Timer5 Register  |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | 0000       |
| PR4       | 0266 | Timer4 Period Register                                     |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | FFFF       |
| PR5       | 0268 | Timer5 Period Register                                     |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |       |       |       | FFFF       |
| T4CON     | 026A | TON  | —      | TSIDL  | —      | —      | —      | TECS1 | TECS0 | —     | TGATE | TCKPS1 | TCKPS0 | T45   | —     | TCS   | —     | 0000       |
| T5CON     | 026C | TON  | —      | TSIDL  | —      | —      | —      | TECS1 | TECS0 | —     | TGATE | TCKPS1 | TCKPS0 | —     | —     | TCS   | —     | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-7: INPUT CAPTURE REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15                               | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12  | Bit 11  | Bit 10  | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | Bit 7  | Bit 6    | Bit 5 | Bit 4    | Bit 3    | Bit 2    | Bit 1    | Bit 0    | All Resets |      |
|-----------|------|--------------------------------------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|-------|-------|--------|----------|-------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|------------|------|
| IC1CON1   | 02AA | —                                    | —      | ICSIDL | ICTSEL2 | ICTSEL1 | ICTSEL0 | —     | —     | —      | IC11     | IC10  | ICOV     | ICBNE    | ICM2     | ICM1     | ICM0     | 0000       |      |
| IC1CON2   | 02AC | —                                    | —      | —      | —       | —       | —       | —     | IC32  | ICTRIG | TRIGSTAT | —     | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000D       |      |
| IC1BUF    | 02AE | Input Capture 1 Buffer Register      |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | 0000 |
| IC1TMR    | 02B0 | Input Capture Timer Value 1 Register |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | xxxx |
| IC2CON1   | 02B2 | —                                    | —      | ICSIDL | ICTSEL2 | ICTSEL1 | ICTSEL0 | —     | —     | —      | IC11     | IC10  | ICOV     | ICBNE    | ICM2     | ICM1     | ICM0     | 0000       |      |
| IC2CON2   | 02B4 | —                                    | —      | —      | —       | —       | —       | —     | IC32  | ICTRIG | TRIGSTAT | —     | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000D       |      |
| IC2BUF    | 02B6 | Input Capture 2 Buffer Register      |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | 0000 |
| IC2TMR    | 02B8 | Input Capture Timer Value 2 Register |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | xxxx |
| IC3CON1   | 02BA | —                                    | —      | ICSIDL | ICTSEL2 | ICTSEL1 | ICTSEL0 | —     | —     | —      | IC11     | IC10  | ICOV     | ICBNE    | ICM2     | ICM1     | ICM0     | 0000       |      |
| IC3CON2   | 02BC | —                                    | —      | —      | —       | —       | —       | —     | IC32  | ICTRIG | TRIGSTAT | —     | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000D       |      |
| IC3BUF    | 02BE | Input Capture 3 Buffer Register      |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | 0000 |
| IC3TMR    | 02C0 | Input Capture Timer Value 3 Register |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | xxxx |
| IC4CON1   | 02C2 | —                                    | —      | ICSIDL | ICTSEL2 | ICTSEL1 | ICTSEL0 | —     | —     | —      | IC11     | IC10  | ICOV     | ICBNE    | ICM2     | ICM1     | ICM0     | 0000       |      |
| IC4CON2   | 02C4 | —                                    | —      | —      | —       | —       | —       | —     | IC32  | ICTRIG | TRIGSTAT | —     | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000D       |      |
| IC4BUF    | 02C6 | Input Capture 4 Buffer Register      |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | 0000 |
| IC4TMR    | 02C8 | Input Capture Timer Value 4 Register |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | xxxx |
| IC5CON1   | 02CA | —                                    | —      | ICSIDL | ICTSEL2 | ICTSEL1 | ICTSEL0 | —     | —     | —      | IC11     | IC10  | ICOV     | ICBNE    | ICM2     | ICM1     | ICM0     | 0000       |      |
| IC5CON2   | 02CC | —                                    | —      | —      | —       | —       | —       | —     | IC32  | ICTRIG | TRIGSTAT | —     | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000D       |      |
| IC5BUF    | 02CE | Input Capture 5 Buffer Register      |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | 0000 |
| IC5TMR    | 02D0 | Input Capture Timer Value 5 Register |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | xxxx |
| IC6CON1   | 02D2 | —                                    | —      | ICSIDL | ICTSEL2 | ICTSEL1 | ICTSEL0 | —     | —     | —      | IC11     | IC10  | ICOV     | ICBNE    | ICM2     | ICM1     | ICM0     | 0000       |      |
| IC6CON2   | 02D4 | —                                    | —      | —      | —       | —       | —       | —     | IC32  | ICTRIG | TRIGSTAT | —     | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000D       |      |
| IC6BUF    | 02D6 | Input Capture 6 Buffer Register      |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | 0000 |
| IC6TMR    | 02D8 | Input Capture Timer Value 6 Register |        |        |         |         |         |       |       |        |          |       |          |          |          |          |          |            | xxxx |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-8: OUTPUT COMPARE REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15                                | Bit 14 | Bit 13   | Bit 12  | Bit 11  | Bit 10  | Bit 9  | Bit 8  | Bit 7  | Bit 6    | Bit 5  | Bit 4    | Bit 3    | Bit 2    | Bit 1    | Bit 0    | All Resets |
|-----------|------|---------------------------------------|--------|----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|----------|--------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|------------|
| OC1CON1   | 026E | —                                     | —      | OCSIDL   | OCTSEL2 | OCTSEL1 | OCTSEL0 | ENFLT2 | ENFLT1 | ENFLT0 | OCFLT2   | OCFLT1 | OCFLT0   | TRIGMODE | OCM2     | OCM1     | OCM0     | 0000       |
| OC1CON2   | 0270 | FLTMD                                 | FLTOUT | FLTTRIEN | OCINV   | —       | DCB1    | DCB0   | OC32   | OCTRIG | TRIGSTAT | OCTRI5 | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000C       |
| OC1RS     | 0272 | Output Compare 1 Secondary Register   |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC1R      | 0274 | Output Compare 1 Register             |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC1TMR    | 0276 | Output Compare Timer Value 1 Register |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | xxxx       |
| OC2CON1   | 0278 | —                                     | —      | OCSIDL   | OCTSEL2 | OCTSEL1 | OCTSEL0 | ENFLT2 | ENFLT1 | ENFLT0 | OCFLT2   | OCFLT1 | OCFLT0   | TRIGMODE | OCM2     | OCM1     | OCM0     | 0000       |
| OC2CON2   | 027A | FLTMD                                 | FLTOUT | FLTTRIEN | OCINV   | —       | DCB1    | DCB0   | OC32   | OCTRIG | TRIGSTAT | OCTRI5 | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000C       |
| OC2RS     | 027C | Output Compare 2 Secondary Register   |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC2R      | 027E | Output Compare 2 Register             |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC2TMR    | 0280 | Output Compare Timer Value 2 Register |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | xxxx       |
| OC3CON1   | 0282 | —                                     | —      | OCSIDL   | OCTSEL2 | OCTSEL1 | OCTSEL0 | ENFLT2 | ENFLT1 | ENFLT0 | OCFLT2   | OCFLT1 | OCFLT0   | TRIGMODE | OCM2     | OCM1     | OCM0     | 0000       |
| OC3CON2   | 0284 | FLTMD                                 | FLTOUT | FLTTRIEN | OCINV   | —       | DCB1    | DCB0   | OC32   | OCTRIG | TRIGSTAT | OCTRI5 | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000C       |
| OC3RS     | 0286 | Output Compare 3 Secondary Register   |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC3R      | 0288 | Output Compare 3 Register             |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC3TMR    | 028A | Output Compare Timer Value 3 Register |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | xxxx       |
| OC4CON1   | 028C | —                                     | —      | OCSIDL   | OCTSEL2 | OCTSEL1 | OCTSEL0 | ENFLT2 | ENFLT1 | ENFLT0 | OCFLT2   | OCFLT1 | OCFLT0   | TRIGMODE | OCM2     | OCM1     | OCM0     | 0000       |
| OC4CON2   | 028E | FLTMD                                 | FLTOUT | FLTTRIEN | OCINV   | —       | DCB1    | DCB0   | OC32   | OCTRIG | TRIGSTAT | OCTRI5 | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000C       |
| OC4RS     | 0290 | Output Compare 4 Secondary Register   |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC4R      | 0292 | Output Compare 4 Register             |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC4TMR    | 0294 | Output Compare Timer Value 4 Register |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | xxxx       |
| OC5CON1   | 0296 | —                                     | —      | OCSIDL   | OCTSEL2 | OCTSEL1 | OCTSEL0 | ENFLT2 | ENFLT1 | ENFLT0 | OCFLT2   | OCFLT1 | OCFLT0   | TRIGMODE | OCM2     | OCM1     | OCM0     | 0000       |
| OC5CON2   | 0298 | FLTMD                                 | FLTOUT | FLTTRIEN | OCINV   | —       | DCB1    | DCB0   | OC32   | OCTRIG | TRIGSTAT | OCTRI5 | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000C       |
| OC5RS     | 029A | Output Compare 5 Secondary Register   |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC5R      | 029C | Output Compare 5 Register             |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC5TMR    | 029E | Output Compare Timer Value 5 Register |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | xxxx       |
| OC6CON1   | 02A0 | —                                     | —      | OCSIDL   | OCTSEL2 | OCTSEL1 | OCTSEL0 | ENFLT2 | ENFLT1 | ENFLT0 | OCFLT2   | OCFLT1 | OCFLT0   | TRIGMODE | OCM2     | OCM1     | OCM0     | 0000       |
| OC6CON2   | 02A2 | FLTMD                                 | FLTOUT | FLTTRIEN | OCINV   | —       | DCB1    | DCB0   | OC32   | OCTRIG | TRIGSTAT | OCTRI5 | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 | 000C       |
| OC6RS     | 02A4 | Output Compare 6 Secondary Register   |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC6R      | 02A6 | Output Compare 6 Register             |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | 0000       |
| OC6TMR    | 02A8 | Output Compare Timer Value 6 Register |        |          |         |         |         |        |        |        |          |        |          |          |          |          |          | xxxx       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-9: I<sup>2</sup>C™ REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15  | Bit 14 | Bit 13  | Bit 12 | Bit 11                            | Bit 10 | Bit 9                      | Bit 8 | Bit 7                  | Bit 6 | Bit 5            | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2            | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|---------|--------|---------|--------|-----------------------------------|--------|----------------------------|-------|------------------------|-------|------------------|-------|-------|------------------|-------|-------|------------|
| I2C1RCV   | 02DA | —       | —      | —       | —      | —                                 | —      | —                          | —     | I2C1 Receive Register  |       |                  |       |       |                  |       |       | 0000       |
| I2C1TRN   | 02DC | —       | —      | —       | —      | —                                 | —      | —                          | —     | I2C1 Transmit Register |       |                  |       |       |                  |       |       | 00FF       |
| I2C1BRG   | 02DE | —       | —      | —       | —      | I2C1 Baud Rate Generator Register |        |                            |       |                        |       |                  |       |       |                  |       |       | 0000       |
| I2C1CONL  | 02E0 | I2CEN   | —      | I2CSIDL | SCLREL | STRICT                            | A10M   | DISSLW                     | SMEN  | GCEN                   | STREN | ACKDT            | ACKEN | RCEN  | PEN              | RSEN  | SEN   | 1000       |
| I2C1CONH  | 02E2 | —       | —      | —       | —      | —                                 | —      | —                          | —     | —                      | PCIE  | SCIE             | BOEN  | SDAHT | SBCDE            | AHEN  | DHEN  | 0000       |
| I2C1STAT  | 02E4 | ACKSTAT | TRSTAT | ACKTIM  | —      | —                                 | BCL    | GCSTAT                     | ADD10 | IWCOL                  | I2COV | D $\overline{A}$ | P     | S     | R $\overline{W}$ | RBF   | TBF   | 0000       |
| I2C1ADD   | 02E6 | —       | —      | —       | —      | —                                 | —      | I2C1 Address Register      |       |                        |       |                  |       |       |                  |       |       | 0000       |
| I2C1MSK   | 02E8 | —       | —      | —       | —      | —                                 | —      | I2C1 Address Mask Register |       |                        |       |                  |       |       |                  |       |       | 0000       |
| I2C2RCV   | 02EA | —       | —      | —       | —      | —                                 | —      | —                          | —     | I2C2 Receive Register  |       |                  |       |       |                  |       |       | 0000       |
| I2C2TRN   | 02EC | —       | —      | —       | —      | —                                 | —      | —                          | —     | I2C2 Transmit Register |       |                  |       |       |                  |       |       | 00FF       |
| I2C2BRG   | 02EE | —       | —      | —       | —      | I2C2 Baud Rate Generator Register |        |                            |       |                        |       |                  |       |       |                  |       |       | 0000       |
| I2C2CONL  | 02F0 | I2CEN   | —      | I2CSIDL | SCLREL | STRICT                            | A10M   | DISSLW                     | SMEN  | GCEN                   | STREN | ACKDT            | ACKEN | RCEN  | PEN              | RSEN  | SEN   | 1000       |
| I2C2CONH  | 02F2 | —       | —      | —       | —      | —                                 | —      | —                          | —     | —                      | PCIE  | SCIE             | BOEN  | SDAHT | SBCDE            | AHEN  | DHEN  | 0000       |
| I2C2STAT  | 02F4 | ACKSTAT | TRSTAT | ACKTIM  | —      | —                                 | BCL    | GCSTAT                     | ADD10 | IWCOL                  | I2COV | D $\overline{A}$ | P     | S     | R $\overline{W}$ | RBF   | TBF   | 0000       |
| I2C2ADD   | 02F6 | —       | —      | —       | —      | —                                 | —      | I2C2 Address Register      |       |                        |       |                  |       |       |                  |       |       | 0000       |
| I2C2MSK   | 02F8 | —       | —      | —       | —      | —                                 | —      | I2C2 Address Mask Register |       |                        |       |                  |       |       |                  |       |       | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-10: UART REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15       | Bit 14 | Bit 13   | Bit 12  | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8        | Bit 7        | Bit 6    | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3 | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------------|--------|----------|---------|--------|--------|-------|--------------|--------------|----------|---------|---------|-------|--------|--------|-------|------------|
| U1MODE    | 0500 | UARTEN       | —      | USIDL    | IREN    | RTSMD  | —      | UEN1  | UEN0         | WAKE         | LPBACK   | ABAUD   | URXINV  | BRGH  | PDSEL1 | PDSEL0 | STSEL | 0000       |
| U1STA     | 0502 | UTXISEL1     | UTXINV | UTXISEL0 | URXEN   | UTXBRK | UTXEN  | UTXBF | TRMT         | URXISEL1     | URXISEL0 | ADDEN   | RIDLE   | PERR  | FERR   | OERR   | URXDA | 0110       |
| U1TXREG   | 0504 | LAST         | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | U1TXREG<8:0> |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | xxxx       |
| U1RXREG   | 0506 | —            | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | U1RXREG<8:0> |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U1BRG     | 0508 | U1BRG<15:0>  |        |          |         |        |        |       |              |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U1ADMD    | 050A | ADMMASK<7:0> |        |          |         |        |        |       |              | ADMADDR<7:0> |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U1SCCON   | 050C | —            | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | —            | —            | —        | TXRPT1  | TXRPT0  | CONV  | T0PD   | PTRCL  | SCEN  | 0000       |
| U1SCINT   | 050E | —            | —      | RXRPTIF  | TXRPTIF | —      | —      | WTCIF | GTCIF        | —            | PARIE    | RXRPTIE | TXRPTIE | —     | —      | WTCIE  | GTCIE | 0000       |
| U1GTC     | 0510 | —            | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | GTC<8:0>     |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U1WTCL    | 0512 | WTC<15:0>    |        |          |         |        |        |       |              |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U1WTCH    | 0514 | —            | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | —            | WTC<23:16>   |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U2MODE    | 0516 | UARTEN       | —      | USIDL    | IREN    | RTSMD  | —      | UEN1  | UEN0         | WAKE         | LPBACK   | ABAUD   | URXINV  | BRGH  | PDSEL1 | PDSEL0 | STSEL | 0000       |
| U2STA     | 0518 | UTXISEL1     | UTXINV | UTXISEL0 | URXEN   | UTXBRK | UTXEN  | UTXBF | TRMT         | URXISEL1     | URXISEL0 | ADDEN   | RIDLE   | PERR  | FERR   | OERR   | URXDA | 0110       |
| U2TXREG   | 051A | LAST         | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | U2TXREG<8:0> |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | xxxx       |
| U2RXREG   | 051C | —            | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | U2RXREG<8:0> |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U2BRG     | 051E | U2BRG<15:0>  |        |          |         |        |        |       |              |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U2ADMD    | 0520 | ADMMASK<7:0> |        |          |         |        |        |       |              | ADMADDR<7:0> |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U2SCCON   | 0522 | —            | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | —            | —            | —        | TXRPT1  | TXRPT0  | CONV  | T0PD   | PTRCL  | SCEN  | 0000       |
| U2SCINT   | 0524 | —            | —      | RXRPTIF  | TXRPTIF | —      | —      | WTCIF | GTCIF        | —            | PARIE    | RXRPTIE | TXROTIE | —     | —      | WTCIE  | GTCIE | 0000       |
| U2GTC     | 0526 | —            | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | GTC<8:0>     |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U2WTCL    | 0528 | WTC<15:0>    |        |          |         |        |        |       |              |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U2WTCH    | 052A | —            | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | —            | WTC<23:16>   |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U3MODE    | 052C | UARTEN       | —      | USIDL    | IREN    | RTSMD  | —      | UEN1  | UEN0         | WAKE         | LPBACK   | ABAUD   | URXINV  | BRGH  | PDSEL1 | PDSEL0 | STSEL | 0000       |
| U3STA     | 052E | UTXISEL1     | UTXINV | UTXISEL0 | URXEN   | UTXBRK | UTXEN  | UTXBF | TRMT         | URXISEL1     | URXISEL0 | ADDEN   | RIDLE   | PERR  | FERR   | OERR   | URXDA | 0110       |
| U3TXREG   | 0530 | LAST         | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | U3TXREG<8:0> |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | xxxx       |
| U3RXREG   | 0532 | —            | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | U3RXREG<8:0> |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U3BRG     | 0534 | U3BRG<15:0>  |        |          |         |        |        |       |              |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U3ADMD    | 0536 | ADMMASK<7:0> |        |          |         |        |        |       |              | ADMADDR<7:0> |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U4MODE    | 0538 | UARTEN       | —      | USIDL    | IREN    | RTSMD  | —      | UEN1  | UEN0         | WAKE         | LPBACK   | ABAUD   | URXINV  | BRGH  | PDSEL1 | PDSEL0 | STSEL | 0000       |
| U4STA     | 053A | UTXISEL1     | UTXINV | UTXISEL0 | URXEN   | UTXBRK | UTXEN  | UTXBF | TRMT         | URXISEL1     | URXISEL0 | ADDEN   | RIDLE   | PERR  | FERR   | OERR   | URXDA | 0110       |
| U4TXREG   | 053C | LAST         | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | U4TXREG<8:0> |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | xxxx       |
| U4RXREG   | 053E | —            | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | —     | U4RXREG<8:0> |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U4BRG     | 0540 | U4BRG<15:0>  |        |          |         |        |        |       |              |              |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |
| U4ADMD    | 0542 | ADMMASK<7:0> |        |          |         |        |        |       |              | ADMADDR<7:0> |          |         |         |       |        |        |       | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-11: SPI1 REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15           | Bit 14    | Bit 13  | Bit 12        | Bit 11  | Bit 10 | Bit 9   | Bit 8    | Bit 7  | Bit 6    | Bit 5   | Bit 4        | Bit 3   | Bit 2   | Bit 1    | Bit 0    | All Resets |
|-----------|------|------------------|-----------|---------|---------------|---------|--------|---------|----------|--------|----------|---------|--------------|---------|---------|----------|----------|------------|
| SPI1CON1L | 0300 | SPIEN            | —         | SPISIDL | DISSDO        | MODE32  | MODE16 | SMP     | CKE      | SSEN   | CKP      | MSTEN   | DISSDI       | DISSCK  | MCLKEN  | SPIFE    | ENHBUF   | 0000       |
| SPI1CON1H | 0302 | AUDEN            | SPISGNEXT | IGNROV  | IGNTUR        | AUDMONO | URDTEN | AUDMOD1 | AUDMOD0  | FRMEN  | FRMSYNC  | FRMPOL  | MSEN         | FRMSYPW | FRMCNT2 | FRMCNT1  | FRMCNT0  | 0000       |
| SPI1CON2L | 0304 | —                | —         | —       | —             | —       | —      | —       | —        | —      | —        | —       | WLENGTH<4:0> |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI1STATL | 0308 | —                | —         | —       | FRMERR        | SPIBUSY | —      | —       | SPITUR   | SRMT   | SPIROV   | SPIRBE  | —            | SPITBE  | —       | SPITBF   | SPIRBF   | 0028       |
| SPI1STATH | 030A | —                | —         | RXELM5  | RXELM4        | RXELM3  | RXELM2 | RXELM1  | RXELM0   | —      | —        | TXELM5  | TXELM4       | TXELM3  | TXELM2  | TXELM1   | TXELM0   | 0000       |
| SPI1BUFL  | 030C | SPI1BUFL<15:0>   |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI1BUFH  | 030E | SPI1BUFH<31:16>  |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI1BRGL  | 0310 | —                | —         | —       | SPI1BRG<12:0> |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI1IMSKL | 0314 | —                | —         | —       | FRMERREN      | BUSYEN  | —      | —       | SPITUREN | SRMTEN | SPIROVEN | SPIRBEN | —            | SPITBEN | —       | SPITBFEN | SPIRBFEN | 0000       |
| SPI1IMSKH | 0316 | RXWIEN           | —         | RXMSK5  | RXMSK4        | RXMSK3  | RXMSK2 | RXMSK1  | RXMSK0   | TXWIEN | —        | TXMSK5  | TXMSK4       | TXMSK3  | TXMSK2  | TXMSK1   | TXMSK0   | 0000       |
| SPI1URDTL | 0318 | SPI1URDTL<15:0>  |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI1URDTH | 031A | SPI1URDTH<31:16> |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-12: SPI2 REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15           | Bit 14    | Bit 13  | Bit 12        | Bit 11  | Bit 10 | Bit 9   | Bit 8    | Bit 7  | Bit 6    | Bit 5   | Bit 4        | Bit 3   | Bit 2   | Bit 1    | Bit 0    | All Resets |
|-----------|------|------------------|-----------|---------|---------------|---------|--------|---------|----------|--------|----------|---------|--------------|---------|---------|----------|----------|------------|
| SPI2CON1L | 031C | SPIEN            | —         | SPISIDL | DISSDO        | MODE32  | MODE16 | SMP     | CKE      | SSEN   | CKP      | MSTEN   | DISSDI       | DISSCK  | MCLKEN  | SPIFE    | ENHBUF   | 0000       |
| SPI2CON1H | 031E | AUDEN            | SPISGNEXT | IGNROV  | IGNTUR        | AUDMONO | URDTEN | AUDMOD1 | AUDMOD0  | FRMEN  | FRMSYNC  | FRMPOL  | MSEN         | FRMSYPW | FRMCNT2 | FRMCNT1  | FRMCNT0  | 0000       |
| SPI2CON2L | 0320 | —                | —         | —       | —             | —       | —      | —       | —        | —      | —        | —       | WLENGTH<4:0> |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI2STATL | 0324 | —                | —         | —       | FRMERR        | SPIBUSY | —      | —       | SPITUR   | SRMT   | SPIROV   | SPIRBE  | —            | SPITBE  | —       | SPITBF   | SPIRBF   | 0028       |
| SPI2STATH | 0326 | —                | —         | RXELM5  | RXELM4        | RXELM3  | RXELM2 | RXELM1  | RXELM0   | —      | —        | TXELM5  | TXELM4       | TXELM3  | TXELM2  | TXELM1   | TXELM0   | 0000       |
| SPI2BUFL  | 0328 | SPI2BUFL<15:0>   |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI2BUFH  | 032A | SPI2BUFH<31:16>  |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI2BRGL  | 032C | —                | —         | —       | SPI2BRG<12:0> |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI2IMSKL | 0330 | —                | —         | —       | FRMERREN      | BUSYEN  | —      | —       | SPITUREN | SRMTEN | SPIROVEN | SPIRBEN | —            | SPITBEN | —       | SPITBFEN | SPIRBFEN | 0000       |
| SPI2IMSKH | 0332 | RXWIEN           | —         | RXMSK5  | RXMSK4        | RXMSK3  | RXMSK2 | RXMSK1  | RXMSK0   | TXWIEN | —        | TXMSK5  | TXMSK4       | TXMSK3  | TXMSK2  | TXMSK1   | TXMSK0   | 0000       |
| SPI2URDTL | 0334 | SPI2URDTL<15:0>  |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI2URDTH | 0336 | SPI2URDTH<31:16> |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-13: SPI3 REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15           | Bit 14    | Bit 13  | Bit 12        | Bit 11  | Bit 10 | Bit 9   | Bit 8    | Bit 7  | Bit 6    | Bit 5   | Bit 4        | Bit 3   | Bit 2   | Bit 1    | Bit 0    | All Resets |
|-----------|------|------------------|-----------|---------|---------------|---------|--------|---------|----------|--------|----------|---------|--------------|---------|---------|----------|----------|------------|
| SPI3CON1L | 0338 | SPIEN            | —         | SPISIDL | DISSDO        | MODE32  | MODE16 | SMP     | CKE      | SSEN   | CKP      | MSTEN   | DISSDI       | DISSCK  | MCLKEN  | SPIFE    | ENHBUF   | 0000       |
| SPI3CON1H | 033A | AUDEN            | SPISGNEXT | IGNROV  | IGNTUR        | AUDMONO | URDTEN | AUDMOD1 | AUDMOD0  | FRMEN  | FRMSYNC  | FRMPOL  | MSSEN        | FRMSYPW | FRMCNT2 | FRMCNT1  | FRMCNT0  | 0000       |
| SPI3CON2L | 033C | —                | —         | —       | —             | —       | —      | —       | —        | —      | —        | —       | WLENGTH<4:0> |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI3STATL | 0340 | —                | —         | —       | FRMERR        | SPIBUSY | —      | —       | SPITUR   | SRMT   | SPIROV   | SPIRBE  | —            | SPITBE  | —       | SPITBF   | SPIRBF   | 0028       |
| SPI3STATH | 0342 | —                | —         | RXELM5  | RXELM4        | RXELM3  | RXELM2 | RXELM1  | RXELM0   | —      | —        | TXELM5  | TXELM4       | TXELM3  | TXELM2  | TXELM1   | TXELM0   | 0000       |
| SPI3BUFL  | 0344 | SPI3BUFL<15:0>   |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI3BUFH  | 0346 | SPI3BUFH<31:16>  |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI3BRGL  | 0348 | —                | —         | —       | SPI3BRG<12:0> |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI3IMSKL | 034C | —                | —         | —       | FRMERREN      | BUSYEN  | —      | —       | SPITUREN | SRMTEN | SPIROVEN | SPIRBEN | —            | SPITBEN | —       | SPITBFEN | SPIRBFEN | 0000       |
| SPI3IMSKH | 034E | RXWIEN           | —         | RXMSK5  | RXMSK4        | RXMSK3  | RXMSK2 | RXMSK1  | RXMSK0   | TXWIEN | —        | TXMSK5  | TXMSK4       | TXMSK3  | TXMSK2  | TXMSK1   | TXMSK0   | 0000       |
| SPI3URDTL | 0350 | SPI3URDTL<15:0>  |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |
| SPI3URDTH | 0352 | SPI3URDTH<31:16> |           |         |               |         |        |         |          |        |          |         |              |         |         |          |          | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-14: PORTA REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10      | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4   | Bit 3      | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|------------|-------|-------|-------|------------|
| TRISA     | 0180 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | TRISA<10:7> |       |       |       | —     | —     | —       | TRISA<3:0> |       |       |       | 078F       |
| PORTA     | 0182 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | RA<10:7>    |       |       |       | —     | —     | RA<4:0> |            |       |       | xxxx  |            |
| LATA      | 0184 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | LATA<10:7>  |       |       |       | —     | —     | —       | LATA<3:0>  |       |       |       | xxxx       |
| ODCA      | 0186 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | ODA<10:7>   |       |       |       | —     | —     | —       | ODA<3:0>   |       |       |       | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-15: PORTB REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15       | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11      | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4      | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------------|--------|--------|--------|-------------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------|
| TRISB     | 018A | TRISB<15:13> |        |        | —      | TRISB<11:5> |        |       |       |       |       | —     | TRISB<3:0> |       |       |       | EFEF  |            |
| PORTB     | 018C | RB<15:13>    |        |        | —      | RB<11:0>    |        |       |       |       |       |       |            |       |       |       |       | xxxx       |
| LATB      | 018E | LATB<15:13>  |        |        | —      | LATB<11:5>  |        |       |       |       |       | —     | LATB<3:0>  |       |       |       | xxxx  |            |
| ODCB      | 0190 | ODB<15:13>   |        |        | —      | ODB<11:5>   |        |       |       |       |       | —     | ODB<3:0>   |       |       |       | 0000  |            |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-16: PORTC REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 <sup>(1)</sup> | Bit 8 <sup>(1)</sup> | Bit 7 <sup>(1)</sup> | Bit 6 <sup>(1)</sup> | Bit 5 <sup>(1)</sup> | Bit 4 <sup>(1)</sup> | Bit 3 <sup>(1)</sup> | Bit 2 <sup>(1)</sup> | Bit 1 <sup>(1)</sup> | Bit 0 <sup>(1)</sup> | All Resets          |
|-----------|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| TRISC     | 0194 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | TRISC<9:0>           |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      | 03FF <sup>(2)</sup> |
| PORTC     | 0196 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | RC<9:0>              |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      | xxxx <sup>(2)</sup> |
| LATC      | 0198 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | LATC<9:0>            |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      | xxxx <sup>(2)</sup> |
| ODCC      | 019A | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | ODC<9:0>             |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      | 0000 <sup>(2)</sup> |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**Note 1:** These bits are not available on 28-pin devices; read as '0'.

**2:** The Reset value for 44-pin devices is shown.

**TABLE 4-17: PAD CONFIGURATION REGISTER MAP (PADCFG1)**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0   | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|------------|
| PADCFG1   | 01A0 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | PMP TTL | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-18: A/D CONVERTER REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15  | Bit 14                   | Bit 13 | Bit 12                     | Bit 11   | Bit 10 | Bit 9  | Bit 8  | Bit 7      | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2      | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | All Resets |      |
|-----------|------|---|--------------------------|--------|----------------------------|----------|--------|--------|--------|------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|------------|--------|--------|------------|------|
| ADC1BUF0  | 0200 | A/D Data Buffer 0/Threshold for Channel 0   |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF1  | 0202 | A/D Data Buffer 1/Threshold for Channel 1   |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF2  | 0204 | A/D Data Buffer 2/Threshold for Channel 2   |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF3  | 0206 | A/D Data Buffer 3/Threshold for Channel 3   |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF4  | 0208 | A/D Data Buffer 4/Threshold for Channel 4   |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF5  | 020A | A/D Data Buffer 5/Threshold for Channel 5   |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF6  | 020C | A/D Data Buffer 6/Threshold for Channel 6   |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF7  | 020E | A/D Data Buffer 7/Threshold for Channel 7   |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF8  | 0210 | A/D Data Buffer 8/Threshold for Channel 8/Threshold for Channel 0 in Windowed Compare mode                  |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF9  | 0212 | A/D Data Buffer 9/Threshold for Channel 9/Threshold for Channel 1 in Windowed Compare mode                  |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF10 | 0214 | A/D Data Buffer 10/Threshold for Channel 10/Threshold for Channel 2 in Windowed Compare mode <sup>(1)</sup> |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF11 | 0216 | A/D Data Buffer 11/Threshold for Channel 11/Threshold for Channel 3 in Windowed Compare mode <sup>(1)</sup> |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF12 | 0218 | A/D Data Buffer 12/Threshold for Channel 12/Threshold for Channel 4 in Windowed Compare mode <sup>(1)</sup> |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF13 | 021A | A/D Data Buffer 13  |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF14 | 021C | A/D Data Buffer 14  |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| ADC1BUF15 | 021E | A/D Data Buffer 15  |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |
| AD1CON1   | 0220 | ADON  | —                        | ADSIDL | DMABM                      | DMAEN    | MODE12 | FORM1  | FORM0  | SSRC3      | SSRC2  | SSRC1  | SSRC0  | —      | ASAM       | SAMP   | DONE   | 0000       |      |
| AD1CON2   | 0222 | PVCFG1  | PVCFG0                   | NVCFG0 | OFFCAL                     | BUFREGEN | CSCNA  | —      | —      | BUFS       | SMP14  | SMP13  | SMP12  | SMP11  | SMP10      | BUFM   | ALTS   | 0000       |      |
| AD1CON3   | 0224 | ADRC  | EXTSAM                   | PUMPEN | SAMC4                      | SAMC3    | SAMC2  | SAMC1  | SAMC0  | ADCS7      | ADCS6  | ADCS5  | ADCS4  | ADCS3  | ADCS2      | ADCS1  | ADCS0  | 0000       |      |
| AD1CHS    | 0228 | CH0NB2  | CH0NB1                   | CH0NB0 | CH0SB4                     | CH0SB3   | CH0SB2 | CH0SB1 | CH0SB0 | CH0NA2     | CH0NA1 | CH0NA0 | CH0SA4 | CH0SA3 | CH0SA2     | CH0SA1 | CH0SA0 | 0000       |      |
| AD1CSSH   | 022A | CSS<31:27>  |                          |        |                            |          | —      | —      | —      | —          | —      | —      | —      | —      | —          | —      | —      | 0000       |      |
| AD1CSSL   | 022C | —   | CSS<14:9> <sup>(2)</sup> |        |                            |          |        |        | —      | CSS<7:0>   |        |        |        |        |            |        |        | 0000       |      |
| AD1CON4   | 022E | —   | —                        | —      | —                          | —        | —      | —      | —      | —          | —      | —      | —      | —      | DMABL<2:0> |        |        | 0000       |      |
| AD1CON5   | 0230 | ASEN  | LPEN                     | CTMREQ | BGREQ                      | —        | —      | ASINT1 | ASINT0 | —          | —      | —      | —      | WM1    | WM0        | CM1    | CM0    | 0000       |      |
| AD1CHITL  | 0234 | —   | —                        | —      | CHH<12:9> <sup>(2)</sup>   |          |        |        | —      | CHH<7:0>   |        |        |        |        |            |        |        | 0000       |      |
| AD1CTMENL | 0238 | —   | —                        | —      | CTMEN<12:9> <sup>(2)</sup> |          |        |        | —      | CTMEN<7:0> |        |        |        |        |            |        |        | 0000       |      |
| AD1DMBUF  | 023A | A/D Conversion Data Buffer (Extended Buffer mode)   |                          |        |                            |          |        |        |        |            |        |        |        |        |            |        |        |            | xxxx |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**Note 1:** These bits are unimplemented in 28-pin devices, read as '0'.

**2:** The CSS<12:10>, CHH<12:10> and CTMEN<12:10> bits are unimplemented in 28-pin devices, read as '0'.

TABLE 4-19: CTMU REGISTER MAP

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15  | Bit 14  | Bit 13   | Bit 12   | Bit 11   | Bit 10   | Bit 9    | Bit 8    | Bit 7   | Bit 6   | Bit 5    | Bit 4    | Bit 3    | Bit 2    | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-------|-------|------------|
| CTMUCON1  | 023C | CTMUEN  | —       | CTMUSIDL | TGEN     | EDGEN    | EDGSEQEN | IDISSEN  | CTTRIG   | —       | —       | —        | —        | —        | —        | —     | —     | 0000       |
| CTMUCON2  | 023E | EDG1MOD | EDG1POL | EDG1SEL3 | EDG1SEL2 | EDG1SEL1 | EDG1SEL0 | EDG2STAT | EDG1STAT | EDG2MOD | EDG2POL | EDG2SEL3 | EDG2SEL2 | EDG2SEL1 | EDG2SEL0 | —     | —     | 0000       |
| CTMUICON  | 0240 | ITRIM5  | ITRIM4  | ITRIM3   | ITRIM2   | ITRIM1   | ITRIM0   | IRNG1    | IRNG0    | —       | —       | —        | —        | —        | —        | —     | —     | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

TABLE 4-20: ANALOG CONFIGURATION REGISTER MAP

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15      | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3     | Bit 2                    | Bit 1  | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|-------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----------|--------------------------|--------|-------|------------|
| ANCFG     | 019E | —           | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —         | —                        | VBG2EN | VBGEN | 0000       |
| ANSA      | 0188 | —           | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | ANSA<3:0> |                          |        |       | 000F       |
| ANSB      | 0192 | ANSB<15:13> |        |        | —      | —      | —      | ANSB9 | —     | —     | ANSB6 | —     | —     | ANSB<3:0> |                          |        |       | E24F       |
| ANSC      | 019C | —           | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —         | ANSC<2:0> <sup>(1)</sup> |        |       | 0007       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**Note 1:** These bits are unimplemented in 28-pin devices, read as '0'.

**TABLE 4-21: DMA REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15                                     | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9  | Bit 8  | Bit 7   | Bit 6   | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3   | Bit 2   | Bit 1 | Bit 0  | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|-------|--------|------------|
| DMACON    | 0450 | DMAEN                                      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —       | —       | —       | —       | —       | —       | —     | PRSSEL | 0000       |
| DMABUF    | 0452 | DMA Transfer Data Buffer                   |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMAL      | 0454 | DMA High Address Limit Register            |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMAH      | 0456 | DMA Low Address Limit Register             |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMACH0    | 0458 | —  | —      | —      | r      | —      | NULLW  | RELOAD | CHREQ  | SAMODE1 | SAMODE0 | DAMODE1 | DAMODE0 | TRMODE1 | TRMODE0 | SIZE  | CHEN   | 0000       |
| DMAINT0   | 045A | DBUFWF                                     | —      | CHSEL5 | CHSEL4 | CHSEL3 | CHSEL2 | CHSEL1 | CHSEL0 | HIGHIF  | LOWIF   | DONEIF  | HALFIF  | OVRUNIF | —       | —     | HALFEN | 0000       |
| DMA SRC0  | 045C | DMA Channel 0 Source Address Register      |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA DST0  | 045E | DMA Channel 0 Destination Address Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA CNT0  | 0460 | DMA Channel 0 Transaction Count Register   |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0001       |
| DMACH1    | 0462 | —  | —      | —      | r      | —      | NULLW  | RELOAD | CHREQ  | SAMODE1 | SAMODE0 | DAMODE1 | DAMODE0 | TRMODE1 | TRMODE0 | SIZE  | CHEN   | 0000       |
| DMAINT1   | 0464 | DBUFWF                                     | —      | CHSEL5 | CHSEL4 | CHSEL3 | CHSEL2 | CHSEL1 | CHSEL0 | HIGHIF  | LOWIF   | DONEIF  | HALFIF  | OVRUNIF | —       | —     | HALFEN | 0000       |
| DMA SRC1  | 0466 | DMA Channel 1 Source Address Register      |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA DST1  | 0468 | DMA Channel 1 Destination Address Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA CNT1  | 046A | DMA Channel 1 Transaction Count Register   |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0001       |
| DMACH2    | 046C | —  | —      | —      | r      | —      | NULLW  | RELOAD | CHREQ  | SAMODE1 | SAMODE0 | DAMODE1 | DAMODE0 | TRMODE1 | TRMODE0 | SIZE  | CHEN   | 0000       |
| DMAINT2   | 046E | DBUFWF                                     | —      | CHSEL5 | CHSEL4 | CHSEL3 | CHSEL2 | CHSEL1 | CHSEL0 | HIGHIF  | LOWIF   | DONEIF  | HALFIF  | OVRUNIF | —       | —     | HALFEN | 0000       |
| DMA SRC2  | 0470 | DMA Channel 2 Source Address Register      |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA DST2  | 0472 | DMA Channel 2 Destination Address Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA CNT2  | 0474 | DMA Channel 2 Transaction Count Register   |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0001       |
| DMACH3    | 0476 | —  | —      | —      | r      | —      | NULLW  | RELOAD | CHREQ  | SAMODE1 | SAMODE0 | DAMODE1 | DAMODE0 | TRMODE1 | TRMODE0 | SIZE  | CHEN   | 0000       |
| DMAINT3   | 0478 | DBUFWF                                     | —      | CHSEL5 | CHSEL4 | CHSEL3 | CHSEL2 | CHSEL1 | CHSEL0 | HIGHIF  | LOWIF   | DONEIF  | HALFIF  | OVRUNIF | —       | —     | HALFEN | 0000       |
| DMA SRC3  | 047A | DMA Channel 3 Source Address Register      |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA DST3  | 047C | DMA Channel 3 Destination Address Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA CNT3  | 047E | DMA Channel 3 Transaction Count Register   |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0001       |
| DMACH4    | 0480 | —  | —      | —      | r      | —      | NULLW  | RELOAD | CHREQ  | SAMODE1 | SAMODE0 | DAMODE1 | DAMODE0 | TRMODE1 | TRMODE0 | SIZE  | CHEN   | 0000       |
| DMAINT4   | 0482 | DBUFWF                                     | —      | CHSEL5 | CHSEL4 | CHSEL3 | CHSEL2 | CHSEL1 | CHSEL0 | HIGHIF  | LOWIF   | DONEIF  | HALFIF  | OVRUNIF | —       | —     | HALFEN | 0000       |
| DMA SRC4  | 0484 | DMA Channel 4 Source Address Register      |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA DST4  | 0486 | DMA Channel 4 Destination Address Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA CNT4  | 0488 | DMA Channel 4 Transaction Count Register   |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0001       |
| DMACH5    | 048A | —  | —      | —      | r      | —      | NULLW  | RELOAD | CHREQ  | SAMODE1 | SAMODE0 | DAMODE1 | DAMODE0 | TRMODE1 | TRMODE0 | SIZE  | CHEN   | 0000       |
| DMAINT5   | 048C | DBUFWF                                     | —      | CHSEL5 | CHSEL4 | CHSEL3 | CHSEL2 | CHSEL1 | CHSEL0 | HIGHIF  | LOWIF   | DONEIF  | HALFIF  | OVRUNIF | —       | —     | HALFEN | 0000       |
| DMA SRC5  | 048E | DMA Channel 5 Source Address Register      |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA DST5  | 0490 | DMA Channel 5 Destination Address Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0000       |
| DMA CNT5  | 0492 | DMA Channel 5 Transaction Count Register   |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        | 0001       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; r = reserved bit. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-22: USB OTG REGISTER MAP**

| File Name            | Addr                | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | Bit 7   | Bit 6                   | Bit 5     | Bit 4     | Bit 3    | Bit 2    | Bit 1                | Bit 0                   | All Resets |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|---|-------------------------|-----------|-----------|----------|----------|----------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| U1OTGIR              | 0400                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | IDIF  | T1MSECIF                | LSTATEIF  | ACTVIF    | SESVDIF  | SESENDIF | —                    | VBUSVDIF                | 0000       |
| U1OTGIE              | 0402                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | IDIE  | T1MSECIE                | LSTATEIE  | ACTVIE    | SESVDIE  | SESENDIE | —                    | VBUSVDIE                | 0000       |
| U1OTGSTAT            | 0404                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | ID  | —                       | LSTATE    | —         | SESVD    | SESEND   | —                    | VBUSVD                  | 0000       |
| U1OTGCON             | 0406                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | DPPULUP   | DMPULUP                 | DPPULDOWN | DMPULDOWN | VBUSON   | OTGEN    | VBUSCHG              | VBUSDIS                 | 0000       |
| U1PWRC               | 0408                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | UACTPND   | —                       | —         | USLPGRD   | —        | —        | USUSPND              | USBPWR                  | 00x0       |
| U1IR                 | 040A <sup>(1)</sup> | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | STALLIF   | —                       | RESUMEIF  | IDLEIF    | TRNIF    | SOFIF    | UERRIF               | URSTIF                  | 0000       |
|                      |                     | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | STALLIF   | ATTACHIF <sup>(1)</sup> | RESUMEIF  | IDLEIF    | TRNIF    | SOFIF    | UERRIF               | DETACHIF <sup>(1)</sup> | 0000       |
| U1IE                 | 040C <sup>(1)</sup> | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | STALLIE   | —                       | RESUMEIE  | IDLEIE    | TRNIE    | SOFIE    | UERRIE               | URSTIE                  | 0000       |
|                      |                     | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | STALLIE   | ATTACHIE <sup>(1)</sup> | RESUMEIE  | IDLEIE    | TRNIE    | SOFIE    | UERRIE               | DETACHIE <sup>(1)</sup> | 0000       |
| U1EIR                | 040E <sup>(1)</sup> | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | BTSEF   | —                       | DMAEF     | BTOEF     | DFN8EF   | CRC16EF  | CRC5EF               | PIDEF                   | 0000       |
|                      |                     | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | BTSEF   | —                       | DMAEF     | BTOEF     | DFN8EF   | CRC16EF  | EOFEF <sup>(1)</sup> | PIDEF                   | 0000       |
| U1EIE                | 0410 <sup>(1)</sup> | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | BTSEE   | —                       | DMAEE     | BTOEE     | DFN8EE   | CRC16EE  | CRC5EE               | PIDEE                   | 0000       |
|                      |                     | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | BTSEE   | —                       | DMAEE     | BTOEE     | DFN8EE   | CRC16EE  | EOFEE <sup>(1)</sup> | PIDEE                   | 0000       |
| U1STAT               | 0412                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | ENDPT3  | ENDPT2                  | ENDPT1    | ENDPT0    | DIR      | PPBI     | —                    | —                       | 0000       |
| U1CON                | 0414 <sup>(1)</sup> | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —   | SE0                     | PKTDIS    | —         | HOSTEN   | RESUME   | PPBRST               | USBEN                   | 0000       |
|                      |                     | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | JSTATE <sup>(1)</sup>                             | SE0                     | TOKBUSY   | USBRST    | HOSTEN   | RESUME   | PPBRST               | SOFTEN <sup>(1)</sup>   | 0000       |
| U1ADDR               | 0416                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | LSPDEN <sup>(1)</sup>                             | ADDR6                   | ADDR5     | ADDR4     | ADDR3    | ADDR2    | ADDR1                | ADDR0                   | 0000       |
| U1BDTP1              | 0418                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | USB Buffer Descriptor Table Base Address Register |                         |           |           |          |          |                      | —                       | 0000       |
| U1FRML               | 041A                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | USB Frame Count Register Low Byte                 |                         |           |           |          |          |                      | —                       | 0000       |
| U1FRMH               | 041C                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | USB Frame Count Register High Byte                |                         |           |           |          |          |                      | —                       | 0000       |
| U1TOK <sup>(2)</sup> | 041E                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | PID3  | PID2                    | PID1      | PID0      | EP3      | EP2      | EP1                  | EP0                     | 0000       |
| U1SOF <sup>(2)</sup> | 0420                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | USB Start-of-Frame (SOF) Count Register           |                         |           |           |          |          |                      | —                       | 0000       |
| U1BDTP2              | 0422                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | USB Buffer Descriptor Table Base Address Register |                         |           |           |          |          |                      | —                       | 0000       |
| U1BDTP3              | 0424                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | USB Buffer Descriptor Table Base Address Register |                         |           |           |          |          |                      | —                       | 0000       |
| U1CNFG1              | 0426                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | UTEYE   | UOEMON                  | —         | USBSIDL   | —        | —        | PPB1                 | PPB0                    | 0000       |
| U1CNFG2              | 0428                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —   | —                       | —         | PVVBUS    | EXTI2CEN | UVBUSDIS | —                    | UTRDIS                  | 0000       |
| U1EP0                | 042A                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | LSPD <sup>(1)</sup>                               | RETRYDIS <sup>(1)</sup> | —         | EPCONDIS  | EPRXEN   | EPTXEN   | EPSTALL              | EPHSHK                  | 0000       |
| U1EP1                | 042C                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —   | —                       | —         | EPCONDIS  | EPRXEN   | EPTXEN   | EPSTALL              | EPHSHK                  | 0000       |
| U1EP2                | 042E                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —   | —                       | —         | EPCONDIS  | EPRXEN   | EPTXEN   | EPSTALL              | EPHSHK                  | 0000       |
| U1EP3                | 0430                | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —   | —                       | —         | EPCONDIS  | EPRXEN   | EPTXEN   | EPSTALL              | EPHSHK                  | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**Note 1:** Alternate register or bit definitions when the module is operating in Host mode.

**2:** These registers are available in Host mode only.

**TABLE 4-22: USB OTG REGISTER MAP (CONTINUED)**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4    | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1   | Bit 0  | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------|--------|--------|---------|--------|------------|
| U1EP4     | 0432 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |
| U1EP5     | 0434 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |
| U1EP6     | 0436 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |
| U1EP7     | 0438 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |
| U1EP8     | 043A | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |
| U1EP9     | 043C | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |
| U1EP10    | 043E | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |
| U1EP11    | 0440 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |
| U1EP12    | 0442 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |
| U1EP13    | 0444 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |
| U1EP14    | 0446 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |
| U1EP15    | 0448 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSHK | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**Note 1:** Alternate register or bit definitions when the module is operating in Host mode.

**2:** These registers are available in Host mode only.

**TABLE 4-23: ENHANCED PARALLEL MASTER/SLAVE PORT REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15                         | Bit 14 | Bit 13  | Bit 12  | Bit 11  | Bit 10  | Bit 9     | Bit 8  | Bit 7   | Bit 6                         | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3   | Bit 2   | Bit 1   | Bit 0   | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------------------------------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|--------|---------|-------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|------------|
| PMCON1    | 0128 | PMPEN                          | —      | PSIDL   | ADRMUX1 | ADRMUX0 | —       | MODE1     | MODE0  | CSF1    | CSF0                          | ALP     | ALMODE  | —       | BUSKEEP | IRQM1   | IRQM0   | 0000       |
| PMCON2    | 012A | PMPBUSY                        | —      | ERROR   | TIMEOUT | —       | —       | —         | —      | RADDR23 | RADDR22                       | RADDR21 | RADDR20 | RADDR19 | RADDR18 | RADDR17 | RADDR16 | 0000       |
| PMCON3    | 012C | PTWREN                         | PTRDEN | PTBE1EN | PTBE0EN | —       | AWAITM1 | AWAITM0   | AWAITE | —       | —                             | —       | —       | —       | —       | —       | —       | 0000       |
| PMCON4    | 012E | —                              | PTEN14 | —       | —       | —       | —       | PTEN<9:0> |        |         |                               |         |         |         |         |         |         | 0000       |
| PMCS1CF   | 0130 | CSDIS                          | CSP    | CSPTEN  | BEP     | —       | WRSP    | RDSP      | SM     | ACKP    | PTSZ1                         | PTSZ0   | —       | —       | —       | —       | —       | 0000       |
| PMCS1BS   | 0132 | BASE<23:15>                    |        |         |         |         |         |           |        |         | —                             | —       | —       | BASE11  | —       | —       | —       | 0200       |
| PMCS1MD   | 0134 | ACKM1                          | ACKM0  | AMWAIT2 | AMWAIT1 | AMWAIT0 | —       | —         | —      | DWAITB1 | DWAITB0                       | DWAITM3 | DWAITM2 | DWAITM1 | DWAITM0 | DWAITE1 | DWAITE0 | 0000       |
| PMCS2CF   | 0136 | CSDIS                          | CSP    | CSPTEN  | BEP     | —       | WRSP    | RDSP      | SM     | ACKP    | PTSZ1                         | PTSZ0   | —       | —       | —       | —       | —       | 0000       |
| PMCS2BS   | 0138 | BASE<23:15>                    |        |         |         |         |         |           |        |         | —                             | —       | —       | BASE11  | —       | —       | —       | 0600       |
| PMCS2MD   | 013A | ACKM1                          | ACKM0  | AMWAIT2 | AMWAIT1 | AMWAIT0 | —       | —         | —      | DWAITB1 | DWAITB0                       | DWAITM3 | DWAITM2 | DWAITM1 | DWAITM0 | DWAITE1 | DWAITE0 | 0000       |
| PMDOUT1   | 013C | EPMP Data Out Register 1<15:8> |        |         |         |         |         |           |        |         | EPMP Data Out Register 1<7:0> |         |         |         |         |         |         | xxxx       |
| PMDOUT2   | 013E | EPMP Data Out Register 2<15:8> |        |         |         |         |         |           |        |         | EPMP Data Out Register 2<7:0> |         |         |         |         |         |         | xxxx       |
| PMDIN1    | 0140 | EPMP Data In Register 1<15:8>  |        |         |         |         |         |           |        |         | EPMP Data In Register 1<7:0>  |         |         |         |         |         |         | xxxx       |
| PMDIN2    | 0142 | EPMP Data In Register 2<15:8>  |        |         |         |         |         |           |        |         | EPMP Data In Register 2<7:0>  |         |         |         |         |         |         | xxxx       |
| PMSTAT    | 0144 | IBF                            | IBOV   | —       | —       | IB3F    | IB2F    | IB1F      | IB0F   | OBE     | OBUF                          | —       | —       | OB3E    | OB2E    | OB1E    | OB0E    | 008F       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-24: REAL-TIME CLOCK AND CALENDAR (RTCC) REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15  | Bit 14 | Bit 13  | Bit 12  | Bit 11  | Bit 10 | Bit 9    | Bit 8    | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|---|--------|---------|---------|---------|--------|----------|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------|
| ALRMVAL   | 011E | Alarm Value Register Window Based on ALRMPTR<1:0> |        |         |         |         |        |          |          |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | xxxx       |
| ALCFG RPT | 0120 | ALRMEN  | CHIME  | AMASK3  | AMASK2  | AMASK1  | AMASK0 | ALRMPTR1 | ALRMPTR0 | ARPT7 | ARPT6 | ARPT5 | ARPT4 | ARPT3 | ARPT2 | ARPT1 | ARPT0 | 0000       |
| RTCVAL    | 0122 | RTCC Value Register Window Based on RTCPTR<1:0>   |        |         |         |         |        |          |          |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       | xxxx       |
| RCFGCAL   | 0124 | RTCEN   | —      | RTCWREN | RTCSYNC | HALFSEC | RTCOE  | RTCPTR1  | RTCPTR0  | CAL7  | CAL6  | CAL5  | CAL4  | CAL3  | CAL2  | CAL1  | CAL0  | Note 1     |
| RTCPWC    | 0126 | PWCEN   | PWCPOL | PWCPRE  | PWSPRE  | RTCLK1  | RTCLK0 | RTCOUT1  | RTCOUT0  | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | Note 1     |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**Note 1:** The status of the RCFGCAL and RTCPWC registers on POR is '0000' and on other Resets, it is unchanged.

**TABLE 4-25: DATA SIGNAL MODULATOR (DSM) REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | Bit 7  | Bit 6 | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|--------|-------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------|
| MDCON     | 02FA | MDEN   | —      | MDSIDL | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —      | MDOE  | MDSLRL | MDOPOL | —     | —     | —     | MDBIT | 0020       |
| MDSRC     | 02FC | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | SODIS  | —     | —      | —      | MS3   | MS2   | MS1   | MS0   | 0000       |
| MDCAR     | 02FE | CHODIS | CHPOL  | CHSYNC | —      | CH3    | CH2    | CH1   | CH0   | CLODIS | CLPOL | CLSYNC | —      | CL3   | CL2   | CL1   | CL0   | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-26: COMPARATOR REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9   | Bit 8   | Bit 7  | Bit 6  | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------|
| CMSTAT    | 0242 | CMIDL  | —      | —      | —      | —      | C3EVT  | C2EVT   | C1EVT   | —      | —      | —     | —     | —     | C3OUT | C2OUT | C1OUT | 0000       |
| CVRCON    | 0244 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | CVREFP | CVREFM1 | CVREFM0 | CVREN  | CVROE  | CVRSS | CVR4  | CVR3  | CVR2  | CVR1  | CVR0  | 0000       |
| CM1CON    | 0246 | CON    | COE    | CPOL   | —      | —      | —      | CEVT    | COUT    | EVPOL1 | EVPOLO | —     | CREF  | —     | —     | CCH1  | CCH0  | 0000       |
| CM2CON    | 0248 | CON    | COE    | CPOL   | —      | —      | —      | CEVT    | COUT    | EVPOL1 | EVPOLO | —     | CREF  | —     | —     | CCH1  | CCH0  | 0000       |
| CM3CON    | 024A | CON    | COE    | CPOL   | —      | —      | —      | CEVT    | COUT    | EVPOL1 | EVPOLO | —     | CREF  | —     | —     | CCH1  | CCH0  | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-27: CRC REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15                      | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12  | Bit 11  | Bit 10  | Bit 9   | Bit 8   | Bit 7  | Bit 6  | Bit 5   | Bit 4 | Bit 3   | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | All Resets |
|-----------|------|-----------------------------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|---------|-------|---------|-------|-------|-------|------------|
| CRCCON1   | 0158 | CRCEN                       | —      | CSIDL  | VWORD4  | VWORD3  | VWORD2  | VWORD1  | VWORD0  | CRCFUL | CRCMPT | CRCISEL | CRCGO | LENDIAN | —     | —     | —     | 0040       |
| CRCCON2   | 015A | —                           | —      | —      | DWIDTH4 | DWIDTH3 | DWIDTH2 | DWIDTH1 | DWIDTH0 | —      | —      | —       | PLEN4 | PLEN3   | PLEN2 | PLEN1 | PLEN0 | 0000       |
| CRCXORL   | 015C | X<15:1>                     |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |        |        |         |       |         |       |       | —     | 0000       |
| CRCXORH   | 015E | X<31:16>                    |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |        |        |         |       |         |       |       | —     | 0000       |
| CRCDATL   | 0160 | CRC Data Input Register Low |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |        |        |         |       |         |       |       | —     | xxxx       |
| CRCDATL   | 0160 | CRC Data Input Register Low |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |        |        |         |       |         |       |       | —     | xxxx       |
| CRCDATL   | 0160 | CRC Data Input Register Low |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |        |        |         |       |         |       |       | —     | xxxx       |
| CRCWDATL  | 0164 | CRC Result Register Low     |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |        |        |         |       |         |       |       | —     | xxxx       |
| CRCWDATL  | 0164 | CRC Result Register Low     |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |        |        |         |       |         |       |       | —     | xxxx       |
| CRCWDATH  | 0166 | CRC Result Register High    |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |        |        |         |       |         |       |       | —     | xxxx       |
| CRCWDATH  | 0166 | CRC Result Register High    |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |        |        |         |       |         |       |       | —     | xxxx       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-28: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13     | Bit 12    | Bit 11    | Bit 10    | Bit 9     | Bit 8     | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5      | Bit 4     | Bit 3     | Bit 2     | Bit 1     | Bit 0     | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------|--------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------|-------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| RPINR0    | 038C | —      | —      | INT1R5     | INT1R4    | INT1R3    | INT1R2    | INT1R1    | INT1R0    | —     | —     | OCTRIG1R5  | OCTRIG1R4 | OCTRIG1R3 | OCTRIG1R2 | OCTRIG1R1 | OCTRIG1R0 | 3F3F       |
| RPINR1    | 038E | —      | —      | INT3R5     | INT3R4    | INT3R3    | INT3R2    | INT3R1    | INT3R0    | —     | —     | INT2R5     | INT2R4    | INT2R3    | INT2R2    | INT2R1    | INT2R0    | 3F3F       |
| RPINR2    | 0390 | —      | —      | OCTRIG2R5  | OCTRIG2R4 | OCTRIG2R3 | OCTRIG2R2 | OCTRIG2R1 | OCTRIG2R0 | —     | —     | INT4R5     | INT4R4    | INT4R3    | INT4R2    | INT4R1    | INT4R0    | 3F3F       |
| RPINR7    | 039A | —      | —      | IC2R5      | IC2R4     | IC2R3     | IC2R2     | IC2R1     | IC2R0     | —     | —     | IC1R5      | IC1R4     | IC1R3     | IC1R2     | IC1R1     | IC1R0     | 3F3F       |
| RPINR8    | 039C | —      | —      | IC4R5      | IC4R4     | IC4R3     | IC4R2     | IC4R1     | IC4R0     | —     | —     | IC3R5      | IC3R4     | IC3R3     | IC3R2     | IC3R1     | IC3R0     | 3F3F       |
| RPINR9    | 039E | —      | —      | IC6R5      | IC6R4     | IC6R3     | IC6R2     | IC6R1     | IC6R0     | —     | —     | IC5R5      | IC5R4     | IC5R3     | IC5R2     | IC5R1     | IC5R0     | 3F3F       |
| RPINR11   | 03A2 | —      | —      | OCFBR5     | OCFBR4    | OCFBR3    | OCFBR2    | OCFBR1    | OCFBR0    | —     | —     | OCFAR5     | OCFAR4    | OCFAR3    | OCFAR2    | OCFAR1    | OCFAR0    | 3F3F       |
| RPINR17   | 03AE | —      | —      | U3RXR<5:0> |           |           |           |           |           | —     | —     | —          | —         | —         | —         | —         | —         | 3F00       |
| RPINR18   | 03B0 | —      | —      | U1CTSR5    | U1CTSR4   | U1CTSR3   | U1CTSR2   | U1CTSR1   | U1CTSR0   | —     | —     | U1RXR5     | U1RXR4    | U1RXR3    | U1RXR2    | U1RXR1    | U1RXR0    | 3F3F       |
| RPINR19   | 03B2 | —      | —      | U2CTSR5    | U2CTSR4   | U2CTSR3   | U2CTSR2   | U2CTSR1   | U2CTSR0   | —     | —     | U2RXR5     | U2RXR4    | U2RXR3    | U2RXR2    | U2RXR1    | U2RXR0    | 3F3F       |
| RPINR20   | 03B4 | —      | —      | SCK1R5     | SCK1R4    | SCK1R3    | SCK1R2    | SCK1R1    | SCK1R0    | —     | —     | SDI1R5     | SDI1R4    | SDI1R3    | SDI1R2    | SDI1R1    | SDI1R0    | 3F3F       |
| RPINR21   | 03B6 | —      | —      | U3CTSR5    | U3CTSR4   | U3CTSR3   | U3CTSR2   | U3CTSR1   | U3CTSR0   | —     | —     | SS1R5      | SS1R4     | SS1R3     | SS1R2     | SS1R1     | SS1R0     | 3F3F       |
| RPINR22   | 03B8 | —      | —      | SCK2R5     | SCK2R4    | SCK2R3    | SCK2R2    | SCK2R1    | SCK2R0    | —     | —     | SDI2R5     | SDI2R4    | SDI2R3    | SDI2R2    | SDI2R1    | SDI2R0    | 3F3F       |
| RPINR23   | 03BA | —      | —      | TMRCKR5    | TMRCKR4   | TMRCKR3   | TMRCKR2   | TMRCKR1   | TMRCKR0   | —     | —     | SS2R5      | SS2R4     | SS2R3     | SS2R2     | SS2R1     | SS2R0     | 3F3F       |
| RPINR27   | 03C2 | —      | —      | U4CTSR5    | U4CTSR4   | U4CTSR3   | U4CTSR2   | U4CTSR1   | U4CTSR0   | —     | —     | U4RXR5     | U4RXR4    | U4RXR3    | U4RXR2    | U4RXR1    | U4RXR0    | 3F3F       |
| RPINR28   | 03C4 | —      | —      | SCK3R5     | SCK3R4    | SCK3R3    | SCK3R2    | SCK3R1    | SCK3R0    | —     | —     | SDI3R5     | SDI3R4    | SDI3R3    | SDI3R2    | SDI3R1    | SDI3R0    | 3F3F       |
| RPINR29   | 03C6 | —      | —      | —          | —         | —         | —         | —         | —         | —     | —     | SS3R<5:0>  |           |           |           |           |           | 003F       |
| RPINR30   | 03C8 | —      | —      | —          | —         | —         | —         | —         | —         | —     | —     | MDMIR<5:0> |           |           |           |           |           | 003F       |
| RPINR31   | 03CA | —      | —      | MDC2R5     | MDC2R4    | MDC2R3    | MDC2R2    | MDC2R1    | MDC2R0    | —     | —     | MDC1R5     | MDC1R4    | MDC1R3    | MDC1R2    | MDC1R1    | MDC1R0    | 3F3F       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-28: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT REGISTER MAP (CONTINUED)**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13     | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9  | Bit 8  | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------|--------|------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|------------|
| RPOR0     | 03D6 | —      | —      | RP1R5      | RP1R4  | RP1R3  | RP1R2  | RP1R1  | RP1R0  | —     | —     | RP0R5  | RP0R4  | RP0R3  | RP0R2  | RP0R1  | RP0R0  | 0000       |
| RPOR1     | 03D8 | —      | —      | RP3R5      | RP3R4  | RP3R3  | RP3R2  | RP3R1  | RP3R0  | —     | —     | RP2R5  | RP2R4  | RP2R3  | RP2R2  | RP2R1  | RP2R0  | 0000       |
| RPOR2     | 03DA | —      | —      | RP5R<5:0>  |        |        |        |        |        | —     | —     | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | 0000       |
| RPOR3     | 03DC | —      | —      | RP7R5      | RP7R4  | RP7R3  | RP7R2  | RP7R1  | RP7R0  | —     | —     | RP6R5  | RP6R4  | RP6R3  | RP6R2  | RP6R1  | RP6R0  | 0000       |
| RPOR4     | 03DE | —      | —      | RP9R5      | RP9R4  | RP9R3  | RP9R2  | RP9R1  | RP9R0  | —     | —     | RP8R5  | RP8R4  | RP8R3  | RP8R2  | RP8R1  | RP8R0  | 0000       |
| RPOR5     | 03E0 | —      | —      | RP11R5     | RP11R4 | RP11R3 | RP11R2 | RP11R1 | RP11R0 | —     | —     | RP10R5 | RP10R4 | RP10R3 | RP10R2 | RP10R1 | RP10R0 | 0000       |
| RPOR6     | 03E2 | —      | —      | RP13R<5:0> |        |        |        |        |        | —     | —     | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | 0000       |
| RPOR7     | 03E4 | —      | —      | RP15R5     | RP15R4 | RP15R3 | RP15R2 | RP15R1 | RP15R0 | —     | —     | RP14R5 | RP14R4 | RP14R3 | RP14R2 | RP14R1 | RP14R0 | 0000       |
| RPOR8     | 03E6 | —      | —      | RP17R5     | RP17R4 | RP17R3 | RP17R2 | RP17R1 | RP17R0 | —     | —     | RP16R5 | RP16R4 | RP16R3 | RP16R2 | RP16R1 | RP16R0 | 0000       |
| RPOR9     | 03E8 | —      | —      | RP19R5     | RP19R4 | RP19R3 | RP19R2 | RP19R1 | RP19R0 | —     | —     | RP18R5 | RP18R4 | RP18R3 | RP18R2 | RP18R1 | RP18R0 | 0000       |
| RPOR10    | 03EA | —      | —      | RP21R5     | RP21R4 | RP21R3 | RP21R2 | RP21R1 | RP21R0 | —     | —     | RP20R5 | RP20R4 | RP20R3 | RP20R2 | RP20R1 | RP20R0 | 0000       |
| RPOR11    | 03EC | —      | —      | RP23R5     | RP23R4 | RP23R3 | RP23R2 | RP23R1 | RP23R0 | —     | —     | RP22R5 | RP22R4 | RP22R3 | RP22R2 | RP22R1 | RP22R0 | 0000       |
| RPOR12    | 03EE | —      | —      | RP25R5     | RP25R4 | RP25R3 | RP25R2 | RP25R1 | RP25R0 | —     | —     | RP24R5 | RP24R4 | RP24R3 | RP24R2 | RP24R1 | RP24R0 | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-29: SYSTEM CONTROL (CLOCK AND RESET) REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15       | Bit 14      | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9  | Bit 8    | Bit 7   | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4 | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | All Resets             |
|-----------|------|--------------|-------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------|---------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|------------------------|
| RCON      | 0108 | TRAPR        | IOPUWR      | —      | RETEN  | —      | DPSLP  | CM     | VREGS    | EXTR    | SWR    | SWDTEN | WDTO  | SLEEP  | IDLE   | BOR    | POR    | <a href="#">Note 1</a> |
| OSCCON    | 0100 | —            | COSC2       | COSC1  | COSC0  | —      | NOSC2  | NOSC1  | NOSC0    | CLKLOCK | IOLOCK | LOCK   | —     | CF     | POSCEN | SOSCEN | OSWEN  | <a href="#">Note 2</a> |
| CLKDIV    | 0102 | ROI          | DOZE2       | DOZE1  | DOZE0  | DOZEN  | RCDIV2 | RCDIV1 | RCDIV0   | CPDIV1  | CPDIV0 | PLLEN  | —     | —      | —      | —      | —      | 0100                   |
| OSCTUN    | 0106 | STEN         | —           | STSIDL | STSRC  | STLOCK | STLPOL | STOR   | STORPOL  | —       | —      | TUN5   | TUN4  | TUN3   | TUN2   | TUN1   | TUN0   | 0000                   |
| REFOCONL  | 0168 | ROEN         | —           | ROSIDL | ROOUT  | ROSLP  | —      | ROSWEN | ROACTIVE | —       | —      | —      | —     | ROSEL3 | ROSEL2 | ROSEL1 | ROSEL0 | 0000                   |
| REFOCONH  | 016A | —            | RODIV<14:0> |        |        |        |        |        |          |         |        |        |       |        |        |        |        | 0000                   |
| REFOTRIML | 016C | ROTRIM<15:7> |             |        |        |        |        |        |          |         |        | —      | —     | —      | —      | —      | —      | 0000                   |
| HLVDCON   | 010C | HLVDEN       | —           | LSIDL  | —      | —      | —      | —      | —        | VDIR    | BGVST  | IRVST  | —     | HLVDL3 | HLVDL2 | HLVDL1 | HLVDL0 | 0000                   |
| RCON2     | 010A | —            | —           | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —        | —       | —      | —      | r     | VDDBOR | VDDPOR | VBPOR  | VBAT   | <a href="#">Note 1</a> |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; r = reserved bit. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**Note 1:** The Reset value of the RCON register is dependent on the type of Reset event. For more information, refer to [Section 7.0 “Resets”](#).

**2:** The Reset value of the OSCCON register is dependent on both the type of Reset event and the device configuration. For more information, refer to [Section 9.0 “Oscillator Configuration”](#).

**TABLE 4-30: DEEP SLEEP REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15                               | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8  | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1 | Bit 0   | All Resets          |
|-----------|------|--------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|-------|---------|---------------------|
| DSCON     | 010E | DSEN                                 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —      | —     | —     | —     | —     | —      | r      | DSBOR | RELEASE | 0000 <sup>(1)</sup> |
| DSWAKE    | 0110 | —                                    | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | DSINT0 | DSFLT | —     | —     | DSWDT | DSRTCC | DSMCLR | —     | —       | 0000 <sup>(1)</sup> |
| DSGPR0    | 0112 | Deep Sleep Semaphore Data 0 Register |        |        |        |        |        |       |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |         | 0000 <sup>(1)</sup> |
| DSGPR1    | 0114 | Deep Sleep Semaphore Data 1 Register |        |        |        |        |        |       |        |       |       |       |       |        |        |       |         | 0000 <sup>(1)</sup> |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; r = reserved bit. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**Note 1:** These registers are only reset on a VDD POR event.

**TABLE 4-31: CRYPTOGRAPHIC ENGINE REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15   | Bit 14   | Bit 13   | Bit 12   | Bit 11   | Bit 10   | Bit 9    | Bit 8    | Bit 7   | Bit 6   | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3   | Bit 2    | Bit 1    | Bit 0    | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|------------|
| CRYCONL   | 01A4 | CRYON  | —        | CRYIDL   | ROLLIE   | DONEIE   | FREEIE   | —        | CRYGO    | OPMOD3  | OPMOD2  | OPMOD1  | OPMOD0  | CPHRSEL | CPHRMOD2 | CPHRMOD1 | CPHRMOD0 | 0000       |
| CRYCONH   | 01A6 | —  | CTRSIZE6 | CTRSIZE5 | CTRSIZE4 | CTRSIZE3 | CTRSIZE2 | CTRSIZE1 | CTRSIZE0 | SKEYSEL | KEYMOD1 | KEYMOD0 | —       | KEYSRC3 | KEYSRC2  | KEYSRC1  | KEYSRC0  | 0000       |
| CRYSTAT   | 01A8 | —  | —        | —        | —        | —        | —        | —        | —        | CRYBSY  | TXTABSY | CRYABRT | ROLLOVR | —       | MODFAIL  | KEYFAIL  | PGMFAIL  | 0000       |
| CRYOTP    | 01AC | —  | —        | —        | —        | —        | —        | —        | —        | PGMTST  | OTPIE   | CRYREAD | KEYPG3  | KEYPG2  | KEYPG1   | KEYPG0   | CRYWR    | 0020       |
| CRYXTA    | 01B0 | Cryptographic Text Register A (128 bits wide)          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |         |         |         |         |         |          |          |          | xxxx       |
| CRYKEY    | 01C0 | Cryptographic Key Register (256 bits wide, write-only) |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |         |         |         |         |         |          |          |          | xxxx       |
| CRYXTB    | 01E0 | Cryptographic Text Register B (128 bits wide)          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |         |         |         |         |         |          |          |          | xxxx       |
| CRYXTC    | 01F0 | Cryptographic Text Register C (128 bits wide)          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |         |         |         |         |         |          |          |          | xxxx       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'; x = unknown value on Reset. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**TABLE 4-32: NVM REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | Bit 7                | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | All Resets          |
|-----------|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|----------------------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------------------|
| NVMCON    | 0760 | WR     | WREN   | WRERR  | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | —                    | ERASE | —     | —     | NVMOP3 | NVMOP2 | NVMOP1 | NVMOP0 | 0000 <sup>(1)</sup> |
| NVMKEY    | 0766 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —     | NVMKEY Register<7:0> |       |       |       |        |        |        |        | 0000                |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

**Note 1:** The Reset value shown is for POR only. The value on other Reset states is dependent on the state of the memory write or erase operations at the time of Reset.

**TABLE 4-33: PERIPHERAL MODULE DISABLE (PMD) REGISTER MAP**

| File Name | Addr | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9  | Bit 8 | Bit 7  | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | All Resets |
|-----------|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|------------|
| PMD1      | 0170 | T5MD   | T4MD   | T3MD   | T2MD   | T1MD   | —      | —      | —     | I2C1MD | U2MD   | U1MD   | SPI2MD | SPI1MD | —      | —      | ADC1MD | 0000       |
| PMD2      | 0172 | —      | —      | IC6MD  | IC5MD  | IC4MD  | IC3MD  | IC2MD  | IC1MD | —      | —      | OC6MD  | OC5MD  | OC4MD  | OC3MD  | OC2MD  | OC1MD  | 0000       |
| PMD3      | 0174 | —      | —      | —      | —      | DSMMD  | CMPMD  | RTCCMD | PMPMD | CRCMD  | —      | —      | —      | U3MD   | —      | I2C2MD | —      | 0000       |
| PMD4      | 0176 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —      | UPWMMD | U4MD   | —      | REFOMD | CTMUMD | HLVDMD | USB1MD | 0000       |
| PMD6      | 017A | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | SPI3MD | 0000       |
| PMD7      | 017C | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —      | —      | DMA1MD | DMA0MD | —      | —      | —      | —      | 0000       |
| PMD8      | 017E | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —     | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | CRYMD  | 0000       |

**Legend:** — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Reset values are shown in hexadecimal.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 4.2.5 EXTENDED DATA SPACE (EDS)

The Extended Data Space (EDS) allows PIC24F devices to address a much larger range of data than would otherwise be possible with a 16-bit address range. EDS includes any additional internal data memory not directly accessible by the lower 32-Kbyte data address space and any external memory through the Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP).

In addition, EDS also allows read access to the program memory space. This feature is called Program Space Visibility (PSV) and is discussed in detail in [Section 4.3.3 “Reading Data from Program Memory Using EDS”](#).

[Figure 4-4](#) displays the entire EDS space. The EDS is organized as pages, called EDS pages, with one page equal to the size of the EDS window (32 Kbytes). A particular EDS page is selected through the Data Space Read register (DSRPAG) or Data Space Write register (DSWPAG). For PSV, only the DSRPAG register is used. The combination of the DSRPAG register value and the 16-bit wide data address forms a 24-bit Effective Address (EA).

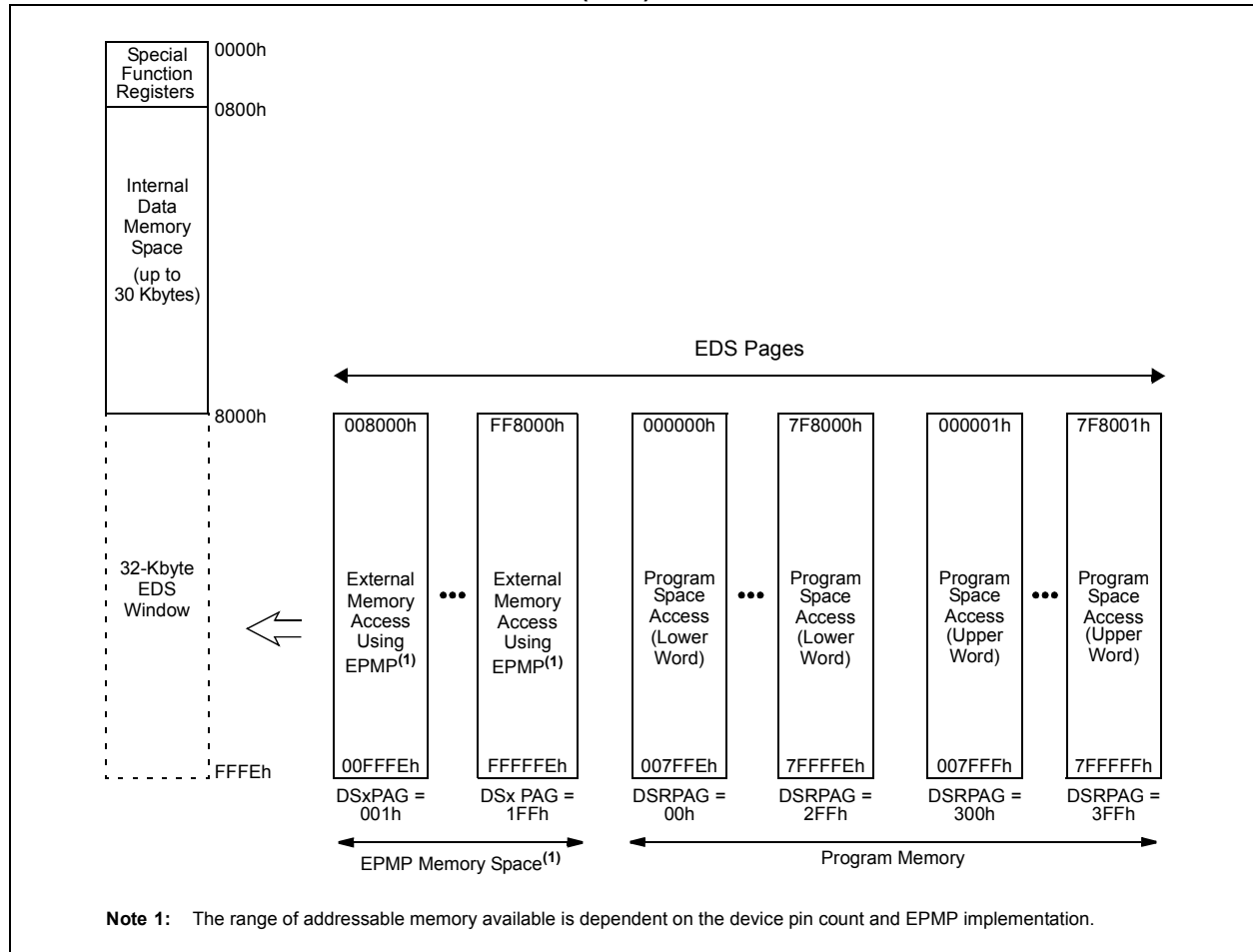
The data addressing range of PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices depends on the version of the Enhanced Parallel Master Port implemented on a particular device; this is, in turn, a function of device pin count. [Table 4-34](#) lists the total memory accessible by each of the devices in this family. For more details on accessing external memory using EPMP, refer to the “*dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual*”, “**Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP)**” (DS39730).

**TABLE 4-34: TOTAL ACCESSIBLE DATA MEMORY**

| Family          | Internal RAM | External RAM Access Using EPMP |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| PIC24FJXXXGB204 | 8K           | Up to 16 Mbytes                |
| PIC24FJXXXGB202 | 8K           | Up to 64K                      |

**Note:** Accessing Page 0 in the EDS window will generate an address error trap as Page 0 is the base data memory (data locations, 0800h to 7FFFh, in the lower Data Space).

**FIGURE 4-4: EXTENDED DATA SPACE (EDS)**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 4.2.5.1 Data Read from EDS

In order to read the data from the EDS space first, an Address Pointer is set up by loading the required EDS page number into the DSRPAG register and assigning the offset address to one of the W registers. Once the above assignment is done, the EDS window is enabled by setting bit 15 of the Working register assigned with the offset address; then, the contents of the pointed EDS location can be read.

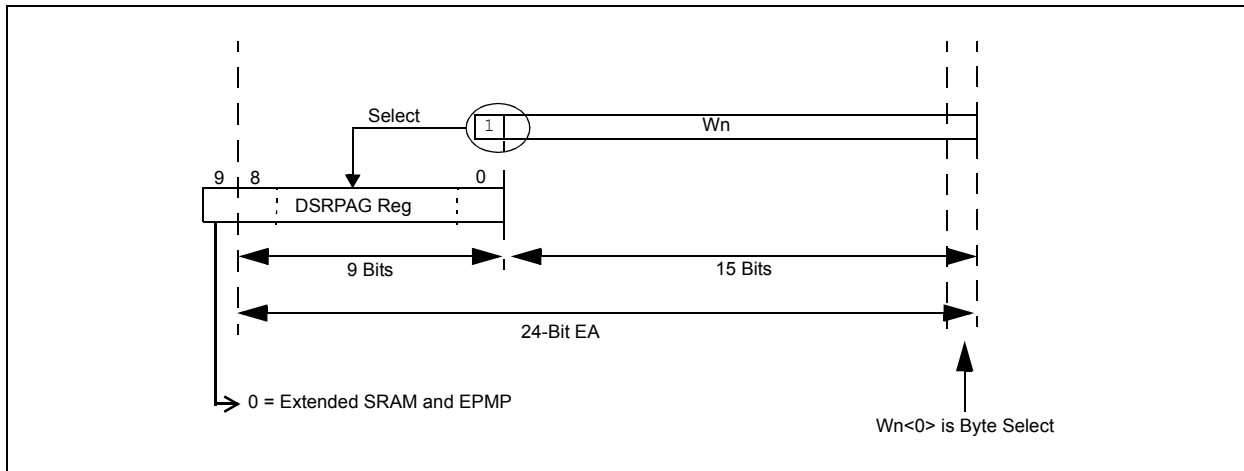
Figure 4-5 illustrates how the EDS space address is generated for read operations.

When the Most Significant bit of the EA is '1' and DSRPAG<9> = 0, the lower 9 bits of DSRPAG are concatenated to the lower 15 bits of the EA to form a 24-bit EDS space address for read operations.

Example 4-1 shows how to read a byte, word and double-word from EDS.

**Note:** All read operations from EDS space have an overhead of one instruction cycle. Therefore, a minimum of two instruction cycles is required to complete an EDS read. EDS reads under the REPEAT instruction; the first two accesses take three cycles and the subsequent accesses take one cycle.

**FIGURE 4-5: EDS ADDRESS GENERATION FOR READ OPERATIONS**



## EXAMPLE 4-1: EDS READ CODE IN ASSEMBLY

```
; Set the EDS page from where the data to be read
mov     #0x0002, w0
mov     w0, DSRPAG      ;page 2 is selected for read
mov     #0x0800, w1     ;select the location (0x800) to be read
bset    w1, #15         ;set the MSB of the base address, enable EDS mode

;Read a byte from the selected location
mov.b   [w1++], w2      ;read Low byte
mov.b   [w1++], w3      ;read High byte

;Read a word from the selected location
mov     [w1], w2        ;

;Read Double - word from the selected location
mov.d   [w1], w2        ;two word read, stored in w2 and w3
```

## 4.2.5.2 Data Write into EDS

In order to write data to EDS space, such as in EDS reads, an Address Pointer is set up by loading the required EDS page number into the DSWPAG register and assigning the offset address to one of the W registers. Once the above assignment is done, then the EDS window is enabled by setting bit 15 of the Working register, assigned with the offset address, and the accessed location can be written.

Figure 4-2 illustrates how the EDS space address is generated for write operations.

When the MSBs of EA are '1', the lower 9 bits of DSWPAG are concatenated to the lower 15 bits of the EA to form a 24-bit EDS address for write operations.

Example 4-2 shows how to write a byte, word and double-word to EDS.

The Data Space Page registers (DSRPAG/DSWPAG) do not update automatically while crossing a page boundary when the rollover happens from 0xFFFF to

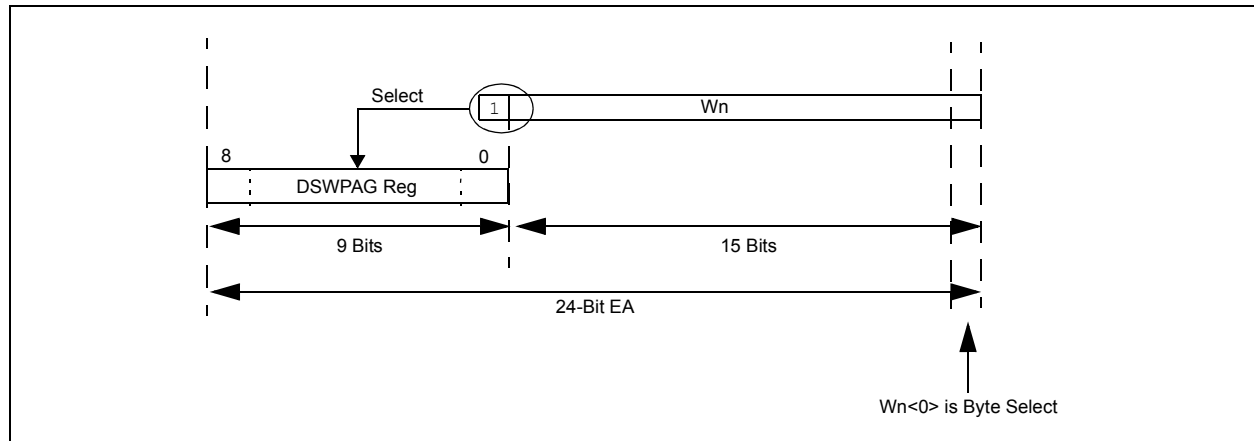
0x8000. While developing code in assembly, care must be taken to update the Data Space Page registers when an Address Pointer crosses the page boundary. The 'C' compiler keeps track of the addressing, and increments or decrements the Page registers accordingly, while accessing contiguous data memory locations.

**Note 1:** All write operations to EDS are executed in a single cycle.

**2:** Use of Read-Modify-Write operation on any EDS location under a REPEAT instruction is not supported. For example, BCLR, BSW, BTG, RLC f, RLNC f, RRC f, RRNC f, ADD f, SUB f, SUBR f, AND f, IOR f, XOR f, ASR f, ASL f.

**3:** Use the DSRPAG register while performing Read-Modify-Write operations.

**FIGURE 4-6: EDS ADDRESS GENERATION FOR WRITE OPERATIONS**



**EXAMPLE 4-2: EDS WRITE CODE IN ASSEMBLY**

```
; Set the EDS page where the data to be written
mov    #0x0002, w0
mov    w0, DSWPAG      ;page 2 is selected for write
mov    #0x0800, w1     ;select the location (0x800) to be written
bset   w1, #15         ;set the MSB of the base address, enable EDS mode

;Write a byte to the selected location
mov    #0x00A5, w2
mov    #0x003C, w3
mov.b  w2, [w1++]      ;write Low byte
mov.b  w3, [w1++]      ;write High byte

;Write a word to the selected location
mov    #0x1234, w2
mov    w2, [w1]

;Write a Double - word to the selected location
mov    #0x1122, w2
mov    #0x4455, w3
mov.d  w2, [w1]        ;2 EDS writes
```

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 4-35: EDS MEMORY ADDRESS WITH DIFFERENT PAGES AND ADDRESSES**

| DSRPAG<br>(Data Space Read<br>Register) | DSWPAG<br>(Data Space Write<br>Register) | Source/Destination<br>Address while<br>Indirect<br>Addressing | 24-Bit EA<br>Pointing to EDS | Comment                           |
|---|--|---|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| x <sup>(1)</sup>                        | x <sup>(1)</sup>                         | 0000h to 1FFFh  | 000000h to 001FFFh           | Near Data Space <sup>(2)</sup>    |
|   |  | 2000h to 7FFFh  | 002000h to 007FFFh           |                                   |
| 001h                                    | 001h                                     | 8000h to FFFFh  | 008000h to 00FFFEh           | EPMP Memory Space                 |
| 002h                                    | 002h                                     |   | 010000h to 017FFEh           |                                   |
| 003h                                    | 003h                                     |   | 018000h to 0187FEh           |                                   |
| •                                       | •  |   | •                            |                                   |
| •                                       | •  |   | •                            |                                   |
| •                                       | •  |   | •                            |                                   |
| •                                       | •  |   | •                            |                                   |
| 1FFh                                    | 1FFh                                     |   | FF8000h to FFFFFEh           |                                   |
| 000h                                    | 000h                                     |   | Invalid Address              | Address Error Trap <sup>(3)</sup> |

**Note 1:** If the source/destination address is below 8000h, the DSRPAG and DSWPAG registers are not considered.

**2:** This Data Space can also be accessed by Direct Addressing.

**3:** When the source/destination address is above 8000h and DSRPAG/DSWPAG are '0', an address error trap will occur.

## 4.2.6 SOFTWARE STACK

Apart from its use as a Working register, the W15 register in PIC24F devices is also used as a Software Stack Pointer (SSP). The pointer always points to the first available free word and grows from lower to higher addresses. It predecrements for stack pops and post-increments for stack pushes, as shown in Figure 4-7. Note that for a PC push during any CALL instruction, the MSB of the PC is zero-extended before the push, ensuring that the MSB is always clear.

**Note:** A PC push during exception processing will concatenate the SRL Register to the MSB of the PC prior to the push.

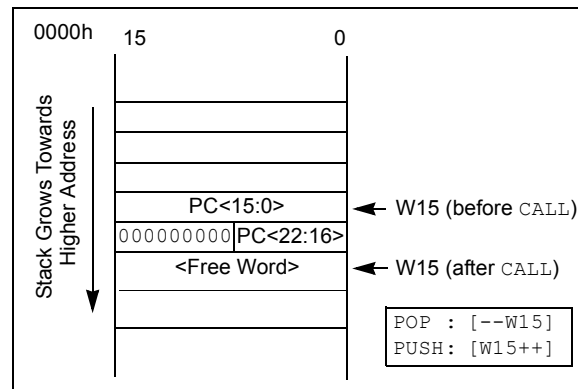
The Stack Pointer Limit Value (SPLIM) register, associated with the Stack Pointer, sets an upper address boundary for the stack. SPLIM is uninitialized at Reset. As is the case for the Stack Pointer, SPLIM<0> is forced to '0' as all stack operations must be word-aligned. Whenever an EA is generated using W15 as a Source or Destination Pointer, the resulting address is compared with the value in SPLIM. If the contents of the Stack Pointer (W15) and the SPLIM register are equal, and a push operation is performed, a stack error trap will not occur. The stack error trap will occur on a subsequent push operation. Thus, for

example, if it is desirable to cause a stack error trap when the stack grows beyond address, 2000h in RAM, initialize the SPLIM with the value, 1FFEh.

Similarly, a Stack Pointer underflow (stack error) trap is generated when the Stack Pointer address is found to be less than 0800h. This prevents the stack from interfering with the SFR space.

A write to the SPLIM register should not be immediately followed by an indirect read operation using W15.

**FIGURE 4-7: CALL STACK FRAME**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 4.3 Interfacing Program and Data Memory Spaces

The PIC24F architecture uses a 24-bit wide program space and 16-bit wide Data Space. The architecture is also a modified Harvard scheme, meaning that data can also be present in the program space. To use this data successfully, it must be accessed in a way that preserves the alignment of information in both spaces.

Aside from normal execution, the PIC24F architecture provides two methods by which program space can be accessed during operation:

- Using table instructions to access individual bytes or words anywhere in the program space
- Remapping a portion of the program space into the Data Space (Program Space Visibility)

Table instructions allow an application to read or write to small areas of the program memory. This makes the method ideal for accessing data tables that need to be updated from time to time. It also allows access to all bytes of the program word. The remapping method allows an application to access a large block of data on a read-only basis, which is ideal for look-ups from a large table of static data. It can only access the least significant word of the program word.

### 4.3.1 ADDRESSING PROGRAM SPACE

Since the address ranges for the data and program spaces are 16 and 24 bits, respectively, a method is needed to create a 23-bit or 24-bit program address from 16-bit data registers. The solution depends on the interface method to be used.

For table operations, the 8-bit Table Memory Page Address register (TBLPAG) is used to define a 32K word region within the program space. This is concatenated with a 16-bit EA to arrive at a full 24-bit program space address. In this format, the MSBs of TBLPAG are used to determine if the operation occurs in the user memory (TBLPAG<7> = 0) or the configuration memory (TBLPAG<7> = 1).

For remapping operations, the 10-bit Extended Data Space Read register (DSRPAG) is used to define a 16K word page in the program space. When the Most Significant bit (MSb) of the EA is '1', and the MSb (bit 9) of DSRPAG is '1', the lower 8 bits of DSRPAG are concatenated with the lower 15 bits of the EA to form a 23-bit program space address. The DSRPAG<8> bit decides whether the lower word (when the bit is '0') or the higher word (when the bit is '1') of program memory is mapped. Unlike table operations, this strictly limits remapping operations to the user memory area.

Table 4-36 and Figure 4-8 show how the program EA is created for table operations and remapping accesses from the data EA. Here, P<23:0> refer to a program space word, whereas D<15:0> refer to a Data Space word.

**TABLE 4-36: PROGRAM SPACE ADDRESS CONSTRUCTION**

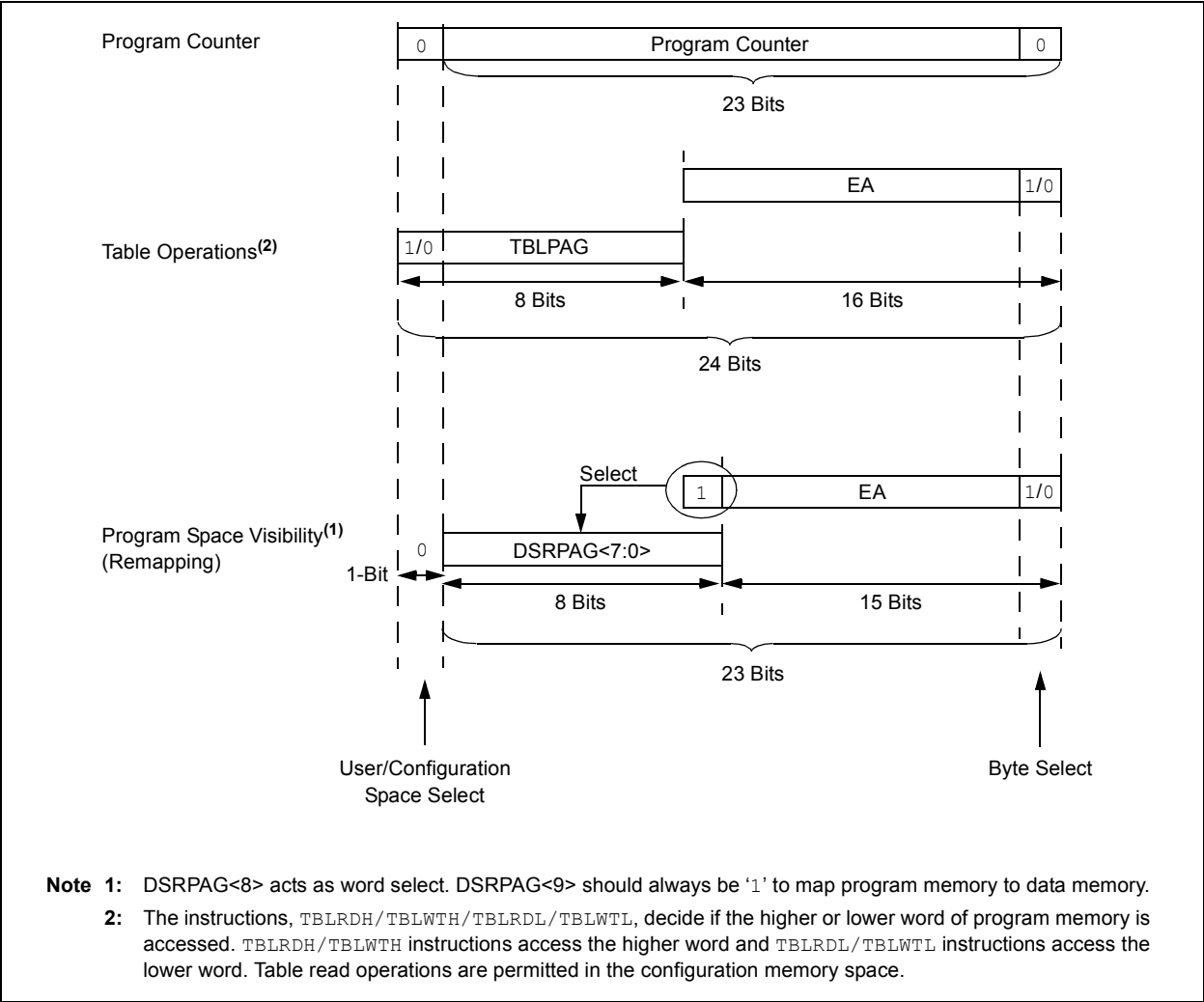
| Access Type                                    | Access Space  | Program Space Address        |                            |                     |                              |     |
|--|---------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|-----|
|  |               | <23>                         | <22:16>                    | <15>                | <14:1>                       | <0> |
| Instruction Access<br>(Code Execution)         | User          | 0                            | PC<22:1>                   |                     |                              | 0   |
|  |               | 0xx xxxx xxxx xxxx xxxx xxx0 |                            |                     |                              |     |
| TBLRD/TBLWT<br>(Byte/Word Read/Write)          | User          | TBLPAG<7:0>                  |                            | Data EA<15:0>       |                              |     |
|  |               | 0xxx xxxx                    |                            | xxxx xxxx xxxx xxxx |                              |     |
|  | Configuration | TBLPAG<7:0>                  |                            | Data EA<15:0>       |                              |     |
|  |               | 1xxx xxxx                    |                            | xxxx xxxx xxxx xxxx |                              |     |
| Program Space Visibility<br>(Block Remap/Read) | User          | 0                            | DSRPAG<7:0> <sup>(2)</sup> |                     | Data EA<14:0> <sup>(1)</sup> |     |
|  |               | 0                            | xxxx xxxx                  |                     | xxx xxxx xxxx xxxx           |     |

**Note 1:** Data EA<15> is always '1' in this case, but is not used in calculating the program space address. Bit 15 of the address is DSRPAG<0>.

**2:** DSRPAG<9> is always '1' in this case. DSRPAG<8> decides whether the lower word or higher word of program memory is read. When DSRPAG<8> is '0', the lower word is read and when it is '1', the higher word is read.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

FIGURE 4-8: DATA ACCESS FROM PROGRAM SPACE ADDRESS GENERATION



## 4.3.2 DATA ACCESS FROM PROGRAM MEMORY USING TABLE INSTRUCTIONS

The **TBLRDH** and **TBLWTL** instructions offer a direct method of reading or writing the lower word of any address within the program space without going through Data Space. The **TBLRDH** and **TBLWTH** instructions are the only method to read or write the upper 8 bits of a program space word as data.

The PC is incremented by two for each successive 24-bit program word. This allows program memory addresses to directly map to Data Space addresses. Program memory can thus be regarded as two, 16-bit word-wide address spaces, residing side by side, each with the same address range. **TBLRDH** and **TBLWTL** access the space which contains the least significant data word, and **TBLRDH** and **TBLWTH** access the space which contains the upper data byte.

Two table instructions are provided to move byte or word-sized (16-bit) data to and from program space. Both function as either byte or word operations.

1. **TBLRDH** (Table Read High): In Word mode, it maps the lower word of the program space location ( $P<15:0>$ ) to a data address ( $D<15:0>$ ). In Byte mode, either the upper or lower byte of the lower program word is mapped to the lower byte of a data address. The upper byte is selected when byte select is '1'; the lower byte is selected when it is '0'.

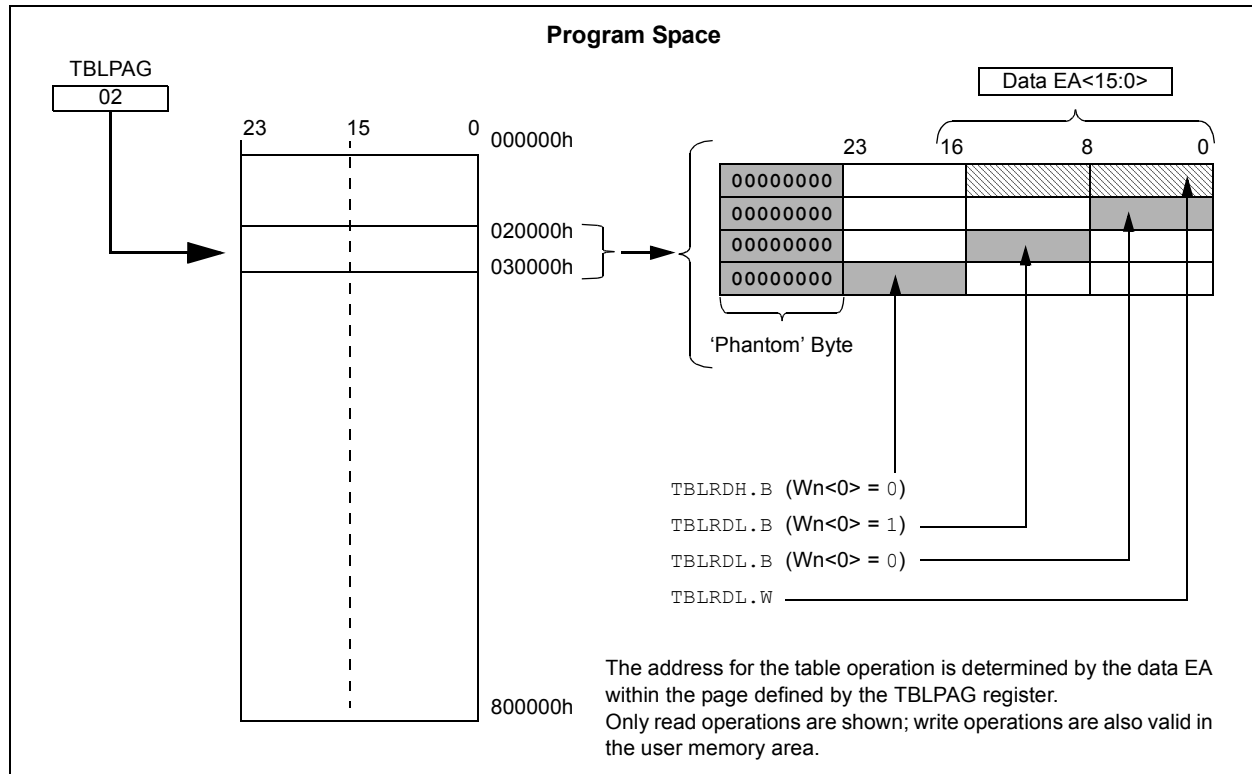
2. **TBLRDH** (Table Read High): In Word mode, it maps the entire upper word of a program address ( $P<23:16>$ ) to a data address. Note that  $D<15:8>$ , the 'phantom' byte, will always be '0'. In Byte mode, it maps the upper or lower byte of the program word to  $D<7:0>$  of the data address, as above. Note that the data will always be '0' when the upper 'phantom' byte is selected (Byte Select = 1).

In a similar fashion, two table instructions, **TBLWTH** and **TBLWTL**, are used to write individual bytes or words to a program space address. The details of their operation are described in [Section 6.0 "Flash Program Memory"](#).

For all table operations, the area of program memory space to be accessed is determined by the Table Memory Page Address register (**TBLPAG**). **TBLPAG** covers the entire program memory space of the device, including user and configuration spaces. When  $TBLPAG<7> = 0$ , the table page is located in the user memory space. When  $TBLPAG<7> = 1$ , the page is located in configuration space.

**Note:** Only Table Read operations will execute in the configuration memory space where Device IDs are located; Table Write operations are not allowed.

**FIGURE 4-9: ACCESSING PROGRAM MEMORY WITH TABLE INSTRUCTIONS**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 4.3.3 READING DATA FROM PROGRAM MEMORY USING EDS

The upper 32 Kbytes of Data Space may optionally be mapped into any 16K word page of the program space. This provides transparent access of stored constant data from the Data Space without the need to use special instructions (i.e., `TBLRDH/L`).

Program space access through the Data Space occurs when the MSb of EA is '1' and the `DSRPAG<9>` bit is also '1'. The lower 8 bits of `DSRPAG` are concatenated to the `Wn<14:0>` bits to form a 23-bit EA to access program memory. The `DSRPAG<8>` bit decides which word should be addressed; when the bit is '0', the lower word and when '1', the upper word of the program memory is accessed.

The entire program memory is divided into 512 EDS pages, from 200h to 3FFh, each consisting of 16K words of data. Pages, 200h to 2FFh, correspond to the lower words of the program memory, while 300h to 3FFh correspond to the upper words of the program memory.

Using this EDS technique, the entire program memory can be accessed. Previously, the access to the upper word of the program memory was not supported.

Table 4-37 provides the corresponding 23-bit EDS address for program memory with EDS page and source addresses.

For operations that use PSV and are executed outside a `REPEAT` loop, the `MOV` and `MOV.D` instructions will require one instruction cycle in addition to the specified execution time. All other instructions will require two instruction cycles in addition to the specified execution time.

For operations that use PSV, which are executed inside a `REPEAT` loop, there will be some instances that require two instruction cycles in addition to the specified execution time of the instruction:

- Execution in the first iteration
- Execution in the last iteration
- Execution prior to exiting the loop due to an interrupt
- Execution upon re-entering the loop after an interrupt is serviced

Any other iteration of the `REPEAT` loop will allow the instruction accessing data, using PSV, to execute in a single cycle.

**TABLE 4-37: EDS PROGRAM ADDRESS WITH DIFFERENT PAGES AND ADDRESSES**

| DSRPAG<br>(Data Space Read Register) | Source Address while<br>Indirect Addressing | 23-Bit EA Pointing<br>to EDS                            | Comment   |
|--------------------------------------|---|---|---|
| 200h<br>.<br>.<br>.<br>2FFh          | 8000h to FFFFh                              | 000000h to 007FFEh<br>.<br>.<br>.<br>7F8000h to 7FFFFEh | Lower words of 4M program instructions (8 Mbytes); for read operations only                                       |
| 300h<br>.<br>.<br>.<br>3FFh          |   | 000001h to 007FFFh<br>.<br>.<br>.<br>7F8001h to 7FFFFFh | Upper words of 4M program instructions (4 Mbytes remaining, 4 Mbytes are phantom bytes); for read operations only |
| 000h                                 |   | Invalid Address   | Address error trap <sup>(1)</sup>   |

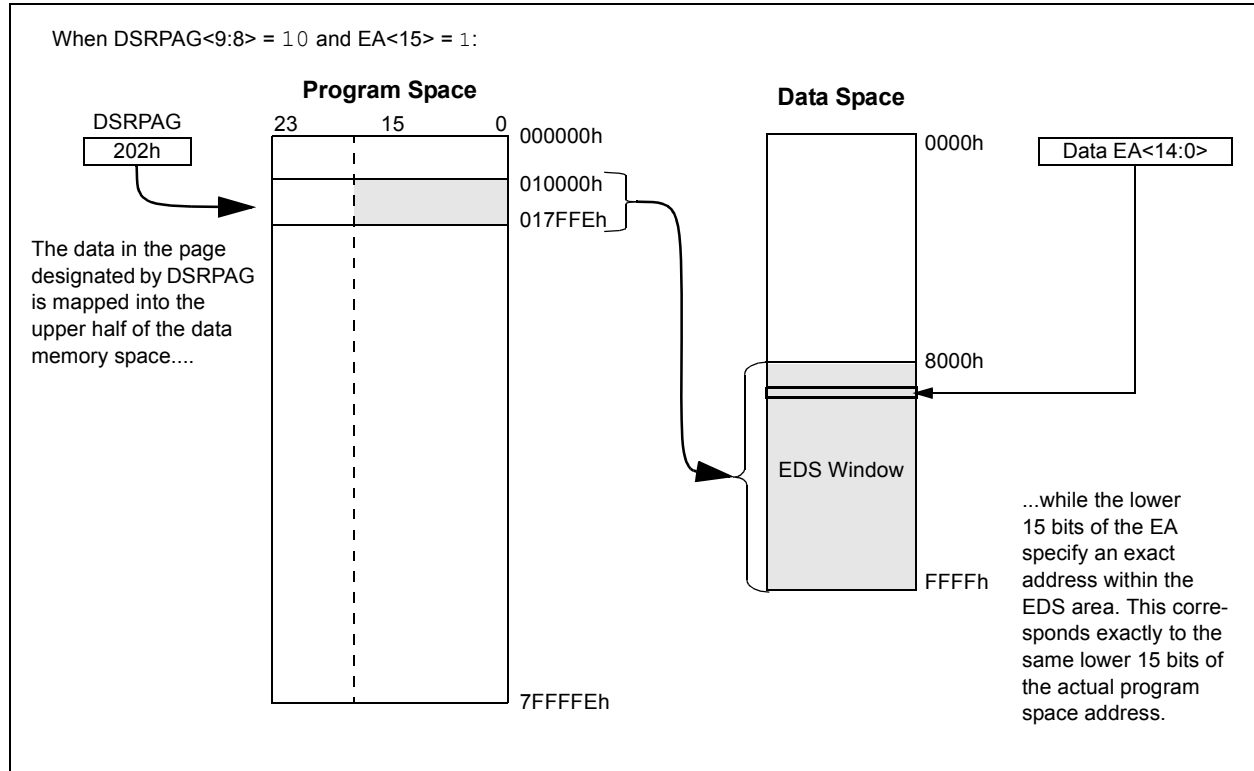
**Note 1:** When the source/destination address is above 8000h and `DSRPAG/DSWPAG` is '0', an address error trap will occur.

## EXAMPLE 4-3: EDS READ CODE FROM PROGRAM MEMORY IN ASSEMBLY

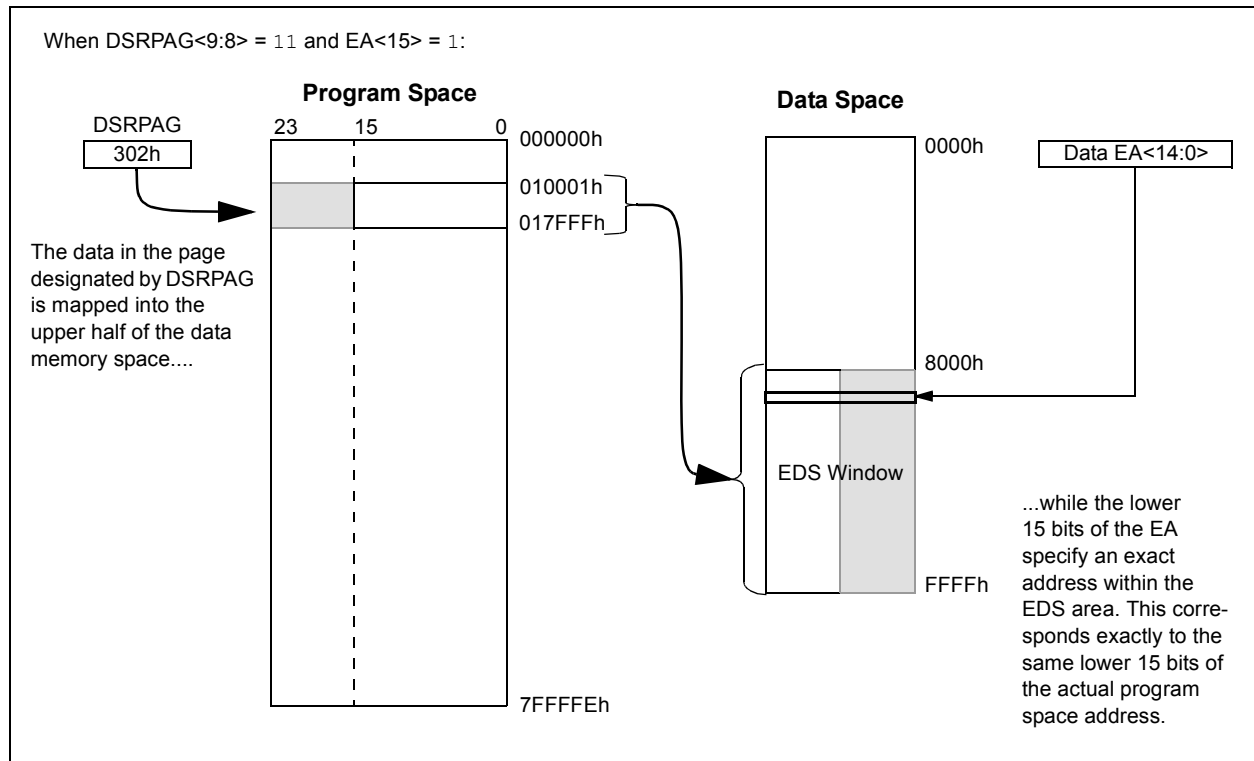
```
; Set the EDS page from where the data to be read
mov    #0x0202, w0
mov    w0, DSRPAG                ;page 0x202, consisting lower words, is selected for read
mov    #0x000A, w1                ;select the location (0x0A) to be read
bset   w1, #15                    ;set the MSB of the base address, enable EDS mode
;Read a byte from the selected location
mov.b  [w1++], w2                ;read Low byte
mov.b  [w1++], w3                ;read High byte
;Read a word from the selected location
mov    [w1], w2                  ;
;Read Double - word from the selected location
mov.d  [w1], w2                  ;two word read, stored in w2 and w3
```

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 4-10: PROGRAM SPACE VISIBILITY OPERATION TO ACCESS LOWER WORD**



**FIGURE 4-11: PROGRAM SPACE VISIBILITY OPERATION TO ACCESS UPPER WORD**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

## 5.0 DIRECT MEMORY ACCESS CONTROLLER (DMA)

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “Direct Memory Access Controller (DMA)” (DS39742). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The Direct Memory Access Controller (DMA) is designed to service high data throughput peripherals operating on the SFR bus, allowing them to access data memory directly and alleviating the need for CPU-intensive management. By allowing these data-intensive peripherals to share their own data path, the main data bus is also deloaded, resulting in additional power savings.

The DMA Controller functions both as a peripheral and a direct extension of the CPU. It is located on the microcontroller data bus between the CPU and DMA-enabled peripherals, with direct access to SRAM. This partitions the SFR bus into two buses, allowing the DMA Controller access to the DMA capable peripherals located on the new DMA SFR bus. The controller serves as a master device on the DMA SFR bus, controlling data flow from DMA capable peripherals.

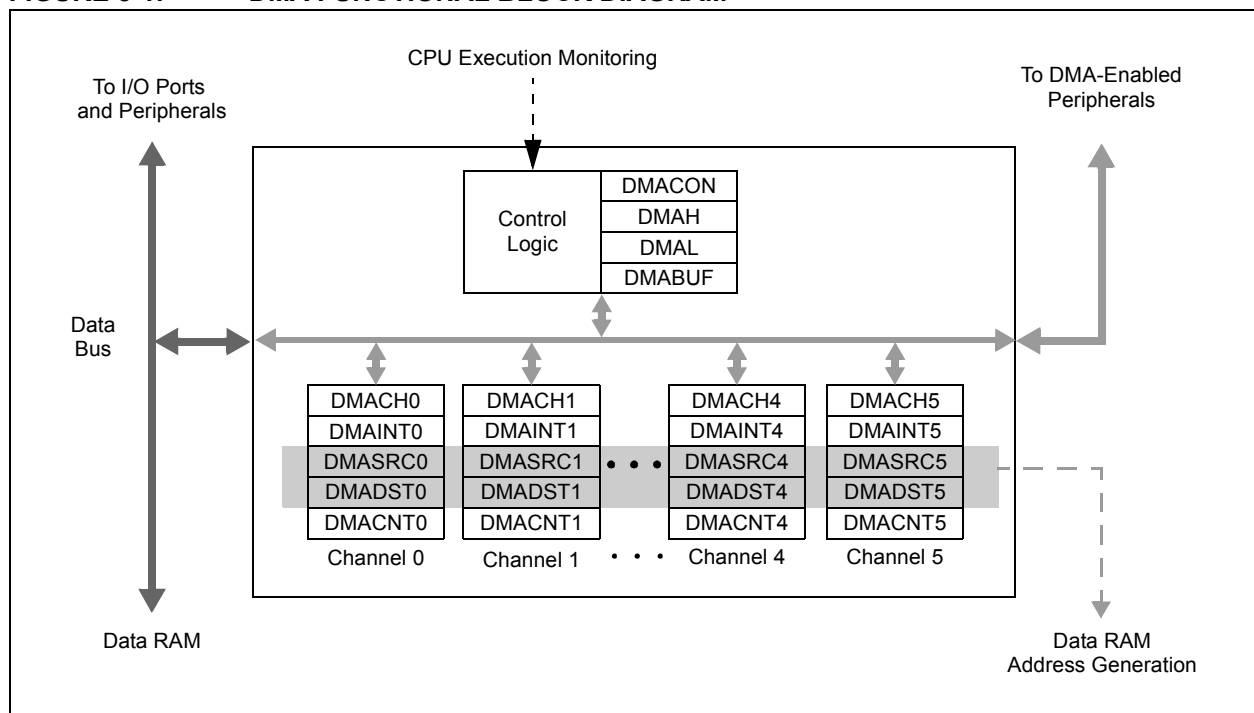
The controller also monitors CPU instruction processing directly, allowing it to be aware of when the CPU requires access to peripherals on the DMA bus and automatically relinquishing control to the CPU as needed. This increases the effective bandwidth for handling data without DMA operations causing a processor stall. This makes the controller essentially transparent to the user.

The DMA Controller has these features:

- Six multiple independent and independently programmable channels
- Concurrent operation with the CPU (no DMA caused Wait states)
- DMA bus arbitration
- Five Programmable Address modes
- Four Programmable Transfer modes
- Four Flexible Internal Data Transfer modes
- Byte or word support for data transfer
- 16-Bit Source and Destination Address register for each channel, dynamically updated and reloadable
- 16-Bit Transaction Count register, dynamically updated and reloadable
- Upper and Lower Address Limit registers
- Counter half-full level interrupt
- Software-triggered transfer
- Null Write mode for symmetric buffer operations

A simplified block diagram of the DMA Controller is shown in [Figure 5-1](#).

**FIGURE 5-1: DMA FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 5.1 Summary of DMA Operations

The DMA Controller is capable of moving data between addresses according to a number of different parameters. Each of these parameters can be independently configured for any transaction. In addition, any or all of the DMA channels can independently perform a different transaction at the same time. Transactions are classified by these parameters:

- Source and destination (SFRs and data RAM)
- Data size (byte or word)
- Trigger source
- Transfer mode (One-Shot, Repeated or Continuous)
- Addressing modes (Fixed Address or Address Blocks with or without Address Increment/Decrement)

In addition, the DMA Controller provides channel priority arbitration for all channels.

### 5.1.1 SOURCE AND DESTINATION

Using the DMA Controller, data may be moved between any two addresses in the Data Space. The SFR space (0000h to 07FFh), or the data RAM space (0800h to FFFFh) can serve as either the source or the destination. Data can be moved between these areas in either direction, or between addresses in either area. The four different combinations are shown in [Figure 5-2](#).

If it is necessary to protect areas of data RAM, the DMA Controller allows the user to set upper and lower address boundaries for operations in the Data Space above the SFR space. The boundaries are set by the DMAH and DMAL High/Low Address Limit registers. If a DMA channel attempts an operation outside of the address boundaries, the transaction is terminated and an interrupt is generated.

### 5.1.2 DATA SIZE

The DMA Controller can handle both 8-bit and 16-bit transactions. Size is user-selectable using the SIZE bit (DMACHn<1>). By default, each channel is configured for word-size transactions. When byte-size transactions are chosen, the LSB of the source and/or destination address determines if the data represents the upper or lower byte of the data RAM location.

### 5.1.3 TRIGGER SOURCE

The DMA Controller can use 63 of the device's interrupt sources to initiate a transaction. The DMA trigger sources occur in reverse order than their natural interrupt priority and are shown in [Table 5-1](#).

These sources cannot be used as DMA triggers:

- Input Capture 8 and 9
- Output Compare 7, 8 and 9
- USB

Since the source and destination addresses for any transaction can be programmed independently of the trigger source, the DMA Controller can use any trigger to perform an operation on any peripheral. This also allows DMA channels to be cascaded to perform more complex transfer operations.

### 5.1.4 TRANSFER MODE

The DMA Controller supports four types of data transfers, based on the volume of data to be moved for each trigger:

- One-Shot: A single transaction occurs for each trigger.
- Continuous: A series of back-to-back transactions occur for each trigger; the number of transactions is determined by the DMACNTn transaction counter.
- Repeated One-Shot: A single transaction is performed repeatedly, once per trigger, until the DMA channel is disabled.
- Repeated Continuous: A series of transactions are performed repeatedly, one cycle per trigger, until the DMA channel is disabled.

All Transfer modes allow the option to have the source and destination addresses, and counter value automatically reloaded after the completion of a transaction; Repeated mode transfers do this automatically.

### 5.1.5 ADDRESSING MODES

The DMA Controller also supports transfers between single addresses or address ranges. The four basic options are:

- Fixed-to-Fixed: Between two constant addresses
- Fixed-to-Block: From a constant source address to a range of destination addresses
- Block-to-Fixed: From a range of source addresses to a single, constant destination address
- Block-to-Block: From a range of source addresses to a range of destination addresses

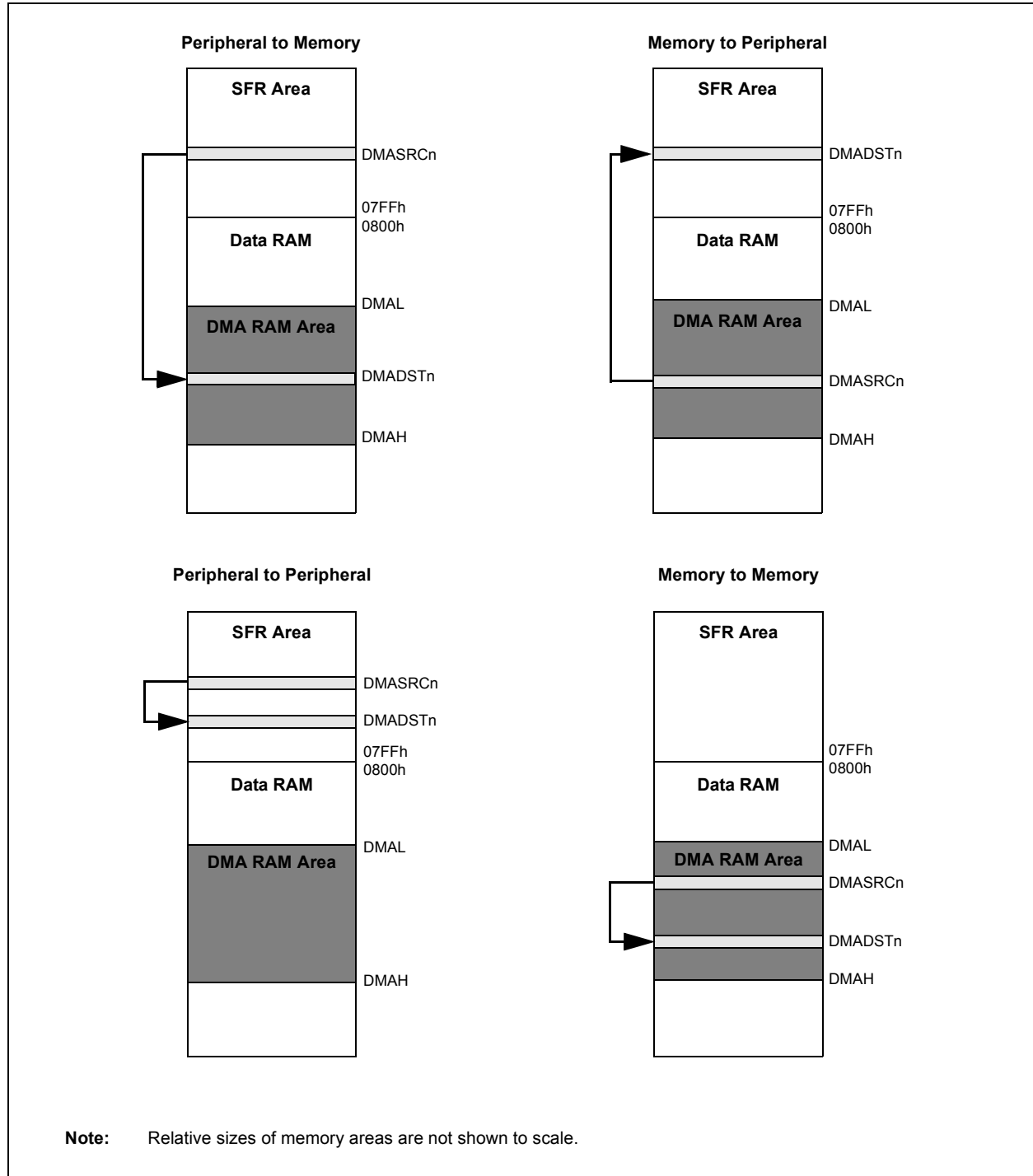
The option to select auto-increment or auto-decrement of source and/or destination addresses is available for Block Addressing modes.

In addition to the four basic modes, the DMA Controller also supports Peripheral Indirect Addressing (PIA) mode, where the source or destination address is generated jointly by the DMA Controller and a PIA capable peripheral. When enabled, the DMA channel provides a base source and/or destination address, while the peripheral provides a fixed range offset address.

For PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices, the 12-bit A/D Converter module is the only PIA capable peripheral. Details for its use in PIA mode are provided in [Section 25.0 "12-Bit A/D Converter with Threshold Detect"](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 5-2: TYPES OF DMA DATA TRANSFERS**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## 5.1.6 CHANNEL PRIORITY

Each DMA channel functions independently of the others, but also competes with the others for access to the data and DMA buses. When access collisions occur, the DMA Controller arbitrates between the channels using a user-selectable priority scheme. Two schemes are available:

- Round Robin: When two or more channels collide, the lower numbered channel receives priority on the first collision. On subsequent collisions, the higher numbered channels each receive priority based on their channel number.
- Fixed Priority: When two or more channels collide, the lowest numbered channel always receives priority, regardless of past history.

## 5.2 Typical Setup

To set up a DMA channel for a basic data transfer:

1. Enable the DMA Controller (DMAEN = 1) and select an appropriate channel priority scheme by setting or clearing PRSSEL.
2. Program DMAH and DMAL with appropriate upper and lower address boundaries for data RAM operations.
3. Select the DMA channel to be used and disable its operation (CHEN = 0).
4. Program the appropriate source and destination addresses for the transaction into the channel's DMASRCn and DMADSTn registers. For PIA Addressing mode, use the base address value.
5. Program the DMACNTn register for the number of triggers per transfer (One-Shot or Continuous modes) or the number of words (bytes) to be transferred (Repeated modes).
6. Set or clear the SIZE bit to select the data size.
7. Program the TRMODEx bits to select the Data Transfer mode.
8. Program the SAMODEx and DAMODEx bits to select the addressing mode.
9. Enable the DMA channel by setting CHEN.
10. Enable the trigger source interrupt.

## 5.3 Peripheral Module Disable

Unlike other peripheral modules, the channels of the DMA Controller cannot be individually powered down using the Peripheral Module Disable x (PMDx) registers. Instead, the channels are controlled as two groups. The DMA0MD bit (PMD7<4>) selectively controls DMACH0 through DMACH3. The DMA1MD bit (PMD7<5>) controls DMACH4 and DMACH5. Setting both bits effectively disables the DMA Controller.

## 5.4 Registers

The DMA Controller uses a number of registers to control its operation. The number of registers depends on the number of channels implemented for a particular device.

There are always four module-level registers (one control and three buffer/address):

- DMACON: DMA Control Register ([Register 5-1](#))
- DMAH and DMAL: DMA High and Low Address Limit Registers
- DMABUF: DMA Transfer Data Buffer

Each of the DMA channels implements five registers (two control and three buffer/address):

- DMACHn: DMA Channel n Control Register ([Register 5-2](#))
- DMAINTn: DMA Channel n Interrupt Control Register ([Register 5-3](#))
- DMASRCn: DMA Channel Source Address Pointer for Channel n Register
- DMADSTn: DMA Destination Address for Channel n Register
- DMACNTn: DMA Transaction Count for Channel n Register

For PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices, there are a total of 34 registers.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 5-1: DMAEN: DMA ENGINE CONTROL REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| DMAEN  | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | PRSEL |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15

**DMAEN:** DMA Module Enable bit

1 = Enables module

0 = Disables module and terminates all active DMA operation(s)

bit 14-1

**Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0

**PRSEL:** Channel Priority Scheme Selection bit

1 = Round robin scheme

0 = Fixed priority scheme

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 5-2: DMACHn: DMA CHANNEL n CONTROL REGISTER**

|        |     |     |     |     |       |                       |                      |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | r-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | NULLW | RELOAD <sup>(1)</sup> | CHREQ <sup>(3)</sup> |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |       | bit 8                 |                      |

|         |         |         |         |         |         |       |       |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| SAMODE1 | SAMODE0 | DAMODE1 | DAMODE0 | TRMODE1 | TRMODE0 | SIZE  | CHEN  |
| bit 7   |         |         |         |         |         | bit 0 |       |

|                   |                  |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | r = Reserved bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15-13 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 12 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'
- bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10 **NULLW:** Null Write Mode bit  
1 = A dummy write is initiated to DMASRCn for every write to DMADSTn  
0 = No dummy write is initiated
- bit 9 **RELOAD:** Address and Count Reload bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = DMASRCn, DMADSTn and DMACNTn registers are reloaded to their previous values upon the start of the next operation  
0 = DMASRCn, DMADSTn and DMACNTn are not reloaded on the start of the next operation<sup>(2)</sup>
- bit 8 **CHREQ:** DMA Channel Software Request bit<sup>(3)</sup>  
1 = A DMA request is initiated by software; automatically cleared upon completion of a DMA transfer  
0 = No DMA request is pending
- bit 7-6 **SAMODE<1:0>:** Source Address Mode Selection bits  
11 = DMASRCn is used in Peripheral Indirect Addressing and remains unchanged  
10 = DMASRCn is decremented based on the SIZE bit after a transfer completion  
01 = DMASRCn is incremented based on the SIZE bit after a transfer completion  
00 = DMASRCn remains unchanged after a transfer completion
- bit 5-4 **DAMODE<1:0>:** Destination Address Mode Selection bits  
11 = DMADSTn is used in Peripheral Indirect Addressing and remains unchanged  
10 = DMADSTn is decremented based on the SIZE bit after a transfer completion  
01 = DMADSTn is incremented based on the SIZE bit after a transfer completion  
00 = DMADSTn remains unchanged after a transfer completion
- bit 3-2 **TRMODE<1:0>:** Transfer Mode Selection bits  
11 = Repeated Continuous mode  
10 = Continuous mode  
01 = Repeated One-Shot mode  
00 = One-Shot mode
- bit 1 **SIZE:** Data Size Selection bit  
1 = Byte (8-bit)  
0 = Word (16-bit)
- bit 0 **CHEN:** DMA Channel Enable bit  
1 = The corresponding channel is enabled  
0 = The corresponding channel is disabled

- Note 1:** Only the original DMACNTn is required to be stored to recover the original DMASRCn and DMADSTn values.
- Note 2:** DMACNTn will always be reloaded in Repeated mode transfers, regardless of the state of the RELOAD bit.
- Note 3:** The number of transfers executed while CHREQ is set depends on the configuration of TRMODE<1:0>.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 5-3: DMAINTn: DMA CHANNEL n INTERRUPT REGISTER

|                       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-----------------------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| R-0                   | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| DBUFWF <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | CHSEL5 | CHSEL4 | CHSEL3 | CHSEL2 | CHSEL1 | CHSEL0 |
| bit 15                |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|                         |                        |                       |                       |                        |     |     |        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-----|-----|--------|
| R/W-0                   | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                  | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  |
| HIGHIF <sup>(1,2)</sup> | LOWIF <sup>(1,2)</sup> | DONEIF <sup>(1)</sup> | HALFIF <sup>(1)</sup> | OVRUNIF <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | —   | HALFEN |
| bit 7                   |                        |                       |                       |                        |     |     | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **DBUFWF:** DMA Buffered Data Write Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = The content of the DMA buffer has not been written to the location specified in DMADSTn or DMASRCn in Null Write mode  
 0 = The content of the DMA buffer has been written to the location specified in DMADSTn or DMASRCn in Null Write mode
- bit 14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13-8      **CHSEL<5:0>:** DMA Channel Trigger Selection bits  
 See [Table 5-1](#) for a complete list.
- bit 7      **HIGHIF:** DMA High Address Limit Interrupt Flag bit<sup>(1,2)</sup>  
 1 = The DMA channel has attempted to access an address higher than DMAH or the upper limit of the data RAM space  
 0 = The DMA channel has not invoked the high address limit interrupt
- bit 6      **LOWIF:** DMA Low Address Limit Interrupt Flag bit<sup>(1,2)</sup>  
 1 = The DMA channel has attempted to access a DMA SFR address lower than DMAL, but above the SFR range (07FFh)  
 0 = The DMA channel has not invoked the low address limit interrupt
- bit 5      **DONEIF:** DMA Complete Operation Interrupt Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
If CHEN = 1:  
 1 = The previous DMA session has ended with completion  
 0 = The current DMA session has not yet completed  
If CHEN = 0:  
 1 = The previous DMA session has ended with completion  
 0 = The previous DMA session has ended without completion
- bit 4      **HALFIF:** DMA 50% Watermark Level Interrupt Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = DMACNTn has reached the halfway point to 0000h  
 0 = DMACNTn has not reached the halfway point
- bit 3      **OVRUNIF:** DMA Channel Overrun Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = The DMA channel is triggered while it is still completing the operation based on the previous trigger  
 0 = The overrun condition has not occurred
- bit 2-1      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 0      **HALFEN:** Halfway Completion Watermark bit  
 1 = Interrupts are invoked when DMACNTn has reached its halfway point and at completion  
 0 = An interrupt is invoked only at the completion of the transfer

- Note 1:** Setting these flags in software does not generate an interrupt.
- 2:** Testing for address limit violations (DMASRCn or DMADSTn is either greater than DMAH or less than DMAL) is NOT done before the actual access.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 5-1: DMA CHANNEL TRIGGER SOURCES**

| CHSEL<5:0> | Trigger (Interrupt)  | CHSEL<5:0> | Trigger (Interrupt)  |
|------------|----------------------|------------|----------------------|
| 000000     | (Unimplemented)      | 100000     | UART2 Transmit       |
| 000001     | SPI3 General Event   | 100001     | UART2 Receive        |
| 000010     | I2C1 Slave Event     | 100010     | External Interrupt 2 |
| 000011     | UART4 Transmit       | 100011     | Timer5               |
| 000100     | UART4 Receive        | 100100     | Timer4               |
| 000101     | UART4 Error          | 100101     | Output Compare 4     |
| 000110     | UART3 Transmit       | 100110     | Output Compare 3     |
| 000111     | UART3 Receive        | 100111     | DMA Channel 2        |
| 001000     | UART3 Error          | 101000     | I2C2 Slave Event     |
| 001001     | CTMU Event           | 101001     | External Interrupt 1 |
| 001010     | HLVD                 | 101010     | Interrupt-on-Change  |
| 001011     | CRC Done             | 101011     | Comparators Event    |
| 001100     | UART2 Error          | 101100     | SPI3 Receive Event   |
| 001101     | UART1 Error          | 101101     | I2C1 Master Event    |
| 001110     | RTCC                 | 101110     | DMA Channel 1        |
| 001111     | DMA Channel 5        | 101111     | A/D Converter        |
| 010000     | External Interrupt 4 | 110000     | UART1 Transmit       |
| 010001     | External Interrupt 3 | 110001     | UART1 Receive        |
| 010010     | SPI2 Receive Event   | 110010     | SPI1 Transmit Event  |
| 010011     | I2C2 Master Event    | 110011     | SPI1 General Event   |
| 010100     | DMA Channel 4        | 110100     | Timer3               |
| 010101     | EPMP                 | 110101     | Timer2               |
| 010110     | SPI1 Receive Event   | 110110     | Output Compare 2     |
| 010111     | Output Compare 6     | 110111     | Input Capture 2      |
| 011000     | Output Compare 5     | 111000     | DMA Channel 0        |
| 011001     | Input Capture 6      | 111001     | Timer1               |
| 011010     | Input Capture 5      | 111010     | Output Compare 1     |
| 011011     | Input Capture 4      | 111011     | Input Capture 1      |
| 011100     | Input Capture 3      | 111100     | External Interrupt 0 |
| 011101     | DMA Channel 3        | 111101     | USB                  |
| 011110     | SPI2 Transmit Event  | 111110     | SPI3 Transmit Event  |
| 011111     | SPI2 General Event   | 111111     | Crypto Done          |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 6.0 FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “Program Memory” (DS39715). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The PIC24FJ128GB204 family of devices contains internal Flash program memory for storing and executing application code. The program memory is readable, writable and erasable. The Flash memory can be programmed in four ways:

- In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™)
- Run-Time Self-Programming (RTSP)
- JTAG
- Enhanced In-Circuit Serial Programming (Enhanced ICSP)

ICSP allows a PIC24FJ128GB204 family device to be serially programmed while in the end application circuit. This is simply done with two lines for the programming clock and programming data (named PGECx and PGEDx, respectively), and three other lines for power (VDD), ground (VSS) and Master Clear (MCLR). This allows customers to manufacture boards with unprogrammed devices and then program the

microcontroller just before shipping the product. This also allows the most recent firmware or a custom firmware to be programmed.

RTSP is accomplished using TBLRD (Table Read) and TBLWT (Table Write) instructions. With RTSP, the user may write program memory data in blocks of 64 instructions (192 bytes) at a time and erase program memory in blocks of 512 instructions (1536 bytes) at a time.

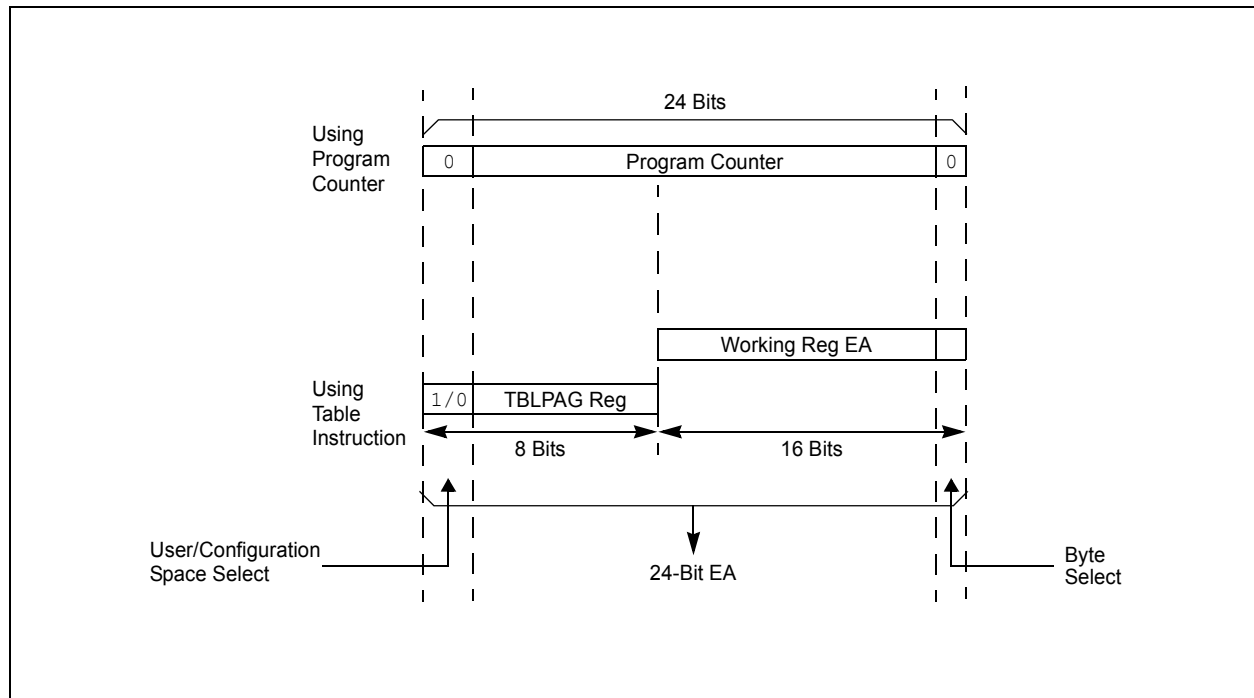
### 6.1 Table Instructions and Flash Programming

Regardless of the method used, all programming of Flash memory is done with the Table Read and Table Write instructions. These allow direct read and write access to the program memory space from the data memory while the device is in normal operating mode. The 24-bit target address in the program memory is formed using the TBLPAG<7:0> bits and the Effective Address (EA) from a W register, specified in the table instruction, as shown in Figure 6-1.

The TBLRDL and the TBLWTL instructions are used to read or write to bits<15:0> of program memory. TBLRDL and TBLWTL can access program memory in both Word and Byte modes.

The TBLRDH and TBLWTH instructions are used to read or write to bits<23:16> of program memory. TBLRDH and TBLWTH can also access program memory in Word or Byte mode.

FIGURE 6-1: ADDRESSING FOR TABLE REGISTERS



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## 6.2 RTSP Operation

The PIC24F Flash program memory array is organized into rows of 64 instructions or 192 bytes. RTSP allows the user to erase blocks of eight rows (512 instructions) at a time and to program one row at a time. It is also possible to program single words.

The 8-row erase blocks and single row write blocks are edge-aligned, from the beginning of program memory on boundaries of 1536 bytes and 192 bytes, respectively.

When data is written to program memory using `TBLWT` instructions, the data is not written directly to memory. Instead, data written using Table Writes is stored in holding latches until the programming sequence is executed.

Any number of `TBLWT` instructions can be executed and a write will be successfully performed. However, 64 `TBLWT` instructions are required to write the full row of memory.

To ensure that no data is corrupted during a write, any unused address should be programmed with `FFFFFFh`. This is because the holding latches reset to an unknown state, so if the addresses are left in the Reset state, they may overwrite the locations on rows which were not rewritten.

The basic sequence for RTSP programming is to set up a Table Pointer, then do a series of `TBLWT` instructions to load the buffers. Programming is performed by setting the control bits in the `NVMCON` register.

Data can be loaded in any order and the holding registers can be written to, multiple times, before performing a write operation. Subsequent writes, however, will wipe out any previous writes.

|   |
|---|
| <b>Note:</b> Writing to a location multiple times, without erasing, is not recommended. |
|---|

All of the Table Write operations are single-word writes (2 instruction cycles), because only the buffers are written. A programming cycle is required for programming each row.

## 6.3 JTAG Operation

The PIC24F family supports JTAG boundary scan. Boundary scan can improve the manufacturing process by verifying pin to PCB connectivity.

## 6.4 Enhanced In-Circuit Serial Programming

Enhanced In-Circuit Serial Programming uses an on-board bootloader, known as the Program Executive (PE), to manage the programming process. Using an SPI data frame format, the Program Executive can erase, program and verify program memory. For more information on Enhanced ICSP, see the device programming specification.

## 6.5 Control Registers

There are two SFRs used to read and write the program Flash memory: `NVMCON` and `NVMKEY`.

The `NVMCON` register ([Register 6-1](#)) controls which blocks are to be erased, which memory type is to be programmed and when the programming cycle starts.

`NVMKEY` is a write-only register that is used for write protection. To start a programming or erase sequence, the user must consecutively write `55h` and `AAh` to the `NVMKEY` register. For more information, refer to [Section 6.6 “Programming Operations”](#).

## 6.6 Programming Operations

A complete programming sequence is necessary for programming or erasing the internal Flash in RTSP mode. During a programming or erase operation, the processor stalls (waits) until the operation is finished. Setting the `WR` bit (`NVMCON<15>`) starts the operation and the `WR` bit is automatically cleared when the operation is finished.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 6-1: NVMCON: FLASH MEMORY CONTROL REGISTER**

|                          |                      |                         |     |     |     |       |     |
|--------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| R/S-0, HC <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R-0, HSC <sup>(1)</sup> | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| WR                       | WREN                 | WRERR                   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 15                   |                      |                         |     |     |     | bit 8 |     |

|       |                      |     |     |                       |                       |                       |                       |
|-------|----------------------|-----|-----|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| U-0   | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>  | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>  | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>  | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>  |
| —     | ERASE                | —   | —   | NVMOP3 <sup>(2)</sup> | NVMOP2 <sup>(2)</sup> | NVMOP1 <sup>(2)</sup> | NVMOP0 <sup>(2)</sup> |
| bit 7 |                      |     |     |                       |                       | bit 0                 |                       |

|                   |                             |                                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HC = Hardware Clearable bit | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit            | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set            | '0' = Bit is cleared                  |
|                   |                             | S = Settable bit                      |

- bit 15 **WR:** Write Control bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = Initiates a Flash memory program or erase operation; the operation is self-timed and the bit is cleared by hardware once the operation is complete  
 0 = Program or erase operation is complete and inactive
- bit 14 **WREN:** Write Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = Enables Flash program/erase operations  
 0 = Inhibits Flash program/erase operations
- bit 13 **WRERR:** Write Sequence Error Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = An improper program or erase sequence attempt, or termination has occurred (bit is set automatically on any set attempt of the WR bit)  
 0 = The program or erase operation completed normally
- bit 12-7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 6 **ERASE:** Erase/Program Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = Performs the erase operation specified by the NVMOP<3:0> bits on the next WR command  
 0 = Performs the program operation specified by the NVMOP<3:0> bits on the next WR command
- bit 5-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 3-0 **NVMOP<3:0>:** NVM Operation Select bits<sup>(1,2)</sup>  
 1111 = Memory bulk erase operation (ERASE = 1) or no operation (ERASE = 0)<sup>(3)</sup>  
 0011 = Memory word program operation (ERASE = 0) or no operation (ERASE = 1)  
 0010 = Memory page erase operation (ERASE = 1) or no operation (ERASE = 0)  
 0001 = Memory row program operation (ERASE = 0) or no operation (ERASE = 1)

- Note 1:** These bits can only be reset on a Power-on Reset.  
**2:** All other combinations of NVMOP<3:0> are unimplemented.  
**3:** Available in ICSP™ mode only; refer to the device programming specification.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 6.6.1 PROGRAMMING ALGORITHM FOR FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

The user can program one row of Flash program memory at a time. To do this, it is necessary to erase the 8-row erase block containing the desired row. The general process is:

1. Read eight rows of program memory (512 instructions) and store in data RAM.
2. Update the program data in RAM with the desired new data.
3. Erase the block (see [Example 6-1](#)):
  - a) Set the NVMOPx bits (NVMCON<3:0>) to '0010' to configure for block erase. Set the ERASE (NVMCON<6>) and WREN (NVMCON<14>) bits.
  - b) Write the starting address of the block to be erased into the TBLPAG and W registers.
  - c) Write 55h to NVMKEY.
  - d) Write AAh to NVMKEY.
  - e) Set the WR bit (NVMCON<15>). The erase cycle begins and the CPU stalls for the duration of the erase cycle. When the erase is done, the WR bit is cleared automatically.
4. Write the first 64 instructions from data RAM into the program memory buffers (see [Example 6-3](#)).
5. Write the program block to Flash memory:
  - a) Set the NVMOPx bits to '0001' to configure for row programming. Clear the ERASE bit and set the WREN bit.
  - b) Write 55h to NVMKEY.
  - c) Write AAh to NVMKEY.
  - d) Set the WR bit. The programming cycle begins and the CPU stalls for the duration of the write cycle. When the write to Flash memory is done, the WR bit is cleared automatically.
6. Repeat Steps 4 and 5, using the next available 64 instructions from the block in data RAM by incrementing the value in TBLPAG, until all 512 instructions are written back to Flash memory.

For protection against accidental operations, the write initiate sequence for NVMKEY must be used to allow any erase or program operation to proceed. After the programming command has been executed, the user must wait for the programming time until programming is complete. The two instructions following the start of the programming sequence should be NOPs, as shown in [Example 6-4](#).

### EXAMPLE 6-1: ERASING A PROGRAM MEMORY BLOCK (ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE CODE)

```
; Set up NVMCON for block erase operation
MOV    #0x4042, W0          ;
MOV    W0, NVMCON           ; Initialize NVMCON
; Init pointer to row to be ERASED
MOV    #tblpage(PROG_ADDR), W0 ;
MOV    W0, TBLPAG           ; Initialize Program Memory (PM) Page Boundary SFR
MOV    #tbloffset(PROG_ADDR), W0 ; Initialize in-page EA<15:0> pointer
TBLWTL W0, [W0]             ; Set base address of erase block
DISI    #5                  ; Block all interrupts with priority <7
                                ; for next 5 instructions

MOV.B   #0x55, W0
MOV     W0, NVMKEY           ; Write the 0x55 key
MOV.B   #0xAA, W1
MOV     W1, NVMKEY           ; Write the 0xAA key
BSET    NVMCON, #WR          ; Start the erase sequence
NOP      ; Insert two NOPs after the erase
NOP      ; command is asserted
```

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## EXAMPLE 6-2: ERASING A PROGRAM MEMORY BLOCK ('C' LANGUAGE CODE)

```
// C example using MPLAB C30
unsigned long progAddr = 0XXXXXX;           // Address of row to write
unsigned int offset;
//Set up pointer to the first memory location to be written
TBLPAG = progAddr>>16;                     // Initialize PM Page Boundary SFR
offset = progAddr & 0xFFFF;                 // Initialize lower word of address
__builtin_tblwtl(offset, 0x0000);           // Set base address of erase block
                                           // with dummy latch write
NVMCON = 0x4042;                           // Initialize NVMCON
asm("DISI #5");                             // Block all interrupts with priority <7
                                           // for next 5 instructions
__builtin_write_NVM();                      // check function to perform unlock
                                           // sequence and set WR
```

## EXAMPLE 6-3: LOADING THE WRITE BUFFERS

```
; Set up NVMCON for row programming operations
MOV    #0x4001, W0                          ;
MOV    W0, NVMCON                          ; Initialize NVMCON
; Set up a pointer to the first program memory location to be written
; program memory selected, and writes enabled
MOV    #0x0000, W0                          ;
MOV    W0, TBLPAG                          ; Initialize PM Page Boundary SFR
MOV    #0x6000, W0                          ; An example program memory address
; Perform the TBLWT instructions to write the latches
; 0th_program_word
MOV    #LOW_WORD_0, W2                      ;
MOV    #HIGH_BYTE_0, W3                    ;
TBLWTL W2, [W0]                            ; Write PM low word into program latch
TBLWTH W3, [W0++]                          ; Write PM high byte into program latch
; 1st_program_word
MOV    #LOW_WORD_1, W2                      ;
MOV    #HIGH_BYTE_1, W3                    ;
TBLWTL W2, [W0]                            ; Write PM low word into program latch
TBLWTH W3, [W0++]                          ; Write PM high byte into program latch
; 2nd_program_word
MOV    #LOW_WORD_2, W2                      ;
MOV    #HIGH_BYTE_2, W3                    ;
TBLWTL W2, [W0]                            ; Write PM low word into program latch
TBLWTH W3, [W0++]                          ; Write PM high byte into program latch
.
.
.
; 63rd_program_word
MOV    #LOW_WORD_63, W2                    ;
MOV    #HIGH_BYTE_63, W3                  ;
TBLWTL W2, [W0]                            ; Write PM low word into program latch
TBLWTH W3, [W0]                            ; Write PM high byte into program latch
```

## EXAMPLE 6-4: INITIATING A PROGRAMMING SEQUENCE

```
DISI    #5                                ; Block all interrupts with priority <7
                                           ; for next 5 instructions

MOV.B   #0x55, W0                         ;
MOV     W0, NVMKEY                        ; Write the 0x55 key
MOV.B   #0xAA, W1                         ;
MOV     W1, NVMKEY                        ; Write the 0xAA key
BSET    NVMCON, #WR                       ; Start the programming sequence
NOP                                           ; Required delays
NOP
BTSC    NVMCON, #15                        ; and wait for it to be
BRA     $-2                               ; completed
```

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 6.6.2 PROGRAMMING A SINGLE WORD OF FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

If a Flash location has been erased, it can be programmed using Table Write instructions to write an instruction word (24-bit) into the write latch. The TBLPAG register is loaded with the 8 Most Significant Bytes (MSBs) of the Flash address. The TBLWTL and TBLWTH instructions write the desired data into the write latches and specify the lower 16 bits of the

program memory address to write to. To configure the NVMCON register for a word write, set the NVMOPx bits (NVMCON<3:0>) to '0011'. The write is performed by executing the unlock sequence and setting the WR bit (see [Example 6-5](#)). An equivalent procedure in 'C' compiler language, using the MPLAB® C30 compiler and built-in hardware functions, is shown in [Example 6-6](#).

### EXAMPLE 6-5: PROGRAMMING A SINGLE WORD OF FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

```
; Setup a pointer to data Program Memory
MOV    #tblpage(PROG_ADDR), W0      ;
MOV    W0, TBLPAG                   ;Initialize PM Page Boundary SFR
MOV    #tbloffset(PROG_ADDR), W0    ;Initialize a register with program memory address

MOV    #LOW_WORD_N, W2              ;
MOV    #HIGH_BYTE_N, W3            ;
TBLWTL W2, [W0]                     ; Write PM low word into program latch
TBLWTH W3, [W0++]                   ; Write PM high byte into program latch

; Setup NVMCON for programming one word to data Program Memory
MOV    #0x4003, W0                  ;
MOV    W0, NVMCON                   ; Set NVMOP bits to 0011

DISI    #5                          ; Disable interrupts while the KEY sequence is written
MOV.B   #0x55, W0                   ; Write the key sequence
MOV     W0, NVMKEY
MOV.B   #0xAA, W0
MOV     W0, NVMKEY
BSET    NVMCON, #WR                 ; Start the write cycle
NOP                                           ; Required delays
NOP
```

### EXAMPLE 6-6: PROGRAMMING A SINGLE WORD OF FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY ('C' LANGUAGE CODE)

```
// C example using MPLAB C30
unsigned int offset;
unsigned long progAddr = 0xXXXXXX;           // Address of word to program
unsigned int progDataL = 0XXXX;              // Data to program lower word
unsigned char progDataH = 0XX;               // Data to program upper byte

//Set up NVMCON for word programming
NVMCON = 0x4003;                             // Initialize NVMCON

//Set up pointer to the first memory location to be written
TBLPAG = progAddr>>16;                        // Initialize PM Page Boundary SFR
offset = progAddr & 0xFFFF;                  // Initialize lower word of address

//Perform TBLWT instructions to write latches
__builtin_tblwtl(offset, progDataL);          // Write to address low word
__builtin_tblwth(offset, progDataH);          // Write to upper byte
asm("DISI #5");                               // Block interrupts with priority <7
                                           // for next 5 instructions
__builtin_write_NVM();                        // C30 function to perform unlock
                                           // sequence and set WR
```

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 7.0 RESETS

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “Reset” (DS39712). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The Reset module combines all Reset sources and controls the device Master Reset Signal,  $\overline{\text{SYSRST}}$ . The following is a list of device Reset sources:

- POR: Power-on Reset
- MCLR: Master Clear Pin Reset
- SWR: RESET Instruction
- WDT: Watchdog Timer Reset
- BOR: Brown-out Reset
- CM: Configuration Mismatch Reset
- TRAPR: Trap Conflict Reset
- IOPUWR: Illegal Opcode Reset
- UWR: Uninitialized W Register Reset

A simplified block diagram of the Reset module is shown in [Figure 7-1](#).

Any active source of Reset will make the  $\overline{\text{SYSRST}}$  signal active. Many registers associated with the CPU and peripherals are forced to a known Reset state. Most registers are unaffected by a Reset; their status is unknown on POR and unchanged by all other Resets.

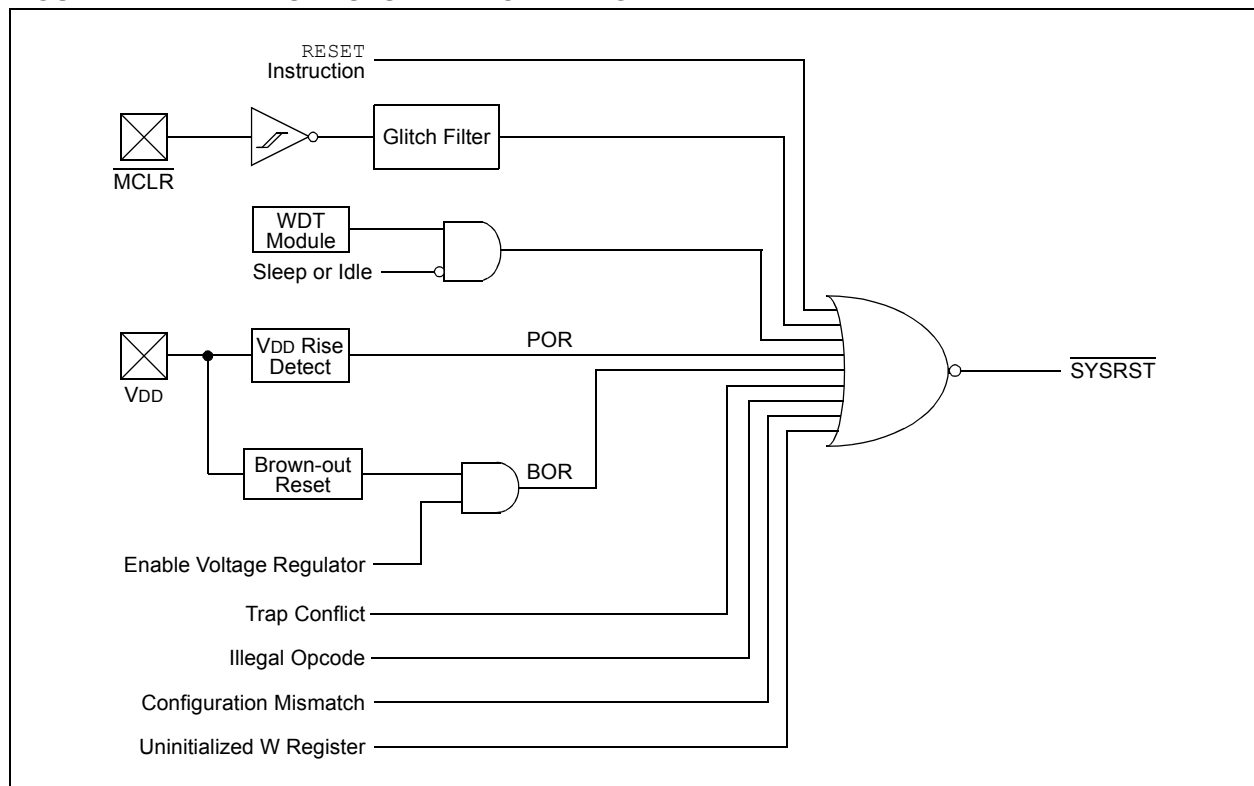
**Note:** Refer to the specific peripheral or CPU section of this manual for register Reset states.

All types of device Reset will set a corresponding status bit in the RCON register to indicate the type of Reset (see [Register 7-1](#)). In addition, Reset events occurring while an extreme power-saving feature is in use (such as VBAT) will set one or more status bits in the RCON2 register ([Register 7-2](#)). A POR will clear all bits, except for the BOR and POR (RCON<1:0>) bits, which are set. The user may set or clear any bit at any time during code execution. The RCON bits only serve as status bits. Setting a particular Reset status bit in software will not cause a device Reset to occur.

The RCON register also has other bits associated with the Watchdog Timer and device power-saving states. The function of these bits is discussed in other sections of this data sheet.

**Note:** The status bits in the RCON registers should be cleared after they are read so that the next RCON register values after a device Reset will be meaningful.

**FIGURE 7-1: RESET SYSTEM BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 7-1: RCON: RESET CONTROL REGISTER

|                      |                       |     |                      |     |                      |                   |                      |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----|----------------------|-----|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| R/W-0                | R/W-0                 | U-0 | R/W-0                | U-0 | R/W-0                | R/W-0             | R/W-0                |
| TRAPR <sup>(1)</sup> | IOPUWR <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | RETEN <sup>(2)</sup> | —   | DPSLP <sup>(1)</sup> | CM <sup>(1)</sup> | VREGS <sup>(3)</sup> |
| bit 15               |                       |     |                      |     |                      | bit 8             |                      |

|                     |                    |                       |                     |                      |                     |                    |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| R/W-0               | R/W-0              | R/W-0                 | R/W-0               | R/W-0                | R/W-0               | R/W-1              | R/W-1              |
| EXTR <sup>(1)</sup> | SWR <sup>(1)</sup> | SWDTEN <sup>(4)</sup> | WDTO <sup>(1)</sup> | SLEEP <sup>(1)</sup> | IDLE <sup>(1)</sup> | BOR <sup>(1)</sup> | POR <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7               |                    |                       |                     |                      |                     | bit 0              |                    |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15 **TRAPR:** Trap Reset Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = A Trap Conflict Reset has occurred  
 0 = A Trap Conflict Reset has not occurred
- bit 14 **IOPUWR:** Illegal Opcode or Uninitialized W Access Reset Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = An illegal opcode detection, an illegal address mode or Uninitialized W register is used as an Address Pointer and caused a Reset  
 0 = An illegal opcode or Uninitialized W register Reset has not occurred
- bit 13 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 12 **RETEN:** Retention Mode Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
 1 = Retention mode is enabled while device is in Sleep modes (1.2V regulator supplies to the core)  
 0 = Retention mode is disabled; normal voltage levels are present
- bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10 **DPSLP:** Deep Sleep Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = Device has been in Deep Sleep mode  
 0 = Device has not been in Deep Sleep mode
- bit 9 **CM:** Configuration Word Mismatch Reset Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = A Configuration Word Mismatch Reset has occurred  
 0 = A Configuration Word Mismatch Reset has not occurred
- bit 8 **VREGS:** Program Memory Power During Sleep bit<sup>(3)</sup>  
 1 = Program memory bias voltage remains powered during Sleep  
 0 = Program memory bias voltage is powered down during Sleep
- bit 7 **EXTR:** External Reset ( $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ ) Pin bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = A Master Clear (pin) Reset has occurred  
 0 = A Master Clear (pin) Reset has not occurred
- bit 6 **SWR:** Software Reset (Instruction) Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = A RESET instruction has been executed  
 0 = A RESET instruction has not been executed

**Note 1:** All of the Reset status bits may be set or cleared in software. Setting one of these bits in software does not cause a device Reset.

**2:** If the  $\overline{\text{LPCFG}}$  Configuration bit is '1' (unprogrammed), the retention regulator is disabled and the RETEN bit has no effect.

**3:** Re-enabling the regulator after it enters Standby mode will add a delay,  $T_{\text{VREG}}$ , when waking up from Sleep. Applications that do not use the voltage regulator should set this bit to prevent this delay from occurring.

**4:** If the FWDTEN Configuration bit is '1' (unprogrammed), the WDT is always enabled, regardless of the SWDTEN bit setting.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 7-1: RCON: RESET CONTROL REGISTER (CONTINUED)

|       |   |
|-------|---|
| bit 5 | <b>SWDTEN:</b> Software Enable/Disable of WDT bit <sup>(4)</sup><br>1 = WDT is enabled<br>0 = WDT is disabled   |
| bit 4 | <b>WDTO:</b> Watchdog Timer Time-out Flag bit <sup>(1)</sup><br>1 = WDT time-out has occurred<br>0 = WDT time-out has not occurred                                    |
| bit 3 | <b>SLEEP:</b> Wake from Sleep Flag bit <sup>(1)</sup><br>1 = Device has been in Sleep mode<br>0 = Device has not been in Sleep mode                                   |
| bit 2 | <b>IDLE:</b> Wake from Idle Flag bit <sup>(1)</sup><br>1 = Device has been in Idle mode<br>0 = Device has not been in Idle mode                                       |
| bit 1 | <b>BOR:</b> Brown-out Reset Flag bit <sup>(1)</sup><br>1 = A Brown-out Reset has occurred (also set after a Power-on Reset)<br>0 = A Brown-out Reset has not occurred |
| bit 0 | <b>POR:</b> Power-on Reset Flag bit <sup>(1)</sup><br>1 = A Power-on Reset has occurred<br>0 = A Power-on Reset has not occurred                                      |

- Note 1:** All of the Reset status bits may be set or cleared in software. Setting one of these bits in software does not cause a device Reset.
- 2:** If the LPCFG Configuration bit is '1' (unprogrammed), the retention regulator is disabled and the RETEN bit has no effect.
- 3:** Re-enabling the regulator after it enters Standby mode will add a delay, TVREG, when waking up from Sleep. Applications that do not use the voltage regulator should set this bit to prevent this delay from occurring.
- 4:** If the FWDTEN Configuration bit is '1' (unprogrammed), the WDT is always enabled, regardless of the SWDTEN bit setting.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 7-2: RCON2: RESET AND SYSTEM CONTROL REGISTER 2**

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |                       |                         |                        |                     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | r-0 | R/CO-1                | R/CO-1                  | R/CO-1                 | R/CO-0              |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | VDDBOR <sup>(1)</sup> | VDDPOR <sup>(1,2)</sup> | VBPOR <sup>(1,3)</sup> | VBAT <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |                       |                         |                        | bit 0               |

|                   |                         |                                    |
|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | CO = Clearable Only bit | r = Reserved bit                   |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit        | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set        | '0' = Bit is cleared               |
|                   |                         | x = Bit is unknown                 |

- bit 15-5      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 4      **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'
- bit 3      **VDDBOR:** VDD Brown-out Reset Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = A VDD Brown-out Reset has occurred (set by hardware)  
0 = A VDD Brown-out Reset has not occurred
- bit 2      **VDDPOR:** VDD Power-on Reset Flag bit<sup>(1,2)</sup>  
1 = A VDD Power-on Reset has occurred (set by hardware)  
0 = A VDD Power-on Reset has not occurred
- bit 1      **VBPOR:** VBPOr Flag bit<sup>(1,3)</sup>  
1 = A VBAT POR has occurred (no battery is connected to the VBAT pin or VBAT power below the Deep Sleep Semaphore retention level is set by hardware)  
0 = A VBAT POR has not occurred
- bit 0      **VBAT:** VBAT Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = A POR exit has occurred while power was applied to the VBAT pin (set by hardware)  
0 = A POR exit from VBAT has not occurred

- Note 1:** This bit is set in hardware only; it can only be cleared in software.
- 2:** This bit indicates a VDD Power-on Reset. Setting the POR bit (RCON<0>) indicates a Vcore Power-on Reset.
- 3:** This bit is set when the device is originally powered up, even if power is present on VBAT.

**TABLE 7-1: RESET FLAG BIT OPERATION**

| Flag Bit          | Setting Event                                     | Clearing Event                   |
|-------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| TRAPR (RCON<15>)  | Trap Conflict Event                               | POR                              |
| IOPUWR (RCON<14>) | Illegal Opcode or Uninitialized W Register Access | POR                              |
| CM (RCON<9>)      | Configuration Mismatch Reset                      | POR                              |
| EXTR (RCON<7>)    | MCLR Reset  | POR                              |
| SWR (RCON<6>)     | RESET Instruction                                 | POR                              |
| WDTO (RCON<4>)    | WDT Time-out                                      | CLRWDT, PWRSAV Instructions, POR |
| SLEEP (RCON<3>)   | PWRSAV #0 Instruction                             | POR                              |
| DPSLP (RCON<10>)  | PWRSAV #0 Instruction while DSEN bit is Set       | POR                              |
| IDLE (RCON<2>)    | PWRSAV #1 Instruction                             | POR                              |
| BOR (RCON<1>)     | POR, BOR  | —                                |
| POR (RCON<0>)     | POR   | —                                |

**Note:** All Reset flag bits may be set or cleared by the user software.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 7.1 Special Function Register Reset States

Most of the Special Function Registers (SFRs) associated with the PIC24F CPU and peripherals are reset to a particular value at a device Reset. The SFRs are grouped by their peripheral or CPU function and their Reset values are specified in each section of this manual.

The Reset value for each SFR does not depend on the type of Reset, with the exception of four registers. The Reset value for the Reset Control register, RCON, will depend on the type of device Reset. The Reset value for the Oscillator Control register, OSCCON, will depend on the type of Reset and the programmed values of the FNOSC<sub>x</sub> bits in Flash Configuration Word 2 (CW2); see [Table 7-2](#). The RCFGAL and NVMCON registers are only affected by a POR.

## 7.2 Device Reset Times

The Reset times for various types of device Reset are summarized in [Table 7-3](#). Note that the Master Reset Signal,  $\overline{\text{SYSRST}}$ , is released after the POR delay time expires.

The time at which the device actually begins to execute code will also depend on the system oscillator delays, which include the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) and the PLL lock time. The OST and PLL lock times occur in parallel with the applicable  $\overline{\text{SYSRST}}$  delay times.

The Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) delay determines the time at which the FSCM begins to monitor the system clock source after the  $\overline{\text{SYSRST}}$  signal is released.

## 7.3 Brown-out Reset (BOR)

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices implement a BOR circuit that provides the user with several configuration and power-saving options. The BOR is controlled by the BOREN (CW3<12>) Configuration bit.

When BOR is enabled, any drop of  $V_{DD}$  below the BOR threshold results in a device BOR. Threshold levels are described in [Section 33.1 “DC Characteristics”](#) (Parameter [DC17A](#)).

## 7.4 Clock Source Selection at Reset

If clock switching is enabled, the system clock source at device Reset is chosen, as shown in [Table 7-2](#). If clock switching is disabled, the system clock source is always selected according to the Oscillator Configuration bits. For more information, refer to the “*dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual*”, “**Oscillator**” (DS39700).

**TABLE 7-2: OSCILLATOR SELECTION vs. TYPE OF RESET (CLOCK SWITCHING ENABLED)**

| Reset Type               | Clock Source Determinant                  |
|--------------------------|---|
| POR                      | FNOSC<2:0> Configuration bits (CW2<10:8>) |
| BOR                      |   |
| $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ | COSC<2:0> Control bits (OSCCON<14:12>)    |
| WDTO                     |   |
| SWR                      |   |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 7-3: RESET DELAY TIMES FOR VARIOUS DEVICE RESETS**

| Reset Type      | Clock Source | <u>SYSRST</u> Delay    | System Clock Delay | Notes         |
|-----------------|--------------|------------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| POR             | EC           | TPOR + TSTARTUP + TRST | —                  | 1, 2, 3       |
|                 | ECPLL        | TPOR + TSTARTUP + TRST | TLOCK              | 1, 2, 3, 5    |
|                 | XT, HS, SOSC | TPOR + TSTARTUP + TRST | TOST               | 1, 2, 3, 4    |
|                 | XTPLL, HSPLL | TPOR + TSTARTUP + TRST | TOST + TLOCK       | 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 |
|                 | FRC, FRCDIV  | TPOR + TSTARTUP + TRST | TFRC               | 1, 2, 3, 6, 7 |
|                 | FRCPLL       | TPOR + TSTARTUP + TRST | TFRC + TLOCK       | 1, 2, 3, 5, 6 |
|                 | LPRC         | TPOR + TSTARTUP + TRST | TLPRC              | 1, 2, 3, 6    |
| BOR             | EC           | TSTARTUP + TRST        | —                  | 2, 3          |
|                 | ECPLL        | TSTARTUP + TRST        | TLOCK              | 2, 3, 5       |
|                 | XT, HS, SOSC | TSTARTUP + TRST        | TOST               | 2, 3, 4       |
|                 | XTPLL, HSPLL | TSTARTUP + TRST        | TOST + TLOCK       | 2, 3, 4, 5    |
|                 | FRC, FRCDIV  | TSTARTUP + TRST        | TFRC               | 2, 3, 6, 7    |
|                 | FRCPLL       | TSTARTUP + TRST        | TFRC + TLOCK       | 2, 3, 5, 6    |
|                 | LPRC         | TSTARTUP + TRST        | TLPRC              | 2, 3, 6       |
| MCLR            | Any Clock    | TRST                   | —                  | 3             |
| WDT             | Any Clock    | TRST                   | —                  | 3             |
| Software        | Any clock    | TRST                   | —                  | 3             |
| Illegal Opcode  | Any Clock    | TRST                   | —                  | 3             |
| Uninitialized W | Any Clock    | TRST                   | —                  | 3             |
| Trap Conflict   | Any Clock    | TRST                   | —                  | 3             |

**Note 1:** TPOR = Power-on Reset delay (10  $\mu$ s nominal).

**2:** TSTARTUP = TVREG.

**3:** TRST = Internal State Reset time (2  $\mu$ s nominal).

**4:** TOST = Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST). A 10-bit counter counts 1024 oscillator periods before releasing the oscillator clock to the system.

**5:** TLOCK = PLL lock time.

**6:** TFRC and TLPRC = RC Oscillator start-up times.

**7:** If Two-Speed Start-up is enabled, regardless of the Primary Oscillator selected, the device starts with FRC so the system clock delay is just TFRC, and in such cases, FRC start-up time is valid; it switches to the Primary Oscillator after its respective clock delay.

## 7.4.1 POR AND LONG OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMES

The oscillator start-up circuitry and its associated delay timers are not linked to the device Reset delays that occur at power-up. Some crystal circuits (especially low-frequency crystals) will have a relatively long start-up time. Therefore, one or more of the following conditions is possible after SYSRST is released:

- The oscillator circuit has not begun to oscillate.
- The Oscillator Start-up Timer has not expired (if a crystal oscillator is used).
- The PLL has not achieved a lock (if PLL is used).

The device will not begin to execute code until a valid clock source has been released to the system. Therefore, the oscillator and PLL start-up delays must be considered when the Reset delay time must be known.

## 7.4.2 FAIL-SAFE CLOCK MONITOR (FSCM) AND DEVICE RESETS

If the FSCM is enabled, it will begin to monitor the system clock source when SYSRST is released. If a valid clock source is not available at this time, the device will automatically switch to the FRC Oscillator and the user can switch to the desired crystal oscillator in the Trap Service Routine (TSR).

## 8.0 INTERRUPT CONTROLLER

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the *dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual*, “Interrupts” (DS70000600). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The PIC24F interrupt controller reduces the numerous peripheral interrupt request signals to a single interrupt request signal to the PIC24F CPU. It has the following features:

- Up to 8 processor exceptions and software traps
- Seven user-selectable priority levels
- Interrupt Vector Table (IVT) with up to 118 vectors
- Unique vector for each interrupt or exception source
- Fixed priority within a specified user priority level
- Alternate Interrupt Vector Table (AIVT) for debug support
- Fixed interrupt entry and return latencies

### 8.1 Interrupt Vector Table

The Interrupt Vector Table (IVT) is shown in [Figure 8-1](#). The IVT resides in program memory, starting at location, 000004h. The IVT contains 126 vectors, consisting of 8 non-maskable trap vectors, plus up to 118 sources of interrupt. In general, each interrupt source has its own vector. Each interrupt vector contains a 24-bit wide address. The value programmed into each interrupt vector location is the starting address of the associated Interrupt Service Routine (ISR).

Interrupt vectors are prioritized in terms of their natural priority; this is linked to their position in the vector table. All other things being equal, lower addresses have a higher natural priority. For example, the interrupt associated with Vector 0 will take priority over interrupts at any other vector address.

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices implement non-maskable traps and unique interrupts. These are summarized in [Table 8-1](#) and [Table 8-2](#).

#### 8.1.1 ALTERNATE INTERRUPT VECTOR TABLE

The Alternate Interrupt Vector Table (AIVT) is located after the IVT, as shown in [Figure 8-1](#). The ALTIVT (INTCON2<15>) control bit provides access to the AIVT. If the ALTIVT bit is set, all interrupt and exception processes will use the alternate vectors instead of the default vectors. The alternate vectors are organized in the same manner as the default vectors.

The AIVT supports emulation and debugging efforts by providing a means to switch between an application and a support environment without requiring the interrupt vectors to be reprogrammed. This feature also enables switching between applications for evaluation of different software algorithms at run time. If the AIVT is not needed, the AIVT should be programmed with the same addresses used in the IVT.

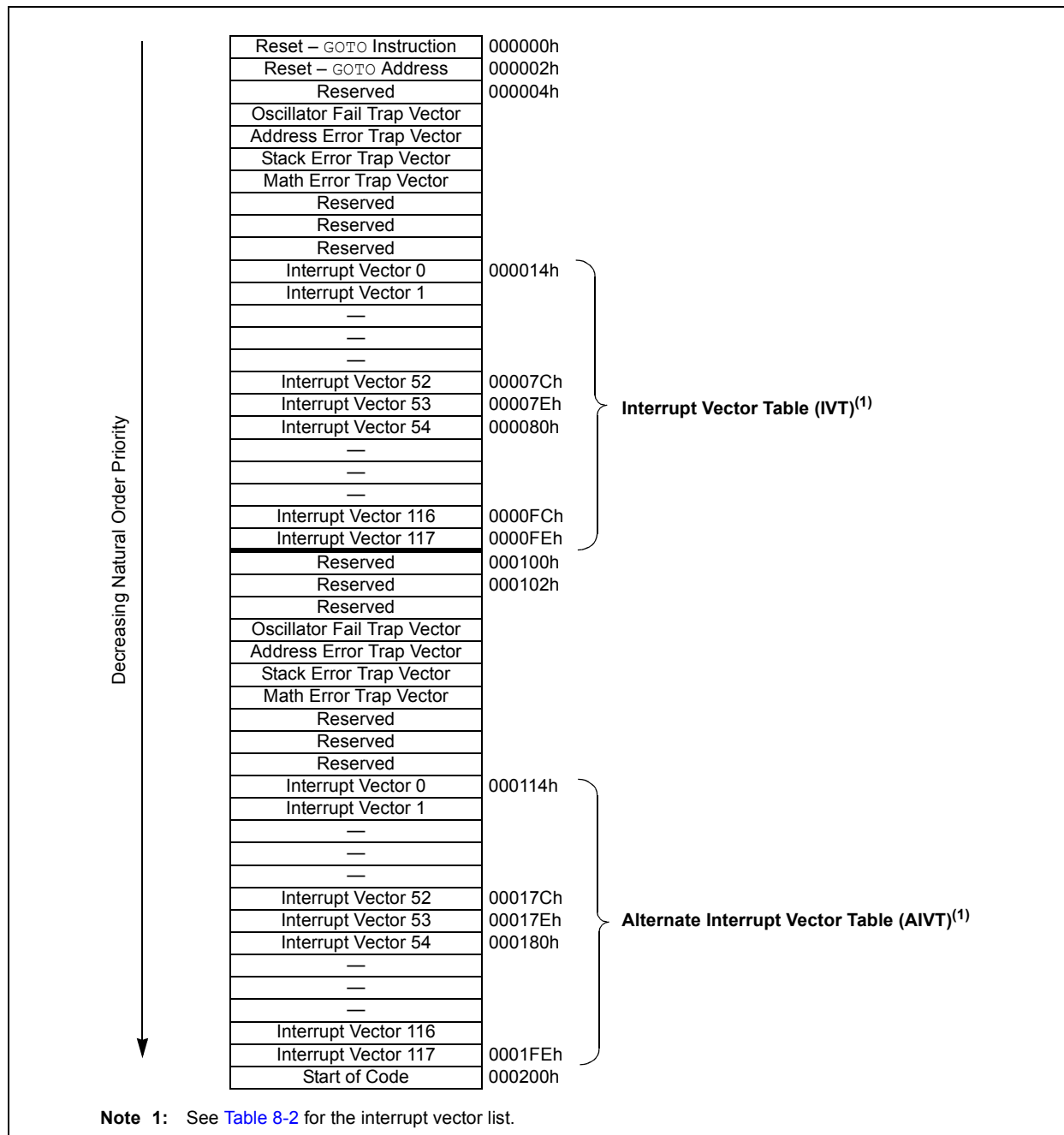
## 8.2 Reset Sequence

A device Reset is not a true exception because the interrupt controller is not involved in the Reset process. The PIC24F devices clear their registers in response to a Reset, which forces the PC to zero. The microcontroller then begins program execution at location, 000000h. The user programs a GOTO instruction at the Reset address, which redirects program execution to the appropriate start-up routine.

**Note:** Any unimplemented or unused vector locations in the IVT and AIVT should be programmed with the address of a default interrupt handler routine that contains a RESET instruction.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 8-1: PIC24F INTERRUPT VECTOR TABLE**



**TABLE 8-1: TRAP VECTOR DETAILS**

| Vector Number | IVT Address | AIVT Address | Trap Source        |
|---------------|-------------|--------------|--------------------|
| 0             | 000004h     | 000104h      | Reserved           |
| 1             | 000006h     | 000106h      | Oscillator Failure |
| 2             | 000008h     | 000108h      | Address Error      |
| 3             | 00000Ah     | 00010Ah      | Stack Error        |
| 4             | 00000Ch     | 00010Ch      | Math Error         |
| 5             | 00000Eh     | 00010Eh      | Reserved           |
| 6             | 000010h     | 000110h      | Reserved           |
| 7             | 000012h     | 000112h      | Reserved           |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 8-2: IMPLEMENTED INTERRUPT VECTORS**

| Interrupt Source                     | Vector # | IRQ # | IVT Address | AIVT Address | Interrupt Bit Locations |          |              |
|--------------------------------------|----------|-------|-------------|--------------|-------------------------|----------|--------------|
|                                      |          |       |             |              | Flag                    | Enable   | Priority     |
| ADC1 Interrupt                       | 21       | 13    | 00002Eh     | 00012Eh      | IFS0<13>                | IEC0<13> | IPC3<6:4>    |
| Comparator Event                     | 26       | 18    | 000038h     | 000138h      | IFS1<2>                 | IEC1<2>  | IPC4<10:8>   |
| CRC Generator                        | 75       | 67    | 00009Ah     | 00019Ah      | IFS4<3>                 | IEC4<3>  | IPC16<14:12> |
| CTMU Event                           | 85       | 77    | 0000AEh     | 0001AEh      | IFS4<13>                | IEC4<13> | IPC19<6:4>   |
| Cryptographic Operation Done         | 63       | 55    | 000082h     | 000182h      | IFS3<7>                 | IEC3<7>  | IPC13<14:12> |
| Cryptographic Key Store Program Done | 64       | 56    | 000084h     | 000184h      | IFS3<8>                 | IEC3<8>  | IPC14<2:0>   |
| Cryptographic Buffer Ready           | 42       | 34    | 000058h     | 000158h      | IFS2<2>                 | IEC2<2>  | IPC8<10:8>   |
| Cryptographic Rollover               | 43       | 35    | 00005Ah     | 00015Ah      | IFS2<3>                 | IEC2<3>  | IPC8<14:12>  |
| DMA Channel 0                        | 12       | 4     | 00001Ch     | 00011Ch      | IFS0<4>                 | IEC0<4>  | IPC1<2:0>    |
| DMA Channel 1                        | 22       | 14    | 000030h     | 000130h      | IFS0<14>                | IEC0<14> | IPC3<10:8>   |
| DMA Channel 2                        | 32       | 24    | 000044h     | 000144h      | IFS1<8>                 | IEC1<8>  | IPC6<2:0>    |
| DMA Channel 3                        | 44       | 36    | 00005Ch     | 00015Ch      | IFS2<4>                 | IEC2<4>  | IPC9<2:0>    |
| DMA Channel 4                        | 54       | 46    | 000070h     | 000170h      | IFS2<14>                | IEC2<14> | IPC11<10:8>  |
| DMA Channel 5                        | 69       | 61    | 00008Eh     | 00018Eh      | IFS3<13>                | IEC3<13> | IPC15<6:4>   |
| External Interrupt 0                 | 8        | 0     | 000014h     | 000114h      | IFS0<0>                 | IEC0<0>  | IPC0<2:0>    |
| External Interrupt 1                 | 28       | 20    | 00003Ch     | 00013Ch      | IFS1<4>                 | IEC1<4>  | IPC5<2:0>    |
| External Interrupt 2                 | 37       | 29    | 00004Eh     | 00014Eh      | IFS1<13>                | IEC1<13> | IPC7<6:4>    |
| External Interrupt 3                 | 61       | 53    | 00007Eh     | 00017Eh      | IFS3<5>                 | IEC3<5>  | IPC13<6:4>   |
| External Interrupt 4                 | 62       | 54    | 000080h     | 000180h      | IFS3<6>                 | IEC3<6>  | IPC13<10:8>  |
| FRC Self-Tune                        | 114      | 106   | 0000E8h     | 0001E8h      | IFS6<10>                | IEC6<10> | IPC26<10:8>  |
| I2C1 Master Event                    | 25       | 17    | 000036h     | 000136h      | IFS1<1>                 | IEC1<1>  | IPC4<6:4>    |
| I2C1 Slave Event                     | 24       | 16    | 000034h     | 000134h      | IFS1<0>                 | IEC1<0>  | IPC4<2:0>    |
| I2C1 Bus Collision                   | 92       | 84    | 0000BC      | 0001BC       | IFS5<4>                 | IEC5<4>  | IPC21<2:0>   |
| I2C2 Master Event                    | 58       | 50    | 000078h     | 000178h      | IFS3<2>                 | IEC3<2>  | IPC12<10:8>  |
| I2C2 Slave Event                     | 57       | 49    | 000076h     | 000176h      | IFS3<1>                 | IEC3<1>  | IPC12<6:4>   |
| I2C2 Bus Collision                   | 93       | 85    | 0000BE      | 0001BE       | IFS5<5>                 | IEC5<5>  | IPC21<6:4>   |
| Input Capture 1                      | 9        | 1     | 000016h     | 000116h      | IFS0<1>                 | IEC0<1>  | IPC0<6:4>    |
| Input Capture 2                      | 13       | 5     | 00001Eh     | 00011Eh      | IFS0<5>                 | IEC0<5>  | IPC1<6:4>    |
| Input Capture 3                      | 45       | 37    | 00005Eh     | 00015Eh      | IFS2<5>                 | IEC2<5>  | IPC9<6:4>    |
| Input Capture 4                      | 46       | 38    | 000060h     | 000160h      | IFS2<6>                 | IEC2<6>  | IPC9<10:8>   |
| Input Capture 5                      | 47       | 39    | 000062h     | 000162h      | IFS2<7>                 | IEC2<7>  | IPC9<14:12>  |
| Input Capture 6                      | 48       | 40    | 000064h     | 000164h      | IFS2<8>                 | IEC2<8>  | IPC10<2:0>   |
| JTAG                                 | 125      | 117   | 0000FEh     | 0001FEh      | IFS7<5>                 | IEC7<5>  | IPC29<6:4>   |
| Input Change Notification (ICN)      | 27       | 19    | 00003Ah     | 00013Ah      | IFS1<3>                 | IEC1<3>  | IPC4<14:12>  |
| High/Low-Voltage Detect (HLVD)       | 80       | 72    | 0000A4h     | 0001A4h      | IFS4<8>                 | IEC4<8>  | IPC18<2:0>   |
| Output Compare 1                     | 10       | 2     | 000018h     | 000118h      | IFS0<2>                 | IEC0<2>  | IPC0<10:8>   |
| Output Compare 2                     | 14       | 6     | 000020h     | 000120h      | IFS0<6>                 | IEC0<6>  | IPC1<10:8>   |
| Output Compare 3                     | 33       | 25    | 000046h     | 000146h      | IFS1<9>                 | IEC1<9>  | IPC6<6:4>    |
| Output Compare 4                     | 34       | 26    | 000048h     | 000148h      | IFS1<10>                | IEC1<10> | IPC6<10:8>   |
| Output Compare 5                     | 49       | 41    | 000066h     | 000166h      | IFS2<9>                 | IEC2<9>  | IPC10<6:4>   |
| Output Compare 6                     | 50       | 42    | 000068h     | 000168h      | IFS2<10>                | IEC2<10> | IPC10<10:8>  |
| Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP) | 53       | 45    | 00006Eh     | 00016Eh      | IFS2<13>                | IEC2<13> | IPC11<6:4>   |
| Real-Time Clock and Calendar (RTCC)  | 70       | 62    | 000090h     | 000190h      | IFS3<14>                | IEC3<14> | IPC15<10:8>  |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 8-2: IMPLEMENTED INTERRUPT VECTORS (CONTINUED)**

| Interrupt Source  | Vector # | IRQ # | IVT Address | AIVT Address | Interrupt Bit Locations |          |              |
|-------------------|----------|-------|-------------|--------------|-------------------------|----------|--------------|
|                   |          |       |             |              | Flag                    | Enable   | Priority     |
| SPI1 General      | 17       | 9     | 000026h     | 000126h      | IFS0<9>                 | IEC0<9>  | IPC2<6:4>    |
| SPI1 Transmit     | 18       | 10    | 000028h     | 000128h      | IFS0<10>                | IEC0<10> | IPC2<10:8>   |
| SPI1 Receive      | 66       | 58    | 000088h     | 000188h      | IFS3<10>                | IEC3<10> | IPC14<10:8>  |
| SPI2 General      | 40       | 32    | 000054h     | 000154h      | IFS2<0>                 | IEC2<0>  | IPC8<2:0>    |
| SPI2 Transmit     | 41       | 33    | 000056h     | 000156h      | IFS2<1>                 | IEC2<1>  | IPC8<6:4>    |
| SPI2 Receive      | 67       | 59    | 00008Ah     | 00018Ah      | IFS3<11>                | IEC3<11> | IPC14<14:12> |
| SPI3 General      | 98       | 90    | 0000C8h     | 0001C8h      | IFS5<10>                | IEC5<10> | IPC22<10:8>  |
| SPI3 Transmit     | 99       | 91    | 0000CAh     | 0001CAh      | IFS5<11>                | IEC5<11> | IPC22<14:12> |
| SPI3 Receive      | 68       | 60    | 000054h     | 000154h      | IFS3<12>                | IEC3<12> | IPC15<2:0>   |
| Timer1            | 11       | 3     | 00001Ah     | 00011Ah      | IFS0<3>                 | IEC0<3>  | IPC0<14:12>  |
| Timer2            | 15       | 7     | 000022h     | 000122h      | IFS0<7>                 | IEC0<7>  | IPC1<14:12>  |
| Timer3            | 16       | 8     | 000024h     | 000124h      | IFS0<8>                 | IEC0<8>  | IPC2<2:0>    |
| Timer4            | 35       | 27    | 00004Ah     | 00014Ah      | IFS1<11>                | IEC1<11> | IPC6<14:12>  |
| Timer5            | 36       | 28    | 00004Ch     | 00014Ch      | IFS1<12>                | IEC1<12> | IPC7<2:0>    |
| UART1 Error       | 73       | 65    | 000096h     | 000196h      | IFS4<1>                 | IEC4<1>  | IPC16<6:4>   |
| UART1 Receiver    | 19       | 11    | 00002Ah     | 00012Ah      | IFS0<11>                | IEC0<11> | IPC2<14:12>  |
| UART1 Transmitter | 20       | 12    | 00002Ch     | 00012Ch      | IFS0<12>                | IEC0<12> | IPC3<2:0>    |
| UART2 Error       | 74       | 66    | 000098h     | 000198h      | IFS4<2>                 | IEC4<2>  | IPC16<10:8>  |
| UART2 Receiver    | 38       | 30    | 000050h     | 000150h      | IFS1<14>                | IEC1<14> | IPC7<10:8>   |
| UART2 Transmitter | 39       | 31    | 000052h     | 000152h      | IFS1<15>                | IEC1<15> | IPC7<14:12>  |
| UART3 Error       | 89       | 81    | 0000B6h     | 0001B6h      | IFS5<1>                 | IEC5<1>  | IPC20<6:4>   |
| UART3 Receiver    | 90       | 82    | 0000B8h     | 0001B8h      | IFS5<2>                 | IEC5<2>  | IPC20<10:8>  |
| UART3 Transmitter | 91       | 83    | 0000BAh     | 0001BAh      | IFS5<3>                 | IEC5<3>  | IPC20<14:12> |
| UART4 Error       | 95       | 87    | 0000C2h     | 0001C2h      | IFS5<7>                 | IEC5<7>  | IPC21<14:12> |
| UART4 Receiver    | 96       | 88    | 0000C4h     | 0001C4h      | IFS5<8>                 | IEC5<8>  | IPC22<2:0>   |
| UART4 Transmitter | 97       | 89    | 0000C6h     | 0001C6h      | IFS5<9>                 | IEC5<9>  | IPC22<6:4>   |
| USB               | 94       | 86    | 0000C0h     | 0001C0h      | IFS5<6>                 | IEC5<6>  | IPC21<10:8>  |

## 8.3 Interrupt Control and Status Registers

The PIC24FJ128GB204 family of devices implements a total of 43 registers for the interrupt controller:

- INTCON1
- INTCON2
- IFS0 through IFS7
- IEC0 through IEC7
- IPC0 through IPC16, IPC18 through IPC22, IPC26 and IPC29
- INTTREG

Global interrupt control functions are controlled from INTCON1 and INTCON2. INTCON1 contains the Interrupt Nesting Disable (NSTDIS) bit, as well as the control and status flags for the processor trap sources. The INTCON2 register controls the external interrupt request signal behavior and the use of the Alternate Interrupt Vector Table (AIVT).

The IFSx registers maintain all of the interrupt request flags. Each source of interrupt has a status bit, which is set by the respective peripherals or an external signal and is cleared via software.

The IECx registers maintain all of the interrupt enable bits. These control bits are used to individually enable interrupts from the peripherals or external signals.

The IPCx registers are used to set the Interrupt Priority Level (IPL) for each source of interrupt. Each user interrupt source can be assigned to one of eight priority levels.

The INTTREG register contains the associated interrupt vector number and the new CPU Interrupt Priority Level, which are latched into the Vector Number (VECNUM<7:0>) and the Interrupt Level (ILR<3:0>) bit fields in the INTTREG register. The new Interrupt Priority Level is the priority of the pending interrupt.

The interrupt sources are assigned to the IFSx, IECx and IPCx registers in the order of their vector numbers, as shown in [Table 8-2](#). For example, the INT0 (External Interrupt 0) is shown as having a vector number and a natural order priority of 0. Thus, the INT0IF status bit is found in IFS0<0>, the INT0IE enable bit in IEC0<0> and the INT0IP<2:0> priority bits in the first position of IPC0 (IPC0<2:0>).

Although they are not specifically part of the interrupt control hardware, two of the CPU Control registers contain bits that control interrupt functionality. The ALU STATUS Register (SR) contains the IPL<2:0> bits (SR<7:5>). These indicate the current CPU Interrupt Priority Level. The user can change the current CPU priority level by writing to the IPLx bits.

The CORCON register contains the IPL3 bit, which together with the IPL<2:0> bits, indicates the current CPU priority level. IPL3 is a read-only bit so that trap events cannot be masked by the user software.

The interrupt controller has the Interrupt Controller Test register, INTTREG, which displays the status of the interrupt controller. When an interrupt request occurs, its associated vector number and the new Interrupt Priority Level are latched into INTTREG. This information can be used to determine a specific interrupt source if a generic ISR is used for multiple vectors (such as when ISR remapping is used in bootloader applications) or to check if another interrupt is pending while in an ISR.

All Interrupt registers are described in [Register 8-1](#) through [Register 8-45](#) in the succeeding pages.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-1: SR: ALU STATUS REGISTER (IN CPU)

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |                   |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------------------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0             |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | DC <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8             |

|                       |                       |                       |                   |                  |                   |                  |                  |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 | R-0               | R/W-0            | R/W-0             | R/W-0            | R/W-0            |
| IPL2 <sup>(2,3)</sup> | IPL1 <sup>(2,3)</sup> | IPL0 <sup>(2,3)</sup> | RA <sup>(1)</sup> | N <sup>(1)</sup> | OV <sup>(1)</sup> | Z <sup>(1)</sup> | C <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7                 |                       |                       |                   |                  |                   |                  | bit 0            |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-9 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7-5 **IPL<2:0>:** CPU Interrupt Priority Level Status bits<sup>(2,3)</sup>

111 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 7 (15); user interrupts are disabled

110 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 6 (14)

101 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 5 (13)

100 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 4 (12)

011 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 3 (11)

010 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 2 (10)

001 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 1 (9)

000 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 0 (8)

**Note 1:** See [Register 3-1](#) for the description of the remaining bits (bits 8, 4, 3, 2, 1 and 0) that are not dedicated to interrupt control functions.

**2:** The IPLx bits are concatenated with the IPL3 (CORCON<3>) bit to form the CPU Interrupt Priority Level. The value in parentheses indicates the Interrupt Priority Level if IPL3 = 1.

**3:** The IPLx bits are read-only when NSTDIS (INTCON1<15>) = 1.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-2: CORCON: CPU CORE CONTROL REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |       |     |     |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| bit 15 |     |     |     | bit 8 |     |     |     |

|       |     |     |     |                     |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|---------------------|-----|-----|-----|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/C-0               | r-1 | U-0 | U-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | IPL3 <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | —   | —   |
| bit 7 |     |     |     | bit 0               |     |     |     |

|                   |                  |                                    |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | r = Reserved bit | C = Clearable bit                  |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set | '0' = Bit is cleared               |
|                   |                  | x = Bit is unknown                 |

- bit 15-4     **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 3        **IPL3:** CPU Interrupt Priority Level Status bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
               1 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is greater than 7  
               0 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 7 or less
- bit 2        **Reserved:** Read as PSV bit
- bit 1-0     **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**Note 1:** The IPL3 bit is concatenated with the IPL<2:0> bits (SR<7:5>) to form the CPU Interrupt Priority Level; see [Register 3-2](#) for bit description.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 8-3: INTCON1: INTERRUPT CONTROL REGISTER 1**

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| NSTDIS | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |         |         |        |         |       |
|-------|-----|-----|---------|---------|--------|---------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0  | R/W-0   | U-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | MATHERR | ADDRERR | STKERR | OSCFAIL | —     |
| bit 7 |     |     |         |         |        |         | bit 0 |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **NSTDIS:** Interrupt Nesting Disable bit  
                  1 = Interrupt nesting is disabled  
                  0 = Interrupt nesting is enabled
- bit 14-5    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 4        **MATHERR:** Arithmetic Error Trap Status bit  
                  1 = Overflow trap has occurred  
                  0 = Overflow trap has not occurred
- bit 3        **ADDRERR:** Address Error Trap Status bit  
                  1 = Address error trap has occurred  
                  0 = Address error trap has not occurred
- bit 2        **STKERR:** Stack Error Trap Status bit  
                  1 = Stack error trap has occurred  
                  0 = Stack error trap has not occurred
- bit 1        **OSCFAIL:** Oscillator Failure Trap Status bit  
                  1 = Oscillator failure trap has occurred  
                  0 = Oscillator failure trap has not occurred
- bit 0        **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 8-4: INTCON2: INTERRUPT CONTROL REGISTER 2**

|        |          |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| R/W-0  | R-0, HSC | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| ALTIVT | DISI     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |          |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | —   | INT4EP | INT3EP | INT2EP | INT1EP | INT0EP |
| bit 7 |     |     |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

|                   |                                       |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit                      | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                      | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| bit 15   | <b>ALTIVT:</b> Enable Alternate Interrupt Vector Table bit<br>1 = Uses Alternate Interrupt Vector Table<br>0 = Uses standard (default) Interrupt Vector Table |
| bit 14   | <b>DISI:</b> DISI Instruction Status bit<br>1 = DISI instruction is active<br>0 = DISI instruction is not active  |
| bit 13-5 | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'   |
| bit 4    | <b>INT4EP:</b> External Interrupt 4 Edge Detect Polarity Select bit<br>1 = Interrupt on negative edge<br>0 = Interrupt on positive edge                       |
| bit 3    | <b>INT3EP:</b> External Interrupt 3 Edge Detect Polarity Select bit<br>1 = Interrupt on negative edge<br>0 = Interrupt on positive edge                       |
| bit 2    | <b>INT2EP:</b> External Interrupt 2 Edge Detect Polarity Select bit<br>1 = Interrupt on negative edge<br>0 = Interrupt on positive edge                       |
| bit 1    | <b>INT1EP:</b> External Interrupt 1 Edge Detect Polarity Select bit<br>1 = Interrupt on negative edge<br>0 = Interrupt on positive edge                       |
| bit 0    | <b>INT0EP:</b> External Interrupt 0 Edge Detect Polarity Select bit<br>1 = Interrupt on negative edge<br>0 = Interrupt on positive edge                       |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-5: IFS0: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 0

|        |        |       |        |        |          |        |       |
|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|----------|--------|-------|
| U-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0 |
| —      | DMA1IF | AD1IF | U1TXIF | U1RXIF | SPI1TXIF | SPI1IF | T3IF  |
| bit 15 |        |       |        |        |          |        | bit 8 |

|       |       |       |        |       |       |       |        |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  |
| T2IF  | OC2IF | IC2IF | DMA0IF | T1IF  | OC1IF | IC1IF | INT0IF |
| bit 7 |       |       |        |       |       |       | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 14 **DMA1IF:** DMA Channel 1 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 13 **AD1IF:** ADC1 Event Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 12 **U1TXIF:** UART1 Transmitter Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 11 **U1RXIF:** UART1 Receiver Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 10 **SPI1TXIF:** SPI1 Transmit Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 9 **SPI1IF:** SPI1 General Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 8 **T3IF:** Timer3 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 7 **T2IF:** Timer2 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 6 **OC2IF:** Output Compare Channel 2 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 5 **IC2IF:** Input Capture Channel 2 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 4 **DMA0IF:** DMA Channel 0 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 3 **T1IF:** Timer1 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 8-5: IFS0: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 0 (CONTINUED)

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| bit 2 | <b>OC1IF:</b> Output Compare Channel 1 Interrupt Flag Status bit<br>1 = Interrupt request has occurred<br>0 = Interrupt request has not occurred |
| bit 1 | <b>IC1IF:</b> Input Capture Channel 1 Interrupt Flag Status bit<br>1 = Interrupt request has occurred<br>0 = Interrupt request has not occurred  |
| bit 0 | <b>INT0IF:</b> External Interrupt 0 Flag Status bit<br>1 = Interrupt request has occurred<br>0 = Interrupt request has not occurred              |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-6: IFS1: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 1

|        |        |        |       |       |       |       |        |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  |
| U2TXIF | U2RXIF | INT2IF | T5IF  | T4IF  | OC4IF | OC3IF | DMA2IF |
| bit 15 |        |        |       |       |       |       | bit 8  |

|       |     |     |        |       |       |         |         |
|-------|-----|-----|--------|-------|-------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | INT1IF | CNIF  | CMIF  | MI2C1IF | SI2C1IF |
| bit 7 |     |     |        |       |       |         | bit 0   |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **U2TXIF:** UART2 Transmitter Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 14      **U2RXIF:** UART2 Receiver Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 13      **INT2IF:** External Interrupt 2 Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 12      **T5IF:** Timer5 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 11      **T4IF:** Timer4 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 10      **OC4IF:** Output Compare Channel 4 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 9        **OC3IF:** Output Compare Channel 3 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 8        **DMA2IF:** DMA Channel 2 Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 7-5      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 4        **INT1IF:** External Interrupt 1 Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 3        **CNIF:** Input Change Notification Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 8-6: IFS1: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 1 (CONTINUED)

|       |   |
|-------|---|
| bit 2 | <b>CMIF:</b> Comparator Interrupt Flag Status bit<br>1 = Interrupt request has occurred<br>0 = Interrupt request has not occurred           |
| bit 1 | <b>MI2C1IF:</b> Master I2C1 Event Interrupt Flag Status bit<br>1 = Interrupt request has occurred<br>0 = Interrupt request has not occurred |
| bit 0 | <b>SI2C1IF:</b> Slave I2C1 Event Interrupt Flag Status bit<br>1 = Interrupt request has occurred<br>0 = Interrupt request has not occurred  |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-7: IFS2: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 2

|        |        |       |     |     |       |       |       |
|--------|--------|-------|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | DMA4IF | PMPIF | —   | —   | OC6IF | OC5IF | IC6IF |
| bit 15 |        |       |     |     |       |       | bit 8 |

|       |       |       |        |           |           |          |        |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|-----------|-----------|----------|--------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0     | R/W-0     | R/W-0    | R/W-0  |
| IC5IF | IC4IF | IC3IF | DMA3IF | CRYROLLIF | CRYFREEIF | SPI2TXIF | SPI2IF |
| bit 7 |       |       |        |           |           |          | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 14 **DMA4IF:** DMA Channel 4 Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 13 **PMPIF:** Parallel Master Port Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 12-11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10 **OC6IF:** Output Compare Channel 6 Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 9 **OC5IF:** Output Compare Channel 5 Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 8 **IC6IF:** Input Capture Channel 6 Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 7 **IC5IF:** Input Capture Channel 5 Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 6 **IC4IF:** Input Capture Channel 4 Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 5 **IC3IF:** Input Capture Channel 3 Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 4 **DMA3IF:** DMA Channel 3 Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 3 **CRYROLLIF:** Cryptographic Rollover Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 2 **CRYFREEIF:** Cryptographic Buffer Free Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 8-7: IFS2: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 2 (CONTINUED)

- bit 1      **SPI2TXIF:** SPI2 Transmit Interrupt Flag Status bit  
            1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
            0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 0      **SPI2IF:** SPI2 General Interrupt Flag Status bit  
            1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
            0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-8: IFS3: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 3

|        |       |        |          |          |          |     |          |
|--------|-------|--------|----------|----------|----------|-----|----------|
| U-0    | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | U-0 | R/W-0    |
| —      | RTCIF | DMA5IF | SPI3RXIF | SPI2RXIF | SPI1RXIF | —   | KEYSTRIF |
| bit 15 |       |        |          |          |          |     | bit 8    |

|         |        |        |     |     |         |         |       |
|---------|--------|--------|-----|-----|---------|---------|-------|
| R/W-0   | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   |
| CRYDNIF | INT4IF | INT3IF | —   | —   | MI2C2IF | SI2C2IF | —     |
| bit 7   |        |        |     |     |         |         | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14 **RTCIF:** Real-Time Clock and Calendar Interrupt Flag Status bit

1 = Interrupt request has occurred

0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

bit 13 **DMA5IF:** DMA Channel 5 Interrupt Flag Status bit

1 = Interrupt request has occurred

0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

bit 12 **SPI3RXIF:** SPI3 Receive Interrupt Flag Status bit

1 = Interrupt request has occurred

0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

bit 11 **SPI2RXIF:** SPI2 Receive Interrupt Flag Status bit

1 = Interrupt request has occurred

0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

bit 10 **SPI1RXIF:** SPI1 Receive Interrupt Flag Status bit

1 = Interrupt request has occurred

0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

bit 9 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 8 **KEYSTRIF:** Cryptographic Key Store Program Done Interrupt Flag Status bit

1 = Interrupt request has occurred

0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

bit 7 **CRYDNIF:** Cryptographic Operation Done Interrupt Flag Status bit

1 = Interrupt request has occurred

0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

bit 6 **INT4IF:** External Interrupt 4 Flag Status bit

1 = Interrupt request has occurred

0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

## REGISTER 8-8: IFS3: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 3 (CONTINUED)

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| bit 5   | <b>INT3IF:</b> External Interrupt 3 Flag Status bit<br>1 = Interrupt request has occurred<br>0 = Interrupt request has not occurred         |
| bit 4-3 | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'   |
| bit 2   | <b>MI2C2IF:</b> Master I2C2 Event Interrupt Flag Status bit<br>1 = Interrupt request has occurred<br>0 = Interrupt request has not occurred |
| bit 1   | <b>SI2C2IF:</b> Slave I2C2 Event Interrupt Flag Status bit<br>1 = Interrupt request has occurred<br>0 = Interrupt request has not occurred  |
| bit 0   | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'   |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-9: IFS4: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 4

|        |     |        |     |     |     |     |        |
|--------|-----|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | CTMUIF | —   | —   | —   | —   | HLVDIF |
| bit 15 |     |        |     |     |     |     | bit 8  |

|       |     |     |     |       |        |        |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-------|--------|--------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | CRCIF | U2ERIF | U1ERIF | —     |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |       |        |        | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13 **CTMUIF:** CTMU Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 12-9 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 8 **HLVDIF:** High/Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 3 **CRCIF:** CRC Generator Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 2 **U2ERIF:** UART2 Error Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 1 **U1ERIF:** UART1 Error Interrupt Flag Status bit
  - 1 = Interrupt request has occurred
  - 0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-10: IFS5: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 5

|        |     |     |     |          |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|----------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | SPI3TXIF | SPI3IF | U4TXIF | U4RXIF |
| bit 15 |     |     |     | bit 8    |        |        |        |

|        |        |          |          |        |        |        |     |
|--------|--------|----------|----------|--------|--------|--------|-----|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0 |
| U4ERIF | USB1IF | I2C2BCIF | I2C1BCIF | U3TXIF | U3RXIF | U3ERIF | —   |
| bit 7  |        |          |          | bit 0  |        |        |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-12 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 11 **SPI3TXIF:** SPI3 Transmit Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 10 **SPI3IF:** SPI3 General Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 9 **U4TXIF:** UART4 Transmitter Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 8 **U4RXIF:** UART4 Receiver Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 7 **U4ERIF:** UART4 Error Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 6 **USB1IF:** USB1 (USB OTG) Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 5 **I2C2BCIF:** I2C2 Bus Collision Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 4 **I2C1BCIF:** I2C1 Bus Collision Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 3 **U3TXIF:** UART3 Transmitter Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 2 **U3RXIF:** UART3 Receiver Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 1 **U3ERIF:** UART3 Error Interrupt Flag Status bit  
1 = Interrupt request has occurred  
0 = Interrupt request has not occurred
- bit 0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-11: IFS6: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 6

|        |     |     |     |     |       |       |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | FSTIF | —     | —   |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |       | bit 8 |     |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10 **FSTIF:** FRC Self-Tune Interrupt Flag Status bit

1 = Interrupt request has occurred

0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

bit 9-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

## REGISTER 8-12: IFS7: INTERRUPT FLAG STATUS REGISTER 7

|        |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |     |

|       |     |        |     |     |     |       |     |
|-------|-----|--------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —     | —   | JTAGIF | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 7 |     |        |     |     |     | bit 0 |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **JTAGIF:** JTAG Controller Interrupt Flag Status bit

1 = Interrupt request has occurred

0 = Interrupt request has not occurred

bit 4-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 8-13: IEC0: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 0**

| U-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0 |
|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|----------|--------|-------|
| —      | DMA1IE | AD1IE | U1TXIE | U1RXIE | SPI1TXIE | SPI1IE | T3IE  |
| bit 15 |        |       |        |        |          |        | bit 8 |

| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| T2IE  | OC2IE | IC2IE | DMA0IE | T1IE  | OC1IE | IC1IE | INT0IE |
| bit 7 |       |       |        |       |       |       | bit 0  |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 14      **DMA1IE:** DMA Channel 1 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 13      **AD1IE:** ADC1 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 12      **U1TXIE:** UART1 Transmitter Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 11      **U1RXIE:** UART1 Receiver Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 10      **SPI1TXIE:** SPI1 Transmit Complete Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 9        **SPI1IE:** SPI1 General Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 8        **T3IE:** Timer3 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 7        **T2IE:** Timer2 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 6        **OC2IE:** Output Compare Channel 2 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 5        **IC2IE:** Input Capture Channel 2 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 4        **DMA0IE:** DMA Channel 0 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 3        **T1IE:** Timer1 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 8-13: IEC0: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 0 (CONTINUED)

- bit 2      **OC1IE:** Output Compare Channel 1 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 1      **IC1IE:** Input Capture Channel 1 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 0      **INT0IE:** External Interrupt 0 Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-14: IEC1: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 1

|        |        |                       |       |       |       |       |        |
|--------|--------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0                 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  |
| U2TXIE | U2RXIE | INT2IE <sup>(1)</sup> | T5IE  | T4IE  | OC4IE | OC3IE | DMA2IE |
| bit 15 |        |                       |       |       |       |       | bit 8  |

|       |     |     |                       |       |       |         |         |
|-------|-----|-----|-----------------------|-------|-------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | INT1IE <sup>(1)</sup> | CNIE  | CMIE  | MI2C1IE | SI2C1IE |
| bit 7 |     |     |                       |       |       |         | bit 0   |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **U2TXIE:** UART2 Transmitter Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 14      **U2RXIE:** UART2 Receiver Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 13      **INT2IE:** External Interrupt 2 Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 12      **T5IE:** Timer5 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 11      **T4IE:** Timer4 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 10      **OC4IE:** Output Compare Channel 4 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 9        **OC3IE:** Output Compare Channel 3 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 8        **DMA2IE:** DMA Channel 2 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 7-5      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 4        **INT1IE:** External Interrupt 1 Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 3        **CNIE:** Input Change Notification Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 2        **CMIE:** Comparator Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

**Note 1:** If an external interrupt is enabled, the interrupt input must also be configured to an available RPN or RPN pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 8-14: IEC1: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 1 (CONTINUED)

bit 1      **M12C1IE**: Master I2C1 Event Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt request is enabled

0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

bit 0      **S12C1IE**: Slave I2C1 Event Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt request is enabled

0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

**Note 1:** If an external interrupt is enabled, the interrupt input must also be configured to an available RPn or RPIn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-15: IEC2: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 2

|        |        |       |     |     |       |       |       |
|--------|--------|-------|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | DMA4IE | PMPIE | —   | —   | OC6IE | OC5IE | IC6IE |
| bit 15 |        |       |     |     |       | bit 8 |       |

|       |       |       |        |           |           |          |        |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|-----------|-----------|----------|--------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0     | R/W-0     | R/W-0    | R/W-0  |
| IC5IE | IC4IE | IC3IE | DMA3IE | CRYROLLIE | CRYFREEIE | SPI2TXIE | SPI2IE |
| bit 7 |       |       |        |           |           | bit 0    |        |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 14      **DMA4IE:** DMA Channel 4 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 13      **PMPIE:** Parallel Master Port Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 12-11   **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10      **OC6IE:** Output Compare Channel 6 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 9        **OC5IE:** Output Compare Channel 5 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 8        **IC6IE:** Input Capture Channel 6 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 7        **IC5IE:** Input Capture Channel 5 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 6        **IC4IE:** Input Capture Channel 4 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 5        **IC3IE:** Input Capture Channel 3 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 4        **DMA3IE:** DMA Channel 3 Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 3        **CRYROLLIE:** Cryptographic Rollover Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 2        **CRYFREEIE:** Cryptographic Buffer Free Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
             0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

**REGISTER 8-15: IEC2: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 2 (CONTINUED)**

- bit 1      **SPI2TXIE:** SPI2 Transmit Interrupt Enable bit  
            1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
            0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 0      **SPI2IE:** SPI2 General Interrupt Enable bit  
            1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
            0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 8-16: IEC3: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 3**

|        |       |        |          |          |          |       |          |
|--------|-------|--------|----------|----------|----------|-------|----------|
| U-0    | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | U-0   | R/W-0    |
| —      | RTCIE | DMA5IE | SPI3RXIE | SPI2RXIE | SPI1RXIE | —     | KEYSTRIE |
| bit 15 |       |        |          |          |          | bit 8 |          |

|         |                       |                       |     |     |         |         |     |
|---------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----|-----|---------|---------|-----|
| R/W-0   | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0 |
| CRYDNIE | INT4IE <sup>(1)</sup> | INT3IE <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | —   | MI2C2IE | SI2C2IE | —   |
| bit 7   |                       |                       |     |     |         | bit 0   |     |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
-n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15            **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 14            **RTCIE:** Real-Time Clock and Calendar Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 13            **DMA5IE:** DMA Channel 5 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 12            **SPI3RXIE:** SPI3 Receive Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 11            **SPI2RXIE:** SPI2 Receive Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 10            **SPI1RXIE:** SPI1 Receive Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 9             **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 8             **KEYSTRIE:** Cryptographic Key Store Program Done Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 7             **CRYDNIE:** Cryptographic Operation Done Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 6             **INT4IE:** External Interrupt 4 Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 5             **INT3IE:** External Interrupt 3 Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 4-3           **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 2             **MI2C2IE:** Master I2C2 Event Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

**Note 1:** If an external interrupt is enabled, the interrupt input must also be configured to an available RPN or RPN pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 "Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)"](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 8-16: IEC3: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 3 (CONTINUED)

bit 1      **SI2C2IE:** Slave I2C2 Event Interrupt Enable bit  
            1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
            0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

bit 0      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**Note 1:** If an external interrupt is enabled, the interrupt input must also be configured to an available RPn or RPIn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 8-17: IEC4: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 4**

|        |     |        |     |     |     |     |        |
|--------|-----|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | CTMUIE | —   | —   | —   | —   | HLVDIE |
| bit 15 |     |        |     |     |     |     | bit 8  |

|       |     |     |     |       |        |        |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-------|--------|--------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | CRCIE | U2ERIE | U1ERIE | —     |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |       |        |        | bit 0 |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13 **CTMUIE:** CTMU Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt request is enabled

0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

bit 12-9 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 8 **HLVDIE:** High/Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt request is enabled

0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3 **CRCIE:** CRC Generator Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt request is enabled

0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

bit 2 **U2ERIE:** UART2 Error Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt request is enabled

0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

bit 1 **U1ERIE:** UART1 Error Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt request is enabled

0 = Interrupt request is not enabled

bit 0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 8-18: IEC5: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 5**

|        |     |     |     |          |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|----------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | SPI3TXIE | SPI3IE | U4TXIE | U4RXIE |
| bit 15 |     |     |     | bit 8    |        |        |        |

|        |        |          |          |        |        |        |     |
|--------|--------|----------|----------|--------|--------|--------|-----|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0 |
| U4ERIE | USB1IE | I2C2BCIE | I2C1BCIE | U3TXIE | U3RXIE | U3ERIE | —   |
| bit 7  |        |          |          | bit 0  |        |        |     |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-12 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 11 **SPI3TXIE:** SPI3 Transmit Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 10 **SPI3IE:** SPI3 General Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 9 **U4TXIE:** UART4 Transmitter Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 8 **U4RXIE:** UART4 Receiver Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 7 **U4ERIE:** UART4 Error Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 6 **USB1IE:** USB1 (USB OTG) Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 5 **I2C2BCIE:** I2C2 Bus Collision Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 4 **I2C1BCIE:** I2C1 Bus Collision Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 3 **U3TXIE:** UART3 Transmitter Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 2 **U3RXIE:** UART3 Receiver Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 1 **U3ERIE:** UART3 Error Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
0 = Interrupt request is not enabled
- bit 0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 8-19: IEC6: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 6**

|        |     |     |     |     |       |       |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | FSTIE | —     | —   |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |       | bit 8 |     |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |     |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
-n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-11    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
bit 10        **FSTIE:** FRC Self-Tune Interrupt Enable bit  
                 1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
                 0 = Interrupt request is not enabled  
bit 9-0       **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**REGISTER 8-20: IEC7: INTERRUPT ENABLE CONTROL REGISTER 7**

|        |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |     |

|       |     |        |     |     |     |       |     |
|-------|-----|--------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —     | —   | JTAGIE | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 7 |     |        |     |     |     | bit 0 |     |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
-n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-6    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
bit 5        **JTAGIE:** JTAG Interrupt Enable bit  
                 1 = Interrupt request is enabled  
                 0 = Interrupt request is not enabled  
bit 4-0       **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-21: IPC0: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 0

|        |       |       |       |       |        |        |        |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | R/W-1 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | T1IP2 | T1IP1 | T1IP0 | —     | OC1IP2 | OC1IP1 | OC1IP0 |
| bit 15 |       |       |       | bit 8 |        |        |        |

|       |        |        |        |       |         |         |         |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | IC1IP2 | IC1IP1 | IC1IP0 | —     | INT0IP2 | INT0IP1 | INT0IP0 |
| bit 7 |        |        |        | bit 0 |         |         |         |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12 **T1IP<2:0>:** Timer1 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **OC1IP<2:0>:** Output Compare Channel 1 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **IC1IP<2:0>:** Input Capture Channel 1 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **INT0IP<2:0>:** External Interrupt 0 Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-22: IPC1: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 1

|        |       |       |       |       |        |        |        |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | R/W-1 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | T2IP2 | T2IP1 | T2IP0 | —     | OC2IP2 | OC2IP1 | OC2IP0 |
| bit 15 |       |       |       | bit 8 |        |        |        |

|       |        |        |        |       |         |         |         |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | IC2IP2 | IC2IP1 | IC2IP0 | —     | DMA0IP2 | DMA0IP1 | DMA0IP0 |
| bit 7 |        |        |        | bit 0 |         |         |         |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12 **T2IP<2:0>:** Timer2 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **OC2IP<2:0>:** Output Compare Channel 2 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **IC2IP<2:0>:** Input Capture Channel 2 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **DMA0IP<2:0>:** DMA Channel 0 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-23: IPC2: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 2

|        |         |         |         |       |           |           |           |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|-------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| U-0    | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   | R/W-1     | R/W-0     | R/W-0     |
| —      | U1RXIP2 | U1RXIP1 | U1RXIP0 | —     | SPI1TXIP2 | SPI1TXIP1 | SPI1TXIP0 |
| bit 15 |         |         |         | bit 8 |           |           |           |

|       |         |         |         |       |       |       |       |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   | R/W-1 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | SPI1IP2 | SPI1IP1 | SPI1IP0 | —     | T3IP2 | T3IP1 | T3IP0 |
| bit 7 |         |         |         | bit 0 |       |       |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 14-12 **U1RXIP<2:0>:** UART1 Receiver Interrupt Priority bits  
 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
 .  
 .  
 .  
 001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
 000 = Interrupt source is disabled
- bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10-8 **SPI1TXIP<2:0>:** SPI1 Transmit Interrupt Priority bits  
 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
 .  
 .  
 .  
 001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
 000 = Interrupt source is disabled
- bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 6-4 **SPI1IP<2:0>:** SPI1 General Interrupt Priority bits  
 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
 .  
 .  
 .  
 001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
 000 = Interrupt source is disabled
- bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 2-0 **T3IP<2:0>:** Timer3 Interrupt Priority bits  
 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
 .  
 .  
 .  
 001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
 000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-24: IPC3: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 3

|        |     |     |     |     |         |         |         |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | DMA1IP2 | DMA1IP1 | DMA1IP0 |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |         | bit 8   |         |

|       |        |        |        |     |         |         |         |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|-----|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | AD1IP2 | AD1IP1 | AD1IP0 | —   | U1TXIP2 | U1TXIP1 | U1TXIP0 |
| bit 7 |        |        |        |     |         | bit 0   |         |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **DMA1IP<2:0>:** DMA Channel 1 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **AD1IP<2:0>:** ADC1 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **U1TXIP<2:0>:** UART1 Transmitter Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-25: IPC4: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 4

|        |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | R/W-1 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   | R/W-1 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | CNIP2 | CNIP1 | CNIP0 | —     | CMIP2 | CMIP1 | CMIP0 |
| bit 15 |       |       |       | bit 8 |       |       |       |

|       |          |          |          |       |          |          |          |
|-------|----------|----------|----------|-------|----------|----------|----------|
| U-0   | R/W-1    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | U-0   | R/W-1    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    |
| —     | MI2C1IP2 | MI2C1IP1 | MI2C1IP0 | —     | SI2C1IP2 | SI2C1IP1 | SI2C1IP0 |
| bit 7 |          |          |          | bit 0 |          |          |          |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| bit 15    | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'   |
| bit 14-12 | <b>CNIP&lt;2:0&gt;:</b> Input Change Notification Interrupt Priority bits |
|           | 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)                |
|           | •   |
|           | •   |
|           | •   |
|           | 001 = Interrupt is Priority 1   |
|           | 000 = Interrupt source is disabled  |
| bit 11    | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'   |
| bit 10-8  | <b>CMIP&lt;2:0&gt;:</b> Comparator Interrupt Priority bits                |
|           | 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)                |
|           | •   |
|           | •   |
|           | •   |
|           | 001 = Interrupt is Priority 1   |
|           | 000 = Interrupt source is disabled  |
| bit 7     | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'   |
| bit 6-4   | <b>MI2C1IP&lt;2:0&gt;:</b> Master I2C1 Event Interrupt Priority bits      |
|           | 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)                |
|           | •   |
|           | •   |
|           | •   |
|           | 001 = Interrupt is Priority 1   |
|           | 000 = Interrupt source is disabled  |
| bit 3     | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'   |
| bit 2-0   | <b>SI2C1IP&lt;2:0&gt;:</b> Slave I2C1 Event Interrupt Priority bits       |
|           | 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)                |
|           | •   |
|           | •   |
|           | •   |
|           | 001 = Interrupt is Priority 1   |
|           | 000 = Interrupt source is disabled  |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-26: IPC5: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 5

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |     |             |       |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1       | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | INT1IP<2:0> |       |       |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |             |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **INT1IP<2:0>:** External Interrupt 1 Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-27: IPC6: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 6

|        |       |       |       |       |        |        |        |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | R/W-1 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | T4IP2 | T4IP1 | T4IP0 | —     | OC4IP2 | OC4IP1 | OC4IP0 |
| bit 15 |       |       |       | bit 8 |        |        |        |

|       |        |        |        |       |         |         |         |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | OC3IP2 | OC3IP1 | OC3IP0 | —     | DMA2IP2 | DMA2IP1 | DMA2IP0 |
| bit 7 |        |        |        | bit 0 |         |         |         |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12 **T4IP<2:0>:** Timer4 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **OC4IP<2:0>:** Output Compare Channel 4 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **OC3IP<2:0>:** Output Compare Channel 3 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **DMA2IP<2:0>:** DMA Channel 2 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-28: IPC7: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 7

| U-0    | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| —      | U2TXIP2 | U2TXIP1 | U2TXIP0 | —     | U2RXIP2 | U2RXIP1 | U2RXIP0 |
| bit 15 |         |         |         | bit 8 |         |         |         |

| U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   | R/W-1 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| —     | INT2IP2 | INT2IP1 | INT2IP0 | —     | T5IP2 | T5IP1 | T5IP0 |
| bit 7 |         |         |         | bit 0 |       |       |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12 **U2TXIP<2:0>:** UART2 Transmitter Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **U2RXIP<2:0>:** UART2 Receiver Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **INT2IP<2:0>:** External Interrupt 2 Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **T5IP<2:0>:** Timer5 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-29: IPC8: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 8

|        |            |            |            |       |            |            |            |
|--------|------------|------------|------------|-------|------------|------------|------------|
| U-0    | R/W-1      | R/W-0      | R/W-0      | U-0   | R/W-1      | R/W-0      | R/W-0      |
| —      | CRYROLLIP2 | CRYROLLIP1 | CRYROLLIP0 | —     | CRYFREEIP2 | CRYFREEIP1 | CRYFREEIP0 |
| bit 15 |            |            |            | bit 8 |            |            |            |

|       |           |           |           |       |         |         |         |
|-------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | R/W-1     | R/W-0     | R/W-0     | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | SPI2TXIP2 | SPI2TXIP1 | SPI2TXIP0 | —     | SPI2IP2 | SPI2IP1 | SPI2IP0 |
| bit 7 |           |           |           | bit 0 |         |         |         |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12 **CRYROLLIP<2:0>:** Cryptographic Rollover Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **CRYFREEIP<2:0>:** Cryptographic Buffer Free Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **SPI2TXIP<2:0>:** SPI2 Transmit Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **SPI2IP<2:0>:** SPI2 General Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-30: IPC9: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 9

|        |        |        |        |       |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0   | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | IC5IP2 | IC5IP1 | IC5IP0 | —     | IC4IP2 | IC4IP1 | IC4IP0 |
| bit 15 |        |        |        | bit 8 |        |        |        |

|       |        |        |        |       |         |         |         |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | IC3IP2 | IC3IP1 | IC3IP0 | —     | DMA3IP2 | DMA3IP1 | DMA3IP0 |
| bit 7 |        |        |        | bit 0 |         |         |         |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12 **IC5IP<2:0>:** Input Capture Channel 5 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **IC4IP<2:0>:** Input Capture Channel 4 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **IC3IP<2:0>:** Input Capture Channel 3 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **DMA3IP<2:0>:** DMA Channel 3 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-31: IPC10: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 10

|        |     |     |     |     |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | OC6IP2 | OC6IP1 | OC6IP0 |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     | bit 8  |        |        |

|       |        |        |        |     |        |        |        |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | OC5IP2 | OC5IP1 | OC5IP0 | —   | IC6IP2 | IC6IP1 | IC6IP0 |
| bit 7 |        |        |        |     | bit 0  |        |        |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **OC6IP<2:0>:** Output Compare Channel 6 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **OC5IP<2:0>:** Output Compare Channel 5 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **IC6IP<2:0>:** Input Capture Channel 6 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-32: IPC11: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 11

|        |     |     |     |     |         |         |         |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | DMA4IP2 | DMA4IP1 | DMA4IP0 |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |         | bit 8   |         |

|       |        |        |        |     |     |       |     |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0   | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —     | PMP2IP | PMP1IP | PMP0IP | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 7 |        |        |        |     |     | bit 0 |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **DMA4IP<2:0>:** DMA Channel 4 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **PMP2IP<2:0>:** Parallel Master Port Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-33: IPC12: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 12

|        |     |     |     |     |          |          |          |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------|----------|----------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | MI2C2IP2 | MI2C2IP1 | MI2C2IP0 |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |          | bit 8    |          |

|       |          |          |          |     |     |       |     |
|-------|----------|----------|----------|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0   | R/W-1    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —     | SI2C2IP2 | SI2C2IP1 | SI2C2IP0 | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 7 |          |          |          |     |     | bit 0 |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-11      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10-8      **MI2C2IP<2:0>:** Master I2C2 Event Interrupt Priority bits  
                  111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
                  .  
                  .  
                  .  
                  001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
                  000 = Interrupt source is disabled
- bit 7           **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 6-4        **SI2C2IP<2:0>:** Slave I2C2 Event Interrupt Priority bits  
                  111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
                  .  
                  .  
                  .  
                  001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
                  000 = Interrupt source is disabled
- bit 3-0        **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-34: IPC13: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 13

|        |          |          |          |       |         |         |         |
|--------|----------|----------|----------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | R/W-1    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —      | CRYDNIP2 | CRYDNIP1 | CRYDNIP0 | —     | INT4IP2 | INT4IP1 | INT4IP0 |
| bit 15 |          |          |          | bit 8 |         |         |         |

|       |         |         |         |       |     |     |     |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 |
| —     | INT3IP2 | INT3IP1 | INT3IP0 | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| bit 7 |         |         |         | bit 0 |     |     |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12 **CRYDNIP<2:0>:** Cryptographic Operation Done Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **INT4IP<2:0>:** External Interrupt 4 Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **INT3IP<2:0>:** External Interrupt 3 Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-35: IPC14: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 14

|        |           |           |           |       |           |           |           |
|--------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| U-0    | R/W-1     | R/W-0     | R/W-0     | U-0   | R/W-1     | R/W-0     | R/W-0     |
| —      | SPI2RXIP2 | SPI2RXIP1 | SPI2RXIPO | —     | SPI1RXIP2 | SPI1RXIP1 | SPI1RXIPO |
| bit 15 |           |           |           | bit 8 |           |           |           |

|       |     |     |     |       |           |           |           |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | R/W-1     | R/W-0     | R/W-0     |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —     | KEYSTRIP2 | KEYSTRIP1 | KEYSTRIP0 |
| bit 7 |     |     |     | bit 0 |           |           |           |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12 **SPI2RXIP<2:0>:** SPI2 Receive Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **SPI1RXIP<2:0>:** SPI1 Receive Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **KEYSTRIP<2:0>:** Cryptographic Key Store Program Done Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-36: IPC15: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 15

|        |     |     |     |     |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | RTCIP2 | RTCIP1 | RTCIP0 |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |        | bit 8  |        |

|       |         |         |         |     |           |           |           |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|-----|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0 | R/W-1     | R/W-0     | R/W-0     |
| —     | DMA5IP2 | DMA5IP1 | DMA5IP0 | —   | SPI3RXIP2 | SPI3RXIP1 | SPI3RXIP0 |
| bit 7 |         |         |         |     |           | bit 0     |           |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **RTCIP<2:0>:** Real-Time Clock and Calendar Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **DMA5IP<2:0>:** DMA Channel 5 Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **SPI3RXIP<2:0>:** SPI3 Receive Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-37: IPC16: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 16

|        |        |        |        |       |         |         |         |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —      | CRCIP2 | CRCIP1 | CRCIP0 | —     | U2ERIP2 | U2ERIP1 | U2ERIP0 |
| bit 15 |        |        |        | bit 8 |         |         |         |

|       |         |         |         |       |     |     |     |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 |
| —     | U1ERIP2 | U1ERIP1 | U1ERIP0 | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| bit 7 |         |         |         | bit 0 |     |     |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 14-12    **CRCIP<2:0>:** CRC Generator Error Interrupt Priority bits  
               111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
               •  
               •  
               •  
               001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
               000 = Interrupt source is disabled
- bit 11      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10-8    **U2ERIP<2:0>:** UART2 Error Interrupt Priority bits  
               111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
               •  
               •  
               •  
               001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
               000 = Interrupt source is disabled
- bit 7      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 6-4    **U1ERIP<2:0>:** UART1 Error Interrupt Priority bits  
               111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
               •  
               •  
               •  
               001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
               000 = Interrupt source is disabled
- bit 3-0    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-38: IPC18: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 18

|        |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |     |

|       |     |     |     |     |             |       |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1       | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | HLVDIP<2:0> |       |       |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |             | bit 0 |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **HLVDIP<2:0>:** High/Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

## REGISTER 8-39: IPC19: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 19

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |             |       |       |     |     |     |       |
|-------|-------------|-------|-------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0   | R/W-1       | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —     | CTMUIP<2:0> |       |       | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 7 |             |       |       |     |     |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **CTMUIP<2:0>:** CTMU Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-40: IPC20: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 20

|        |         |         |         |       |         |         |         |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —      | U3TXIP2 | U3TXIP1 | U3TXIP0 | —     | U3RXIP2 | U3RXIP1 | U3RXIP0 |
| bit 15 |         |         |         | bit 8 |         |         |         |

|       |         |         |         |       |     |     |     |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 |
| —     | U3ERIP2 | U3ERIP1 | U3ERIP0 | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| bit 7 |         |         |         | bit 0 |     |     |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 14-12 **U3TXIP<2:0>:** UART3 Transmitter Interrupt Priority bits  
 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
 .  
 .  
 .  
 001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
 000 = Interrupt source is disabled
- bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10-8 **U3RXIP<2:0>:** UART3 Receiver Interrupt Priority bits  
 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
 .  
 .  
 .  
 001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
 000 = Interrupt source is disabled
- bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 6-4 **U3ERIP<2:0>:** UART3 Error Interrupt Priority bits  
 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)  
 .  
 .  
 .  
 001 = Interrupt is Priority 1  
 000 = Interrupt source is disabled
- bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-41: IPC21: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 21

|        |         |         |         |       |         |         |         |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —      | U4ERIP2 | U4ERIP1 | U4ERIP0 | —     | USB1IP2 | USB1IP1 | USB1IP0 |
| bit 15 |         |         |         | bit 8 |         |         |         |

|       |           |           |           |       |           |           |           |
|-------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| U-0   | R/W-1     | R/W-0     | R/W-0     | U-0   | R/W-1     | R/W-0     | R/W-0     |
| —     | I2C2BCIP2 | I2C2BCIP1 | I2C2BCIP0 | —     | I2C1BCIP2 | I2C1BCIP1 | I2C1BCIP0 |
| bit 7 |           |           |           | bit 0 |           |           |           |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12 **U4ERIP<2:0>:** UART4 Error Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **USB1IP<2:0>:** USB1 (USB OTG) Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **I2C2BCIP<2:0>:** I2C2 Bus Collision Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **I2C1BCIP<2:0>:** I2C1 Bus Collision Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-42: IPC22: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 22

|        |           |           |           |       |         |         |         |
|--------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | R/W-1     | R/W-0     | R/W-0     | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —      | SPI3TXIP2 | SPI3TXIP1 | SPI3TXIP0 | —     | SPI3IP2 | SPI3IP1 | SPI3IP0 |
| bit 15 |           |           |           | bit 8 |         |         |         |

|       |         |         |         |       |         |         |         |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   | R/W-1   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | U4TXIP2 | U4TXIP1 | U4TXIP0 | —     | U4RXIP2 | U4RXIP1 | U4RXIP0 |
| bit 7 |         |         |         | bit 0 |         |         |         |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12 **SPI3TXIP<2:0>:** SPI3 Transmit Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•

•

•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **SPI3IP<2:0>:** SPI3 General Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•

•

•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **U4TXIP<2:0>:** UART4 Transmitter Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•

•

•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **U4RXIP<2:0>:** UART4 Receiver Interrupt Priority bits

111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•

•

•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-43: IPC26: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 26

|        |     |     |     |     |            |       |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1      | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | FSTIP<2:0> |       |       |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |            | bit 8 |       |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **FSTIP<2:0>:** FRC Self-Tune Interrupt Priority bits  
 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 7-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

## REGISTER 8-44: IPC29: INTERRUPT PRIORITY CONTROL REGISTER 29

|        |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |     |

|       |             |       |       |       |     |     |     |
|-------|-------------|-------|-------|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| U-0   | R/W-1       | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 |
| —     | JTAGIP<2:0> |       |       | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| bit 7 |             |       |       | bit 0 |     |     |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **JTAGIP<2:0>:** JTAG Interrupt Priority bits  
 111 = Interrupt is Priority 7 (highest priority interrupt)

•  
•  
•

001 = Interrupt is Priority 1

000 = Interrupt source is disabled

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 8-45: INTTREG: INTERRUPT CONTROLLER TEST REGISTER

|        |     |       |     |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R-0    | r-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| CPUIRQ | —   | VHOLD | —   | ILR3  | ILR2  | ILR1  | ILR0  |
| bit 15 |     |       |     |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| VECNUM7 | VECNUM6 | VECNUM5 | VECNUM4 | VECNUM3 | VECNUM2 | VECNUM1 | VECNUM0 |
| bit 7   |         |         |         |         |         |         | bit 0   |

|                   |                  |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | r = Reserved bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15      **CPUIRQ:** CPU Interrupt Request from Interrupt Controller bit  
1 = An interrupt request has occurred but has not yet been Acknowledged by the CPU  
0 = No interrupt request is unacknowledged
- bit 14      **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'
- bit 13      **VHOLD:** Vector Number Capture Configuration bit  
1 = VECNUM<7:0> bits contain the value of the highest priority pending interrupt  
0 = VECNUM<7:0> bits contain the value of the last Acknowledged interrupt (i.e., the last interrupt that has occurred with higher priority than the CPU, even if other interrupts are pending)
- bit 12      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 11-8    **ILR<3:0>:** New CPU Interrupt Priority Level bits  
1111 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 15  
•  
•  
•  
0001 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 1  
0000 = CPU Interrupt Priority Level is 0
- bit 7-0    **VECNUM<7:0>:** Vector Number of Pending Interrupt or Last Acknowledged Interrupt bits  
When VHOLD = 1:  
Indicates the vector number (from 0 to 118) of the last interrupt to occur.  
When VHOLD = 0:  
Indicates the vector number (from 0 to 118) of the interrupt request currently being handled.

## 8.4 Interrupt Setup Procedures

### 8.4.1 INITIALIZATION

To configure an interrupt source:

1. Set the NSTDIS (INTCON1<15>) control bit if nested interrupts are not desired.
2. Select the user-assigned priority level for the interrupt source by writing the control bits in the appropriate IPCx register. The priority level will depend on the specific application and type of interrupt source. If multiple priority levels are not desired, the IPCx register control bits for all enabled interrupt sources may be programmed to the same non-zero value.

**Note:** At a device Reset, the IPCx registers are initialized, such that all user interrupt sources are assigned to Priority Level 4.

3. Clear the interrupt flag status bit associated with the peripheral in the associated IFSx register.
4. Enable the interrupt source by setting the interrupt enable control bit associated with the source in the appropriate IECx register.

### 8.4.2 INTERRUPT SERVICE ROUTINE (ISR)

The method that is used to declare an Interrupt Service Routine (ISR) and initialize the IVT with the correct vector address will depend on the programming language (i.e., 'C' or assembler) and the language development toolsuite that is used to develop the application. In general, the user must clear the interrupt flag in the appropriate IFSx register for the source of the interrupt that the ISR handles; otherwise, the ISR will be re-entered immediately after exiting the routine. If the ISR is coded in assembly language, it must be terminated using a `RETFIE` instruction to unstack the saved PC value, SRL value and old CPU priority level.

### 8.4.3 TRAP SERVICE ROUTINE (TSR)

A Trap Service Routine (TSR) is coded like an ISR, except that the appropriate trap status flag in the INTCON1 register must be cleared to avoid re-entry into the TSR.

### 8.4.4 INTERRUPT DISABLE

All user interrupts can be disabled using the following procedure:

1. Push the current SR value onto the software stack using the `PUSH` instruction.
2. Force the CPU to Priority Level 7 by inclusive ORing the value, 0Eh, with SRL.

To enable user interrupts, the `POP` instruction may be used to restore the previous SR value.

Note that only user interrupts with a priority level of 7 or less can be disabled. Trap sources (Levels 8-15) cannot be disabled.

The `DISI` instruction provides a convenient way to disable interrupts of Priority Levels 1-6 for a fixed period of time. Level 7 interrupt sources are not disabled by the `DISI` instruction.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 9.0 OSCILLATOR CONFIGURATION

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “Oscillator” (DS39700).

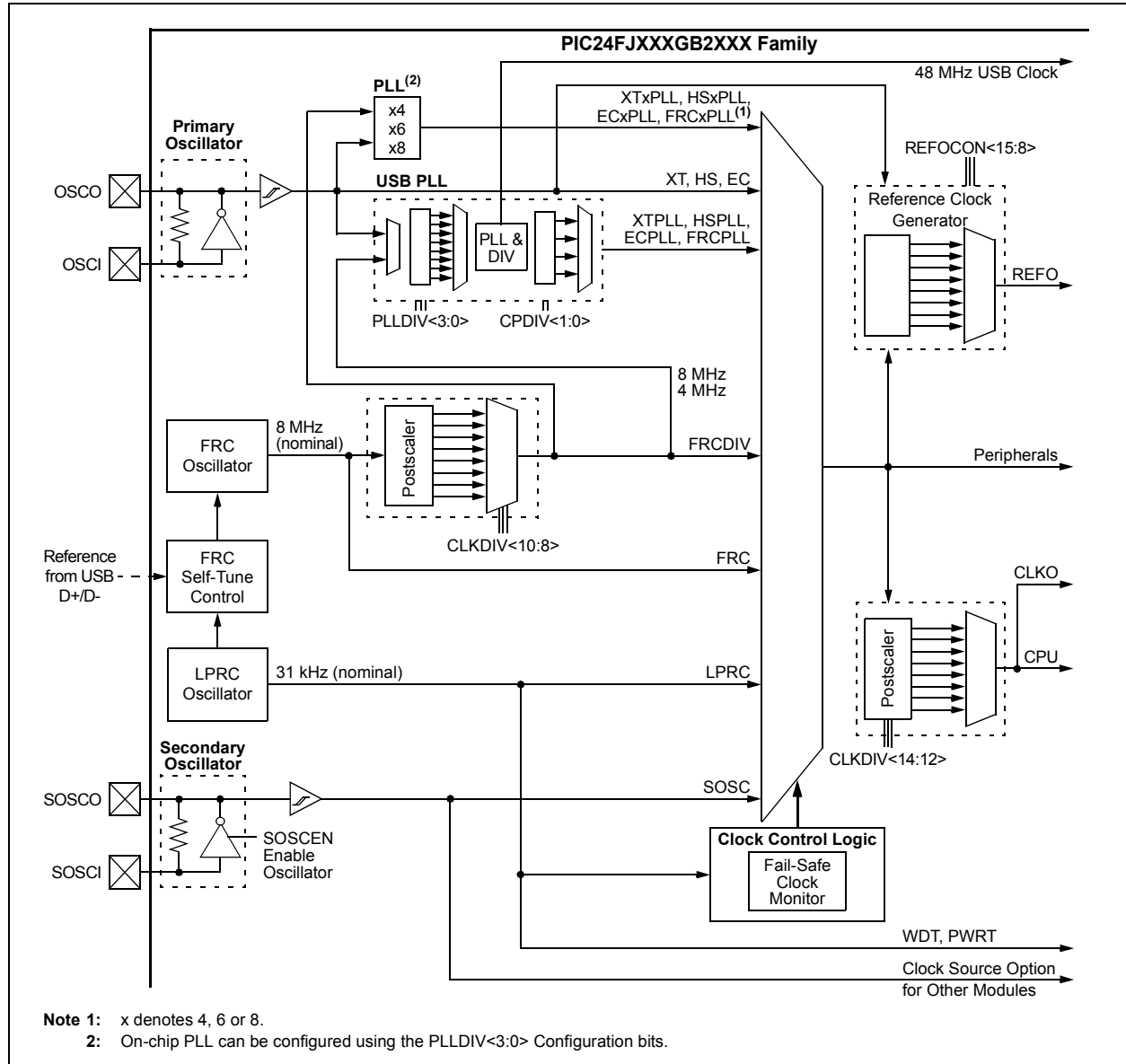
The oscillator system for PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices has the following features:

- A total of four external and internal oscillator options as clock sources, providing 15 different Clock modes
- An on-chip, USB PLL block to provide a stable 48 MHz clock for the USB module, as well as a range of frequency options for the system clock

- An on-chip PLL (x4, x6, x8) block available for the Primary Oscillator (POSC) source or FRCDIV (see [Section 9.8 “On-Chip PLL”](#))
- Software-controllable switching between various clock sources
- Software-controllable postscaler for selective clocking of CPU for system power savings
- A Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) that detects clock failure and permits safe application recovery or shutdown
- A separate and independently configurable system clock output for synchronizing external hardware

A simplified diagram of the oscillator system is shown in [Figure 9-1](#).

**FIGURE 9-1: PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY CLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 9.1 CPU Clocking Scheme

The system clock source can be provided by one of four sources:

- Primary Oscillator (POSC) on the OSC1 and OSC0 pins
- Secondary Oscillator (SOSC) on the SOSCI and SOSCO pins
- Fast Internal RC (FRC) Oscillator
- Low-Power Internal RC (LPRC) Oscillator

The Primary Oscillator and FRC sources have the option of using the internal USB PLL block, which generates both the USB module clock and a separate system clock from the 96 MHz PLL. Refer to [Section 9.6 “Oscillator Modes and USB Operation”](#) for additional information.

The internal FRC provides an 8 MHz clock source. It can optionally be reduced by the programmable clock divider to provide a range of system clock frequencies.

The selected clock source generates the processor and peripheral clock sources. The processor clock source is divided by two to produce the internal instruction cycle clock, Fcy. In this document, the instruction cycle clock is also denoted by Fosc/2. The internal instruction cycle clock, Fosc/2, can be provided on the OSC0 I/O pin for some operating modes of the Primary Oscillator.

## 9.2 Initial Configuration on POR

The oscillator source (and operating mode) that is used at a device Power-on Reset event is selected using Configuration bit settings. The Oscillator Configuration bit settings are located in the Configuration registers in program memory (for more information, refer to [Section 30.1 “Configuration Bits”](#)). The Primary Oscillator Configuration bits, POSCMD<1:0> (Configuration Word 2<1:0>), and the Initial Oscillator Select Configuration bits, FNOSC<2:0> (Configuration Word 2<10:8>), select the oscillator source that is used at a Power-on Reset. The FRC Primary Oscillator with Postscaler (FRCDIV) is the default (unprogrammed) selection. The Secondary Oscillator, or one of the internal oscillators, may be chosen by programming these bit locations.

The Configuration bits allow users to choose between the various clock modes, as shown in [Table 9-1](#).

### 9.2.1 CLOCK SWITCHING MODE CONFIGURATION BITS

The FCKSM<1:0> Configuration bits (Configuration Word 2<7:6>) are used to jointly configure device clock switching and the Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM). Clock switching is enabled only when FCKSM1 is programmed ('0'). The FSCM is enabled only when FCKSM<1:0> are both programmed ('00').

**TABLE 9-1: CONFIGURATION BIT VALUES FOR CLOCK SELECTION**

| Oscillator Mode                                 | Oscillator Source | POSCMD<1:0> | FNOSC<2:0> | Notes                                 |
|---|-------------------|-------------|------------|---------------------------------------|
| Fast RC Oscillator with Postscaler (FRCDIV)     | Internal          | 11          | 111        | <a href="#">1</a> , <a href="#">2</a> |
| (Reserved)                                      | Internal          | xx          | 110        | <a href="#">1</a>                     |
| Low-Power RC Oscillator (LPRC)                  | Internal          | 11          | 101        | <a href="#">1</a>                     |
| Secondary (Timer1) Oscillator (SOSC)            | Secondary         | 11          | 100        | <a href="#">1</a>                     |
| Primary Oscillator (XT) with PLL Module (XTPLL) | Primary           | 01          | 011        |                                       |
| Primary Oscillator (EC) with PLL Module (ECPLL) | Primary           | 00          | 011        |                                       |
| Primary Oscillator (HS)                         | Primary           | 10          | 010        |                                       |
| Primary Oscillator (XT)                         | Primary           | 01          | 010        |                                       |
| Primary Oscillator (EC)                         | Primary           | 00          | 010        |                                       |
| Fast RC Oscillator with PLL Module (FRCPLL)     | Internal          | 11          | 001        | <a href="#">1</a>                     |
| Fast RC Oscillator (FRC)                        | Internal          | 11          | 000        | <a href="#">1</a>                     |

**Note 1:** OSC0 pin function is determined by the OSCIOFCN Configuration bit.

**2:** This is the default oscillator mode for an unprogrammed (erased) device.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 9.3 Control Registers

The operation of the oscillator is controlled by three Special Function Registers:

- OSCCON
- CLKDIV
- OSCTUN

The OSCCON register (Register 9-1) is the main control register for the oscillator. It controls clock source switching and allows the monitoring of clock sources.

The CLKDIV register (Register 9-2) controls the features associated with Doze mode, as well as the postscaler for the FRC Oscillator.

The OSCTUN register (Register 9-3) allows the user to fine-tune the FRC Oscillator over a range of approximately  $\pm 1.5\%$ . It also controls the FRC self-tuning features, described in Section 9.5 “FRC Self-Tuning”.

### REGISTER 9-1: OSCCON: OSCILLATOR CONTROL REGISTER

| U-0    | R-0   | R-0   | R-0   | U-0   | R/W-x <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-x <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-x <sup>(1)</sup> |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| —      | COSC2 | COSC1 | COSC0 | —     | NOSC2                | NOSC1                | NOSC0                |
| bit 15 |       |       |       | bit 8 |                      |                      |                      |

| R/SO-0  | R/W-0                 | R-0 <sup>(3)</sup> | U-0 | R/CO-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0 |
|---------|-----------------------|--------------------|-----|--------|--------|--------|-------|
| CLKLOCK | IOLOCK <sup>(2)</sup> | LOCK               | —   | CF     | POSCEN | SOSCEN | OSWEN |
| bit 7   |                       |                    |     | bit 0  |        |        |       |

|                   |                         |                                    |
|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | CO = Clearable Only bit | SO = Settable Only bit             |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit        | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set        | '0' = Bit is cleared               |
|                   |                         | x = Bit is unknown                 |

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12 **COSC<2:0>:** Current Oscillator Selection bits

- 111 = Fast RC Oscillator with Postscaler (FRCDIV)
- 110 = Reserved
- 101 = Low-Power RC Oscillator (LPRC)
- 100 = Secondary Oscillator (SOSC)
- 011 = Primary Oscillator with PLL module (XTPLL, HSPLL, ECPLL)
- 010 = Primary Oscillator (XT, HS, EC)
- 001 = Fast RC Oscillator with Postscaler and PLL module (FRCPLL)
- 000 = Fast RC Oscillator (FRC)

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **NOSC<2:0>:** New Oscillator Selection bits<sup>(1)</sup>

- 111 = Fast RC Oscillator with Postscaler (FRCDIV)
- 110 = Reserved
- 101 = Low-Power RC Oscillator (LPRC)
- 100 = Secondary Oscillator (SOSC)
- 011 = Primary Oscillator with PLL module (XTPLL, HSPLL, ECPLL)
- 010 = Primary Oscillator (XT, HS, EC)
- 001 = Fast RC Oscillator with Postscaler and PLL module (FRCPLL)
- 000 = Fast RC Oscillator (FRC)

**Note 1:** Reset values for these bits are determined by the FNOSCx Configuration bits.

**2:** The state of the IOLOCK bit can only be changed once an unlocking sequence has been executed. In addition, if the IOL1WAY Configuration bit is '1', once the IOLOCK bit is set, it cannot be cleared.

**3:** This bit also resets to '0' during any valid clock switch or whenever a non-PLL Clock mode is selected.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 9-1: OSCCON: OSCILLATOR CONTROL REGISTER (CONTINUED)

- bit 7      **CLKLOCK:** Clock Selection Lock Enable bit  
If FSCM is enabled (FCKSM1 = 1):  
1 = Clock and PLL selections are locked  
0 = Clock and PLL selections are not locked and may be modified by setting the OSWEN bit  
If FSCM is disabled (FCKSM1 = 0):  
Clock and PLL selections are never locked and may be modified by setting the OSWEN bit.
- bit 6      **IOLOCK:** I/O Lock Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
1 = I/O lock is active  
0 = I/O lock is not active
- bit 5      **LOCK:** PLL Lock Status bit<sup>(3)</sup>  
1 = PLL module is in lock or PLL module start-up timer is satisfied  
0 = PLL module is out of lock, PLL start-up timer is running or PLL is disabled
- bit 4      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 3      **CF:** Clock Fail Detect bit  
1 = FSCM has detected a clock failure  
0 = No clock failure has been detected
- bit 2      **POSCEN:** Primary Oscillator (POSC) Sleep Enable bit  
1 = Primary Oscillator continues to operate during Sleep mode  
0 = Primary Oscillator is disabled during Sleep mode
- bit 1      **SOSCEN:** 32 kHz Secondary Oscillator (SOSC) Enable bit  
1 = Enables Secondary Oscillator  
0 = Disables Secondary Oscillator
- bit 0      **OSWEN:** Oscillator Switch Enable bit  
1 = Initiates an oscillator switch to a clock source specified by the NOSC<2:0> bits  
0 = Oscillator switch is complete

- Note 1:** Reset values for these bits are determined by the FNOSC<sub>x</sub> Configuration bits.
- 2:** The state of the IOLOCK bit can only be changed once an unlocking sequence has been executed. In addition, if the IOL1WAY Configuration bit is '1', once the IOLOCK bit is set, it cannot be cleared.
- 3:** This bit also resets to '0' during any valid clock switch or whenever a non-PLL Clock mode is selected.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 9-2: CLKDIV: CLOCK DIVIDER REGISTER

|        |        |       |       |                      |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|-------|-------|----------------------|--------|--------|--------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0                | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-1  |
| ROI    | DOZE2  | DOZE1 | DOZE0 | DOZEN <sup>(1)</sup> | RCDIV2 | RCDIV1 | RCDIV0 |
| bit 15 |        |       |       |                      |        |        | bit 8  |
| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | U-0   | U-0                  | U-0    | U-0    | U-0    |
| CPDIV1 | CPDIV0 | PLEN  | —     | —                    | —      | —      | —      |
| bit 7  |        |       |       |                      |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **ROI:** Recover on Interrupt bit  
1 = Interrupts clear the DOZEN bit and reset the CPU peripheral clock ratio to 1:1  
0 = Interrupts have no effect on the DOZEN bit
- bit 14-12    **DOZE<2:0>:** CPU Peripheral Clock Ratio Select bits  
111 = 1:128  
110 = 1:64  
101 = 1:32  
100 = 1:16  
011 = 1:8  
010 = 1:4  
001 = 1:2  
000 = 1:1
- bit 11      **DOZEN:** Doze Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = DOZE<2:0> bits specify the CPU peripheral clock ratio  
0 = CPU peripheral clock ratio is set to 1:1
- bit 10-8    **RCDIV<2:0>:** FRC Postscaler Select bits  
111 = 31.25 kHz (divide-by-256)  
110 = 125 kHz (divide-by-64)  
101 = 250 kHz (divide-by-32)  
100 = 500 kHz (divide-by-16)  
011 = 1 MHz (divide-by-8)  
010 = 2 MHz (divide-by-4)  
001 = 4 MHz (divide-by-2)  
000 = 8 MHz (divide-by-1)
- bit 7-6    **CPDIV<1:0>:** USB System Clock Select bits (postscaler selected from 32 MHz clock branch)  
11 = 4 MHz (divide-by-8)<sup>(2)</sup>  
10 = 8 MHz (divide-by-4)<sup>(2)</sup>  
01 = 16 MHz (divide-by-2)  
00 = 32 MHz (divide-by-1)
- bit 5      **PLEN:** PLL Enable bit  
1 = PLL is enabled  
0 = PLL is disabled
- bit 4-0    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**Note 1:** This bit is automatically cleared when the ROI bit is set and an interrupt occurs.

**2:** This setting is not allowed while the USB module is enabled.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 9-3: OSCTUN: FRC OSCILLATOR TUNE REGISTER

|        |     |        |                      |        |        |      |         |
|--------|-----|--------|----------------------|--------|--------|------|---------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0                | R-0    | R/W-0  | R-0  | R/W-0   |
| STEN   | —   | STSIDL | STSRC <sup>(1)</sup> | STLOCK | STLPOL | STOR | STORPOL |
| bit 15 |     |        |                      |        |        |      | bit 8   |

|       |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | TUN5  | TUN4  | TUN3  | TUN2  | TUN1  | TUN0  |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **STEN:** FRC Self-Tune Enable bit

1 = FRC self-tuning is enabled; TUNx bits are controlled by hardware

0 = FRC self-tuning is disabled; application may optionally control TUNx bits

bit 14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13 **STSIDL:** FRC Self-Tune Stop in Idle bit

1 = Self-tuning stops during Idle mode

0 = Self-tuning continues during Idle mode

bit 12 **STSRC:** FRC Self-Tune Reference Clock Source bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = FRC is tuned to approximately match the USB host clock tolerance

0 = FRC is tuned to approximately match the 32.768 kHz SOSC tolerance

bit 11 **STLOCK:** FRC Self-Tune Lock Status bit

1 = FRC accuracy is currently within  $\pm 0.2\%$  of the STSRC reference accuracy

0 = FRC accuracy may not be within  $\pm 0.2\%$  of the STSRC reference accuracy

bit 10 **STLPOL:** FRC Self-Tune Lock Interrupt Polarity bit

1 = A self-tune lock interrupt is generated when STLOCK = 0

0 = A self-tune lock interrupt is generated when STLOCK = 1

bit 9 **STOR:** FRC Self-Tune Out of Range Status bit

1 = STSRC reference clock error is beyond the range of TUN<5:0>; no tuning is performed

0 = STSRC reference clock is within the tunable range; tuning is performed

bit 8 **STORPOL:** FRC Self-Tune Out of Range Interrupt Polarity bit

1 = A self-tune out of range interrupt is generated when STOR is = 0

0 = A self-tune out of range interrupt is generated when STOR is = 1

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **TUN<5:0>:** FRC Oscillator Tuning bits

011111 = Maximum frequency deviation

011110 =

•

•

•

000001 =

000000 = Center frequency, oscillator is running at factory calibrated frequency

111111 =

•

•

•

100001 =

100000 = Minimum frequency deviation

**Note 1:** Use of either clock recovery source has specific application requirements. For more information, see [Section 9.5 “FRC Self-Tuning”](#).

## 9.4 Clock Switching Operation

With few limitations, applications are free to switch between any of the four clock sources (POSC, SOSC, FRC and LPRC) under software control and at any time. To limit the possible side effects that could result from this flexibility, PIC24F devices have a safeguard lock built into the switching process.

**Note:** The Primary Oscillator mode has three different submodes (XT, HS and EC) which are determined by the POSCMDx Configuration bits. While an application can switch to and from Primary Oscillator mode in software, it cannot switch between the different primary submodes without reprogramming the device.

### 9.4.1 ENABLING CLOCK SWITCHING

To enable clock switching, the FCKSM1 Configuration bit in CW2 must be programmed to '0'. (For more information, refer to [Section 30.1 "Configuration Bits"](#).) If the FCKSM1 Configuration bit is unprogrammed ('1'), the clock switching function and Fail-Safe Clock Monitor function are disabled; this is the default setting.

The NOSCx control bits (OSCCON<10:8>) do not control the clock selection when clock switching is disabled. However, the COSC<2:0> bits (OSCCON<14:12>) will reflect the clock source selected by the FNOSCx Configuration bits.

The OSWEN control bit (OSCCON<0>) has no effect when clock switching is disabled; it is held at '0' at all times.

### 9.4.2 OSCILLATOR SWITCHING SEQUENCE

At a minimum, performing a clock switch requires this basic sequence:

1. If desired, read the COSC<2:0> bits (OSCCON<14:12>) to determine the current oscillator source.
2. Perform the unlock sequence to allow a write to the OSCCON register high byte.
3. Write the appropriate value to the NOSCx bits (OSCCON<10:8>) for the new oscillator source.
4. Perform the unlock sequence to allow a write to the OSCCON register low byte.
5. Set the OSWEN bit to initiate the oscillator switch.

Once the basic sequence is completed, the system clock hardware responds automatically as follows:

1. The clock switching hardware compares the COSCx bits with the new value of the NOSCx bits. If they are the same, then the clock switch is a redundant operation. In this case, the OSWEN bit is cleared automatically and the clock switch is aborted.
2. If a valid clock switch has been initiated, the LOCK (OSCCON<5>) and CF (OSCCON<3>) bits are cleared.
3. The new oscillator is turned on by the hardware if it is not currently running. If a crystal oscillator must be turned on, the hardware will wait until the OST expires. If the new source is using the PLL, then the hardware waits until a PLL lock is detected (LOCK = 1).
4. The hardware waits for 10 clock cycles from the new clock source and then performs the clock switch.
5. The hardware clears the OSWEN bit to indicate a successful clock transition. In addition, the NOSCx bits value is transferred to the COSCx bits.
6. The old clock source is turned off at this time, with the exception of LPRC (if WDT or FSCM is enabled) or SOSC (if SOSSEN remains set).

**Note 1:** The processor will continue to execute code throughout the clock switching sequence. Timing-sensitive code should not be executed during this time.

- 2:** Direct clock switches between any Primary Oscillator mode with PLL and FRCPLL mode are not permitted. This applies to clock switches in either direction. In these instances, the application must switch to FRC mode as a transitional clock source between the two PLL modes.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

A recommended code sequence for a clock switch includes the following:

1. Disable interrupts during the OSCCON register unlock and write sequence.
2. Execute the unlock sequence for the OSCCON high byte by writing 78h and 9Ah to OSCCON<15:8> in two back-to-back instructions.
3. Write new oscillator source to the NOSCx bits in the instruction immediately following the unlock sequence.
4. Execute the unlock sequence for the OSCCON low byte by writing 46h and 57h to OSCCON<7:0> in two back-to-back instructions.
5. Set the OSWEN bit in the instruction immediately following the unlock sequence.
6. Continue to execute code that is not clock-sensitive (optional).
7. Invoke an appropriate amount of software delay (cycle counting) to allow the selected oscillator and/or PLL to start and stabilize.
8. Check to see if OSWEN is '0'. If it is, the switch was successful. If OSWEN is still set, then check the LOCK bit to determine the cause of the failure.

The core sequence for unlocking the OSCCON register and initiating a clock switch is shown in [Example 9-1](#).

## EXAMPLE 9-1: BASIC CODE SEQUENCE FOR CLOCK SWITCHING

```
;Place the new oscillator selection in W0
;OSCCONH (high byte) Unlock Sequence
MOV      #OSCCONH, w1
MOV      #0x78, w2
MOV      #0x9A, w3
MOV.b    w2, [w1]
MOV.b    w3, [w1]
;Set new oscillator selection
MOV.b    WREG, OSCCONH
;OSCCONL (low byte) unlock sequence
MOV      #OSCCONL, w1
MOV      #0x46, w2
MOV      #0x57, w3
MOV.b    w2, [w1]
MOV.b    w3, [w1]
;Start oscillator switch operation
BSET     OSCCON, #0
```

## 9.5 FRC Self-Tuning

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices include an automatic mechanism to calibrate the FRC during run time. This system uses clock recovery from a source of known accuracy to maintain the FRC within a very narrow margin of its nominal 8 MHz frequency. This allows for a frequency accuracy that exceeds 0.25%, which is well within the requirements of the “*USB 2.0 Specification*”.

**Note:** The self-tune feature maintains sufficient accuracy for operation in USB Device mode. For applications that function as a USB host, a high-accuracy clock source ( $\pm 0.05\%$ ) is still required.

The self-tune system is controlled by the bits in the upper half of the OSCTUN register. Setting the STEN bit (OSCTUN<15>) enables the system, causing it to recover a calibration clock from a source selected by the STSRC bit (OSCTUN<12>). When STSRC = 1, the system uses the Start-of-Frame (SOF) packets from an external USB host for its source. When STSRC = 0, the system uses the crystal controlled SOSC for its calibration source. Regardless of the source, the system uses the TUN<5:0> bits (OSCTUN<5:0>) to change the FRC's frequency. Frequency monitoring and adjustment is dynamic, occurring continuously during run time. While the system is active, the TUNx bits cannot be written to by software.

**Note:** To use the USB as a clock recovery source (STSRC = 1), the microcontroller must be configured for USB operation and connected to an external USB device.

If the SOSC is to be used as the clock recovery source (STSRC = 0), the SOSC must always be enabled.

The self-tune system can generate a hardware interrupt, FSTIF. The interrupt can result from a drift of the FRC from the reference, by greater than 0.2%, in either direction or whenever the frequency deviation is beyond the ability of the TUNx bits to correct (i.e., greater than 1.5%). The STLOCK and STOR status bits (OSCTUN<11,9>) are used to indicate these conditions.

The STLPOL and STORPOL bits (OSCTUN<10,8>) configure the FSTIF interrupt to occur in the presence or the absence of the conditions. It is the user's responsibility to monitor both the STLOCK and STOR bits to determine the exact cause of the interrupt.

**Note:** The STLPOL and STORPOL bits should be ignored when the self-tune system is disabled (STEN = 0).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 9.6 Oscillator Modes and USB Operation

Because of the timing requirements imposed by USB, an internal clock of 48 MHz is required at all times while the USB module is enabled and not in a suspended operating state. Since this is well beyond the maximum CPU clock speed, a method is provided to internally generate both the USB and system clocks from a single oscillator source. PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices use the same clock structure as most other PIC24FJ devices, but include a two-branch PLL system to generate the two clock signals.

The USB PLL block is shown in Figure 9-2. In this system, the input from the Primary Oscillator is divided down by a PLL prescaler to generate a 4 MHz output. This is used to drive an on-chip, 96 MHz PLL frequency multiplier to drive the two clock branches. One branch uses a fixed, divide-by-2 frequency divider to generate the 48 MHz USB clock. The other branch uses a fixed, divide-by-3 frequency divider and configurable PLL prescaler/divider to generate a range of system clock frequencies. The CPDIVx bits select the system clock speed. Available clock options are listed in Table 9-2.

The USB PLL prescaler does not automatically sense the incoming oscillator frequency. The user must manually configure the PLL divider to generate the required 4 MHz output using the PLLDIV<3:0> Configuration bits. This limits the choices for Primary Oscillator frequency to a total of 8 possibilities, as shown in Table 9-3.

**TABLE 9-2: SYSTEM CLOCK OPTIONS DURING USB OPERATION**

| MCU Clock Division (CPDIV<1:0>) | Microcontroller Clock Frequency |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| None (00)                       | 32 MHz                          |
| ÷2 (01)                         | 16 MHz                          |
| ÷4 (10) <sup>(1)</sup>          | 8 MHz                           |
| ÷8 (11) <sup>(1)</sup>          | 4 MHz                           |

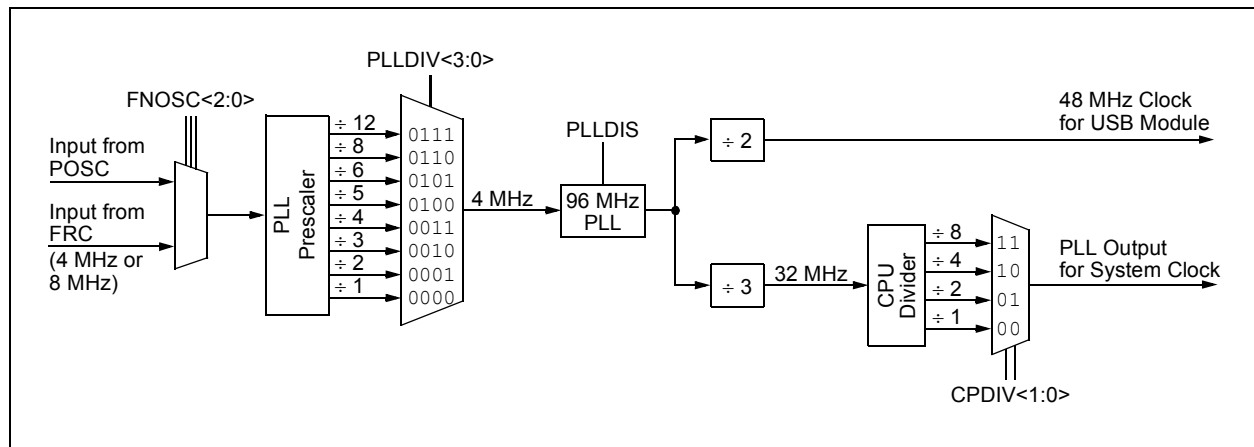
**Note 1:** Not compatible with USB operation; the USB module must be disabled to use this system clock option.

**TABLE 9-3: VALID PRIMARY OSCILLATOR CONFIGURATIONS FOR USB OPERATIONS**

| Input Oscillator Frequency | Clock Mode                          | PLL Division (PLLDIV<3:0>) |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 48 MHz                     | ECPLL                               | ÷12 (0111)                 |
| 32 MHz                     | ECPLL                               | ÷8 (0110)                  |
| 24 MHz                     | HSPLL, ECPLL                        | ÷6 (0101)                  |
| 20 MHz                     | HSPLL, ECPLL                        | ÷5 (0100)                  |
| 16 MHz                     | HSPLL, ECPLL                        | ÷4 (0011)                  |
| 12 MHz                     | HSPLL, ECPLL                        | ÷3 (0010)                  |
| 8 MHz                      | ECPLL, XTPLL, FRCPLL <sup>(1)</sup> | ÷2 (0001)                  |
| 4 MHz                      | ECPLL, XTPLL, FRCPLL <sup>(1)</sup> | ÷1 (0000)                  |

**Note 1:** Requires the use of the FRC self-tune feature to maintain the required clock accuracy.

**FIGURE 9-2: USB PLL BLOCK**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 9.6.1 CONSIDERATIONS FOR USB OPERATION

When using the USB On-The-Go module in PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices, users must always observe these rules in configuring the system clock:

- The Oscillator modes listed in [Table 9-3](#) are the only oscillator configurations that permit USB operation. There is no provision to provide a separate external clock source to the USB module.
- For USB operation, the selected clock source (EC, HS or XT) must meet the USB clock tolerance requirements.
- When the FRCPLL Oscillator mode is used for USB applications, the FRC self-tune system should be used as well. While the FRC is accurate, the only two ways to ensure the level of accuracy required by the “*USB 2.0 Specification*”, throughout the application’s operating range, are either the self-tune system or manually changing the TUNx bits.
- The user must always ensure that the FRC source is configured to provide a frequency of 4 MHz or 8 MHz (RCDIV<2:0> = 001 or 000) and that the USB PLL prescaler is configured appropriately.
- All other Oscillator modes are available; however, USB operation is not possible when these modes are selected. They may still be useful in cases where other power levels of operation are desirable and the USB module is not needed (for example, the application is Sleeping and waiting for a bus attachment).

## 9.7 Reference Clock Output

In addition to the CLKO output ( $F_{osc}/2$ ) available in certain Oscillator modes, the device clock in the PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices can also be configured to provide a reference clock output signal to a port pin. This feature is available in all oscillator configurations and allows the user to select a greater range of clock submultiples to drive external devices in the application.

This reference clock output is controlled by the REFOCONL, REFOCONH and REFOTRIML registers ([Register 9-4](#), [Register 9-5](#) and [Register 9-6](#)). Setting the ROEN bit (REFOCONL<15>) enables the module. Setting the ROOUT bit (REFOCONL<12>) makes the clock signal available on the REFO pin.

The RODIVx bits (REFOCONH<14:0>) enable the selection of 32768 different clock divider options.

### 9.7.1 CLOCK SOURCE REQUEST

The ROSELx bits determine different base clock sources for the module.

If the selected clock source has a global device enable (via device Configuration fuse settings), the user must enable the clock source before selecting it as a base clock source.

The ROACTIVE bit (REFOCONL<8>) synchronizes the REFO module during the turn-on and turn-off of the module.

**Note:** Once the ROEN bit is set, it should not be cleared until the ROACTIVE bit is read as ‘1’.

### 9.7.2 CLOCK SWITCHING

The base clock to the module can be switched. First, turn off the module by clearing the ROEN bit (REFOCONL<15> = 0) and wait for the ROACTIVE (REFOCONL<8>) bit to be cleared by the hardware. This avoids a glitch in the REFO output.

The ROTRIMx and RODIVx bits can be changed on-the-fly. Follow the below mentioned steps before changing the ROTRIMx and RODIVx bits.

- REFO is not actively performing the divider switch (ROSWEN = 0).
- Update the ROTRIMx and RODIVx bits with the latest values.
- Set the ROSWEN bit.
- Wait for the ROSWEN bit to be cleared by hardware.

The ROTRIMx bits allow a fractional divisor to be added to the integer divisor, specified in the RODIVx register bits.

### EQUATION 9-1: FRACTIONAL DIVISOR FOR ROTRIMx BITS

*For RODIV<14:0> = 0, No Divide:  
 $RODIV<14:0> > 0, Period = 2 * (RODIV_x + ROTRIM_x)$*

### 9.7.3 OPERATION IN SLEEP MODE

The ROSLP and ROSELx bits (REFOCONL<11,3:0>) control the availability of the reference output during Sleep mode.

The ROSLP bit determines if the reference source is available on the REFO pin when the device is in Sleep mode.

To use the reference clock output in Sleep mode, the ROSLP bit must be set and the reference base clock should not be the system clock or peripheral clock (ROSELx bits should not be ‘0b0000’ or ‘0b0001’).

The device clock must also be configured for either:

- One of the Primary modes (EC, HS or XT); the POSCEN bit should be set
- The Secondary Oscillator bit (SOSCEN) should be set
- The LPRC Oscillator

If one of the above conditions is not met, then the oscillators on OSC1, OSC2 and SOSCI will be powered down when the device enters Sleep mode.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 9-4: REFOCONL: REFERENCE OSCILLATOR CONTROL LOW REGISTER

|        |     |        |       |       |     |        |          |
|--------|-----|--------|-------|-------|-----|--------|----------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0    |
| ROEN   | —   | ROSIDL | ROOUT | ROSLP | —   | ROSWEN | ROACTIVE |
| bit 15 |     |        |       |       |     |        | bit 8    |

|       |     |     |     |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | ROSEL3 | ROSEL2 | ROSEL1 | ROSEL0 |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15 **ROEN:** Reference Oscillator Output Enable bit  
1 = Reference oscillator is enabled  
0 = Reference oscillator is disabled
- bit 14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13 **ROSIDL:** Reference Oscillator Output Stop in Idle Mode bit  
1 = Reference oscillator is disabled in Idle mode  
0 = Reference oscillator continues to run in Idle mode
- bit 12 **ROOUT:** Reference Clock Output Enable bit  
1 = REFO clock output is driven on the REFO pin  
0 = REFO clock output is disabled
- bit 11 **ROSLP:** Reference Oscillator Output in Sleep Mode bit  
1 = Reference oscillator output continues to run in Sleep mode  
0 = Reference oscillator output is disabled in Sleep mode
- bit 10 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 9 **ROSWEN:** Reference Oscillator Clock Source Switch Enable bit  
1 = Reference clock source switching is currently in progress  
0 = Reference clock source switching has completed
- bit 8 **ROACTIVE:** Reference Clock Request Status bit  
1 = Reference clock request is active (user should not update the REFOCONL register)  
0 = Reference clock request is not active (user can update the REFOCONL register)
- bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
(Reserved for additional ROSELx bits.)
- bit 3-0 **ROSEL<3:0>:** Reference Clock Source Select bits  
Select one of the various clock sources to be used as the reference clock:  
1001-1111 = Reserved  
1000 = REFI (Reference Clock Input)  
0111 = Reserved  
0110 = 8x PLL or USB-PLL  
0101 = Secondary Oscillator (SOSC)  
0100 = Low-Power RC Oscillator (LPRC)  
0011 = Fast RC Oscillator (FRC)  
0010 = Primary Oscillator (XT, HS, EC)  
0001 = Peripheral Clock (PBCLK) – Internal instruction cycle clock, Fcy  
0000 = System Clock (Fosc)

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 9-5: REFOCONH: REFERENCE OSCILLATOR CONTROL HIGH REGISTER

|        |             |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | R/W-0       | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | RODIV<14:8> |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 15 |             |       |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|            |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0      | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| RODIV<7:0> |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 7      |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-0 **RODIV<14:0>:** Reference Oscillator Divisor Select bits

Specifies the 1/2 period of the reference clock in the source clocks.

For example: Period of ref\_clk\_output ≤ [Reference Source \* 2] \* RODIV<14:0>:

1111111111111111 = REFO clock is the base clock frequency divided by 65,534 (32,767 \* 2)

1111111111111110 = REFO clock is the base clock frequency divided by 65,532 (32,766 \* 2)

•

•

•

0000000000000011 = REFO clock is the base clock frequency divided by 6 (3 \* 2)

0000000000000010 = REFO clock is the base clock frequency divided by 4 (2 \* 2)

0000000000000001 = REFO clock is the base clock frequency divided by 2 (1 \* 2)

0000000000000000 = REFO clock is the same frequency as the base clock (no divider)<sup>(1)</sup>

**Note 1:** The ROTRIMx values are ignored.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 9-6: REFOTRIML: REFERENCE OSCILLATOR TRIM REGISTER

|              |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0        | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| ROTRIM<15:8> |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 15       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 8        |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |

|         |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|---------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| R/W-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 |
| ROTRIM7 | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   |
| bit 7   |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| bit 0   |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-7      **ROTRIM<15:7>**: Reference Oscillator Trim bits  
 Provides fractional additive to the RODIVx value for the 1/2 period of the REFO clock.  
 11111111 = 511/512 (0.998046875) divisor added to RODIVx value  
 11111110 = 510/512 (0.99609375) divisor added to RODIVx value  
 .  
 .  
 .  
 10000000 = 256/512 (0.5000) divisor added to RODIVx value  
 .  
 .  
 .  
 00000010 = 2/512 (0.00390625) divisor added to RODIVx value  
 00000001 = 1/512 (0.001953125) divisor added to RODIVx value  
 00000000 = 0/512 (0.0) divisor added to RODIV value

bit 6-0      **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

## 9.8 On-Chip PLL

An on-chip PLL (x4, x6, x8) can be selected by the Configuration bits, PLLDIV<3:0>. The Primary Oscillator and FRC sources (FRCDIV) have the option of using this PLL.

Using the internal FRC source, the PLL module can generate the following frequencies, as shown in [Table 9-4](#).

**TABLE 9-4: VALID FRC CONFIGURATION FOR ON-CHIP PLL<sup>(1)</sup>**

| FRC   | RCDIV<2:0> (FRCDIV) | x4 PLL | x6 PLL | x8 PLL |
|-------|---------------------|--------|--------|--------|
| 8 MHz | 000 (divide-by-1)   | 32 MHz | —      | —      |
| 8 MHz | 001 (divide-by-2)   | 16 MHz | 24 MHz | 32 MHz |
| 8 MHz | 010 (divide-by-4)   | 8 MHz  | 12 MHz | 16 MHz |

**Note 1:** The minimum frequency input to the on-chip PLL is 2 MHz.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 10.0 POWER-SAVING FEATURES

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24FJ devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “Power-Saving Features with Deep Sleep” (DS39727).

The PIC24FJ128GB204 family of devices provides the ability to manage power consumption by selectively managing clocking to the CPU and the peripherals. In general, a lower clock frequency and a reduction in the number of circuits being clocked reduces consumed power.

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices manage power consumption with five strategies:

- Instruction-Based Power Reduction Modes
- Hardware-Based Power Reduction Features
- Clock Frequency Control
- Software Controlled Doze Mode
- Selective Peripheral Control in Software

Combinations of these methods can be used to selectively tailor an application’s power consumption, while still maintaining critical application features, such as timing-sensitive communications.

## 10.1 Overview of Power-Saving Modes

In addition to full-power operation, otherwise known as Run mode, the PIC24FJ128GB204 family of devices offers three instruction-based, power-saving modes and one hardware-based mode:

- Idle
- Sleep (Sleep and Low-Voltage Sleep)
- Deep Sleep
- VBAT (with and without RTCC)

All four modes can be activated by powering down different functional areas of the microcontroller, allowing progressive reductions of operating and Idle power consumption. In addition, three of the modes can be tailored for more power reduction at a trade-off of some operating features. [Table 10-1](#) lists all of the operating modes, in order of increasing power savings. [Table 10-2](#) summarizes how the microcontroller exits the different modes. Specific information is provided in the following sections.

**TABLE 10-1: OPERATING MODES FOR PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY DEVICES**

| Mode              | Entry                   | Active Systems |                  |                    |                     |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------|------------------|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
|                   |                         | Core           | Peripherals      | Data RAM Retention | RTCC <sup>(1)</sup> | DSGPR0/DSGPR1 Retention |
| Run (default)     | N/A                     | Y              | Y                | Y                  | Y                   | Y                       |
| Idle              | Instruction             | N              | Y                | Y                  | Y                   | Y                       |
| Sleep:            |                         |                |                  |                    |                     |                         |
| Sleep             | Instruction             | N              | S <sup>(2)</sup> | Y                  | Y                   | Y                       |
| Low-Voltage Sleep | Instruction + RETEN bit | N              | S <sup>(2)</sup> | Y                  | Y                   | Y                       |
| Deep Sleep:       |                         |                |                  |                    |                     |                         |
| Deep Sleep        | Instruction + DSEN bit  | N              | N                | N                  | Y                   | Y                       |
| VBAT:             |                         |                |                  |                    |                     |                         |
| with RTCC         | Hardware                | N              | N                | N                  | Y                   | Y                       |

**Note 1:** If RTCC is otherwise enabled in firmware.

**2:** A select peripheral can operate during this mode from LPRC or an external clock.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 10-2: EXITING POWER-SAVING MODES**

| Mode              | Exit Conditions |      |        |     |      |            |                  |                            | Code Execution Resumes |
|-------------------|-----------------|------|--------|-----|------|------------|------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
|                   | Interrupts      |      | Resets |     |      | RTCC Alarm | WDT              | VDD Restore <sup>(2)</sup> |                        |
|                   | All             | INT0 | All    | POR | MCLR |            |                  |                            |                        |
| Idle              | Y               | Y    | Y      | Y   | Y    | Y          | Y                | N/A                        | Next instruction       |
| Sleep (all modes) | Y               | Y    | Y      | Y   | Y    | Y          | Y                | N/A                        |                        |
| Deep Sleep        | N               | Y    | N      | Y   | Y    | Y          | Y <sup>(1)</sup> | N/A                        | Reset vector           |
| VBAT              | N               | N    | N      | N   | N    | N          | N                | Y                          | Reset vector           |

**Note 1:** Deep Sleep WDT.

**2:** A POR or POR like Reset results whenever VDD is removed and restored in any mode except for Retention Deep Sleep.

## 10.1.1 INSTRUCTION-BASED POWER-SAVING MODES

Three of the power-saving modes are entered through the execution of the `PWRSV` instruction. Sleep mode stops clock operation and halts all code execution. Idle mode halts the CPU and code execution, but allows peripheral modules to continue operation. Deep Sleep mode stops clock operation, code execution, and all peripherals, except RTCC and DSWDT. It also freezes I/O states and removes power to Flash memory, and may remove power to SRAM.

The assembly syntax of the `PWRSV` instruction is shown in [Example 10-1](#). Sleep and Idle modes are entered directly with a single assembler command. Deep Sleep requires an additional sequence to unlock and enable the entry into Deep Sleep, which is described in [Section 10.4.1 “Entering Deep Sleep Mode”](#).

**Note:** `SLEEP_MODE` and `IDLE_MODE` are constants defined in the assembler include file for the selected device.

Sleep and Idle modes can be exited as a result of an enabled interrupt, WDT time-out or a device Reset. When the device exits these modes, it is said to “wake-up”.

The features enabled with the low-voltage/retention regulator results in some changes to the way that Sleep and Deep Sleep modes behave. See [Section 10.3 “Sleep Mode”](#) and [Section 10.4 “Deep Sleep Mode”](#) for additional information.

### 10.1.1.1 Interrupts Coincident with Power Save Instructions

Any interrupt that coincides with the execution of a `PWRSV` instruction will be held off until entry into Sleep or Idle mode has completed. The device will then wake-up from Sleep or Idle mode.

For Deep Sleep mode, interrupts that coincide with the execution of the `PWRSV` instruction may be lost. If the low-voltage/retention regulator is not enabled, the microcontroller resets on leaving Deep Sleep and the interrupt will be lost.

Interrupts that occur during the Deep Sleep unlock sequence will interrupt the mandatory five-instruction cycle sequence timing and cause a failure to enter Deep Sleep. For this reason, it is recommended to disable all interrupts during the Deep Sleep unlock sequence.

## EXAMPLE 10-1: `PWRSV` INSTRUCTION SYNTAX

```
// Syntax to enter Sleep mode:
PWRSV    #SLEEP_MODE        ; Put the device into SLEEP mode
//
//Syntax to enter Idle mode:
PWRSV    #IDLE_MODE         ; Put the device into IDLE mode
//
// Syntax to enter Deep Sleep mode:
// First use the unlock sequence to set the DSEN bit (see Example 10-2)
BSET     DSCON, #DSEN        ; Enable Deep Sleep
BSET     DSCON, #DSEN        ; Enable Deep Sleep(repeat the command)
PWRSV    #SLEEP_MODE        ; Put the device into Deep SLEEP mode
```

## 10.1.2 HARDWARE-BASED POWER-SAVING MODE

The hardware-based VBAT mode does not require any action by the user during code development. Instead, it is a hardware design feature that allows the microcontroller to retain critical data (using the DSGPRx registers) and maintain the RTCC when VDD is removed from the application. This is accomplished by supplying a backup power source to a specific power pin. VBAT mode is described in more detail in [Section 10.5 “VBAT Mode”](#).

## 10.1.3 LOW-VOLTAGE/RETENTION REGULATOR

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices incorporate a second on-chip voltage regulator, designed to provide power to select microcontroller features at 1.2V nominal. This regulator allows features, such as data RAM and the WDT, to be maintained in power-saving modes, where they would otherwise be inactive, or maintain them at a lower power than would otherwise be the case.

The low-voltage/retention regulator is only available when Sleep mode is invoked. It is controlled by the LPCFG Configuration bit (CW1<10>) and in firmware by the RETEN bit (RCON<12>). LPCFG must be programmed (= 0) and the RETEN bit must be set (= 1) for the regulator to be enabled.

## 10.2 Idle Mode

Idle mode includes these features:

- The CPU will stop executing instructions.
- The WDT is automatically cleared.
- The system clock source remains active. By default, all peripheral modules continue to operate normally from the system clock source, but can also be selectively disabled (see [Section 10.8 “Selective Peripheral Module Control”](#)).
- If the WDT or FSCM is enabled, the LPRC will also remain active.

The device will wake from Idle mode on any of these events:

- Any interrupt that is individually enabled
- Any device Reset
- A WDT time-out

On wake-up from Idle, the clock is reapplied to the CPU and instruction execution begins immediately, starting with the instruction following the PWRSAV instruction or the first instruction in the Interrupt Service Routine (ISR).

## 10.3 Sleep Mode

Sleep mode includes these features:

- The system clock source is shut down. If an on-chip oscillator is used, it is turned off.
- The device current consumption will be reduced to a minimum provided that no I/O pin is sourcing current.
- The I/O pin directions and states are frozen.
- The Fail-Safe Clock Monitor does not operate during Sleep mode since the system clock source is disabled.
- The LPRC clock will continue to run in Sleep mode if the WDT or RTCC, with LPRC as the clock source, is enabled.
- The WDT, if enabled, is automatically cleared prior to entering Sleep mode.
- Some device features or peripherals may continue to operate in Sleep mode. This includes items, such as the Input Change Notification on the I/O ports or peripherals that use an external clock input. Any peripheral that requires the system clock source for its operation will be disabled in Sleep mode.

The device will wake-up from Sleep mode on any of these events:

- On any interrupt source that is individually enabled
- On any form of device Reset
- On a WDT time-out

On wake-up from Sleep, the processor will restart with the same clock source that was active when Sleep mode was entered.

## 10.3.1 LOW-VOLTAGE/RETENTION SLEEP MODE

Low-Voltage/Retention Sleep mode functions as Sleep mode with the same features and wake-up triggers. The difference is that the low-voltage/retention regulator allows core digital logic voltage (VCORE) to drop to 1.2V nominal. This permits an incremental reduction of power consumption over what would be required if VCore was maintained at a 1.8V (minimum) level.

Low-Voltage Sleep mode requires a longer wake-up time than Sleep mode, due to the additional time required to bring VCore back to 1.8V (known as TREG). In addition, the use of the low-voltage/retention regulator limits the amount of current that can be sourced to any active peripherals, such as the RTCC, etc.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 10.4 Deep Sleep Mode

Deep Sleep mode provides the lowest levels of power consumption available from the instruction-based modes.

Deep Sleep modes have these features:

- The system clock source is shut down. If an on-chip oscillator is used, it is turned off.
- The device current consumption will be reduced to a minimum.
- The I/O pin directions and states are frozen.
- The Fail-Safe Clock Monitor does not operate during Sleep mode since the system clock source is disabled.
- The LPRC clock will continue to run in Deep Sleep mode if the WDT, or RTCC with LPRC as the clock source, is enabled.
- The dedicated Deep Sleep WDT and BOR systems, if enabled, are used.
- The RTCC and its clock source continue to run, if enabled. All other peripherals are disabled.

Entry into Deep Sleep mode is completely under software control. Exit from the Deep Sleep modes can be triggered from any of the following events:

- POR event
- $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  event
- RTCC alarm (If the RTCC is present)
- External Interrupt 0
- Deep Sleep Watchdog Timer (DSWDT) time-out

### 10.4.1 ENTERING DEEP SLEEP MODE

Deep Sleep mode is entered by setting the DSEN bit in the DSCON register and then executing a Sleep command (`PWRSAB #SLEEP_MODE`), within one instruction cycle, to minimize the chance that Deep Sleep will be spuriously entered.

If the `PWRSAB` command is not given within one instruction cycle, the DSEN bit will be cleared by the hardware and must be set again by the software before entering Deep Sleep mode. The DSEN bit is also automatically cleared when exiting Deep Sleep mode.

**Note:** To re-enter Deep Sleep after a Deep Sleep wake-up, allow a delay of at least 3  $T_{cy}$  after clearing the RELEASE bit.

The sequence to enter Deep Sleep mode is:

1. If the application requires the Deep Sleep WDT, enable it and configure its clock source. For more information on Deep Sleep WDT, see [Section 10.4.5 “Deep Sleep WDT”](#).
2. If the application requires Deep Sleep BOR, enable it by programming the DSBORN Configuration bit (`CW4<6>`).
3. If the application requires wake-up from Deep Sleep on RTCC alarm, enable and configure the RTCC module. For more information on RTCC, see [Section 22.0 “Real-Time Clock and Calendar \(RTCC\)”](#).
4. If needed, save any critical application context data by writing it to the DSGPR0 and DSGPR1 registers (optional).
5. Enable Deep Sleep mode by setting the DSEN bit (`DSCON<15>`).

**Note:** A repeat sequence is required to set the DSEN bit. The repeat sequence (repeating the instruction twice) is required to write into any of the Deep Sleep registers (DSCON, DSWAKE, DSGPR0, DSGPR1). This is required to prevent the user from entering Deep Sleep by mistake. Any write to these registers has to be done twice to actually complete the write (see [Example 10-2](#)).

6. Enter Deep Sleep mode by issuing 3 `NOP` commands and then a `PWRSAB #0` instruction.

Any time the DSEN bit is set, all bits in the DSWAKE register will be automatically cleared.

### EXAMPLE 10-2: THE REPEAT SEQUENCE

#### Example 1:

```
mov #8000, w2 ; enable DS
mov w2, DSCON
mov w2, DSCON ; second write required to
               actually write to DSCON
```

#### Example 2:

```
bset DSCON, #15
nop
nop
nop
bset DSCON, #15 ; enable DS (two writes
               required)
```

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 10.4.2 EXITING DEEP SLEEP MODES

Deep Sleep modes exit on any one of the following events:

- POR event on VDD supply. If there is no DSBOR circuit to re-arm the VDD supply POR circuit, the external VDD supply must be lowered to the natural arming voltage of the POR circuit.
- DSWDT time-out. When the DSWDT times out, the device exits Deep Sleep.
- RTCC alarm (if RTCEN = 1).
- Assertion ('0') of the MCLR pin.
- Assertion of the INT0 pin (if the interrupt was enabled before Deep Sleep mode was entered). The polarity configuration is used to determine the assertion level ('0' or '1') of the pin that will cause an exit from Deep Sleep mode. Exiting from Deep Sleep mode requires a change on the INT0 pin while in Deep Sleep mode.

**Note:** Any interrupt pending when entering Deep Sleep mode is cleared.

Exiting Deep Sleep generally does not retain the state of the device and is equivalent to a Power-on Reset (POR) of the device. Exceptions to this include the RTCC (if present), which remains operational through the wake-up, the DSGPRx registers and the DSWDT.

Wake-up events that occur from the time Deep Sleep exits, until the time the POR sequence completes, are not ignored. The DSWAKE register will capture ALL wake-up events, from setting the DSEN bit to clearing the RELEASE bit.

The sequence for exiting Deep Sleep mode is:

1. After a wake-up event, the device exits Deep Sleep and performs a POR. The DSEN bit is cleared automatically. Code execution resumes at the Reset vector.
2. To determine if the device exited Deep Sleep, read the Deep Sleep bit, DPSLP (RCON<10>). This bit will be set if there was an exit from Deep Sleep mode. If the bit is set, clear it.
3. Determine the wake-up source by reading the DSWAKE register.
4. Determine if a DSBOR event occurred during Deep Sleep mode by reading the DSBOR bit (DSCON<1>).
5. If application context data has been saved, read it back from the DSGPR0 and DSGPR1 registers.
6. Clear the RELEASE bit (DSCON<0>).

## 10.4.3 SAVING CONTEXT DATA WITH THE DSGPRx REGISTERS

As exiting Deep Sleep mode causes a POR, most Special Function Registers reset to their default POR values. In addition, because V<sub>CORE</sub> power is not supplied in Deep Sleep mode, information in data RAM may be lost when exiting this mode.

Applications which require critical data to be saved prior to Deep Sleep, may use the Deep Sleep General Purpose registers, DSGPR0 and DSGPR1, or data EEPROM (if available). Unlike other SFRs, the contents of these registers are preserved while the device is in Deep Sleep mode. After exiting Deep Sleep, software can restore the data by reading the registers and clearing the RELEASE bit (DSCON<0>).

**Note:** User software should enable the DSSWEN (CW4<8>) Configuration Fuse bit for saving critical data in the DSGPRx registers.

## 10.4.4 I/O PINS IN DEEP SLEEP MODES

During Deep Sleep, the general purpose I/O pins retain their previous states and the Secondary Oscillator (SOSC) will remain running, if enabled. Pins that are configured as inputs (TRISx bit set), prior to entry into Deep Sleep, remain high-impedance during Deep Sleep. Pins that are configured as outputs (TRISx bit clear), prior to entry into Deep Sleep, remain as output pins during Deep Sleep. While in this mode, they continue to drive the output level determined by their corresponding LATx bit at the time of entry into Deep Sleep.

Once the device wakes back up, all I/O pins continue to maintain their previous states, even after the device has finished the POR sequence and is executing application code again. Pins configured as inputs during Deep Sleep remain high-impedance and pins configured as outputs continue to drive their previous value. After waking up, the TRISx and LATx registers, and the SOSCEN bit (OSCCON<1>) are reset. If firmware modifies any of these bits or registers, the I/O will not immediately go to the newly configured states. Once the firmware clears the RELEASE bit (DSCON<0>), the I/O pins are "released". This causes the I/O pins to take the states configured by their respective TRISx and LATx bit values.

This means that keeping the SOSC running after waking up requires the SOSCEN bit to be set before clearing RELEASE.

If the Deep Sleep BOR (DSBOR) is enabled, and a DSBOR or a true POR event occurs during Deep Sleep, the I/O pins will be immediately released, similar to clearing the RELEASE bit. All previous state information will be lost, including the general purpose DSGPR0 and DSGPR1 contents.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

If a  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  Reset event occurs during Deep Sleep, the DSGPRx, DSCON and DSWAKE registers will remain valid, and the RELEASE bit will remain set. The state of the SOSC will also be retained. The I/O pins, however, will be reset to their MCLR Reset state. Since RELEASE is still set, changes to the SOSCEN bit (OSCCON<1>) cannot take effect until the RELEASE bit is cleared.

In all other Deep Sleep wake-up cases, application firmware must clear the RELEASE bit in order to reconfigure the I/O pins.

## 10.4.5 DEEP SLEEP WDT

To enable the DSWDT in Deep Sleep mode, program the Configuration bit, DSWDTEN (CW4<7>). The device WDT need not be enabled for the DSWDT to function. Entry into Deep Sleep modes automatically resets the DSWDT.

The DSWDT clock source is selected by the DSWDTOSC Configuration bit (CW4<5>). The postscaler options are programmed by the DSWDTPS<4:0> Configuration bits (CW4<4:0>). The minimum time-out period that can be achieved is 1 ms and the maximum is 25.7 days. For more information on the CW4 Configuration register and DSWDT configuration options, refer to [Section 30.0 “Special Features”](#).

### 10.4.5.1 Switching Clocks in Deep Sleep Mode

Both the RTCC and the DSWDT may run from either SOSC or the LPRC clock source. This allows both the RTCC and DSWDT to run without requiring both the LPRC and SOSC to be enabled together, reducing power consumption.

Running the RTCC from LPRC will result in a loss of accuracy in the RTCC of approximately 5 to 10%. If a more accurate RTCC is required, it must be run from the SOSC clock source. The RTCC clock source is selected with the RTCLK<1:0> bits (RTCPWC<11:10>).

Under certain circumstances, it is possible for the DSWDT clock source to be off when entering Deep Sleep mode. In this case, the clock source is turned on automatically (if DSWDT is enabled), without the need for software intervention. However, this can cause a delay in the start of the DSWDT counters. In order to avoid this delay when using SOSC as a clock source, the application can activate SOSC prior to entering Deep Sleep mode.

## 10.4.6 CHECKING AND CLEARING THE STATUS OF DEEP SLEEP

Upon entry into Deep Sleep mode, the status bit, DPSLP (RCON<10>), becomes set and must be cleared by the software.

On power-up, the software should read this status bit to determine if the Reset was due to an exit from Deep Sleep mode and clear the bit if it is set. Of the four possible combinations of DPSLP and POR bit states, the following three cases can be considered:

- Both the DPSLP and POR bits are cleared. In this case, the Reset was due to some event other than a Deep Sleep mode exit.
- The DPSLP bit is clear, but the POR bit is set; this is a normal Power-on Reset.
- Both the DPSLP and POR bits are set. This means that Deep Sleep mode was entered, the device was powered down and Deep Sleep mode was exited.

## 10.4.7 POWER-ON RESETS (PORs)

VDD voltage is monitored to produce PORs. Since exiting from Deep Sleep mode functionally looks like a POR, the technique described in [Section 10.4.6 “Checking and Clearing the Status of Deep Sleep”](#) should be used to distinguish between Deep Sleep and a true POR event. When a true POR occurs, the entire device, including all Deep Sleep logic (Deep Sleep registers, RTCC, DSWDT, etc.) is reset.

## 10.5 VBAT Mode

This mode represents the lowest power state that the microcontroller can achieve and still resume operation. VBAT mode is automatically triggered when the microcontroller's main power supply on VDD fails. When this happens, the microcontroller's on-chip power switch connects to a backup power source, such as a battery, supplied to the VBAT pin. This maintains a few key systems at an extremely low-power draw until VDD is restored.

The power supplied on VBAT only runs two systems: the RTCC and the Deep Sleep Semaphore registers (DSGPR0 and DSGPR1). To maintain these systems during a sudden loss of VDD, it is essential to connect a power source, other than VDD or AVDD, to the VBAT pin.

When the RTCC is enabled, it continues to operate with the same clock source (SOSC or LPRC) that was selected prior to entering VBAT mode. There is no provision to switch to a lower power clock source after the mode switch.

Since the loss of VDD is usually an unforeseen event, it is recommended that the contents of the Deep Sleep Semaphore registers be loaded with the data to be retained at an early point in code execution.

### 10.5.1 VBAT MODE WITH NO RTCC

By disabling RTCC operation during VBAT mode, power consumption is reduced to the lowest of all power-saving modes. In this mode, only the Deep Sleep Semaphore registers are maintained.

## 10.5.2 WAKE-UP FROM VBAT MODES

When VDD is restored to a device in VBAT mode, it automatically wakes. Wake-up occurs with a POR, after which, the device starts executing code from the Reset vector. All SFRs, except the Deep Sleep Semaphores, are reset to their POR values. If the RTCC was not configured to run during VBAT mode, it will remain disabled and RTCC will not run. Wake-up timing is similar to that for a normal POR.

To differentiate a wake-up from VBAT mode, from other POR states, check the VBAT status bit (RCON2<0>). If this bit is set while the device is starting to execute the code from the Reset vector, it indicates that there has been an exit from VBAT mode. The application must clear the VBAT bit to ensure that future VBAT wake-up events are captured.

If a POR occurs without a power source connected to the VBAT pin, the VBPOR bit (RCON2<1>) is set. If this bit is set on a Power-on Reset, it indicates that a battery needs to be connected to the VBAT pin.

In addition, if the VBAT power source falls below the level needed for Deep Sleep Semaphore operation while in VBAT mode (e.g., the battery has been drained), the VBPOR bit will be set. VBPOR is also set when the microcontroller is powered up the very first time, even if power is supplied to VBAT.

## 10.5.3 I/O PINS DURING VBAT MODES

All I/O pins switch to Input mode during VBAT mode. The only exceptions are the SOSC1 and SOSC0 pins, which maintain their states if the Secondary Oscillator is being used as the RTCC clock source. It is the user's responsibility to restore the I/O pins to their proper states using the TRISx and LATx bits once VDD has been restored.

## 10.5.4 SAVING CONTEXT DATA WITH THE DSGPRx REGISTERS

As with Deep Sleep mode (i.e., without the low-voltage/retention regulator), all SFRs are reset to their POR values after VDD has been restored. Only the Deep Sleep Semaphore registers are preserved. Applications which require critical data to be saved should save it in DSGPR0 and DSGPR1.

|  |
|--|
| <b>Note:</b> If the VBAT mode is not used, it is recommended to connect the VBAT pin to VDD. |
|--|

The POR should be enabled for the reliable operation of the VBAT.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 10-1: DSCON: DEEP SLEEP CONTROL REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| DSEN   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |                      |           |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------------|-----------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | r-0 | R/W-0                | R/C-0, HS |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | DSBOR <sup>(2)</sup> | RELEASE   |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     |                      | bit 0     |

|                   |                   |                                    |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | C = Clearable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit  | HS = Hardware Settable bit         |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set  | '0' = Bit is cleared               |
|                   |                   | x = Bit is unknown                 |

- bit 15      **DSEN:** Deep Sleep Enable bit  
              1 = Enters Deep Sleep on execution of PWRSAV #0  
              0 = Enters normal Sleep on execution of PWRSAV #0
- bit 14-3    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 2        **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'
- bit 1        **DSBOR:** Deep Sleep BOR Event bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
              1 = The DSBOR was active and a BOR event was detected during Deep Sleep  
              0 = The DSBOR was not active, or was active, but did not detect a BOR event during Deep Sleep
- bit 0        **RELEASE:** I/O Pin State Release bit  
              1 = Upon waking from Deep Sleep, I/O pins maintain their states previous to the Deep Sleep entry  
              0 = Releases I/O pins from their state previous to Deep Sleep entry, and allows their respective TRISx and LATx bits to control their states

- Note 1:** All register bits are reset only in the case of a POR event outside of Deep Sleep mode.
- Note 2:** Unlike all other events, a Deep Sleep BOR event will NOT cause a wake-up from Deep Sleep; this re-arms the POR.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 10-2: DSWAKE: DEEP SLEEP WAKE-UP SOURCE REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>**

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |           |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0, HS |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | DSINT0    |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8     |

|           |     |     |           |           |           |     |       |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----|-------|
| R/W-0, HS | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0, HS | R/W-0, HS | R/W-0, HS | U-0 | U-0   |
| DSFLT     | —   | —   | DSWDT     | DSRTCC    | DSMCLR    | —   | —     |
| bit 7     |     |     |           |           |           |     | bit 0 |

|                   |                            |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HS = Hardware Settable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit           | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set           | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15-9 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 8 **DSINT0:** Deep Sleep Interrupt-on-Change bit  
 1 = Interrupt-on-change was asserted during Deep Sleep  
 0 = Interrupt-on-change was not asserted during Deep Sleep
- bit 7 **DSFLT:** Deep Sleep Fault Detect bit  
 1 = A Fault occurred during Deep Sleep and some Deep Sleep configuration settings may have been corrupted  
 0 = No Fault was detected during Deep Sleep
- bit 6-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 4 **DSWDT:** Deep Sleep Watchdog Timer Time-out bit  
 1 = The Deep Sleep Watchdog Timer timed out during Deep Sleep  
 0 = The Deep Sleep Watchdog Timer did not time out during Deep Sleep
- bit 3 **DSRTCC:** Deep Sleep Real-Time Clock and Calendar Alarm bit  
 1 = The Real-Time Clock and Calendar triggered an alarm during Deep Sleep  
 0 = The Real-Time Clock and Calendar did not trigger an alarm during Deep Sleep
- bit 2 **DSMCLR:** Deep Sleep  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  Event bit  
 1 = The  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  pin was active and was asserted during Deep Sleep  
 0 = The  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  pin was not active, or was active, but not asserted during Deep Sleep
- bit 1-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**Note 1:** All register bits are cleared when the DSEN (DSCON<15>) bit is set.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 10-3: RCON2: RESET AND SYSTEM CONTROL REGISTER 2

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |                       |                         |                        |                     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | r-0 | R/CO-1                | R/CO-1                  | R/CO-1                 | R/CO-0              |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | VDDBOR <sup>(1)</sup> | VDDPOR <sup>(1,2)</sup> | VBPOR <sup>(1,3)</sup> | VBAT <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |                       |                         |                        | bit 0               |

|                   |                         |                                    |
|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | CO = Clearable Only bit | r = Reserved bit                   |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit        | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set        | '0' = Bit is cleared               |
|                   |                         | x = Bit is unknown                 |

- bit 15-5      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 4      **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'
- bit 3      **VDDBOR:** VDD Brown-out Reset Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
             1 = A VDD Brown-out Reset has occurred (set by hardware)  
             0 = A VDD Brown-out Reset has not occurred
- bit 2      **VDDPOR:** VDD Power-on Reset Flag bit<sup>(1,2)</sup>  
             1 = A VDD Power-on Reset has occurred (set by hardware)  
             0 = A VDD Power-on Reset has not occurred
- bit 1      **VBPOR:** VBAT Power-on Reset Flag bit<sup>(1,3)</sup>  
             1 = A VBAT POR has occurred (no battery connected to the VBAT pin or VBAT power is below Deep Sleep Semaphore retention level; set by hardware)  
             0 = A VBAT POR has not occurred
- bit 0      **VBAT:** VBAT Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
             1 = A POR exit has occurred while power is applied to the VBAT pin (set by hardware)  
             0 = A POR exit from VBAT has not occurred

- Note 1:** This bit is set in hardware only; it can only be cleared in software.
- 2:** This bit indicates a VDD Power-on Reset. Setting the POR bit (RCON<0>) indicates a V<sub>CORE</sub> Power-on Reset.
- 3:** This bit is set when the device is originally powered up, even if power is present on VBAT.

## 10.6 Clock Frequency and Clock Switching

In Run and Idle modes, all PIC24FJ devices allow for a wide range of clock frequencies to be selected under application control. If the system clock configuration is not locked, users can choose low-power or high-precision oscillators by simply changing the NOSCx bits. The process of changing a system clock during operation, as well as limitations to the process, are discussed in more detail in [Section 9.0 “Oscillator Configuration”](#).

## 10.7 Doze Mode

Generally, changing clock speed and invoking one of the power-saving modes are the preferred strategies for reducing power consumption. There may be circumstances, however, where this is not practical. For example, it may be necessary for an application to maintain uninterrupted synchronous communication, even while it is doing nothing else. Reducing system clock speed may introduce communication errors, while using a power-saving mode may stop communications completely.

Doze mode is a simple and effective alternative method to reduce power consumption while the device is still executing code. In this mode, the system clock continues to operate from the same source and at the same speed. Peripheral modules continue to be clocked at the same speed, while the CPU clock speed is reduced. Synchronization between the two clock domains is maintained, allowing the peripherals to access the SFRs while the CPU executes code at a slower rate.

Doze mode is enabled by setting the DOZEN bit (CLKDIV<11>). The ratio between peripheral and core clock speed is determined by the DOZE<2:0> bits (CLKDIV<14:12>). There are eight possible configurations, from 1:1 to 1:128, with 1:1 being the default.

It is also possible to use Doze mode to selectively reduce power consumption in event driven applications. This allows clock-sensitive functions, such as synchronous communications, to continue without interruption while the CPU Idles, waiting for something to invoke an interrupt routine. Enabling the automatic return to full-speed CPU operation on interrupts is enabled by setting the ROI bit (CLKDIV<15>). By default, interrupt events have no effect on Doze mode operation.

## 10.8 Selective Peripheral Module Control

Idle and Doze modes allow users to substantially reduce power consumption by slowing or stopping the CPU clock. Even so, peripheral modules still remain clocked, and thus, consume power. There may be cases where the application needs what these modes do not provide: the allocation of power resources to CPU processing, with minimal power consumption from the peripherals.

PIC24F devices address this requirement by allowing peripheral modules to be selectively disabled, reducing or eliminating their power consumption. This can be done with two control bits:

- The Peripheral Enable bit, generically named, “XXXEN”, located in the module’s main control SFR.
- The Peripheral Module Disable (PMD) bit, generically named, “XXXMD”, located in one of the PMDx Control registers (XXXMD bits are in the PMD1, PMD2, PMD3, PMD4, PMD6, PMD7, PMD8 registers).

Both bits have similar functions in enabling or disabling its associated module. Setting the PMD bit for a module disables all clock sources to that module, reducing its power consumption to an absolute minimum. In this state, the control and status registers associated with the peripheral will also be disabled, so writes to those registers will have no effect and read values will be invalid. Many peripheral modules have a corresponding PMD bit.

In contrast, disabling a module by clearing its XXXEN bit disables its functionality, but leaves its registers available to be read and written to. Power consumption is reduced, but not by as much as the use of the PMD bits. Most peripheral modules have an enable bit; exceptions include capture, compare and RTCC.

To achieve more selective power savings, peripheral modules can also be selectively disabled when the device enters Idle mode. This is done through the control bit of the generic name format, “XXXSIDL”. By default, all modules that can operate during Idle mode will do so. Using the disable on Idle feature disables the module while in Idle mode, allowing further reduction of power consumption during Idle mode, enhancing power savings for extremely critical power applications.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

## 11.0 I/O PORTS

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “I/O Ports with Peripheral Pin Select (PPS)” (DS39711). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

All of the device pins (except  $V_{DD}$ ,  $V_{SS}$ ,  $\overline{MCLR}$  and  $OSC1/CLK1$ ) are shared between the peripherals and the Parallel I/O ports. All I/O input ports feature Schmitt Trigger (ST) inputs for improved noise immunity.

### 11.1 Parallel I/O (PIO) Ports

A Parallel I/O port that shares a pin with a peripheral is, in general, subservient to the peripheral. The peripheral's output buffer data and control signals are provided to a pair of multiplexers. The multiplexers select whether the peripheral or the associated port has ownership of the output data and control signals of the I/O pin. The logic also prevents “loop through”, in which a port's digital output can drive the input of a peripheral that shares the same pin. Figure 11-1 shows how ports are shared with other peripherals and the associated I/O pin to which they are connected.

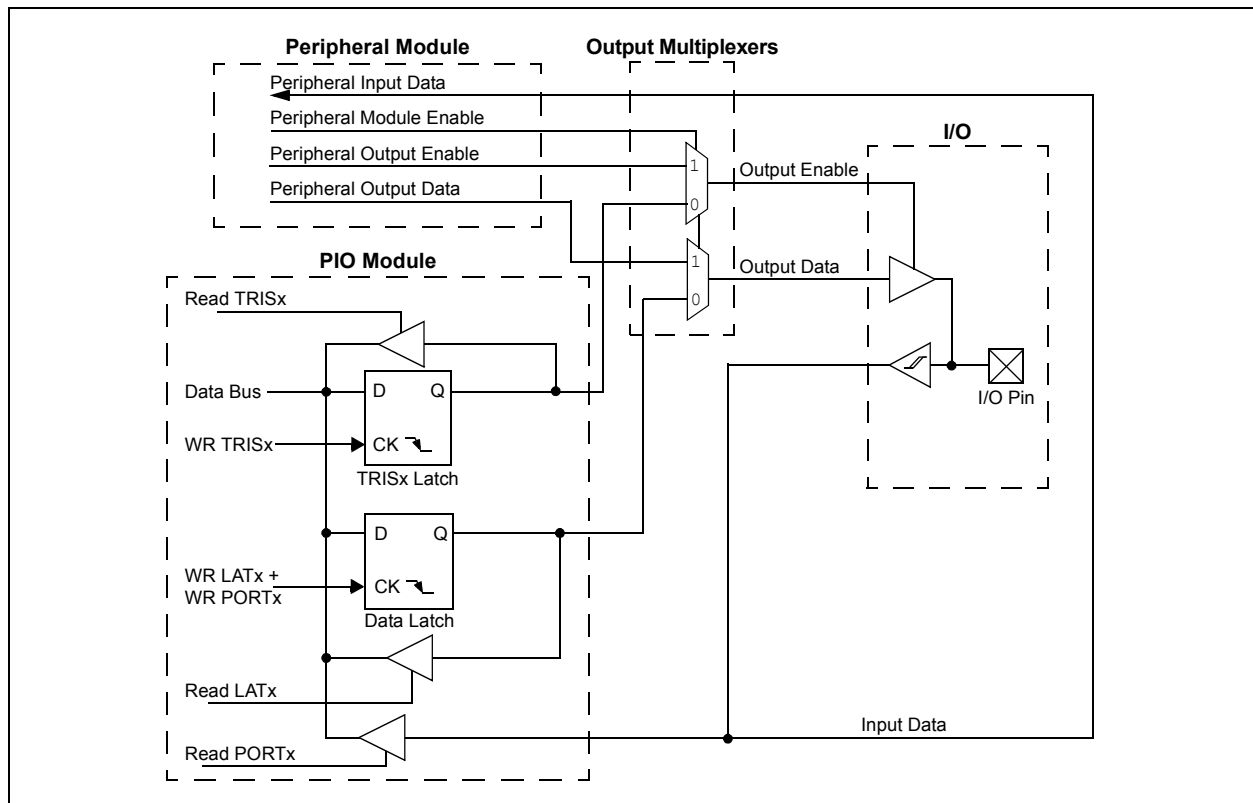
When a peripheral is enabled and the peripheral is actively driving an associated pin, the use of the pin as a general purpose output pin is disabled. The I/O pin may be read, but the output driver for the parallel port bit will be disabled. If a peripheral is enabled, but the peripheral is not actively driving a pin, that pin may be driven by a port.

All port pins have three registers directly associated with their operation as digital I/Os and one register associated with their operation as analog inputs. The Data Direction register (TRIS) determines whether the pin is an input or an output. If the data direction bit is a ‘1’, then the pin is an input. All port pins are defined as inputs after a Reset. Reads from the Output Latch register (LAT), read the latch; writes to the latch, write the latch. Reads from the port (PORT), read the port pins; writes to the port pins, write the latch.

Any bit, and its associated data and control registers that are not valid for a particular device, will be disabled. That means the corresponding LATx and TRISx registers, and the port pin, will read as zeros.

When a pin is shared with another peripheral or function that is defined as an input only, it is regarded as a dedicated port because there is no other competing source of inputs.

**FIGURE 11-1: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF A TYPICAL SHARED PORT STRUCTURE**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 11.1.1 I/O PORT WRITE/READ TIMING

One instruction cycle is required between a port direction change or port write operation and a read operation of the same port. Typically, this instruction would be a `NOP`.

## 11.1.2 OPEN-DRAIN CONFIGURATION

In addition to the `PORTx`, `LATx` and `TRISx` registers for data control, each port pin can also be individually configured for either a digital or open-drain output. This is controlled by the Open-Drain Control register, `ODCx`, associated with each port. Setting any of the bits configures the corresponding pin to act as an open-drain output.

The open-drain feature allows the generation of outputs higher than  $V_{DD}$  (e.g., 5V), on any desired digital only pins, by using external pull-up resistors. The maximum open-drain voltage allowed is the same as the maximum  $V_{IH}$  specification.

## 11.2 Configuring Analog Port Pins (ANSx)

The `ANSx` and `TRISx` registers control the operation of the pins with analog function. Each port pin with analog function is associated with one of the `ANSx` bits (see [Register 11-1](#) through [Register 11-3](#)), which decides if the pin function should be analog or digital. Refer to [Table 11-1](#) for detailed behavior of the pin for different `ANSx` and `TRISx` bit settings.

When reading the `PORTx` register, all pins configured as analog input channels will read as cleared (a low level).

### 11.2.1 ANALOG INPUT PINS AND VOLTAGE CONSIDERATIONS

The voltage tolerance of pins used as device inputs is dependent on the pin's input function. Most input pins are able to handle DC voltages of up to 5.5V, a level typical for digital logic circuits. However, several pins can only tolerate voltages up to  $V_{DD}$ . Voltage excursions beyond  $V_{DD}$  on these pins should always be avoided.

[Table 11-2](#) summarizes the different voltage tolerances. For more information, refer to [Section 33.0 "Electrical Characteristics"](#) for more details.

**TABLE 11-1: CONFIGURING ANALOG/DIGITAL FUNCTION OF AN I/O PIN**

| Pin Function   | ANSx Setting | TRISx Setting | Comments   |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|--|
| Analog Input   | 1            | 1             | It is recommended to keep <code>ANSx</code> = 1.   |
| Analog Output  | 1            | 1             | It is recommended to keep <code>ANSx</code> = 1.   |
| Digital Input  | 0            | 1             | Firmware must wait at least one instruction cycle after configuring a pin as a digital input before a valid input value can be read. |
| Digital Output | 0            | 0             | Make sure to disable the analog output function on the pin if any is present.  |

**TABLE 11-2: INPUT VOLTAGE LEVELS FOR PORT OR PIN TOLERATED DESCRIPTION INPUT**

| Port or Pin                                     | Tolerated Input | Description   |
|---|-----------------|---|
| <code>PORTA&lt;10:7,4&gt;</code> <sup>(1)</sup> | 5.5V            | Tolerates input levels above $V_{DD}$ ; useful for most standard logic. |
| <code>PORTB&lt;11:10,8:4&gt;</code>             |                 |   |
| <code>PORTC&lt;9:3&gt;</code> <sup>(1)</sup>    |                 |   |
| <code>PORTA&lt;3:0&gt;</code>                   | $V_{DD}$        | Only $V_{DD}$ input levels are tolerated.                               |
| <code>PORTB&lt;15:13,9,3:0&gt;</code>           |                 |   |
| <code>PORTC&lt;2:0&gt;</code> <sup>(1)</sup>    |                 |   |

**Note 1:** Not all of these pins are implemented in 28-pin devices. Refer to [Section 1.0 "Device Overview"](#) for a complete description of port pin implementation.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-1: ANSA: PORTA ANALOG FUNCTION SELECTION REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |           |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1     | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | ANSA<3:0> |       |       |       |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |           |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-0 **ANSA<3:0>:** PORTA Analog Function Selection bits

1 = Pin is configured in Analog mode; I/O port read is disabled

0 = Pin is configured in Digital mode; I/O port read is enabled

## REGISTER 11-2: ANSB: PORTB ANALOG FUNCTION SELECTION REGISTER

|             |       |       |     |     |     |       |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|
| R/W-1       | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1 | U-0   |
| ANSB<15:13> |       |       | —   | —   | —   | ANSB9 | —     |
| bit 15      |       |       |     |     |     |       | bit 8 |

|       |       |     |     |           |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-----|-----|-----------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | R/W-1 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1     | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —     | ANSB6 | —   | —   | ANSB<3:0> |       |       |       |
| bit 7 |       |     |     |           |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-13 **ANSB<15:13>:** PORTB Analog Function Selection bits

1 = Pin is configured in Analog mode; I/O port read is disabled

0 = Pin is configured in Digital mode; I/O port read is enabled

bit 12-10 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 9 **ANSB9:** PORTB Analog Function Selection bit

1 = Pin is configured in Analog mode; I/O port read is disabled

0 = Pin is configured in Digital mode; I/O port read is enabled

bit 8-7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **ANSB6:** PORTB Analog Function Selection bit

1 = Pin is configured in Analog mode; I/O port read is disabled

0 = Pin is configured in Digital mode; I/O port read is enabled

bit 5-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-0 **ANSB<3:0>:** PORTB Analog Function Selection bits

1 = Pin is configured in Analog mode; I/O port read is disabled

0 = Pin is configured in Digital mode; I/O port read is enabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-3: ANSC: PORTC ANALOG FUNCTION SELECTION REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |     |           |       |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1     | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | ANSC<2:0> |       |       |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |           |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-3      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0      **ANSC<2:0>:** Analog Function Selection bits

1 = Pin is configured in Analog mode; I/O port read is disabled

0 = Pin is configured in Digital mode; I/O port read is enabled

**Note 1:** These pins are not available in 28-pin devices.

## 11.3 Input Change Notification (ICN)

The Input Change Notification function of the I/O ports allows the PIC24FJ128GB204 family of devices to generate interrupt requests to the processor in response to a Change-of-State (COS) on selected input pins. This feature is capable of detecting input Change-of-States, even in Sleep mode, when the clocks are disabled. Depending on the device pin count, there are up to 82 external inputs that may be selected (enabled) for generating an interrupt request on a Change-of-State.

Registers, CNEN1 through CNEN3, contain the interrupt enable control bits for each of the CN input pins. Setting any of these bits enables a CN interrupt for the corresponding pins.

Each CN pin has both a weak pull-up and a weak pull-down connected to it. The pull-ups act as a current source that is connected to the pin, while the pull-downs act as a current sink that is connected to the pin. These eliminate the need for external resistors when push button or keypad devices are connected. The pull-ups and pull-downs are separately enabled using the CNPU1 through CNPU3 registers (for pull-ups), and the CNPD1 through CNPD3 registers (for pull-downs). Each CN pin has individual control bits for its pull-up and pull-down. Setting a control bit enables the weak pull-up or pull-down for the corresponding pin.

When the internal pull-up is selected, the pin pulls up to  $V_{DD} - 1.1V$  (typical). When the internal pull-down is selected, the pin pulls down to  $V_{SS}$ .

**Note:** Pull-ups on Input Change Notification pins should always be disabled whenever the port pin is configured as a digital output.

### EXAMPLE 11-1: PORT READ/WRITE IN ASSEMBLY

```
MOV    0xFF00, W0    ; Configure PORTB<15:8> as inputs
MOV    W0, TRISB      ; and PORTB<7:0> as outputs
NOP                      ; Delay 1 cycle
BTSS   PORTB, #13     ; Next Instruction
```

### EXAMPLE 11-2: PORT READ/WRITE IN 'C'

```
TRISB = 0xFF00;          // Configure PORTB<15:8> as inputs and PORTB<7:0> as outputs
Nop();                   // Delay 1 cycle
If (PORTBbits.RB13){ };  // Next Instruction
```

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 11.4 Peripheral Pin Select (PPS)

A major challenge in general purpose devices is providing the largest possible set of peripheral features while minimizing the conflict of features on I/O pins. In an application that needs to use more than one peripheral multiplexed on a single pin, inconvenient work arounds in application code, or a complete redesign, may be the only option.

The Peripheral Pin Select (PPS) feature provides an alternative to these choices by enabling the user's peripheral set selection and its placement on a wide range of I/O pins. By increasing the pinout options available on a particular device, users can better tailor the microcontroller to their entire application, rather than trimming the application to fit the device.

The Peripheral Pin Select feature operates over a fixed subset of digital I/O pins. Users may independently map the input and/or output of any one of many digital peripherals to any one of these I/O pins. PPS is performed in software and generally does not require the device to be reprogrammed. Hardware safeguards are included that prevent accidental or spurious changes to the peripheral mapping once it has been established.

### 11.4.1 AVAILABLE PINS

The PPS feature is used with a range of up to 44 pins, depending on the particular device and its pin count. Pins that support the Peripheral Pin Select feature include the designation, "RPn" or "RPIn", in their full pin designation, where "n" is the remappable pin number. "RP" is used to designate pins that support both remappable input and output functions, while "RPI" indicates pins that support remappable input functions only.

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices support a larger number of remappable input only pins than remappable input/output pins. In this device family, there are up to 25 remappable input/output pins, depending on the pin count of the particular device selected. These pins are numbered, RP0 through RP25.

See [Table 1-3](#) for a summary of pinout options in each package offering.

### 11.4.2 AVAILABLE PERIPHERALS

The peripherals managed by the PPS are all digital only peripherals. These include general serial communications (UART and SPI), general purpose timer clock inputs, timer related peripherals (input capture and output compare) and external interrupt inputs. Also included are the outputs of the comparator module, since these are discrete digital signals.

PPS is not available for these peripherals:

- I<sup>2</sup>C™ (input and output)
- USB (all module inputs and outputs)
- Change Notification Inputs
- RTCC Alarm Output(s)
- EPMP Signals (input and output)
- Analog (inputs and outputs)
- INT0

A key difference between pin select and non-pin select peripherals is that pin select peripherals are not associated with a default I/O pin. The peripheral must always be assigned to a specific I/O pin before it can be used. In contrast, non-pin select peripherals are always available on a default pin, assuming that the peripheral is active and not conflicting with another peripheral.

#### 11.4.2.1 Peripheral Pin Select Function Priority

Pin-selectable peripheral outputs (e.g., OC, UART transmit) will take priority over general purpose digital functions on a pin, such as EPMP and port I/O. Specialized digital outputs (e.g., USB on USB-enabled devices) will take priority over PPS outputs on the same pin. The pin diagrams list peripheral outputs in the order of priority. Refer to them for priority concerns on a particular pin.

Unlike PIC24F devices with fixed peripherals, pin-selectable peripheral inputs will never take ownership of a pin. The pin's output buffer will be controlled by the TRISx setting or by a fixed peripheral on the pin. If the pin is configured in Digital mode, then the PPS input will operate correctly. If an analog function is enabled on the pin, the PPS input will be disabled.

#### 11.4.3 CONTROLLING PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT

PPS features are controlled through two sets of Special Function Registers (SFRs): one to map peripheral inputs and one to map outputs. Because they are separately controlled, a particular peripheral's input and output (if the peripheral has both) can be placed on any selectable function pin without constraint.

The association of a peripheral to a peripheral-selectable pin is handled in two different ways, depending on if an input or an output is being mapped.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 11.4.3.1 Input Mapping

The inputs of the Peripheral Pin Select options are mapped on the basis of the peripheral; that is, a control register associated with a peripheral dictates the pin it will be mapped to. The RPINRx registers are used to configure peripheral input mapping (see [Register 11-4](#) through [Register 11-22](#)).

Each register contains two sets of 6-bit fields, with each set associated with one of the pin-selectable peripherals. Programming a given peripheral's bit field with an appropriate 6-bit value maps the RPn/RPIn pin with that value to that peripheral. For any given device, the valid range of values for any of the bit fields corresponds to the maximum number of Peripheral Pin Selections supported by the device.

**TABLE 11-3: SELECTABLE INPUT SOURCES (MAPS INPUT TO FUNCTION)<sup>(1)</sup>**

| Input Name                   | Function Name      | Register | Function Mapping Bits |
|------------------------------|--------------------|----------|-----------------------|
| DSM Modulation Input         | MDMIN              | RPINR30  | MDMIR<5:0>            |
| DSM Carrier 1 Input          | MDCIN1             | RPINR31  | MDC1R<5:0>            |
| DSM Carrier 2 Input          | MDCIN2             | RPINR31  | MDC2R<5:0>            |
| External Interrupt 1         | INT1               | RPINR0   | INT1R<5:0>            |
| External Interrupt 2         | INT2               | RPINR1   | INT2R<5:0>            |
| External Interrupt 3         | INT3               | RPINR1   | INT3R<5:0>            |
| External Interrupt 4         | INT4               | RPINR2   | INT4R<5:0>            |
| Input Capture 1              | IC1                | RPINR7   | IC1R<5:0>             |
| Input Capture 2              | IC2                | RPINR7   | IC2R<5:0>             |
| Input Capture 3              | IC3                | RPINR8   | IC3R<5:0>             |
| Input Capture 4              | IC4                | RPINR8   | IC4R<5:0>             |
| Input Capture 5              | IC5                | RPINR9   | IC5R<5:0>             |
| Input Capture 6              | IC6                | RPINR9   | IC6R<5:0>             |
| Output Compare Fault A       | OCFA               | RPINR11  | OCFAR<5:0>            |
| Output Compare Fault B       | OCFB               | RPINR11  | OCFBR<5:0>            |
| Output Compare Trigger 1     | OCTRIG1            | RPINR0   | OCTRIG1R<5:0>         |
| Output Compare Trigger 2     | OCTRIG2            | RPINR2   | OCTRIG2R<5:0>         |
| SPI1 Clock Input             | SCK1IN             | RPINR20  | SCK1R<5:0>            |
| SPI1 Data Input              | SDI1               | RPINR20  | SDI1R<5:0>            |
| SPI1 Slave Select Input      | SS1IN              | RPINR21  | SS1R<5:0>             |
| SPI2 Clock Input             | SCK2IN             | RPINR22  | SCK2R<5:0>            |
| SPI2 Data Input              | SDI2               | RPINR22  | SDI2R<5:0>            |
| SPI2 Slave Select Input      | SS2IN              | RPINR23  | SS2R<5:0>             |
| SPI3 Clock Input             | SCK3IN             | RPINR28  | SCK3R<5:0>            |
| SPI3 Data Input              | SDI3               | RPINR28  | SDI3R<5:0>            |
| SPI3 Slave Select Input      | SS3IN              | RPINR29  | SS3R<5:0>             |
| Generic Timer External Clock | TMRCK              | RPINR23  | TMRCKR<5:0>           |
| UART1 Clear-to-Send          | $\overline{U1CTS}$ | RPINR18  | U1CTSR<5:0>           |
| UART1 Receive                | U1RX               | RPINR18  | U1RXR<5:0>            |
| UART2 Clear-to-Send          | $\overline{U2CTS}$ | RPINR19  | U2CTSR<5:0>           |
| UART2 Receive                | U2RX               | RPINR19  | U2RXR<5:0>            |
| UART3 Clear-to-Send          | $\overline{U3CTS}$ | RPINR21  | U3CTSR<5:0>           |
| UART3 Receive                | U3RX               | RPINR17  | U3RXR<5:0>            |
| UART4 Clear-to-Send          | $\overline{U4CTS}$ | RPINR27  | U4CTSR<5:0>           |
| UART4 Receive                | U4RX               | RPINR27  | U4RXR<5:0>            |

**Note 1:** Unless otherwise noted, all inputs use the Schmitt Trigger (ST) input buffers.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 11.4.3.2 Output Mapping

In contrast to inputs, the outputs of the Peripheral Pin Select options are mapped on the basis of the pin. In this case, a control register associated with a particular pin dictates the peripheral output to be mapped. The RPORx registers are used to control output mapping. Each register contains two 6-bit fields, with each field being associated with one RPn pin (see [Register 11-23](#) through [Register 11-35](#)). The value of the bit field

corresponds to one of the peripherals and that peripheral's output is mapped to the pin (see [Table 11-4](#)).

Because of the mapping technique, the list of peripherals for output mapping also includes a null value of '000000'. This permits any given pin to remain disconnected from the output of any of the pin-selectable peripherals.

**TABLE 11-4: SELECTABLE OUTPUT SOURCES (MAPS FUNCTION TO OUTPUT)**

| Output Function Number <sup>(1)</sup> | Function             | Output Name              |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 0                                     | NULL <sup>(2)</sup>  | Null                     |
| 1                                     | C1OUT                | Comparator 1 Output      |
| 2                                     | C2OUT                | Comparator 2 Output      |
| 3                                     | U1TX                 | UART1 Transmit           |
| 4                                     | U1RTS <sup>(3)</sup> | UART1 Request-to-Send    |
| 5                                     | U2TX                 | UART2 Transmit           |
| 6                                     | U2RTS <sup>(3)</sup> | UART2 Request-to-Send    |
| 7                                     | SDO1                 | SPI1 Data Output         |
| 8                                     | SCK1OUT              | SPI1 Clock Output        |
| 9                                     | SS1OUT               | SPI1 Slave Select Output |
| 10                                    | SDO2                 | SPI2 Data Output         |
| 11                                    | SCK2OUT              | SPI2 Clock Output        |
| 12                                    | SS2OUT               | SPI2 Slave Select Output |
| 13                                    | OC1                  | Output Compare 1         |
| 14                                    | OC2                  | Output Compare 2         |
| 15                                    | OC3                  | Output Compare 3         |
| 16                                    | OC4                  | Output Compare 4         |
| 17                                    | OC5                  | Output Compare 5         |
| 18                                    | OC6                  | Output Compare 6         |
| 19                                    | U3TX                 | UART3 Transmit           |
| 20                                    | U3RTS                | UART3 Request-to-Send    |
| 21                                    | U4TX                 | UART4 Transmit           |
| 22                                    | U4RTS <sup>(3)</sup> | UART4 Request-to-Send    |
| 23                                    | SDO3                 | SPI3 Data Output         |
| 24                                    | SCK3OUT              | SPI3 Clock Output        |
| 25                                    | SS3OUT               | SPI3 Slave Select Output |
| 26                                    | C3OUT                | Comparator 3 Output      |
| 27                                    | MDOUT                | DSM Modulator Output     |

- Note 1:** Setting the RPORx register with the listed value assigns that output function to the associated RPn pin.  
**Note 2:** The NULL function is assigned to all RPn outputs at device Reset and disables the RPn output function.  
**Note 3:** IrDA<sup>®</sup> BCLK functionality uses this output.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 11.4.3.3 Mapping Limitations

The control schema of the Peripheral Pin Select is extremely flexible. Other than systematic blocks that prevent signal contention, caused by two physical pins being configured as the same functional input or two functional outputs configured as the same pin, there are no hardware enforced lockouts. The flexibility extends to the point of allowing a single input to drive multiple peripherals or a single functional output to drive multiple output pins.

## 11.4.3.4 Mapping Exceptions for PIC24FJ128GB204 Family Devices

Although the PPS registers theoretically allow for up to 24 remappable I/O pins, not all of these are implemented in all devices. For PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices, the maximum number of remappable pins available is 24, which includes one input only pin. The differences in available remappable pins are summarized in [Table 11-5](#).

When developing applications that use remappable pins, users should also keep these things in mind:

- For the RPINRx registers, bit combinations corresponding to an unimplemented pin for a particular device are treated as invalid; the corresponding module will not have an input mapped to it.
- For RPORx registers, the bit fields corresponding to an unimplemented pin will also be unimplemented; writing to these fields will have no effect.

## 11.4.4 CONTROLLING CONFIGURATION CHANGES

Because peripheral remapping can be changed during run time, some restrictions on peripheral remapping are needed to prevent accidental configuration changes. PIC24F devices include three features to prevent alterations to the peripheral map:

- Control register lock sequence
- Continuous state monitoring
- Configuration bit remapping lock

## 11.4.4.1 Control Register Lock

Under normal operation, writes to the RPINRx and RPORx registers are not allowed. Attempted writes will appear to execute normally, but the contents of the registers will remain unchanged. To change these registers, they must be unlocked in hardware. The register lock is controlled by the IOLOCK bit (OSCCON<6>). Setting IOLOCK prevents writes to the control registers; clearing IOLOCK allows writes.

To set or clear IOLOCK, a specific command sequence must be executed:

1. Write 46h to OSCCON<7:0>.
2. Write 57h to OSCCON<7:0>.
3. Clear (or set) IOLOCK as a single operation.

Unlike the similar sequence with the oscillator's LOCK bit, IOLOCK remains in one state until changed. This allows all of the Peripheral Pin Selects to be configured with a single unlock sequence, followed by an update to all control registers, then locked with a second lock sequence.

## 11.4.4.2 Continuous State Monitoring

In addition to being protected from direct writes, the contents of the RPINRx and RPORx registers are constantly monitored in hardware by shadow registers. If an unexpected change in any of the registers occurs (such as cell disturbances caused by ESD or other external events), a Configuration Mismatch Reset will be triggered.

## 11.4.4.3 Configuration Bit Pin Select Lock

As an additional level of safety, the device can be configured to prevent more than one write session to the RPINRx and RPORx registers. The IOL1WAY (CW4<15>) Configuration bit blocks the IOLOCK bit from being cleared after it has been set once. If IOLOCK remains set, the register unlock procedure will not execute and the Peripheral Pin Select Control registers cannot be written to. The only way to clear the bit and re-enable peripheral remapping is to perform a device Reset.

In the default (unprogrammed) state, IOL1WAY is set, restricting users to one write session. Programming IOL1WAY allows users unlimited access (with the proper use of the unlock sequence) to the Peripheral Pin Select registers.

**TABLE 11-5: REMAPPABLE PIN EXCEPTIONS FOR PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY DEVICES**

| Device          | RPn Pins (I/O) |               | RPIn Pins |               |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------|-----------|---------------|
|                 | Total          | Unimplemented | Total     | Unimplemented |
| PIC24FJXXXGB202 | 14             | RP4, RP12     | 1         | —             |
| PIC24FJXXXGB204 | 24             | RP4, RP12     | 1         | —             |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 11.4.5 CONSIDERATIONS FOR PERIPHERAL PIN SELECTION

The ability to control Peripheral Pin Selection introduces several considerations into application design that could be overlooked. This is particularly true for several common peripherals that are available only as remappable peripherals.

The main consideration is that the Peripheral Pin Selects are not available on default pins in the device's default (Reset) state. Since all RPNR<sub>x</sub> registers reset to '111111' and all RPOR<sub>x</sub> registers reset to '000000', all Peripheral Pin Select inputs are tied to V<sub>SS</sub> and all Peripheral Pin Select outputs are disconnected.

This situation requires the user to initialize the device with the proper peripheral configuration before any other application code is executed. Since the IOLOCK bit resets in the unlocked state, it is not necessary to execute the unlock sequence after the device has come out of Reset. For application safety, however, it is best to set IOLOCK and lock the configuration after writing to the control registers.

Because the unlock sequence is timing-critical, it must be executed as an assembly language routine in the same manner as changes to the oscillator configuration. If the bulk of the application is written in 'C', or another high-level language, the unlock sequence should be performed by writing in-line assembly.

Choosing the configuration requires the review of all Peripheral Pin Selects and their pin assignments, especially those that will not be used in the application. In all cases, unused pin-selectable peripherals should be disabled completely. Unused peripherals should have their inputs assigned to an unused RPN/RPIn pin function. I/O pins with unused RPN functions should be configured with the null peripheral output.

The assignment of a peripheral to a particular pin does not automatically perform any other configuration of the pin's I/O circuitry. In theory, this means adding a pin-selectable output to a pin may mean inadvertently driving an existing peripheral input when the output is driven. Users must be familiar with the behavior of other fixed peripherals that share a remappable pin and know when to enable or disable them. To be safe, fixed digital peripherals that share the same pin should be disabled when not in use.

Along these lines, configuring a remappable pin for a specific peripheral does not automatically turn that feature on. The peripheral must be specifically configured for operation and enabled as if it were tied to a fixed pin. Where this happens in the application code (immediately following a device Reset and peripheral configuration or inside the main application routine) depends on the peripheral and its use in the application.

A final consideration is that Peripheral Pin Select functions neither override analog inputs nor reconfigure pins with analog functions for digital I/O. If a pin is configured as an analog input on device Reset, it must be explicitly reconfigured as a digital I/O when used with a Peripheral Pin Select.

**Example 11-3** shows a configuration for bidirectional communication with flow control using UART1. The following input and output functions are used:

- Input Functions: U1RX, U1CTS
- Output Functions: U1TX, U1RTS

### EXAMPLE 11-3: CONFIGURING UART1 INPUT AND OUTPUT FUNCTIONS

```
// Unlock Registers
asm volatile ("MOV    #OSCCON, w1    \n"
              "MOV     #0x46, w2      \n"
              "MOV     #0x57, w3      \n"
              "MOV.b   w2, [w1]       \n"
              "MOV.b   w3, [w1]       \n"
              "BCLR    OSCCON, #6") ;

// or use C30 built-in macro:
// __builtin_write_OSCCONL(OSCCON & 0xbf);

// Configure Input Functions (Table 11-3)
// Assign U1RX To Pin RP0
RPNR18bits.U1RXR = 0;

// Assign U1CTS To Pin RP1
RPNR18bits.U1CTSR = 1;

// Configure Output Functions (Table 11-4)
// Assign U1TX To Pin RP2
RPOR1bits.RP2R = 3;

// Assign U1RTS To Pin RP3
RPOR1bits.RP3R = 4;

// Lock Registers
asm volatile ("MOV    #OSCCON, w1    \n"
              "MOV     #0x46, w2      \n"
              "MOV     #0x57, w3      \n"
              "MOV.b   w2, [w1]       \n"
              "MOV.b   w3, [w1]       \n"
              "BSET    OSCCON, #6") ;

// or use C30 built-in macro:
// __builtin_write_OSCCONL(OSCCON | 0x40);
```

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 11.4.6 PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT REGISTERS

The PIC24FJ128GB204 family of devices implements a total of 32 registers for remappable peripheral configuration:

- Input Remappable Peripheral Registers (19)
- Output Remappable Peripheral Registers (13)

**Note:** Input and Output register values can only be changed if IOLOCK (OSCCON<6>) = 0. See [Section 11.4.4.1 “Control Register Lock”](#) for a specific command sequence.

### REGISTER 11-4: RPINR0: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 0

| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| —      | —   | INT1R5 | INT1R4 | INT1R3 | INT1R2 | INT1R1 | INT1R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1     | R/W-1     | R/W-1     | R/W-1     | R/W-1     | R/W-1     |
|-------|-----|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| —     | —   | OCTRIG1R5 | OCTRIG1R4 | OCTRIG1R3 | OCTRIG1R2 | OCTRIG1R1 | OCTRIG1R0 |
| bit 7 |     |           |           |           |           |           | bit 0     |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13-8      **INT1R<5:0>:** Assign External Interrupt 1 (INT1) to Corresponding RPn or RPIIn Pin bits
- bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5-0      **OCTRIG1R<5:0>:** Assign Output Compare Trigger 1 to Corresponding RPn or RPIIn Pin bits

### REGISTER 11-5: RPINR1: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 1

| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| —      | —   | INT3R5 | INT3R4 | INT3R3 | INT3R2 | INT3R1 | INT3R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| —     | —   | INT2R5 | INT2R4 | INT2R3 | INT2R2 | INT2R1 | INT2R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13-8      **INT3R<5:0>:** Assign External Interrupt 3 (INT3) to Corresponding RPn or RPIIn Pin bits
- bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5-0      **INT2R<5:0>:** Assign External Interrupt 2 (INT2) to Corresponding RPn or RPIIn Pin bits

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-6: RPINR2: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 2

|        |     |           |           |           |           |           |           |
|--------|-----|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1     | R/W-1     | R/W-1     | R/W-1     | R/W-1     | R/W-1     |
| —      | —   | OCTRIG2R5 | OCTRIG2R4 | OCTRIG2R3 | OCTRIG2R2 | OCTRIG2R1 | OCTRIG2R0 |
| bit 15 |     |           |           |           |           | bit 8     |           |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —     | —   | INT4R5 | INT4R4 | INT4R3 | INT4R2 | INT4R1 | INT4R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |        |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **OCTRIG2R<5:0>:** Assign Output Compare Trigger 2 to Corresponding RPN or RPN Pin bits

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **INT4R<5:0>:** Assign External Interrupt 4 (INT4) to Corresponding RPN or RPN Pin bits

## REGISTER 11-7: RPINR7: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 7

|        |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —      | —   | IC2R5 | IC2R4 | IC2R3 | IC2R2 | IC2R1 | IC2R0 |
| bit 15 |     |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |       |

|       |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —     | —   | IC1R5 | IC1R4 | IC1R3 | IC1R2 | IC1R1 | IC1R0 |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **IC2R<5:0>:** Assign Input Capture 2 (IC2) to Corresponding RPN or RPN Pin bits

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **IC1R<5:0>:** Assign Input Capture 1 (IC1) to Corresponding RPN or RPN Pin bits

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-8: RPINR8: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 8

|        |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —      | —   | IC4R5 | IC4R4 | IC4R3 | IC4R2 | IC4R1 | IC4R0 |
| bit 15 |     |       |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|       |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —     | —   | IC3R5 | IC3R4 | IC3R3 | IC3R2 | IC3R1 | IC3R0 |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **IC4R<5:0>:** Assign Input Capture 4 (IC4) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **IC3R<5:0>:** Assign Input Capture 3 (IC3) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

## REGISTER 11-9: RPINR9: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 9

|        |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —      | —   | IC6R5 | IC6R4 | IC6R3 | IC6R2 | IC6R1 | IC6R0 |
| bit 15 |     |       |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|       |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —     | —   | IC5R5 | IC5R4 | IC5R3 | IC5R2 | IC5R1 | IC5R0 |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **IC6R<5:0>:** Assign Input Capture 6 (IC6) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **IC5R<5:0>:** Assign Input Capture 5 (IC5) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-10: RPINR11: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 11

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —      | —   | OCFBR5 | OCFBR4 | OCFBR3 | OCFBR2 | OCFBR1 | OCFBR0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |        |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —     | —   | OCFAR5 | OCFAR4 | OCFAR3 | OCFAR2 | OCFAR1 | OCFAR0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |        |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **OCFBR<5:0>:** Assign Output Compare Fault B (OCFB) to Corresponding RPN or RPN Pin bits

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **OCFAR<5:0>:** Assign Output Compare Fault A (OCFA) to Corresponding RPN or RPN Pin bits

## REGISTER 11-11: RPINR17: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 17

|        |     |            |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1      | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —      | —   | U3RXR<5:0> |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 15 |     |            |       |       |       | bit 8 |       |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **U3RXR<5:0>:** Assign UART3 Receive (U3RX) to Corresponding RPN or RPN Pin bits

bit 7-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-12: RPINR18: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 18

|        |     |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   |
| —      | —   | U1CTSR5 | U1CTSR4 | U1CTSR3 | U1CTSR2 | U1CTSR1 | U1CTSR0 |
| bit 15 |     |         |         |         |         |         | bit 8   |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —     | —   | U1RXR5 | U1RXR4 | U1RXR3 | U1RXR2 | U1RXR1 | U1RXR0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **U1CTSR<5:0>:** Assign UART1 Clear-to-Send (U1CTS) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **U1RXR<5:0>:** Assign UART1 Receive (U1RX) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

## REGISTER 11-13: RPINR19: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 19

|        |     |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   |
| —      | —   | U2CTSR5 | U2CTSR4 | U2CTSR3 | U2CTSR2 | U2CTSR1 | U2CTSR0 |
| bit 15 |     |         |         |         |         |         | bit 8   |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —     | —   | U2RXR5 | U2RXR4 | U2RXR3 | U2RXR2 | U2RXR1 | U2RXR0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **U2CTSR<5:0>:** Assign UART2 Clear-to-Send (U2CTS) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **U2RXR<5:0>:** Assign UART2 Receive (U2RX) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-14: RPINR20: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 20

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —      | —   | SCK1R5 | SCK1R4 | SCK1R3 | SCK1R2 | SCK1R1 | SCK1R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |        |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —     | —   | SDI1R5 | SDI1R4 | SDI1R3 | SDI1R2 | SDI1R1 | SDI1R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |        |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **SCK1R<5:0>:** Assign SPI1 Clock Input (SCK1IN) to Corresponding RPN or RPN Pin bits

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **SDI1R<5:0>:** Assign SPI1 Data Input (SDI1) to Corresponding RPN or RPN Pin bits

## REGISTER 11-15: RPINR21: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 21

|        |     |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   |
| —      | —   | U3CTSR5 | U3CTSR4 | U3CTSR3 | U3CTSR2 | U3CTSR1 | U3CTSR0 |
| bit 15 |     |         |         |         |         | bit 8   |         |

|       |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —     | —   | SS1R5 | SS1R4 | SS1R3 | SS1R2 | SS1R1 | SS1R0 |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **U3CTSR<5:0>:** Assign UART3 Clear-to-Send (U3CTS) to Corresponding RPN or RPN Pin bits

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **SS1R<5:0>:** Assign SPI1 Slave Select Input (SS1IN) to Corresponding RPN or RPN Pin bits

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-16: RPINR22: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 22

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —      | —   | SCK2R5 | SCK2R4 | SCK2R3 | SCK2R2 | SCK2R1 | SCK2R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —     | —   | SDI2R5 | SDI2R4 | SDI2R3 | SDI2R2 | SDI2R1 | SDI2R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
 bit 13-8      **SCK2R<5:0>:** Assign SPI2 Clock Input (SCK2IN) to Corresponding RPn or RPin Pin bits  
 bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
 bit 5-0      **SDI2R<5:0>:** Assign SPI2 Data Input (SDI2) to Corresponding RPn or RPin Pin bits

## REGISTER 11-17: RPINR23: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 23

|        |     |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   |
| —      | —   | TMRCKR5 | TMRCKR4 | TMRCKR3 | TMRCKR2 | TMRCKR1 | TMRCKR0 |
| bit 15 |     |         |         |         |         |         | bit 8   |

|       |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —     | —   | SS2R5 | SS2R4 | SS2R3 | SS2R2 | SS2R1 | SS2R0 |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
 bit 13-8      **TMRCKR<5:0>:** Assign General Timer External Input (TMRCK) to Corresponding RPn or RPin Pin bits  
 bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
 bit 5-0      **SS2R<5:0>:** Assign SPI2 Slave Select Input (SS2IN) to Corresponding RPn or RPin Pin bits

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-18: RPINR27: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 27

|        |     |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   | R/W-1   |
| —      | —   | U4CTSR5 | U4CTSR4 | U4CTSR3 | U4CTSR2 | U4CTSR1 | U4CTSR0 |
| bit 15 |     |         |         |         |         |         | bit 8   |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —     | —   | U4RXR5 | U4RXR4 | U4RXR3 | U4RXR2 | U4RXR1 | U4RXR0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
-n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
bit 13-8      **U4CTSR<5:0>:** Assign UART4 Clear-to-Send Input (U4CTS) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits  
bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
bit 5-0      **U4RXR<5:0>:** Assign UART4 Receive Input (U4RX) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

## REGISTER 11-19: RPINR28: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 28

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —      | —   | SCK3R5 | SCK3R4 | SCK3R3 | SCK3R2 | SCK3R1 | SCK3R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —     | —   | SDI3R5 | SDI3R4 | SDI3R3 | SDI3R2 | SDI3R1 | SDI3R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
-n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
bit 13-8      **SCK3R<5:0>:** Assign SPI3 Clock Input (SCK3IN) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits  
bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
bit 5-0      **SDI3R<5:0>:** Assign SPI3 Data Input (SDI3) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-20: RPINR29: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 29

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |           |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1     | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —     | —   | SS3R<5:0> |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 7 |     |           |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **SS3R<5:0>:** Assign SPI3 Slave Select Input (SS3IN) to Corresponding RPn or RPIIn Pin bits

## REGISTER 11-21: RPINR30: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 30

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |            |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1      | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| —     | —   | MDMIR<5:0> |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 7 |     |            |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **MDMIR<5:0>:** Assign TX Modulation Input (MDMI) to Corresponding RPn or RPIIn Pin bits

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-22: RPINR31: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT INPUT REGISTER 31

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —      | —   | MDC2R5 | MDC2R4 | MDC2R3 | MDC2R2 | MDC2R1 | MDC2R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
| —     | —   | MDC1R5 | MDC1R4 | MDC1R3 | MDC1R2 | MDC1R1 | MDC1R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8      **MDC2R<5:0>:** Assign TX Carrier 2 Input (MDCIN2) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0      **MDC1R<5:0>:** Assign TX Carrier 1 Input (MDCIN1) to Corresponding RPn or RPIn Pin bits

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-23: RPOR0: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 0

|        |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | RP1R5 | RP1R4 | RP1R3 | RP1R2 | RP1R1 | RP1R0 |
| bit 15 |     |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |       |

|       |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | RP0R5 | RP0R4 | RP0R3 | RP0R2 | RP0R1 | RP0R0 |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13-8      **RP1R<5:0>:** RP1 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP1 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).
- bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5-0      **RP0R<5:0>:** RP0 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP0 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

## REGISTER 11-24: RPOR1: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 1

|        |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | RP3R5 | RP3R4 | RP3R3 | RP3R2 | RP3R1 | RP3R0 |
| bit 15 |     |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |       |

|       |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | RP2R5 | RP2R4 | RP2R3 | RP2R2 | RP2R1 | RP2R0 |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13-8      **RP3R<5:0>:** RP3 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP3 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).
- bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5-0      **RP2R<5:0>:** RP2 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP2 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-25: RPOR2: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 2

|        |     |           |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0     | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | RP5R<5:0> |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 15 |     |           |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **RP5R<5:0>:** RP5 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP5 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

bit 7-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

## REGISTER 11-26: RPOR3: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 3

|        |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | RP7R5 | RP7R4 | RP7R3 | RP7R2 | RP7R1 | RP7R0 |
| bit 15 |     |       |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|       |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | RP6R5 | RP6R4 | RP6R3 | RP6R2 | RP6R1 | RP6R0 |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **RP7R<5:0>:** RP7 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP7 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **RP6R<5:0>:** RP6 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP6 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-27: RPOR4: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 4

|        |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | RP9R5 | RP9R4 | RP9R3 | RP9R2 | RP9R1 | RP9R0 |
| bit 15 |     |       |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|       |     |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | RP8R5 | RP8R4 | RP8R3 | RP8R2 | RP8R1 | RP8R0 |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13-8      **RP9R<5:0>:** RP9 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP9 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).
- bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5-0      **RP8R<5:0>:** RP8 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP8 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

## REGISTER 11-28: RPOR5: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 5

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | RP11R5 | RP11R4 | RP11R3 | RP11R2 | RP11R1 | RP11R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | RP10R5 | RP10R4 | RP10R3 | RP10R2 | RP10R1 | RP10R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13-8      **RP11R<5:0>:** RP11 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP11 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).
- bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5-0      **RP10R<5:0>:** RP10 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP10 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-29: RPOR6: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 6

|        |     |            |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0      | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | RP13R<5:0> |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 15 |     |            |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **RP13R<5:0>**: RP13 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP13 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

bit 7-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

## REGISTER 11-30: RPOR7: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 7

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | RP15R5 | RP15R4 | RP15R3 | RP15R2 | RP15R1 | RP15R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | RP14R5 | RP14R4 | RP14R3 | RP14R2 | RP14R1 | RP14R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **RP15R<5:0>**: RP15 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP15 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **RP14R<5:0>**: RP14 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP14 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-31: RPOR8: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 8<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | RP17R5 | RP17R4 | RP17R3 | RP17R2 | RP17R1 | RP17R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | RP16R5 | RP16R4 | RP16R3 | RP16R2 | RP16R1 | RP16R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13-8      **RP17R<5:0>:** RP17 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP17 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).
- bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5-0      **RP16R<5:0>:** RP16 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP16 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

**Note 1:** These pins are not available in 28-pin devices.

## REGISTER 11-32: RPOR9: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 9<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | RP19R5 | RP19R4 | RP19R3 | RP19R2 | RP19R1 | RP19R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | RP18R5 | RP18R4 | RP18R3 | RP18R2 | RP18R1 | RP18R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13-8      **RP19R<5:0>:** RP19 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP19 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).
- bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5-0      **RP18R<5:0>:** RP18 Output Pin Mapping bits  
 Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP18 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

**Note 1:** These pins are not available in 28-pin devices.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-33: RPOR10: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 10<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | RP21R5 | RP21R4 | RP21R3 | RP21R2 | RP21R1 | RP21R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | RP20R5 | RP20R4 | RP20R3 | RP20R2 | RP20R1 | RP20R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **RP21R<5:0>:** RP21 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP21 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **RP20R<5:0>:** RP20 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP20 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

**Note 1:** These pins are not available in 28-pin devices.

## REGISTER 11-34: RPOR11: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 11<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | RP23R5 | RP23R4 | RP23R3 | RP23R2 | RP23R1 | RP23R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | RP22R5 | RP22R4 | RP22R3 | RP22R2 | RP22R1 | RP22R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **RP23R<5:0>:** RP23 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP23 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **RP22R<5:0>:** RP22 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP22 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

**Note 1:** These pins are not available in 28-pin devices.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 11-35: RPOR12: PERIPHERAL PIN SELECT OUTPUT REGISTER 12<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —      | —   | RP25R5 | RP25R4 | RP25R3 | RP25R2 | RP25R1 | RP25R0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | RP24R5 | RP24R4 | RP24R3 | RP24R2 | RP24R1 | RP24R0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14     **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8     **RP25R<5:0>:** RP25 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP25 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

bit 7-6     **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0     **RP24R<5:0>:** RP24 Output Pin Mapping bits  
Peripheral Output Number n is assigned to pin, RP24 (see [Table 11-4](#) for peripheral function numbers).

**Note 1:** These pins are not available in 28-pin devices.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 12.0 TIMER1

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “**Timers**” (DS39704). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The Timer1 module is a 16-bit timer, which can serve as the time counter for the Real-Time Clock (RTC) or operate as a free-running, interval timer/counter. Timer1 can operate in three modes:

- 16-Bit Timer
- 16-Bit Synchronous Counter
- 16-Bit Asynchronous Counter

Timer1 also supports these features:

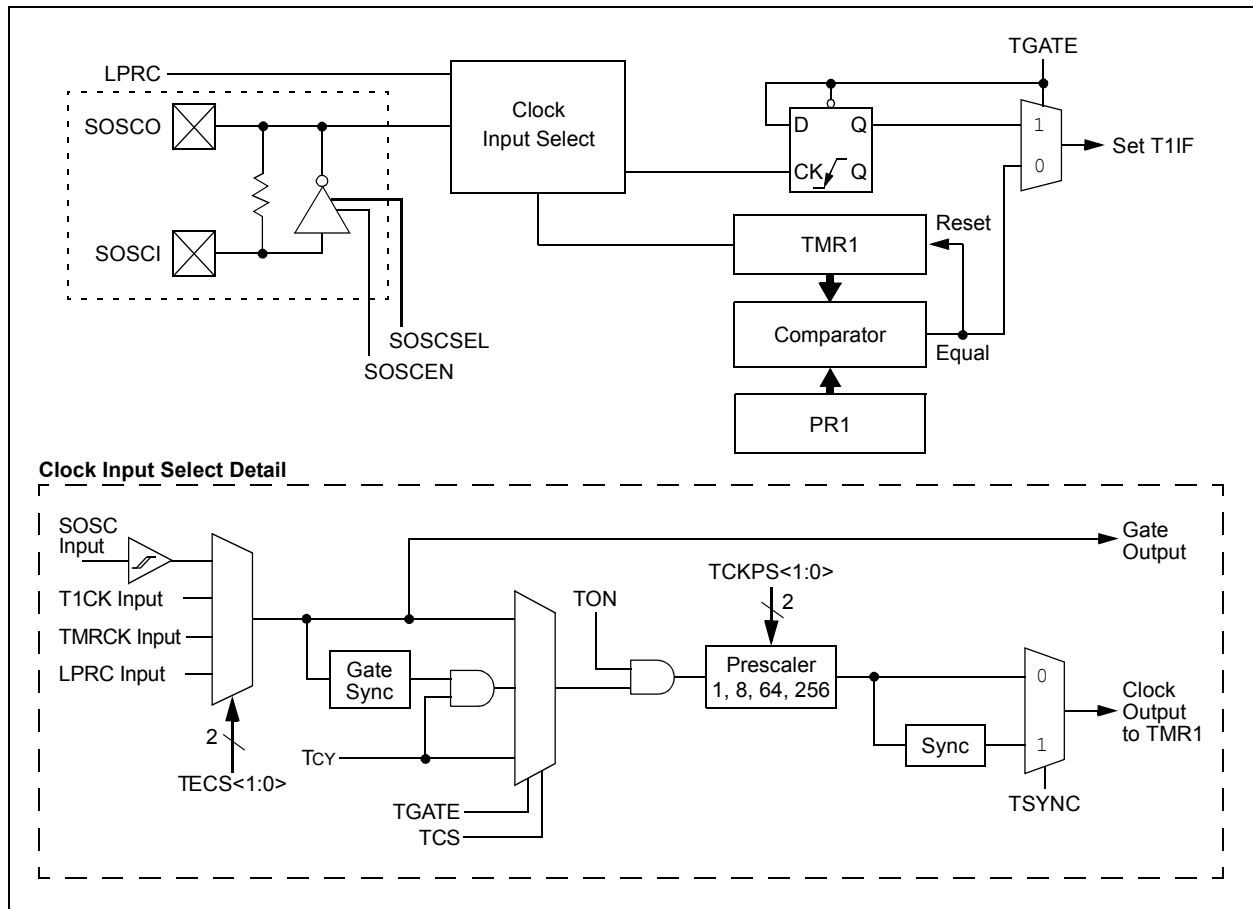
- Timer Gate Operation
- Selectable Prescaler Settings
- Timer Operation during CPU Idle and Sleep modes
- Interrupt on 16-Bit Period Register Match or Falling Edge of External Gate Signal

Figure 12-1 shows a block diagram of the 16-bit timer module.

To configure Timer1 for operation:

1. Set the TON bit (= 1).
2. Select the timer prescaler ratio using the TCKPS<1:0> bits.
3. Set the Clock and Gating modes using the TCS, TECS<1:0> and TGATE bits.
4. Set or clear the TSYNC bit to configure synchronous or asynchronous operation.
5. Load the timer period value into the PR1 register.
6. If interrupts are required, set the Timer1 Interrupt Enable bit, T1IE. Use the Timer1 Interrupt Priority bits, T1IP<2:0>, to set the interrupt priority.

**FIGURE 12-1: 16-BIT TIMER1 MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 12-1: T1CON: TIMER1 CONTROL REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |       |     |     |     |       |       |
|--------|-----|-------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| TON    | —   | TSIDL | —   | —   | —   | TECS1 | TECS0 |
| bit 15 |     |       |     |     |     | bit 8 |       |

|       |       |        |        |     |       |       |     |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|-----|-------|-------|-----|
| U-0   | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 |
| —     | TGATE | TCKPS1 | TCKPS0 | —   | TSYNC | TCS   | —   |
| bit 7 |       |        |        |     |       | bit 0 |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **TON:** Timer1 On bit  
               1 = Starts 16-bit Timer1  
               0 = Stops 16-bit Timer1
- bit 14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13      **TSIDL:** Timer1 Stop in Idle Mode bit  
               1 = Discontinues module operation when device enters Idle mode  
               0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode
- bit 12-10   **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 9-8      **TECS<1:0>:** Timer1 Extended Clock Source Select bits (selected when TCS = 1)  
               When TCS = 1:  
                   11 = Generic Timer (TMRCK) external input  
                   10 = LPRC Oscillator  
                   01 = T1CK external clock input  
                   00 = SOSC  
               When TCS = 0:  
               These bits are ignored; Timer1 is clocked from the internal system clock (FOSC/2).
- bit 7        **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 6        **TGATE:** Timer1 Gated Time Accumulation Enable bit  
               When TCS = 1:  
               This bit is ignored.  
               When TCS = 0:  
                   1 = Gated time accumulation is enabled  
                   0 = Gated time accumulation is disabled
- bit 5-4      **TCKPS<1:0>:** Timer1 Input Clock Prescale Select bits  
               11 = 1:256  
               10 = 1:64  
               01 = 1:8  
               00 = 1:1
- bit 3        **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**Note 1:** Changing the value of T1CON while the timer is running (TON = 1) causes the timer prescale counter to reset and is not recommended.

## REGISTER 12-1: T1CON: TIMER1 CONTROL REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup> (CONTINUED)

bit 2      **TSYNC:** Timer1 External Clock Input Synchronization Select bit

When TCS = 1:

1 = Synchronizes external clock input

0 = Does not synchronize external clock input

When TCS = 0:

This bit is ignored.

bit 1      **TCS:** Timer1 Clock Source Select bit

1 = Extended clock selected by the TECS<1:0> bits

0 = Internal clock ( $F_{OSC}/2$ )

bit 0      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**Note 1:** Changing the value of T1CON while the timer is running (TON = 1) causes the timer prescale counter to reset and is not recommended.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

## 13.0 TIMER2/3 AND TIMER4/5

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the *“dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”*, **“Timers”** (DS39704). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The Timer2/3 and Timer4/5 modules are 32-bit timers, which can also be configured as four independent, 16-bit timers with selectable operating modes.

As 32-bit timers, Timer2/3 and Timer4/5 can each operate in three modes:

- Two Independent 16-Bit Timers with all 16-Bit Operating modes (except Asynchronous Counter mode)
- Single 32-Bit Timer
- Single 32-Bit Synchronous Counter

They also support these features:

- Timer Gate Operation
- Selectable Prescaler Settings
- Timer Operation during Idle and Sleep modes
- Interrupt on a 32-Bit Period Register Match
- A/D Event Trigger (only on Timer2/3 in 32-bit mode and Timer3 in 16-bit mode)

Individually, all four of the 16-bit timers can function as synchronous timers or counters. They also offer the features listed above, except for the A/D Event Trigger. This trigger is implemented only on Timer2/3 in 32-bit mode and Timer3 in 16-bit mode. The operating modes and enabled features are determined by setting the appropriate bit(s) in the T2CON, T3CON, T4CON and T5CON registers. T2CON and T4CON are shown in generic form in [Register 13-1](#); T3CON and T5CON are shown in [Register 13-2](#).

For 32-bit timer/counter operation, Timer2 and Timer4 are the least significant word; Timer3 and Timer5 are the most significant word of the 32-bit timers.

**Note:** For 32-bit operation, T3CON and T5CON control bits are ignored. Only T2CON and T4CON control bits are used for setup and control. Timer2 and Timer4 clock and gate inputs are utilized for the 32-bit timer modules, but an interrupt is generated with the Timer3 or Timer5 interrupt flags.

To configure Timer2/3 or Timer4/5 for 32-bit operation:

1. Set the T32 or T45 bit (T2CON<3> or T4CON<3> = 1).
2. Select the prescaler ratio for Timer2 or Timer4 using the TCKPS<1:0> bits.
3. Set the Clock and Gating modes using the TCS and TGATE bits. If TCS is set to an external clock, RPINRx (TxCK) must be configured to an available RPn/RPIn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).
4. Load the timer period value. PR3 (or PR5) will contain the most significant word (msw) of the value, while PR2 (or PR4) contains the least significant word (lsw).
5. If interrupts are required, set the Timer3/5 Interrupt Enable bit, T3IE or T5IE. Use the Timer3/5 Interrupt Priority bits, T3IP<2:0> or T5IP<2:0>, to set the interrupt priority. Note that while Timer2 or Timer4 controls the timer, the interrupt appears as a Timer3 or Timer5 interrupt.
6. Set the TON bit (= 1).

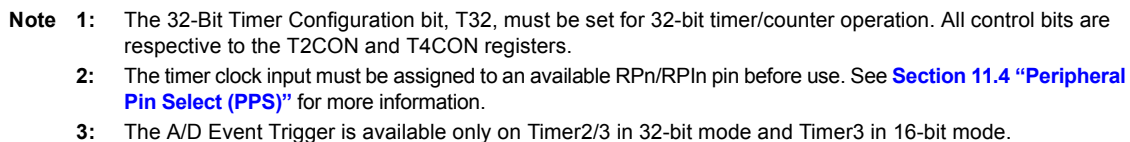
The timer value, at any point, is stored in the register pair, TMR<3:2> (or TMR<5:4>). TMR3 (TMR5) always contains the most significant word of the count, while TMR2 (TMR4) contains the least significant word.

To configure any of the timers for individual 16-bit operation:

1. Clear the T32 bit corresponding to that timer (T2CON<3> for Timer2 and Timer3 or T4CON<3> for Timer4 and Timer5).
2. Select the timer prescaler ratio using the TCKPS<1:0> bits.
3. Set the Clock and Gating modes using the TCS and TGATE bits. See [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#) for more information.
4. Load the timer period value into the PRx register.
5. If interrupts are required, set the Timerx Interrupt Enable bit, TxIE. Use the Timerx Interrupt Priority bits, TxIP<2:0>, to set the interrupt priority.
6. Set the TON (TxCON<15> = 1) bit.

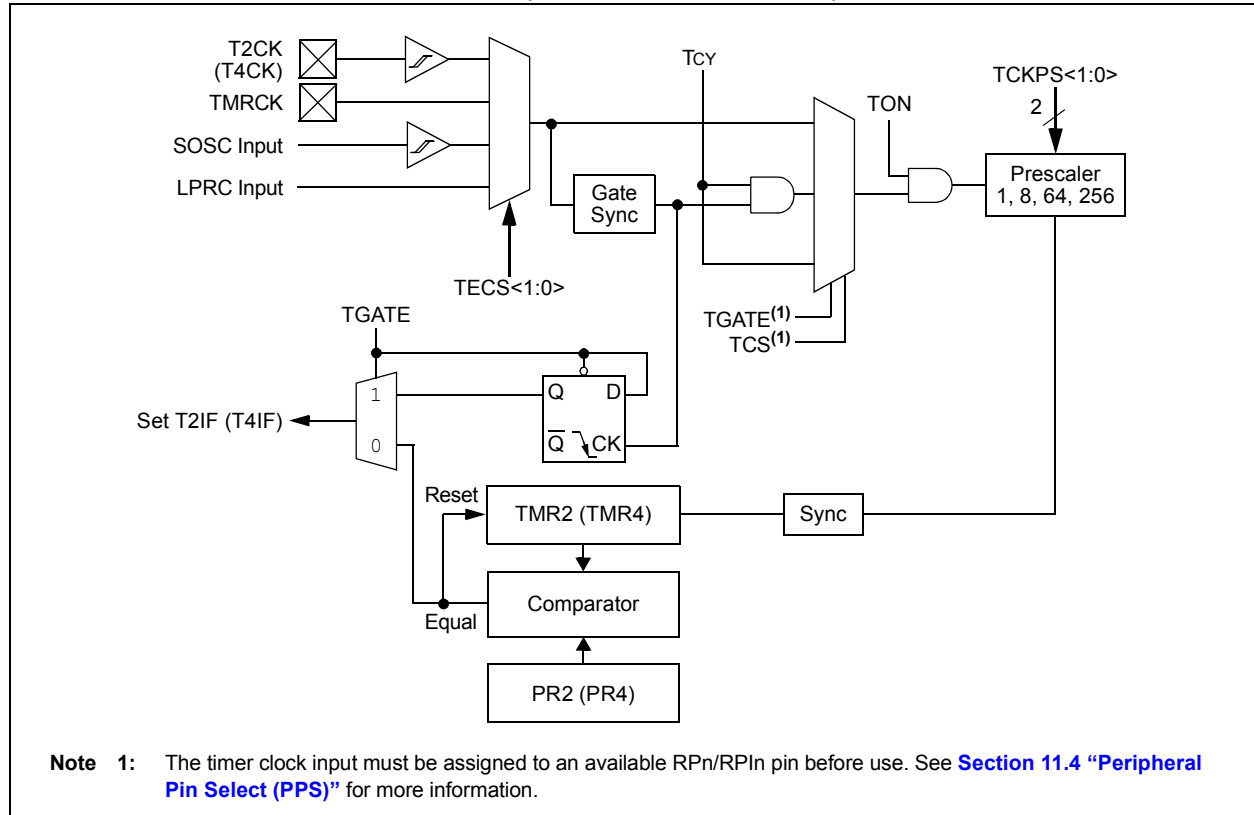
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

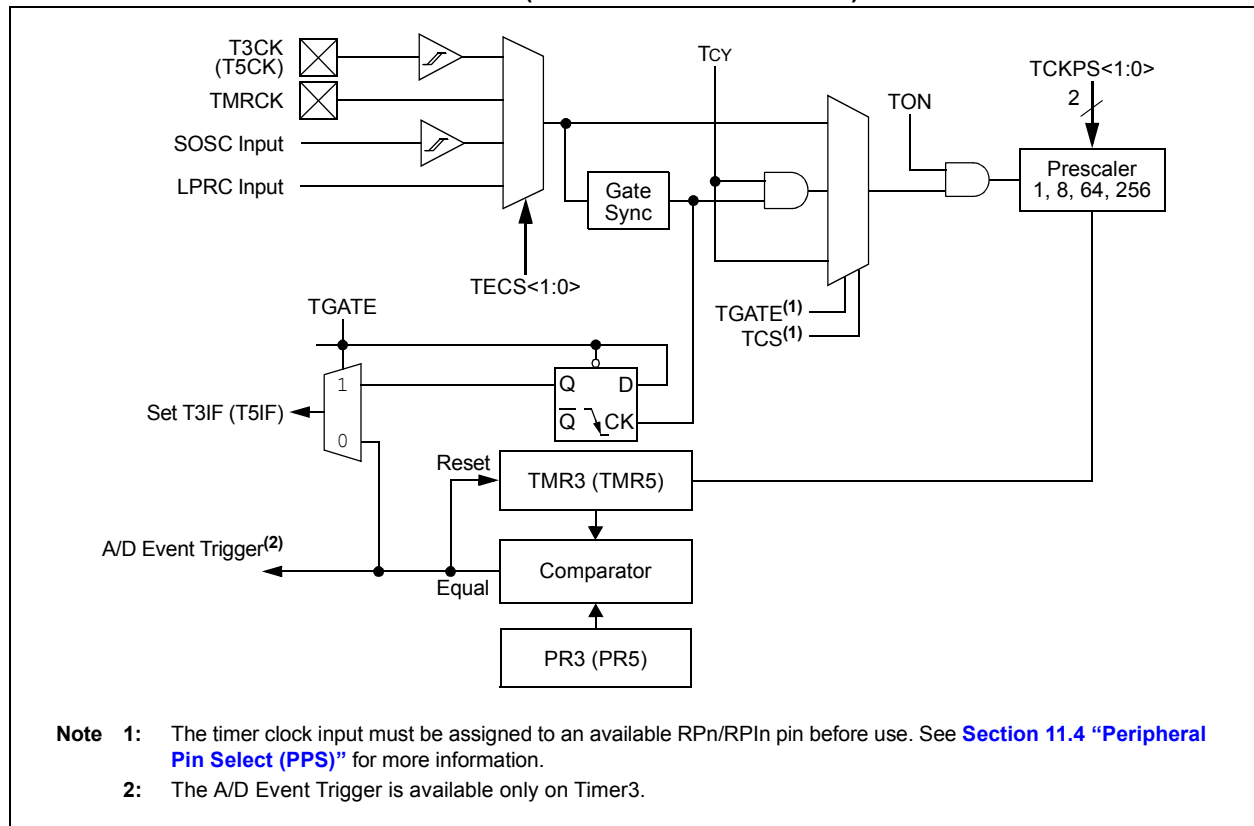


# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 13-2: TIMER2 AND TIMER4 (16-BIT SYNCHRONOUS) BLOCK DIAGRAM**



**FIGURE 13-3: TIMER3 AND TIMER5 (16-BIT ASYNCHRONOUS) BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 13-1: TxCON: TIMER2 AND TIMER4 CONTROL REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>**

|        |     |       |     |     |     |                      |                      |
|--------|-----|-------|-----|-----|-----|----------------------|----------------------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                | R/W-0                |
| TON    | —   | TSIDL | —   | —   | —   | TECS1 <sup>(2)</sup> | TECS0 <sup>(2)</sup> |
| bit 15 |     |       |     |     |     | bit 8                |                      |

|       |       |        |        |                    |     |                    |     |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------------------|-----|--------------------|-----|
| U-0   | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0              | U-0 | R/W-0              | U-0 |
| —     | TGATE | TCKPS1 | TCKPS0 | T32 <sup>(3)</sup> | —   | TCS <sup>(2)</sup> | —   |
| bit 7 |       |        |        |                    |     | bit 0              |     |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **TON:** Timerx On bit

When TxCON<3> = 1:

1 = Starts 32-bit Timerx/y

0 = Stops 32-bit Timerx/y

When TxCON<3> = 0:

1 = Starts 16-bit Timerx

0 = Stops 16-bit Timerx

bit 14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13 **TSIDL:** Timerx Stop in Idle Mode bit

1 = Discontinues module operation when device enters Idle mode

0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode

bit 12-10 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 9-8 **TECS<1:0>:** Timerx Extended Clock Source Select bits (selected when TCS = 1)<sup>(2)</sup>

When TCS = 1:

11 = Generic Timer (TMRCK) external input

10 = LPRC Oscillator

01 = TxCK external clock input

00 = SOSC

When TCS = 0:

These bits are ignored; Timerx is clocked from the internal system clock (Fosc/2).

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **TGATE:** Timerx Gated Time Accumulation Enable bit

When TCS = 1:

This bit is ignored.

When TCS = 0:

1 = Gated time accumulation is enabled

0 = Gated time accumulation is disabled

bit 5-4 **TCKPS<1:0>:** Timerx Input Clock Prescale Select bits

11 = 1:256

10 = 1:64

01 = 1:8

00 = 1:1

**Note 1:** Changing the value of TxCON while the timer is running (TON = 1) causes the timer prescale counter to reset and is not recommended.

**2:** If TCS = 1 and TECS<1:0> = x1, the selected external timer input (TMRCK or TxCK) must be configured to an available RPN/RPIn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 "Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)"](#).

**3:** In T4CON, the T45 bit is implemented instead of T32 to select 32-bit mode. In 32-bit mode, the T3CON or T5CON control bits do not affect 32-bit timer operation.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 13-1: TxCON: TIMER2 AND TIMER4 CONTROL REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup> (CONTINUED)

|       |   |
|-------|---|
| bit 3 | <b>T32:</b> 32-Bit Timer Mode Select bit <sup>(3)</sup><br>1 = Timerx and Timery form a single 32-bit timer<br>0 = Timerx and Timery act as two 16-bit timers<br>In 32-bit mode, T3CON control bits do not affect 32-bit timer operation. |
| bit 2 | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'   |
| bit 1 | <b>TCS:</b> Timerx Clock Source Select bit <sup>(2)</sup><br>1 = Timer source is selected by TECS<1:0><br>0 = Internal clock (Fosc/2)   |
| bit 0 | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'   |

- Note 1:** Changing the value of TxCON while the timer is running (TON = 1) causes the timer prescale counter to reset and is not recommended.
- 2:** If TCS = 1 and TECS<1:0> = x1, the selected external timer input (TMRCK or TxCK) must be configured to an available RPN/RPIn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).
- 3:** In T4CON, the T45 bit is implemented instead of T32 to select 32-bit mode. In 32-bit mode, the T3CON or T5CON control bits do not affect 32-bit timer operation.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 13-2: TyCON: TIMER3 AND TIMER5 CONTROL REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>**

|                    |     |                      |     |     |     |                        |                        |
|--------------------|-----|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|------------------------|------------------------|
| R/W-0              | U-0 | R/W-0                | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  |
| TON <sup>(2)</sup> | —   | TSIDL <sup>(2)</sup> | —   | —   | —   | TECS1 <sup>(2,3)</sup> | TECS0 <sup>(2,3)</sup> |
| bit 15             |     |                      |     |     |     | bit 8                  |                        |

|       |                      |                       |                       |     |     |                      |     |
|-------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----|-----|----------------------|-----|
| U-0   | R/W-0                | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                | U-0 |
| —     | TGATE <sup>(2)</sup> | TCKPS1 <sup>(2)</sup> | TCKPS0 <sup>(2)</sup> | —   | —   | TCS <sup>(2,3)</sup> | —   |
| bit 7 |                      |                       |                       |     |     | bit 0                |     |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **TON:** Timery On bit<sup>(2)</sup>

1 = Starts 16-bit Timery

0 = Stops 16-bit Timery

bit 14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13 **TSIDL:** Timery Stop in Idle Mode bit<sup>(2)</sup>

1 = Discontinues module operation when device enters Idle mode

0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode

bit 12-10 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 9-8 **TECS<1:0>:** Timery Extended Clock Source Select bits (selected when TCS = 1)<sup>(2,3)</sup>

11 = Generic Timer (TMRCK) external input

10 = LPRC Oscillator

01 = TxCK external clock input

00 = SOSC

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **TGATE:** Timery Gated Time Accumulation Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>

When TCS = 1:

This bit is ignored.

When TCS = 0:

1 = Gated time accumulation is enabled

0 = Gated time accumulation is disabled

bit 5-4 **TCKPS<1:0>:** Timery Input Clock Prescale Select bits<sup>(2)</sup>

11 = 1:256

10 = 1:64

01 = 1:8

00 = 1:1

bit 3-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **TCS:** Timery Clock Source Select bit<sup>(2,3)</sup>

1 = External clock from pin, TyCK (on the rising edge)

0 = Internal clock (Fosc/2)

bit 0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**Note 1:** Changing the value of TyCON while the timer is running (TON = 1) causes the timer prescale counter to reset and is not recommended.

**2:** When 32-bit operation is enabled (T2CON<3> or T4CON<3> = 1), these bits have no effect on Timery operation; all timer functions are set through T2CON and T4CON.

**3:** If TCS = 1 and TECS<1:0> = x1, the selected external timer input (TyCK) must be configured to an available RPN/RPn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 "Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)"](#).

## 14.0 INPUT CAPTURE WITH DEDICATED TIMERS

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “Input Capture with Dedicated Timer” (DS39722). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

Devices in the PIC24FJ128GB204 family contain six independent input capture modules. Each of the modules offers a wide range of configuration and operating options for capturing external pulse events and generating interrupts.

Key features of the input capture module include:

- Hardware-configurable for 32-bit operation in all modes by cascading two adjacent modules
- Synchronous and Trigger modes of output compare operation, with up to 30 user-selectable sync/trigger sources available
- A 4-level FIFO buffer for capturing and holding timer values for several events
- Configurable interrupt generation
- Up to 6 clock sources available for each module, driving a separate, internal 16-bit counter

The module is controlled through two registers: ICxCON1 (Register 14-1) and ICxCON2 (Register 14-2). A general block diagram of the module is shown in Figure 14-1.

## 14.1 General Operating Modes

### 14.1.1 SYNCHRONOUS AND TRIGGER MODES

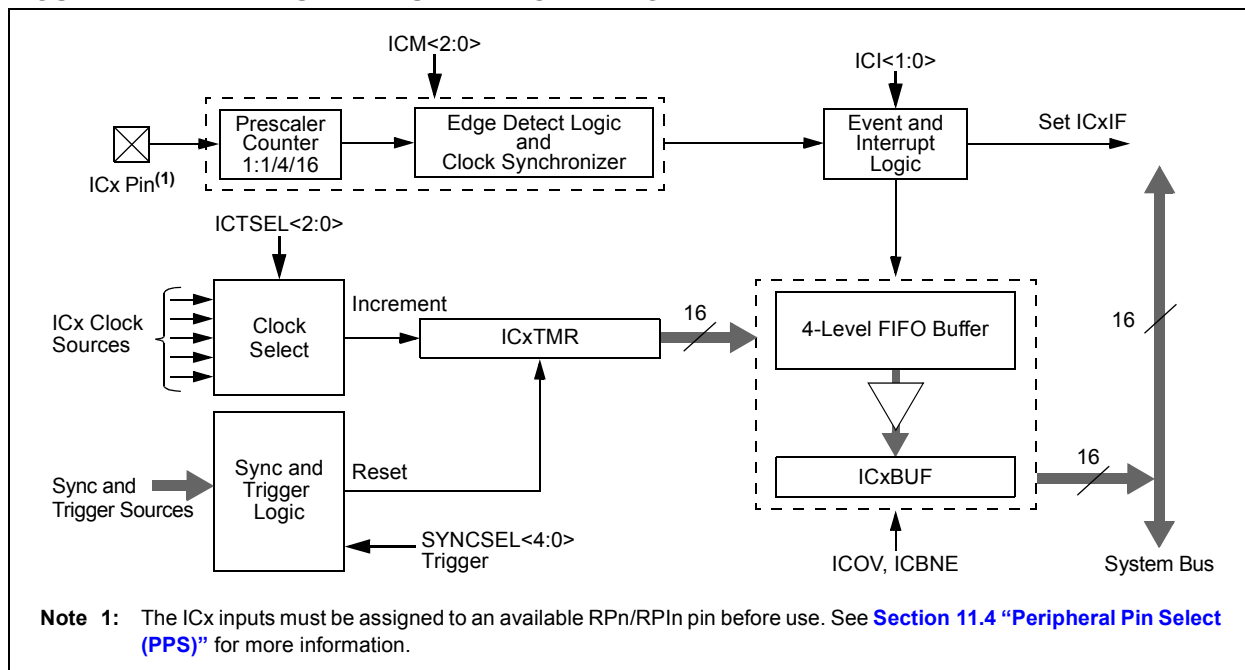
When the input capture module operates in a Free-Running mode, the internal 16-bit counter, ICxTMR, counts up continuously, wrapping around from FFFFh to 0000h on each overflow. Its period is synchronized to the selected external clock source. When a capture event occurs, the current 16-bit value of the internal counter is written to the FIFO buffer.

In Synchronous mode, the module begins capturing events on the ICx pin as soon as its selected clock source is enabled. Whenever an event occurs on the selected sync source, the internal counter is reset. In Trigger mode, the module waits for a sync event from another internal module to occur before allowing the internal counter to run.

Standard, free-running operation is selected by setting the SYNCSELx bits (ICxCON2<4:0>) to '00000' and clearing the ICTRIG bit (ICxCON2<7>). Synchronous and Trigger modes are selected any time the SYNCSELx bits are set to any value except '00000'. The ICTRIG bit selects either Synchronous or Trigger mode; setting the bit selects Trigger mode operation. In both modes, the SYNCSELx bits determine the sync/trigger source.

When the SYNCSELx bits are set to '00000' and ICTRIG is set, the module operates in Software Trigger mode. In this case, capture operations are started by manually setting the TRIGSTAT bit (ICxCON2<6>).

**FIGURE 14-1: INPUT CAPTURE x BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 14.1.2 CASCADED (32-BIT) MODE

By default, each module operates independently with its own 16-bit timer. To increase resolution, adjacent even and odd modules can be configured to function as a single 32-bit module. (For example, Modules 1 and 2 are paired, as are Modules 3 and 4, and so on.) The odd numbered module, Input Capture x (ICx), provides the Least Significant 16 bits of the 32-bit register pairs and the even numbered module, Input Capture y (ICy), provides the Most Significant 16 bits. Wrap arounds of the ICx registers cause an increment of their corresponding ICy registers.

Cascaded operation is configured in hardware by setting the IC32 bits (ICxCON2<8>) for both modules.

## 14.2 Capture Operations

The input capture module can be configured to capture timer values and generate interrupts on rising edges on ICx or all transitions on ICx. Captures can be configured to occur on all rising edges or just some (every 4<sup>th</sup> or 16<sup>th</sup>). Interrupts can be independently configured to generate on each event or a subset of events.

To set up the module for capture operations:

1. Configure the ICx input for one of the available Peripheral Pin Select pins.
2. If Synchronous mode is to be used, disable the sync source before proceeding.
3. Make sure that any previous data has been removed from the FIFO by reading ICxBUF until the ICBNE bit (ICxCON1<3>) is cleared.
4. Set the SYNCSELx bits (ICxCON2<4:0>) to the desired sync/trigger source.
5. Set the ICTSELx bits (ICxCON1<12:10>) for the desired clock source.
6. Set the ICLx bits (ICxCON1<6:5>) to the desired interrupt frequency.
7. Select Synchronous or Trigger mode operation:
  - a) Check that the SYNCSELx bits are not set to '00000'.
  - b) For Synchronous mode, clear the ICTRIG bit (ICxCON2<7>).
  - c) For Trigger mode, set ICTRIG and clear the TRIGSTAT bit (ICxCON2<6>).
8. Set the ICMx bits (ICxCON1<2:0>) to the desired operational mode.
9. Enable the selected sync/trigger source.

For 32-bit cascaded operations, the setup procedure is slightly different:

1. Set the IC32 bits for both modules (ICyCON2<8> and ICxCON2<8>), enabling the even numbered module first. This ensures that the modules will start functioning in unison.
2. Set the ICTSELx and SYNCSELx bits for both modules to select the same sync/trigger and time base source. Set the even module first, then the odd module. Both modules must use the same ICTSELx and SYNCSELx bit settings.
3. Clear the ICTRIG bit of the even module (ICyCON2<7>). This forces the module to run in Synchronous mode with the odd module, regardless of its trigger setting.
4. Use the odd module's ICLx bits (ICxCON1<6:5>) to set the desired interrupt frequency.
5. Use the ICTRIG bit of the odd module (ICxCON2<7>) to configure Trigger or Synchronous mode operation.

**Note:** For Synchronous mode operation, enable the sync source as the last step. Both input capture modules are held in Reset until the sync source is enabled.

6. Use the ICMx bits of the odd module (ICxCON1<2:0>) to set the desired Capture mode.

The module is ready to capture events when the time base and the sync/trigger source are enabled. When the ICBNE bit (ICxCON1<3>) becomes set, at least one capture value is available in the FIFO. Read input capture values from the FIFO until the ICBNE clears to '0'.

For 32-bit operation, read both the ICxBUF and ICyBUF for the full 32-bit timer value (ICxBUF for the lsw, ICyBUF for the msw). At least one capture value is available in the FIFO buffer when the odd module's ICBNE bit (ICxCON1<3>) becomes set. Continue to read the buffer registers until ICBNE is cleared (performed automatically by hardware).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 14-1: ICxCON1: INPUT CAPTURE x CONTROL REGISTER 1**

|        |     |        |         |         |         |       |     |
|--------|-----|--------|---------|---------|---------|-------|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0   | U-0 |
| —      | —   | ICSIDL | ICTSEL2 | ICTSEL1 | ICTSEL0 | —     | —   |
| bit 15 |     |        |         |         |         | bit 8 |     |

|       |       |       |          |          |                     |                     |                     |
|-------|-------|-------|----------|----------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| U-0   | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R/W-0               | R/W-0               | R/W-0               |
| —     | ICI1  | ICI0  | ICOV     | ICBNE    | ICM2 <sup>(1)</sup> | ICM1 <sup>(1)</sup> | ICM0 <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7 |       |       |          |          |                     | bit 0               |                     |

|                   |                                       |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit                      | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                      | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13 **ICSIDL:** Input Capture x Stop in Idle Control bit  
 1 = Input capture module halts in CPU Idle mode  
 0 = Input capture module continues to operate in CPU Idle mode

bit 12-10 **ICTSEL<2:0>:** Input Capture x Timer Select bits  
 111 = System clock (Fosc/2)  
 110 = Reserved  
 101 = Reserved  
 100 = Timer1  
 011 = Timer5  
 010 = Timer4  
 001 = Timer2  
 000 = Timer3

bit 9-7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-5 **ICI<1:0>:** Select Number of Captures per Interrupt bits  
 11 = Interrupt on every fourth capture event  
 10 = Interrupt on every third capture event  
 01 = Interrupt on every second capture event  
 00 = Interrupt on every capture event

bit 4 **ICOV:** Input Capture x Overflow Status Flag bit (read-only)  
 1 = Input capture overflow has occurred  
 0 = No input capture overflow has occurred

bit 3 **ICBNE:** Input Capture x Buffer Empty Status bit (read-only)  
 1 = Input capture buffer is not empty, at least one more capture value can be read  
 0 = Input capture buffer is empty

bit 2-0 **ICM<2:0>:** Input Capture x Mode Select bits<sup>(1)</sup>  
 111 = Interrupt mode: Input capture functions as an interrupt pin only when the device is in Sleep or Idle mode (rising edge detect only, all other control bits are not applicable)  
 110 = Unused (module is disabled)  
 101 = Prescaler Capture mode: Capture on every 16<sup>th</sup> rising edge  
 100 = Prescaler Capture mode: Capture on every 4<sup>th</sup> rising edge  
 011 = Simple Capture mode: Capture on every rising edge  
 010 = Simple Capture mode: Capture on every falling edge  
 001 = Edge Detect Capture mode: Capture on every edge (rising and falling); ICI<1:0> bits do not control interrupt generation for this mode  
 000 = Input capture module is turned off

**Note 1:** The ICx input must also be configured to an available RPN/RPIn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 "Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)"](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 14-2: ICxCON2: INPUT CAPTURE x CONTROL REGISTER 2**

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | IC32  |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|        |           |     |          |          |          |          |          |
|--------|-----------|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0, HS | U-0 | R/W-0    | R/W-1    | R/W-1    | R/W-0    | R/W-1    |
| ICTRIG | TRIGSTAT  | —   | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 |
| bit 7  |           |     |          |          |          |          | bit 0    |

|                   |                            |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HS = Hardware Settable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit           | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set           | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15-9      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 8      **IC32:** Cascade Two IC Modules Enable bit (32-bit operation)  
             1 = ICx and ICy operate in cascade as a 32-bit module (this bit must be set in both modules)  
             0 = ICx functions independently as a 16-bit module
- bit 7      **ICTRIG:** Input Capture x Sync/Trigger Select bit  
             1 = Triggers ICx from the source designated by the SYNCSELx bits  
             0 = Synchronizes ICx with the source designated by the SYNCSELx bits
- bit 6      **TRIGSTAT:** Timer Trigger Status bit  
             1 = Timer source has been triggered and is running (set in hardware, can be set in software)  
             0 = Timer source has not been triggered and is being held clear
- bit 5      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

- Note 1:** Use these inputs as trigger sources only and never as sync sources.
- 2:** Never use an IC module as its own trigger source by selecting this mode.

## REGISTER 14-2: ICxCON2: INPUT CAPTURE x CONTROL REGISTER 2 (CONTINUED)

bit 4-0      **SYNCSEL<4:0>**: Synchronization/Trigger Source Selection bits

1111x = Reserved  
11101 = Reserved  
11100 = CTMU<sup>(1)</sup>  
11011 = A/D<sup>(1)</sup>  
11010 = Comparator 3<sup>(1)</sup>  
11001 = Comparator 2<sup>(1)</sup>  
11000 = Comparator 1<sup>(1)</sup>  
10111 = Reserved  
10110 = Reserved  
10101 = Input Capture 6<sup>(2)</sup>  
10100 = Input Capture 5<sup>(2)</sup>  
10011 = Input Capture 4<sup>(2)</sup>  
10010 = Input Capture 3<sup>(2)</sup>  
10001 = Input Capture 2<sup>(2)</sup>  
10000 = Input Capture 1<sup>(2)</sup>  
01111 = Timer5  
01110 = Timer4  
01101 = Timer3  
01100 = Timer2  
01011 = Timer1  
01010 = Reserved  
01001 = Reserved  
01000 = Reserved  
00111 = Reserved  
00110 = Output Compare 6  
00101 = Output Compare 5  
00100 = Output Compare 4  
00011 = Output Compare 3  
00010 = Output Compare 2  
00001 = Output Compare 1  
00000 = Not synchronized to any other module

**Note 1:** Use these inputs as trigger sources only and never as sync sources.

**2:** Never use an IC module as its own trigger source by selecting this mode.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

## 15.0 OUTPUT COMPARE WITH DEDICATED TIMERS

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “**Output Compare with Dedicated Timer**” (DS70005159). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

Devices in the PIC24FJ128GB204 family all feature six independent output compare modules. Each of these modules offers a wide range of configuration and operating options for generating pulse trains on internal device events, and can produce Pulse-Width Modulated (PWM) waveforms for driving power applications.

Key features of the output compare module include:

- Hardware-configurable for 32-bit operation in all modes by cascading two adjacent modules
- Synchronous and Trigger modes of output compare operation, with up to 31 user-selectable trigger/sync sources available
- Two separate Period registers (a main register, OCxR, and a secondary register, OCxRS) for greater flexibility in generating pulses of varying widths
- Configurable for single pulse or continuous pulse generation on an output event, or continuous PWM waveform generation
- Up to 6 clock sources available for each module, driving a separate internal 16-bit counter

### 15.1 General Operating Modes

#### 15.1.1 SYNCHRONOUS AND TRIGGER MODES

When the output compare module operates in a Free-Running mode, the internal 16-bit counter, OCxTMR, runs counts up continuously, wrapping around from 0xFFFF to 0x0000 on each overflow. Its period is synchronized to the selected external clock source. Compare or PWM events are generated each time a match between the internal counter and one of the Period registers occurs.

In Synchronous mode, the module begins performing its compare or PWM operation as soon as its selected clock source is enabled. Whenever an event occurs on the selected sync source, the module's internal counter is reset. In Trigger mode, the module waits for a sync event from another internal module to occur before allowing the counter to run.

Free-Running mode is selected by default or any time that the SYNCSELx bits (OCxCON2<4:0>) are set to '00000'. Synchronous or Trigger modes are selected any time the SYNCSELx bits are set to any value except '00000'. The OCTRIG bit (OCxCON2<7>) selects either Synchronous or Trigger mode; setting the bit selects Trigger mode operation. In both modes, the SYNCSELx bits determine the sync/trigger source.

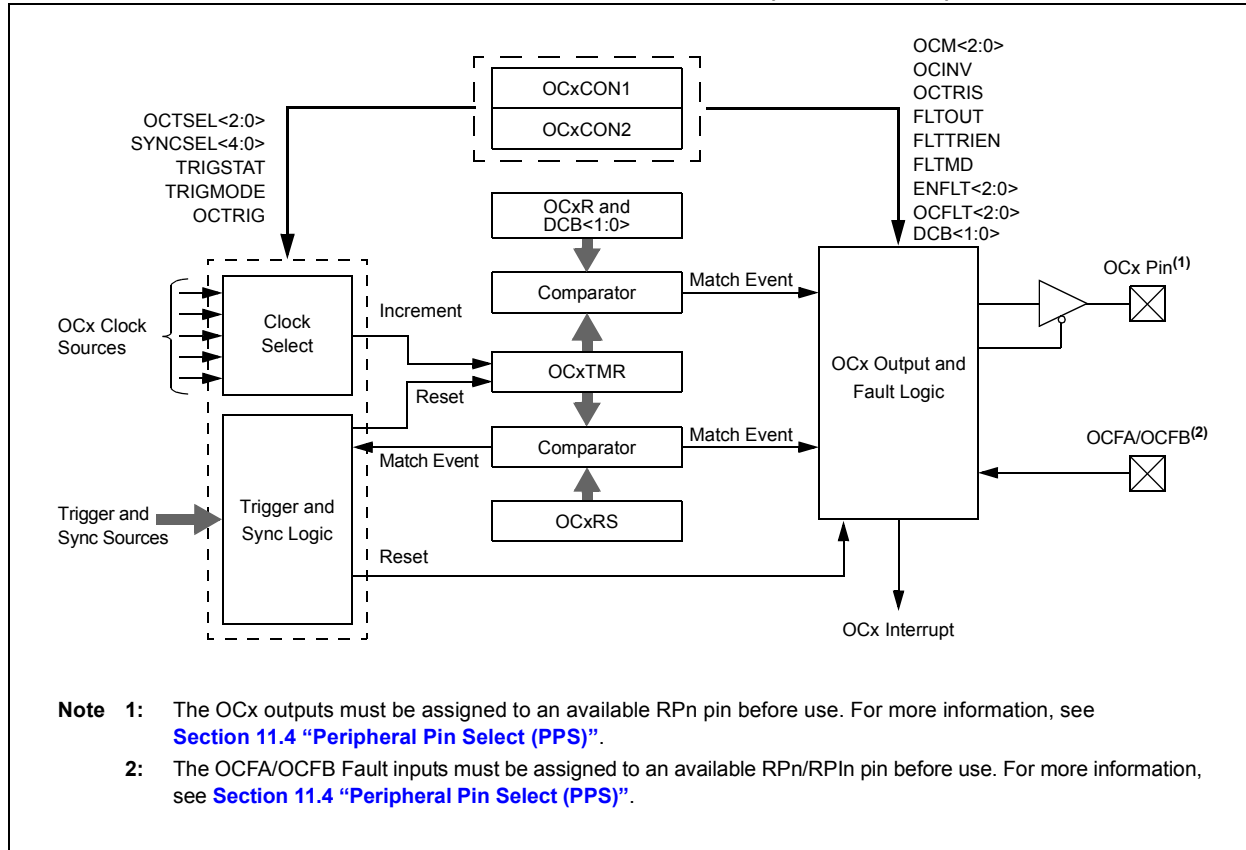
#### 15.1.2 CASCADED (32-BIT) MODE

By default, each module operates independently with its own set of 16-bit Timer and Duty Cycle registers. To increase resolution, adjacent even and odd modules can be configured to function as a single 32-bit module. (For example, Modules 1 and 2 are paired, as are Modules 3 and 4, and so on.) The odd numbered module, Output Compare x (OCx), provides the Least Significant 16 bits of the 32-bit register pairs and the even numbered module, Output Compare y (OCy), provides the Most Significant 16 bits. Wrap arounds of the OCx registers cause an increment of their corresponding OCy registers.

Cascaded operation is configured in hardware by setting the OC32 bit (OCxCON2<8>) for both modules. For more information on cascading, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “**Output Compare with Dedicated Timer**” (DS70005159).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 15-1: OUTPUT COMPARE x BLOCK DIAGRAM (16-BIT MODE)**



## 15.2 Compare Operations

In Compare mode (Figure 15-1), the output compare module can be configured for single-shot or continuous pulse generation. It can also repeatedly toggle an output pin on each timer event.

To set up the module for compare operations:

1. Configure the OCx output for one of the available Peripheral Pin Select pins.
2. Calculate the required values for the OCxR and (for Double Compare modes) OCxRS Duty Cycle registers:
  - a) Determine the instruction clock cycle time. Take into account the frequency of the external clock to the timer source (if one is used) and the timer prescaler settings.
  - b) Calculate the time to the rising edge of the output pulse relative to the timer start value (0000h).
  - c) Calculate the time to the falling edge of the pulse based on the desired pulse width and the time to the rising edge of the pulse.
3. Write the rising edge value to OCxR and the falling edge value to OCxRS.
4. Set the Timer Period register, PRy, to a value equal to or greater than the value in OCxRS.
5. Set the OCM<2:0> bits for the appropriate compare operation ('0xx').
6. For Trigger mode operations, set OCTRIG to enable Trigger mode. Set or clear TRIGMODE to configure trigger operation and TRIGSTAT to select a hardware or software trigger. For Synchronous mode, clear OCTRIG.
7. Set the SYNCSEL<4:0> bits to configure the trigger or synchronization source. If free-running timer operation is required, set the SYNCSELx bits to '00000' (no sync/trigger source).
8. Select the time base source with the OCTSEL<2:0> bits. If necessary, set the TON bit for the selected timer, which enables the compare time base to count. Synchronous mode operation starts as soon as the time base is enabled; Trigger mode operation starts after a trigger source event occurs.

For 32-bit cascaded operation, these steps are also necessary:

1. Set the OC32 bits for both registers (OCyCON2<8>) and (OCxCON2<8>). Enable the even numbered module first to ensure the modules will start functioning in unison.
2. Clear the OCTRIG bit of the even module (OCyCON2<7>), so the module will run in Synchronous mode.
3. Configure the desired output and Fault settings for OCy.
4. Force the output pin for OCx to the output state by clearing the OCTRIS bit.
5. If Trigger mode operation is required, configure the trigger options in OCx by using the OCTRIG (OCxCON2<7>), TRIGMODE (OCxCON1<3>) and SYNCSELx (OCxCON2<4:0>) bits.
6. Configure the desired Compare or PWM mode of operation (OCM<2:0>) for OCy first, then for OCx.

Depending on the output mode selected, the module holds the OCx pin in its default state and forces a transition to the opposite state when OCxR matches the timer. In Double Compare modes, OCx is forced back to its default state when a match with OCxRS occurs. The OCxIF interrupt flag is set after an OCxR match in Single Compare modes and after each OCxRS match in Double Compare modes.

Single-shot pulse events only occur once, but may be repeated by simply rewriting the value of the OCxCON1 register. Continuous pulse events continue indefinitely until terminated.

## 15.3 Pulse-Width Modulation (PWM) Mode

In PWM mode, the output compare module can be configured for edge-aligned or center-aligned pulse waveform generation. All PWM operations are double-buffered (buffer registers are internal to the module and are not mapped into SFR space).

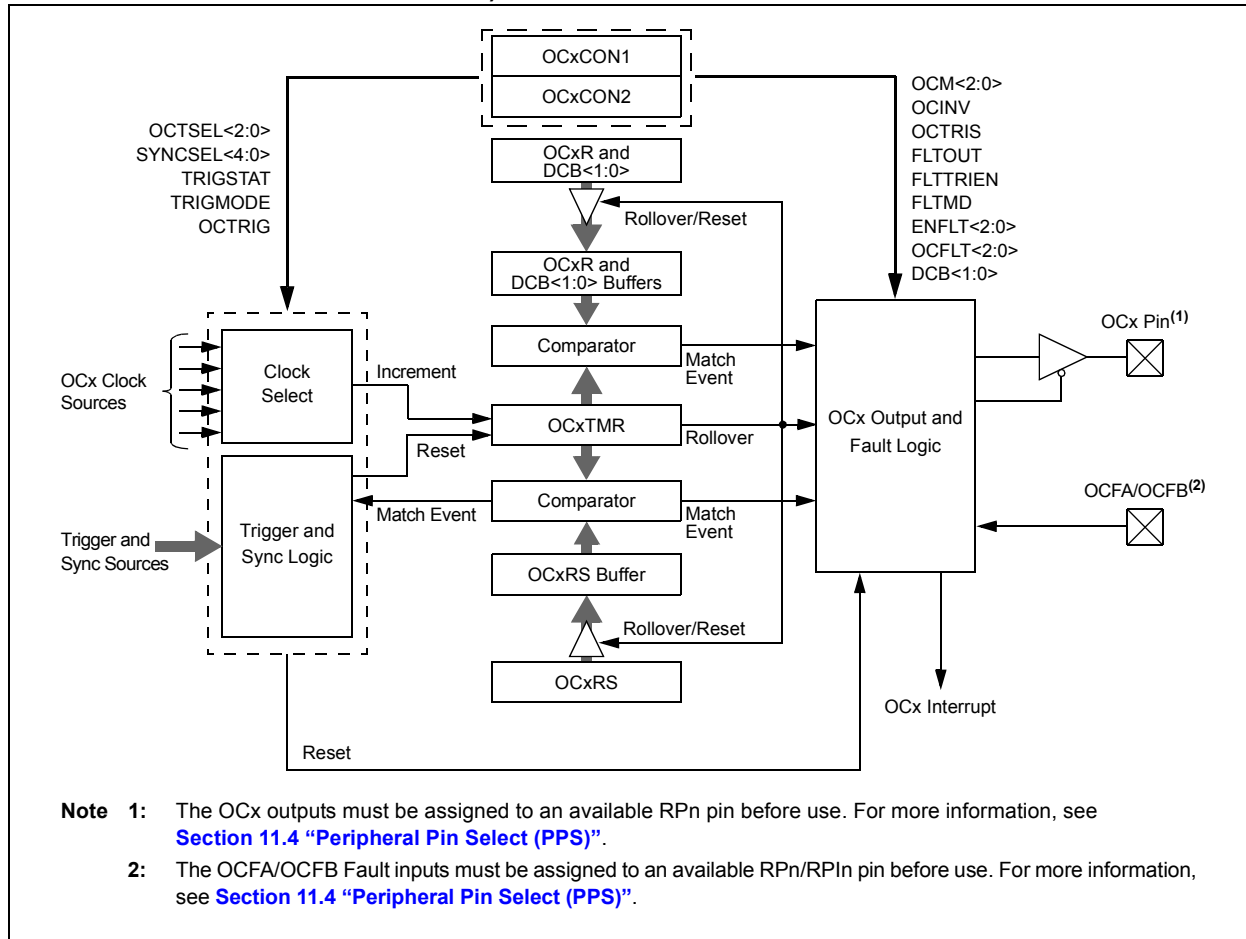
To configure the output compare module for PWM operation:

1. Configure the OCx output for one of the available Peripheral Pin Select pins.
2. Calculate the desired duty cycles and load them into the OCxR register.
3. Calculate the desired period and load it into the OCxRS register.
4. Select the current OCx as the synchronization source by writing '0x1F' to the SYNCSEL<4:0> bits (OCxCON2<4:0>) and '0' to the OCTRIG bit (OCxCON2<7>).
5. Select a clock source by writing to the OCTSEL<2:0> bits (OCxCON1<12:10>).
6. Enable interrupts, if required, for the timer and output compare modules. The output compare interrupt is required for PWM Fault pin utilization.
7. Select the desired PWM mode in the OCM<2:0> bits (OCxCON1<2:0>).
8. Appropriate Fault inputs may be enabled by using the ENFLT<2:0> bits as described in [Register 15-1](#).
9. If a timer is selected as a clock source, set the selected timer prescale value. The selected timer's prescaler output is used as the clock input for the OCx timer and not the selected timer output.

**Note:** This peripheral contains input and output functions that may need to be configured by the Peripheral Pin Select. For more information, see [Section 11.4 "Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)"](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 15-2: OUTPUT COMPARE x BLOCK DIAGRAM (DOUBLE-BUFFERED, 16-BIT PWM MODE)**



## 15.3.1 PWM PERIOD

The PWM period is specified by writing to PRy, the Timer Period register. The PWM period can be calculated using [Equation 15-1](#).

### EQUATION 15-1: CALCULATING THE PWM PERIOD<sup>(1)</sup>

$$PWM\ Period = [(PR_y) + 1] \cdot T_{CY} \cdot (Timer\ Prescale\ Value)$$

where:

$$PWM\ Frequency = 1/[PWM\ Period]$$

**Note 1:** Based on  $T_{CY} = T_{OSC} \cdot 2$ ; Doze mode and PLL are disabled.

**Note:** A PRy value of N will produce a PWM period of N + 1 time base count cycles. For example, a value of 7 written into the PRy register will yield a period consisting of 8 time base cycles.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 15.3.2 PWM DUTY CYCLE

The PWM duty cycle is specified by writing to the OCxRS and OCxR registers. The OCxRS and OCxR registers can be written to at any time, but the duty cycle value is not latched until a match between PRy and TMRy occurs (i.e., the period is complete). This provides a double buffer for the PWM duty cycle and is essential for glitchless PWM operation.

Some important boundary parameters of the PWM duty cycle include:

- If OCxR, OCxRS and PRy are all loaded with 0000h, the OCx pin will remain low (0% duty cycle).
- If OCxRS is greater than PRy, the pin will remain high (100% duty cycle).

See [Example 15-1](#) for PWM mode timing details. [Table 15-1](#) and [Table 15-2](#) show example PWM frequencies and resolutions for a device operating at 4 MIPS and 10 MIPS, respectively.

### EQUATION 15-2: CALCULATION FOR MAXIMUM PWM RESOLUTION<sup>(1)</sup>

$$\text{Maximum PWM Resolution (bits)} = \frac{\log_{10} \left( \frac{F_{CY}}{F_{PWM} \cdot (\text{Timer Prescale Value})} \right)}{\log_{10} 2} \text{ bits}$$

**Note 1:** Based on  $F_{CY} = F_{OSC}/2$ ; Doze mode and PLL are disabled.

### EXAMPLE 15-1: PWM PERIOD AND DUTY CYCLE CALCULATIONS<sup>(1)</sup>

1. Find the Timer Period register value for a desired PWM frequency of 52.08 kHz, where  $F_{OSC} = 8$  MHz with PLL (32 MHz device clock rate) and a Timer2 prescaler setting of 1:1.

$$T_{CY} = 2 \cdot T_{OSC} = 62.5 \text{ ns}$$

$$\text{PWM Period} = 1/\text{PWM Frequency} = 1/52.08 \text{ kHz} = 19.2 \text{ ms}$$

$$\text{PWM Period} = (PR2 + 1) \cdot T_{CY} \cdot (\text{Timer2 Prescale Value})$$

$$19.2 \mu\text{s} = (PR2 + 1) \cdot 62.5 \text{ ns} \cdot 1$$

$$PR2 = 306$$

2. Find the maximum resolution of the duty cycle that can be used with a 52.08 kHz frequency and a 32 MHz device clock rate.

$$\text{PWM Resolution} = \log_{10}(F_{CY}/F_{PWM})/\log_{10}2 \text{ bits}$$

$$= (\log_{10}(16 \text{ MHz}/52.08 \text{ kHz})/\log_{10}2) \text{ bits}$$

$$= 8.3 \text{ bits}$$

**Note 1:** Based on  $T_{CY} = 2 \cdot T_{OSC}$ ; Doze mode and PLL are disabled.

**TABLE 15-1: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS AT 4 MIPS ( $F_{CY} = 4$  MHz)<sup>(1)</sup>**

| PWM Frequency         | 7.6 Hz | 61 Hz | 122 Hz | 977 Hz | 3.9 kHz | 31.3 kHz | 125 kHz |
|-----------------------|--------|-------|--------|--------|---------|----------|---------|
| Timer Prescaler Ratio | 8      | 1     | 1      | 1      | 1       | 1        | 1       |
| Period Register Value | FFFFh  | FFFFh | 7FFFh  | 0FFFh  | 03FFh   | 007Fh    | 001Fh   |
| Resolution (bits)     | 16     | 16    | 15     | 12     | 10      | 7        | 5       |

**Note 1:** Based on  $F_{CY} = F_{OSC}/2$ ; Doze mode and PLL are disabled.

**TABLE 15-2: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS AT 16 MIPS ( $F_{CY} = 16$  MHz)<sup>(1)</sup>**

| PWM Frequency         | 30.5 Hz | 244 Hz | 488 Hz | 3.9 kHz | 15.6 kHz | 125 kHz | 500 kHz |
|-----------------------|---------|--------|--------|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| Timer Prescaler Ratio | 8       | 1      | 1      | 1       | 1        | 1       | 1       |
| Period Register Value | FFFFh   | FFFFh  | 7FFFh  | 0FFFh   | 03FFh    | 007Fh   | 001Fh   |
| Resolution (bits)     | 16      | 16     | 15     | 12      | 10       | 7       | 5       |

**Note 1:** Based on  $F_{CY} = F_{OSC}/2$ ; Doze mode and PLL are disabled.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 15-1: OCxCON1: OUTPUT COMPARE x CONTROL REGISTER 1

|        |     |        |         |         |         |                       |                       |
|--------|-----|--------|---------|---------|---------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 |
| —      | —   | OCSIDL | OCTSEL2 | OCTSEL1 | OCTSEL0 | ENFLT2 <sup>(2)</sup> | ENFLT1 <sup>(2)</sup> |
| bit 15 |     |        |         |         |         | bit 8                 |                       |

|                       |                         |                         |                         |          |                     |                     |                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| R/W-0                 | R/W-0, HSC              | R/W-0, HSC              | R/W-0, HSC              | R/W-0    | R/W-0               | R/W-0               | R/W-0               |
| ENFLT0 <sup>(2)</sup> | OCFLT2 <sup>(2,3)</sup> | OCFLT1 <sup>(2,4)</sup> | OCFLT0 <sup>(2,4)</sup> | TRIGMODE | OCM2 <sup>(1)</sup> | OCM1 <sup>(1)</sup> | OCM0 <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7                 |                         |                         |                         |          |                     |                     | bit 0               |

|                   |                                       |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit                      | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                      | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15-14     **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13     **OCSIDL:** Output Compare x Stop in Idle Mode Control bit  
             1 = Output Compare x halts in CPU Idle mode  
             0 = Output Compare x continues to operate in CPU Idle mode
- bit 12-10   **OCTSEL<2:0>:** Output Compare x Timer Select bits  
             111 = Peripheral clock (FCY)  
             110 = Reserved  
             101 = Reserved  
             100 = Timer1 clock (only synchronous clock is supported)  
             011 = Timer5 clock  
             010 = Timer4 clock  
             001 = Timer3 clock  
             000 = Timer2 clock
- bit 9     **ENFLT2:** Fault Input 2 Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
             1 = Fault 2 (Comparator 1/2/3 out) is enabled<sup>(3)</sup>  
             0 = Fault 2 is disabled
- bit 8     **ENFLT1:** Fault Input 1 Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
             1 = Fault 1 (OCFB pin) is enabled<sup>(4)</sup>  
             0 = Fault 1 is disabled
- bit 7     **ENFLT0:** Fault Input 0 Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
             1 = Fault 0 (OCFA pin) is enabled<sup>(4)</sup>  
             0 = Fault 0 is disabled
- bit 6     **OCFLT2:** Output Compare x PWM Fault 2 (Comparator 1/2/3) Condition Status bit<sup>(2,3)</sup>  
             1 = PWM Fault 2 has occurred  
             0 = No PWM Fault 2 has occurred
- bit 5     **OCFLT1:** Output Compare x PWM Fault 1 (OCFB pin) Condition Status bit<sup>(2,4)</sup>  
             1 = PWM Fault 1 has occurred  
             0 = No PWM Fault 1 has occurred

- Note 1:** The OCx output must also be configured to an available RPn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).
- 2:** The Fault input enable and Fault status bits are valid when OCM<2:0> = 111 or 110.
- 3:** The Comparator 1 output controls the OC1-OC2 channels; Comparator 2 output controls the OC3-OC4 channels; Comparator 3 output controls the OC5-OC6 channels.
- 4:** The OCFA/OCFB Fault input must also be configured to an available RPn/RPIn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 15-1: OCxCON1: OUTPUT COMPARE x CONTROL REGISTER 1 (CONTINUED)

- bit 4      **OCFLT0**: Output Compare x PWM Fault 0 (OCFA pin) Condition Status bit<sup>(2,4)</sup>  
1 = PWM Fault 0 has occurred  
0 = No PWM Fault 0 has occurred
- bit 3      **TRIGMODE**: Trigger Status Mode Select bit  
1 = TRIGSTAT (OCxCON2<6>) is cleared when OCxRS = OCxTMR or in software  
0 = TRIGSTAT is only cleared by software
- bit 2-0    **OCM<2:0>**: Output Compare x Mode Select bits<sup>(1)</sup>  
111 = Center-Aligned PWM mode on OCx<sup>(2)</sup>  
110 = Edge-Aligned PWM mode on OCx<sup>(2)</sup>  
101 = Double Compare Continuous Pulse mode: Initializes the OCx pin low; toggles the OCx state continuously on alternate matches of OCxR and OCxRS  
100 = Double Compare Single-Shot mode: Initializes the OCx pin low; toggles the OCx state on matches of OCxR and OCxRS for one cycle  
011 = Single Compare Continuous Pulse mode: Compare events continuously toggle the OCx pin  
010 = Single Compare Single-Shot mode: Initializes OCx pin high; compare event forces the OCx pin low  
001 = Single Compare Single-Shot mode: Initializes OCx pin low; compare event forces the OCx pin high  
000 = Output compare channel is disabled

**Note 1:** The OCx output must also be configured to an available RPn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).

**2:** The Fault input enable and Fault status bits are valid when OCM<2:0> = 111 or 110.

**3:** The Comparator 1 output controls the OC1-OC2 channels; Comparator 2 output controls the OC3-OC4 channels; Comparator 3 output controls the OC5-OC6 channels.

**4:** The OCFA/OCFB Fault input must also be configured to an available RPn/RPIn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 15-2: OCxCON2: OUTPUT COMPARE x CONTROL REGISTER 2

|        |        |          |       |     |                     |                     |       |
|--------|--------|----------|-------|-----|---------------------|---------------------|-------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0               | R/W-0               | R/W-0 |
| FLTMD  | FLTOUT | FLTTRIEN | OCINV | —   | DCB1 <sup>(3)</sup> | DCB0 <sup>(3)</sup> | OC32  |
| bit 15 |        |          |       |     |                     | bit 8               |       |

|        |           |        |          |          |          |          |          |
|--------|-----------|--------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0, HS | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-1    | R/W-1    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    |
| OCTRIG | TRIGSTAT  | OCTRIS | SYNCSEL4 | SYNCSEL3 | SYNCSEL2 | SYNCSEL1 | SYNCSEL0 |
| bit 7  |           |        |          |          |          | bit 0    |          |

|                   |                            |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HS = Hardware Settable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit           | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set           | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15 **FLTMD:** Fault Mode Select bit  
1 = Fault mode is maintained until the Fault source is removed and the corresponding OCFLT0 bit is cleared in software  
0 = Fault mode is maintained until the Fault source is removed and a new PWM period starts
- bit 14 **FLTOUT:** Fault Out bit  
1 = PWM output is driven high on a Fault  
0 = PWM output is driven low on a Fault
- bit 13 **FLTTRIEN:** Fault Output State Select bit  
1 = Pin is forced to an output on a Fault condition  
0 = Pin I/O condition is unaffected by a Fault
- bit 12 **OCINV:** Output Compare x Invert bit  
1 = OCx output is inverted  
0 = OCx output is not inverted
- bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10-9 **DCB<1:0>:** PWM Duty Cycle Least Significant bits<sup>(3)</sup>  
11 = Delays OCx falling edge by ¾ of the instruction cycle  
10 = Delays OCx falling edge by ½ of the instruction cycle  
01 = Delays OCx falling edge by ¼ of the instruction cycle  
00 = OCx falling edge occurs at the start of the instruction cycle
- bit 8 **OC32:** Cascade Two OC Modules Enable bit (32-bit operation)  
1 = Cascade module operation is enabled  
0 = Cascade module operation is disabled
- bit 7 **OCTRIG:** Output Compare x Trigger/Sync Select bit  
1 = Triggers OCx from the source designated by the SYNCSELx bits  
0 = Synchronizes OCx with the source designated by the SYNCSELx bits
- bit 6 **TRIGSTAT:** Timer Trigger Status bit  
1 = Timer source has been triggered and is running  
0 = Timer source has not been triggered and is being held clear
- bit 5 **OCTRIS:** Output Compare x Output Pin Direction Select bit  
1 = OCx pin is tri-stated  
0 = Output Compare Peripheral x is connected to an OCx pin

- Note 1:** Never use an OCx module as its own trigger source, either by selecting this mode or another equivalent SYNCSELx setting.
- 2:** Use these inputs as trigger sources only and never as sync sources.
- 3:** The DCB<1:0> bits are double-buffered in PWM modes only (OCM<2:0> (OCxCON1<2:0>) = 111, 110).

## REGISTER 15-2: OCxCON2: OUTPUT COMPARE x CONTROL REGISTER 2 (CONTINUED)

bit 4-0 **SYNCSEL<4:0>**: Trigger/Synchronization Source Selection bits

11111 = This OC module<sup>(1)</sup>  
11110 = OCTRIG1 external input  
11101 = OCTRIG2 external input  
11100 = CTMU<sup>(2)</sup>  
11011 = A/D<sup>(2)</sup>  
11010 = Comparator 3<sup>(2)</sup>  
11001 = Comparator 2<sup>(2)</sup>  
11000 = Comparator 1<sup>(2)</sup>  
10111 = Reserved  
10110 = Reserved  
10101 = Input Capture 6<sup>(2)</sup>  
10100 = Input Capture 5<sup>(2)</sup>  
10011 = Input Capture 4<sup>(2)</sup>  
10010 = Input Capture 3<sup>(2)</sup>  
10001 = Input Capture 2<sup>(2)</sup>  
10000 = Input Capture 1<sup>(2)</sup>  
01111 = Timer5  
01110 = Timer4  
01101 = Timer3  
01100 = Timer2  
01011 = Timer1  
01010 = Reserved  
01001 = Reserved  
01000 = Reserved  
00111 = Reserved  
00110 = Output Compare 6<sup>(1)</sup>  
00101 = Output Compare 5<sup>(1)</sup>  
00100 = Output Compare 4<sup>(1)</sup>  
00011 = Output Compare 3<sup>(1)</sup>  
00010 = Output Compare 2<sup>(1)</sup>  
00001 = Output Compare 1<sup>(1)</sup>  
00000 = Not synchronized to any other module

- Note 1:** Never use an OCx module as its own trigger source, either by selecting this mode or another equivalent SYNCSELx setting.
- 2:** Use these inputs as trigger sources only and never as sync sources.
- 3:** The DCB<1:0> bits are double-buffered in PWM modes only (OCM<2:0> (OCxCON1<2:0>) = 111, 110).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

## 16.0 SERIAL PERIPHERAL INTERFACE (SPI)

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of the PIC24FJ128GB204 family of devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. To complement the information in this data sheet, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) with Audio Codec Support” (DS70005136) which is available from the Microchip web site ([www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com)).

The Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) module is a synchronous serial interface useful for communicating with other peripheral or microcontroller devices. These peripheral devices may be serial EEPROMs, shift registers, display drivers, A/D Converters, etc. The SPI module is compatible with the Motorola® SPI and SIOP interfaces. All devices in the PIC24FJ128GB204 family include three SPI modules.

The module supports operation in two Buffer modes. In Standard Buffer mode, data is shifted through a single serial buffer. In Enhanced Buffer mode, data is shifted through a FIFO buffer. The FIFO level depends on the configured mode.

Variable length data can be transmitted and received, from 2 to 32 bits.

**Note:** Do not perform Read-Modify-Write operations (such as bit-oriented instructions) on the SPIxBUF register in either Standard or Enhanced Buffer mode.

The module also supports a basic framed SPI protocol while operating in either Master or Slave mode. A total of four framed SPI configurations are supported.

The module also supports Audio modes. Four different Audio modes are available.

- I<sup>2</sup>S mode
- Left Justified
- Right Justified
- PCM/DSP

In each of these modes, the serial clock is free-running and audio data is always transferred.

If an audio protocol data transfer takes place between two devices, then usually one device is the master and the other is the slave. However, audio data can be transferred between two slaves. Because the audio protocols require free-running clocks, the master can be a third party controller. In either case, the master generates two free-running clocks: SCKx and LRC (Left, Right Channel Clock/SSx/FSYNC).

The SPI serial interface consists of four pins:

- SDIx: Serial Data Input
- SDOx: Serial Data Output
- SCKx: Shift Clock Input or Output
- SSx: Active-Low Slave Select or Frame Synchronization I/O Pulse

The SPI module can be configured to operate using 2, 3 or 4 pins. In the 3-pin mode, SSx is not used. In the 2-pin mode, both SDOx and SSx are not used.

The SPI module has the ability to generate three interrupts, reflecting the events that occur during the data communication. The following types of interrupts can be generated:

1. Receive interrupts are signalled by SPIxRXIF. This event occurs when:
  - RX watermark interrupt
  - SPIROV = 1
  - SPIRBF = 1
  - SPIRBE = 1

provided the respective mask bits are enabled in SPIxIMSKL/H.

2. Transmit interrupts are signalled by SPIxTXIF. This event occurs when:
  - TX watermark interrupt
  - SPITUR = 1
  - SPITBF = 1
  - SPITBE = 1

provided the respective mask bits are enabled in SPIxIMSKL/H.

3. General interrupts are signalled by SPIxIF. This event occurs when
  - FRMERR = 1
  - SPIBUSY = 1
  - SRMT = 1

provided the respective mask bits are enabled in SPIxIMSKL/H.

Block diagrams of the module in Standard and Enhanced modes are shown in [Figure 16-1](#) and [Figure 16-2](#).

**Note:** In this section, the SPI modules are referred to together as SPIx, or separately as SPI1, SPI2 or SPI3. Special Function Registers will follow a similar notation. For example, SPIxCON1L and SPIxCON1H refer to the control registers for any of the three SPI modules.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 16.1 Standard Master Mode

To set up the SPIx module for the Standard Master mode of operation:

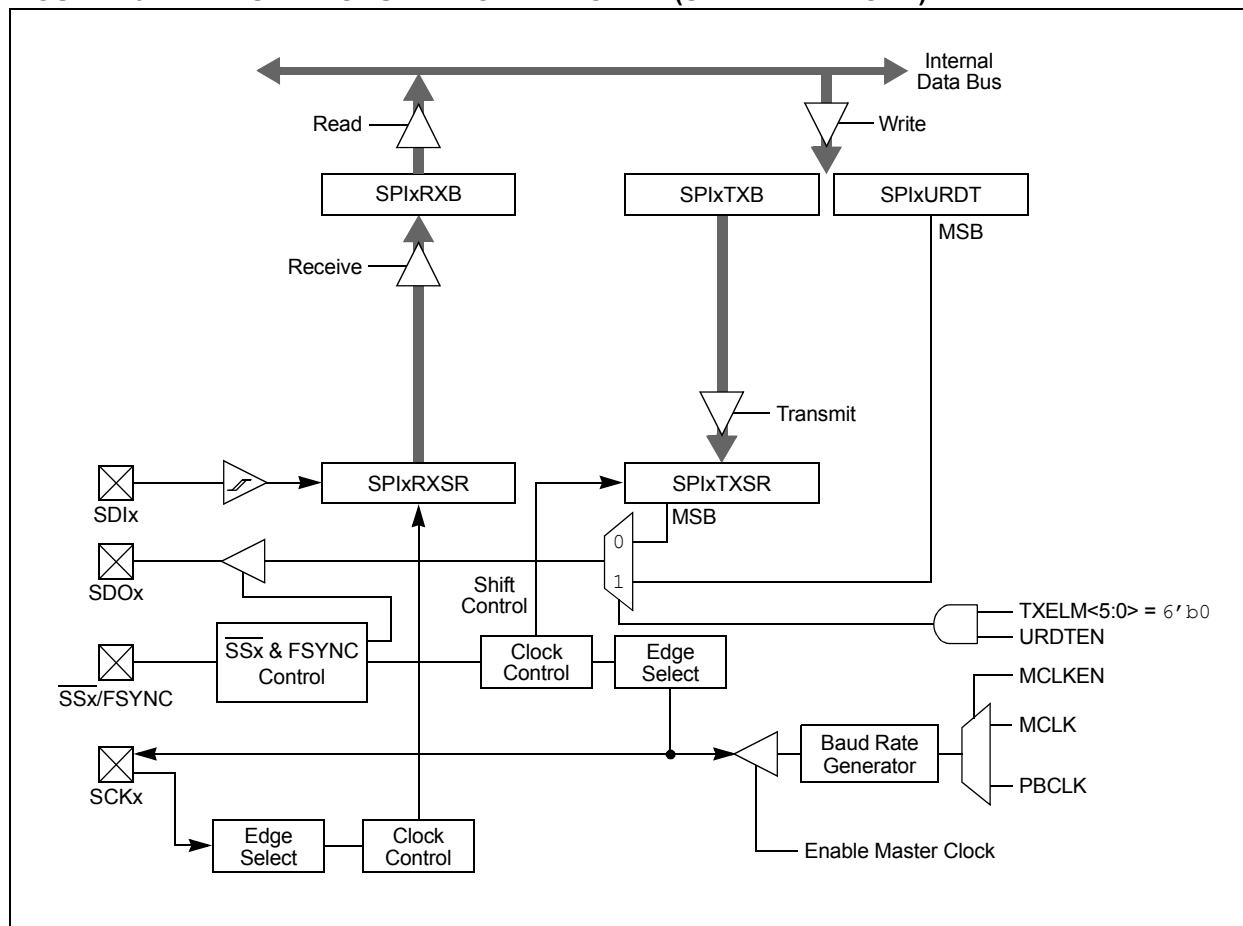
1. If using interrupts:
  - a) Clear the interrupt flag bits in the respective IFSx register.
  - b) Set the interrupt enable bits in the respective IECx register.
  - c) Write the SPIxIP<2:0> bits in the respective IPCx register to set the interrupt priority.
2. Write the desired settings to the SPIxCON1L and SPIxCON1H registers with the MSTEN bit (SPIxCON1L<5>) = 1.
3. Clear the SPIROV bit (SPIxSTATL<6>).
4. Enable SPIx operation by setting the SPIEN bit (SPIxCON1L<15>).
5. Write the data to be transmitted to the SPIxBUFL and SPIxBUFH registers. Transmission (and reception) will start as soon as data is written to the SPIxBUFL and SPIxBUFH registers.

## 16.2 Standard Slave Mode

To set up the SPIx module for the Standard Slave mode of operation:

1. Clear the SPIxBUF registers.
2. If using interrupts:
  - a) Clear the SPIxBUFL and SPIxBUFH registers.
  - b) Set the interrupt enable bits in the respective IECx register.
  - c) Write the SPIxIP<2:0> bits in the respective IPCx register to set the interrupt priority.
3. Write the desired settings to the SPIxCON1L, SPIxCON1H and SPIxCON2L registers with the MSTEN bit (SPIxCON1L<5>) = 0.
4. Clear the SMP bit.
5. If the CKE bit (SPIxCON1L<8>) is set, then the SSEN bit (SPIxCON1L<7>) must be set to enable the SSx pin.
6. Clear the SPIROV bit (SPIxSTATL<6>).
7. Enable SPIx operation by setting the SPIEN bit (SPIxCON1L<15>).

**FIGURE 16-1: SPIx MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM (STANDARD MODE)**



## 16.3 Enhanced Slave Mode

To set up the SPIx module for the Enhanced Buffer Master mode of operation:

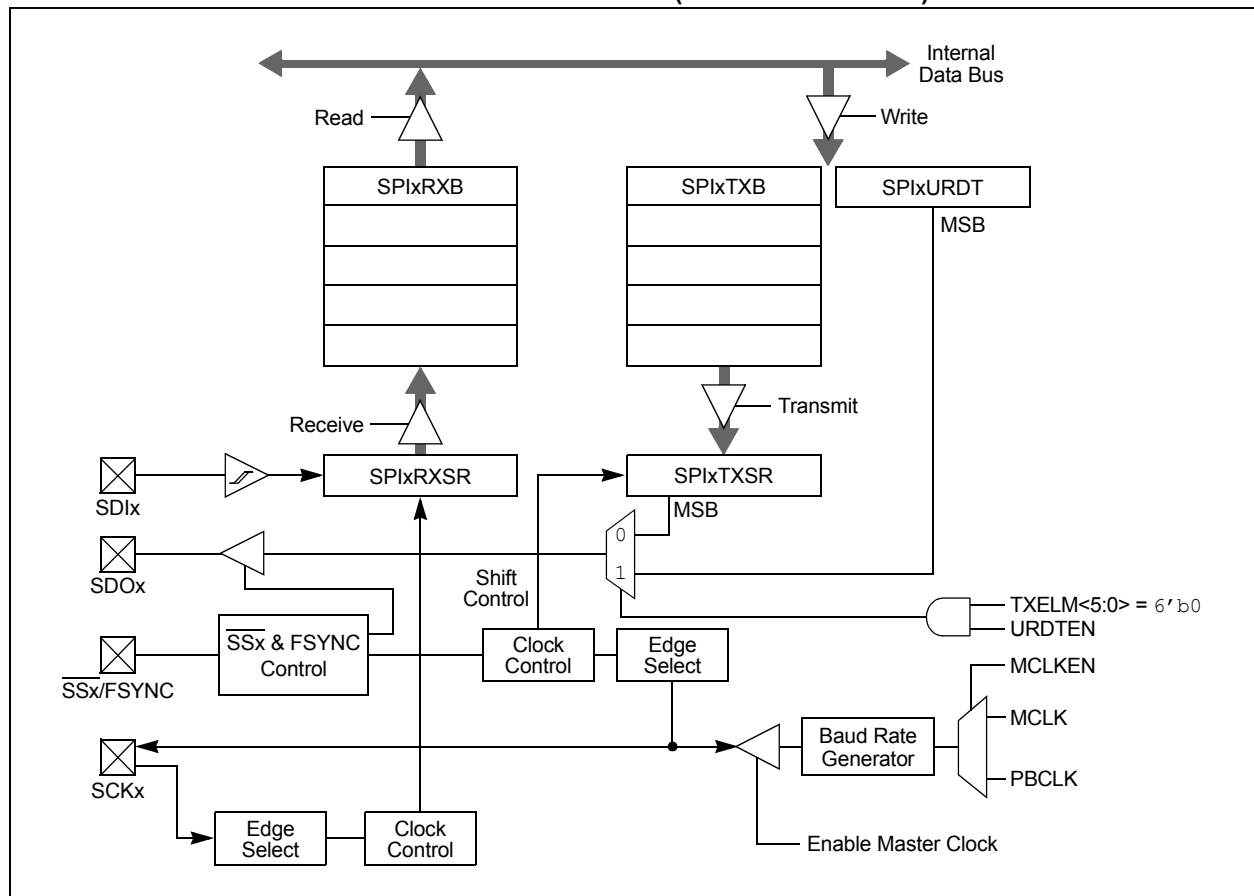
- If using interrupts:
  - Clear the interrupt flag bits in the respective IFSx register.
  - Set the interrupt enable bits in the respective IECx register.
  - Write the SPIxIP<2:0> bits in the respective IPCx register.
- Write the desired settings to the SPIxCON1L, SPIxCON1H and SPIxCON2L registers with MSTEN (SPIxCON1L<5>) = 1.
- Clear the SPIROV bit (SPIxSTATL<6>).
- Select Enhanced Buffer mode by setting the ENHBUF bit (SPIxCON1L<0>).
- Enable SPIx operation by setting the SPIEN bit (SPIxCON1L<15>).
- Write the data to be transmitted to the SPIxBUFL and SPIxBUFH registers. Transmission (and reception) will start as soon as data is written to the SPIxBUFL and SPIxBUFH registers.

## 16.4 Enhanced Master Mode

To set up the SPIx module for the Enhanced Buffer Slave mode of operation:

- Clear the SPIxBUFL and SPIxBUFH registers.
- If using interrupts:
  - Clear the interrupt flag bits in the respective IFSx register.
  - Set the interrupt enable bits in the respective IECx register.
  - Write the SPIxIP<2:0> bits in the respective IPCx register to set the interrupt priority.
- Write the desired settings to the SPIxCON1L, SPIxCON1H and SPIxCON2L registers with the MSTEN bit (SPIxCON1L<5>) = 0.
- Clear the SMP bit.
- If the CKE bit is set, then the SSxEN bit must be set, thus enabling the SSx pin.
- Clear the SPIROV bit (SPIxSTATL<6>).
- Select Enhanced Buffer mode by setting the ENHBUF bit (SPIxCON1L<0>).
- Enable SPIx operation by setting the SPIEN bit (SPIxCON1L<15>).

**FIGURE 16-2: SPIx MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM (ENHANCED MODE)**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## 16.5 Audio Mode

To set up the SPIx module for the Audio mode:

1. Clear the SPIxBUFL and SPIxBUFH registers.
2. If using interrupts:
  - a) Clear the interrupt flag bits in the respective IFSx register.
  - b) Set the interrupt enable bits in the respective IECx register.
  - a) Write the SPIxIP<2:0> bits in the respective IPCx register to set the interrupt priority.
3. Write the desired settings to the SPIxCON1L, SPIxCON1H and SPIxCON2L registers with AUDEN (SPIxCON1H<15>) = 1.
4. Clear the SPIROV bit (SPIxSTATL<6>).
5. Enable SPIx operation by setting the SPIEN bit (SPIxCON1L<15>).
6. Write the data to be transmitted to the SPIxBUFL and SPIxBUFH registers. Transmission (and reception) will start as soon as data is written to the SPIxBUFL and SPIxBUFH registers.

## 16.6 Registers

The SPI module consists of the following Special Function Registers (SFRs):

- SPIxCON1L, SPIxCON1H and SPIxCON2L: SPIx Control Registers ([Register 16-1](#) through [Register 16-3](#))
- SPIxSTATL and SPIxSTATH: SPIx Status Registers ([Register 16-4](#) and [Register 16-5](#))
- SPIxBUFL and SPIxBUFH: SPIx Buffer Registers
- SPIxBRGL: SPIx Baud Rate Register
- SPIxIMSKL and SPIxIMSKH: SPIx Interrupt Mask Registers ([Register 16-6](#) and [Register 16-7](#))
- SPIxURDTL and SPIxURDTH: SPIx Underrun Data Registers

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 16-1: SPIxCON1L: SPIx CONTROL REGISTER 1 LOW

|        |     |         |        |                         |                         |       |                    |
|--------|-----|---------|--------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------|--------------------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0  | R/W-0                   | R/W-0                   | R/W-0 | R/W-0              |
| SPIEN  | —   | SPISIDL | DISSDO | MODE32 <sup>(1,4)</sup> | MODE16 <sup>(1,4)</sup> | SMP   | CKE <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 15 |     |         |        |                         |                         |       | bit 8              |

|                     |       |       |        |        |                       |       |        |
|---------------------|-------|-------|--------|--------|-----------------------|-------|--------|
| R/W-0               | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0                 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  |
| SSEN <sup>(2)</sup> | CKP   | MSTEN | DISSDI | DISSCK | MCLKEN <sup>(3)</sup> | SPIFE | ENHBUF |
| bit 7               |       |       |        |        |                       |       | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15 **SPIEN:** SPIx On bit  
 1 = Enables module  
 0 = Turns off and resets module, disables clocks, disables interrupt event generation, allows SFR modifications
- bit 14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13 **SPISIDL:** SPIx Stop in Idle Mode bit  
 1 = Halts in CPU Idle mode  
 0 = Continues to operate in CPU Idle mode
- bit 12 **DISSDO:** Disable SDOx Output Port bit  
 1 = SDOx pin is not used by the module; pin is controlled by the port function  
 0 = SDOx pin is controlled by the module
- bit 11-10 **MODE<32,16>:** Serial Word Length bits<sup>(1,4)</sup>  
AUDEN = 0:
- | MODE32 | MODE16 | COMMUNICATION |
|--------|--------|---------------|
| 1      | x      | 32-Bit        |
| 0      | 1      | 16-Bit        |
| 0      | 0      | 8-Bit         |
- AUDEN = 1:
- | MODE32 | MODE16 | COMMUNICATION   |
|--------|--------|---|
| 1      | 1      | 24-Bit Data, 32-Bit FIFO, 32-Bit Channel/64-Bit Frame |
| 1      | 0      | 32-Bit Data, 32-Bit FIFO, 32-Bit Channel/64-Bit Frame |
| 0      | 1      | 16-Bit Data, 16-Bit FIFO, 32-Bit Channel/64-Bit Frame |
| 0      | 0      | 16-Bit Data, 16-Bit FIFO, 16-Bit Channel/32-Bit Frame |
- bit 9 **SMP:** SPIx Data Input Sample Phase bit  
Master Mode:  
 1 = Input data is sampled at the end of data output time  
 0 = Input data is sampled at the middle of data output time  
Slave Mode:  
 Input data is always sampled at the middle of data output time, regardless of the SMP bit setting.
- bit 8 **CKE:** SPIx Clock Edge Select bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = Transmit happens on transition from active clock state to Idle clock state  
 0 = Transmit happens on transition from Idle clock state to active clock state

**Note 1:** When AUDEN = 1, this module functions as if CKE = 0, regardless of its actual value.

**2:** When FRMEN = 1, SSEN is not used.

**3:** MCLKEN can only be written when the SPIEN bit = 0.

**4:** This channel is not meaningful for DSP/PCM mode as LRC follows FRMSYPW.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 16-1: SPIxCON1L: SPIx CONTROL REGISTER 1 LOW (CONTINUED)

|       |   |
|-------|---|
| bit 7 | <b>SSEN:</b> Slave Select Enable bit (Slave mode) <sup>(2)</sup><br>1 = $\overline{SSx}$ pin is used by the macro in Slave mode; $\overline{SSx}$ pin is used as the slave select input<br>0 = $\overline{SSx}$ pin is not used by the macro ( $\overline{SSx}$ pin will be controlled by the port I/O) |
| bit 6 | <b>CKP:</b> Clock Polarity Select bit<br>1 = Idle state for clock is a high level; active state is a low level<br>0 = Idle state for clock is a low level; active state is a high level   |
| bit 5 | <b>MSTEN:</b> Master Mode Enable bit<br>1 = Master mode<br>0 = Slave mode   |
| bit 4 | <b>DISSDI:</b> Disable SDIx Input Port bit<br>1 = SDIx pin is not used by the module; pin is controlled by the port function<br>0 = SDIx pin is controlled by the module  |
| bit 3 | <b>DISSCK:</b> Disable SCKx Output Port bit<br>1 = SCKx pin is not used by the module; pin is controlled by the port function<br>0 = SCKx pin is controlled by the module   |
| bit 2 | <b>MCLKEN:</b> Master Clock Enable bit <sup>(3)</sup><br>1 = MCLK is used by the BRG<br>0 = PBCLK is used by the BRG  |
| bit 1 | <b>SPIFE:</b> Frame Sync Pulse Edge Select bit<br>1 = Frame Sync pulse (Idle-to-active edge) coincides with the first bit clock<br>0 = Frame Sync pulse (Idle-to-active edge) precedes the first bit clock  |
| bit 0 | <b>ENHBUF:</b> Enhanced Buffer Mode Enable bit<br>1 = Enhanced Buffer mode is enabled<br>0 = Enhanced Buffer mode is disabled   |

**Note 1:** When AUDEN = 1, this module functions as if CKE = 0, regardless of its actual value.

**2:** When FRMEN = 1, SSEN is not used.

**3:** MCLKEN can only be written when the SPIEN bit = 0.

**4:** This channel is not meaningful for DSP/PCM mode as LRC follows FRMSYPW.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 16-2: SPIxCON1H: SPIx CONTROL REGISTER 1 HIGH

| R/W-0                | R/W-0     | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  |
|----------------------|-----------|--------|--------|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| AUDEN <sup>(1)</sup> | SPISGNEXT | IGNROV | IGNTUR | AUDMONO <sup>(2)</sup> | URDTEN <sup>(3)</sup> | AUDMOD1 <sup>(4)</sup> | AUDMOD0 <sup>(4)</sup> |
| bit 15               |           |        |        |                        |                       | bit 8                  |                        |

| R/W-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
|-------|---------|--------|-------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| FRMEN | FRMSYNC | FRMPOL | MSEN  | FRMSYPW | FRMCNT2 | FRMCNT1 | FRMCNT0 |
| bit 7 |         |        |       |         |         | bit 0   |         |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15 **AUDEN:** Audio Codec Support Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = Audio protocol is enabled; MSTEN controls the direction of both SCKx and Frame (a.k.a. LRC), and this module functions as if FRMEN = 1, FRMSYNC = MSTEN, FRMCNT<2:0> = 001 and SMP = 0, regardless of their actual values  
 0 = Audio protocol is disabled
- bit 14 **SPISGNEXT:** SPIx Sign-Extend RX FIFO Read Data Enable bit  
 1 = Data from RX FIFO is sign-extended  
 0 = Data from RX FIFO is not sign-extended
- bit 13 **IGNROV:** Ignore Receive Overflow bit  
 1 = A Receive Overflow (ROV) is NOT a critical error; during ROV, data in the FIFO is not overwritten by the receive data  
 0 = A ROV is a critical error that stops SPI operation
- bit 12 **IGNTUR:** Ignore Transmit Underrun bit  
 1 = A Transmit Underrun (TUR) is NOT a critical error and data indicated by URDTEN is transmitted until the SPIxTXB is not empty  
 0 = A TUR is a critical error that stops SPI operation
- bit 11 **AUDMONO:** Audio Data Format Transmit bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
 1 = Audio data is mono (i.e., each data word is transmitted on both left and right channels)  
 0 = Audio data is stereo
- bit 10 **URDTEN:** Transmit Underrun Data Enable bit<sup>(3)</sup>  
 1 = Transmits data out of SPIxURDTL/H registers during Transmit Underrun (TUR) conditions  
 0 = Transmits the last received data during Transmit Underrun conditions
- bit 9-8 **AUDMOD<1:0>:** Audio Protocol Mode Selection bits<sup>(4)</sup>  
 11 = PCM/DSP mode  
 10 = Right Justified mode: This module functions as if SPIFE = 1, regardless of its actual value  
 01 = Left Justified mode: This module functions as if SPIFE = 1, regardless of its actual value  
 00 = I<sup>2</sup>S mode: This module functions as if SPIFE = 0, regardless of its actual value
- bit 7 **FRMEN:** Framed SPIx Support bit  
 1 = Framed SPIx support is enabled ( $\overline{\text{SSx}}$  pin is used as the FSYNC input/output)  
 0 = Framed SPIx support is disabled

**Note 1:** AUDEN can only be written when the SPIEN bit = 0.

**2:** AUDMONO can only be written when the SPIEN bit = 0 and is only valid for AUDEN = 1.

**3:** URDTEN is only valid when IGNTUR = 1.

**4:** AUDMOD<1:0> can only be written when the SPIEN bit = 0 and are only valid when AUDEN = 1. When NOT in PCM/DSP mode, this module functions as if FRMSYPW = 1, regardless of its actual value.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 16-2: SPIxCON1H: SPIx CONTROL REGISTER 1 HIGH (CONTINUED)

- bit 6      **FRMSYNC**: Frame Sync Pulse Direction Control bit  
1 = Frame Sync pulse input (slave)  
0 = Frame Sync pulse output (master)
- bit 5      **FRMPOL**: Frame Sync/Slave Select Polarity bit  
1 = Frame Sync pulse/slave select is active-high  
0 = Frame Sync pulse/slave select is active-low
- bit 4      **MSEN**: Master Mode Slave Select Enable bit  
1 = SPIx slave select support is enabled with polarity determined by FRMPOL ( $\overline{SSx}$  pin is automatically driven during transmission in Master mode)  
0 = SPIx slave select support is disabled ( $\overline{SSx}$  pin will be controlled by port I/O)
- bit 3      **FRMSYPW**: Frame Sync Pulse-Width bit  
1 = Frame Sync pulse is one serial word length wide (as defined by MODE<32,16>/WLENGTH<4:0>)  
0 = Frame Sync pulse is one clock (SCK) wide
- bit 2-0    **FRMCNT<2:0>**: Frame Sync Pulse Counter bits  
Controls the number of serial words transmitted per Sync pulse.  
111 = Reserved  
110 = Reserved  
101 = Generates a Frame Sync pulse on every 32 serial words  
100 = Generates a Frame Sync pulse on every 16 serial words  
011 = Generates a Frame Sync pulse on every 8 serial words  
010 = Generates a Frame Sync pulse on every 4 serial words  
001 = Generates a Frame Sync pulse on every 2 serial words (value used by audio protocols)  
000 = Generates a Frame Sync pulse on each serial word

- Note 1:** AUDEN can only be written when the SPIEN bit = 0.  
**2:** AUDMONO can only be written when the SPIEN bit = 0 and is only valid for AUDEN = 1.  
**3:** URDTEN is only valid when IGNTUR = 1.  
**4:** AUDMOD<1:0> can only be written when the SPIEN bit = 0 and are only valid when AUDEN = 1. When NOT in PCM/DSP mode, this module functions as if FRMSYPW = 1, regardless of its actual value.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 16-3: SPIxCON2L: SPIx CONTROL REGISTER 2 LOW**

|        |     |     |                               |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-------------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0                           | U-0   | U-0   | U-0   | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —                             | —     | —     | —     | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |                               |       |       |       | bit 8 |
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                         | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | WLENGTH<4:0> <sup>(1,2)</sup> |       |       |       |       |
| bit 7  |     |     |                               |       |       |       | bit 0 |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-0 **WLENGTH<4:0>:** Variable Word Length bits<sup>(1,2)</sup>

11111 = 32-bit data  
 11110 = 31-bit data  
 11101 = 30-bit data  
 11100 = 29-bit data  
 11011 = 28-bit data  
 11010 = 27-bit data  
 11001 = 26-bit data  
 11000 = 25-bit data  
 10111 = 24-bit data  
 10110 = 23-bit data  
 10101 = 22-bit data  
 10100 = 21-bit data  
 10011 = 20-bit data  
 10010 = 19-bit data  
 10001 = 18-bit data  
 10000 = 17-bit data  
 01111 = 16-bit data  
 01110 = 15-bit data  
 01101 = 14-bit data  
 01100 = 13-bit data  
 01011 = 12-bit data  
 01010 = 11-bit data  
 01001 = 10-bit data  
 01000 = 9-bit data  
 00111 = 8-bit data  
 00110 = 7-bit data  
 00101 = 6-bit data  
 00100 = 5-bit data  
 00011 = 4-bit data  
 00010 = 3-bit data  
 00001 = 2-bit data  
 00000 = See MODE<32,16> bits in SPIxCON1L<11:10>

**Note 1:** These bits are effective when AUDEN = 0 only.

**2:** Varying the length by changing these bits does not affect the depth of the TX/RX FIFO.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 16-4: SPIxSTATL: SPIx STATUS REGISTER LOW**

|        |     |     |           |          |     |     |                       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----------|----------|-----|-----|-----------------------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | R/C-0, HS | R-0, HSC | U-0 | U-0 | R-0, HSC              |
| —      | —   | —   | FRMERR    | SPIBUSY  | —   | —   | SPITUR <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 15 |     |     |           |          |     |     | bit 8                 |

|          |           |          |     |          |     |          |          |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----|----------|-----|----------|----------|
| R-0, HSC | R/C-0, HS | R-1, HSC | U-0 | R-1, HSC | U-0 | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC |
| SRMT     | SPIROV    | SPIRBE   | —   | SPITBE   | —   | SPITBF   | SPIRBF   |
| bit 7    |           |          |     |          |     |          | bit 0    |

|                   |                    |                                       |
|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | C = Clearable bit  | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |
| R = Readable bit  | x = Bit is unknown | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set   | '0' = Bit is cleared                  |
|                   |                    | HS = Hardware Settable bit            |

- bit 15-13 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 12 **FRMERR:** SPIx Frame Error Status bit  
 1 = Frame error is detected  
 0 = No frame error is detected
- bit 11 **SPIBUSY:** SPIx Activity Status bit  
 1 = Module is currently busy with some transactions  
 0 = No ongoing transactions (at time of read)
- bit 10-9 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 8 **SPITUR:** SPIx Transmit Underrun (TUR) Status bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = Transmit buffer has encountered a Transmit Underrun condition  
 0 = Transmit buffer does not have a Transmit Underrun condition
- bit 7 **SRMT:** Shift Register Empty Status bit  
 1 = No current or pending transactions (i.e., neither SPIxTXB or SPIxTXSR contains data to transmit)  
 0 = Current or pending transactions
- bit 6 **SPIROV:** SPIx Receive Overflow (ROV) Status bit  
 1 = A new byte/half-word/word has been completely received when the SPIxRXB was full  
 0 = No overflow
- bit 5 **SPIRBE:** SPIx RX Buffer Empty Status bit  
 1 = RX buffer is empty  
 0 = RX buffer is not empty  
**Standard Buffer Mode:**  
 Automatically set in hardware when SPIxBUF is read from, reading SPIxRXB. Automatically cleared in hardware when SPIx transfers data from SPIxRXSR to SPIxRXB.  
**Enhanced Buffer Mode:**  
 Indicates RXELM<5:0> = 6'b000000.
- bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 3 **SPITBE:** SPIx Transmit Buffer Empty Status bit  
 1 = SPIxTXB is empty  
 0 = SPIxTXB is not empty  
**Standard Buffer Mode:**  
 Automatically set in hardware when SPIx transfers data from SPIxTXB to SPIxTXSR. Automatically cleared in hardware when SPIxBUF is written, loading SPIxTXB.  
**Enhanced Buffer Mode:**  
 Indicates TXELM<5:0> = 6'b000000.

**Note 1:** SPITUR is cleared when SPIEN = 0. When IGNTUR = 1, SPITUR provides dynamic status of the underrun condition, but does not stop RX/TX operation and does not need to be cleared by software.

## REGISTER 16-4: SPIxSTATL: SPIx STATUS REGISTER LOW (CONTINUED)

bit 2        **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1        **SPITBF:** SPIx Transmit Buffer Full Status bit

1 = SPIxTXB is full

0 = SPIxTXB not full

Standard Buffer Mode:

Automatically set in hardware when SPIxBUF is written, loading SPIxTXB. Automatically cleared in hardware when SPIx transfers data from SPIxTXB to SPIxTXSR.

Enhanced Buffer Mode:

Indicates TXELM<5:0> = 6'b111111.

bit 0        **SPIRBF:** SPIx Receive Buffer Full Status bit

1 = SPIxRXB is full

0 = SPIxRXB is not full

Standard Buffer Mode:

Automatically set in hardware when SPIx transfers data from SPIxRXSR to SPIxRXB. Automatically cleared in hardware when SPIxBUF is read from, reading SPIxRXB.

Enhanced Buffer Mode:

Indicates RXELM<5:0> = 6'b111111.

**Note 1:** SPITUR is cleared when SPIEN = 0. When IGNTUR = 1, SPITUR provides dynamic status of the underrun condition, but does not stop RX/TX operation and does not need to be cleared by software.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 16-5: SPIxSTATH: SPIx STATUS REGISTER HIGH

|        |     |                       |                       |                       |          |          |          |
|--------|-----|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------|----------|----------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R-0, HSC              | R-0, HSC              | R-0, HSC              | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC |
| —      | —   | RXELM5 <sup>(3)</sup> | RXELM4 <sup>(2)</sup> | RXELM3 <sup>(1)</sup> | RXELM2   | RXELM1   | RXELM0   |
| bit 15 |     |                       |                       |                       |          |          | bit 8    |

|       |     |                       |                       |                       |          |          |          |
|-------|-----|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------|----------|----------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R-0, HSC              | R-0, HSC              | R-0, HSC              | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC |
| —     | —   | TXELM5 <sup>(3)</sup> | TXELM4 <sup>(2)</sup> | TXELM3 <sup>(1)</sup> | TXELM2   | TXELM1   | TXELM0   |
| bit 7 |     |                       |                       |                       |          |          | bit 0    |

|                   |                                       |  |                                    |  |                    |  |  |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|--|--------------------|--|--|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |  |                                    |  |                    |  |  |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit                      |  | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |  |                    |  |  |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                      |  | '0' = Bit is cleared               |  | x = Bit is unknown |  |  |

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13-8 **RXELM<5:0>:** Receive Buffer Element Count bits (valid in Enhanced Buffer mode)<sup>(1,2,3)</sup>

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **TXELM<5:0>:** Transmit Buffer Element Count bits (valid in Enhanced Buffer mode)<sup>(1,2,3)</sup>

- Note 1:** RXELM3 and TXELM3 bits are only present when FIFODEPTH = 8 or higher.  
**2:** RXELM4 and TXELM4 bits are only present when FIFODEPTH = 16 or higher.  
**3:** RXELM5 and TXELM5 bits are only present when FIFODEPTH = 32.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 16-6: SPIxIMSKL: SPIx INTERRUPT MASK REGISTER LOW

|        |     |     |          |        |     |       |          |
|--------|-----|-----|----------|--------|-----|-------|----------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0    | R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0   | R/W-0    |
| —      | —   | —   | FRMERREN | BUSYEN | —   | —     | SPITUREN |
| bit 15 |     |     |          |        |     | bit 8 |          |

|        |          |         |     |         |     |          |          |
|--------|----------|---------|-----|---------|-----|----------|----------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-0   | U-0 | R/W-0   | U-0 | R/W-0    | R/W-0    |
| SRMTEN | SPIROVEN | SPIRBEN | —   | SPITBEN | —   | SPITBFEN | SPIRBFEN |
| bit 7  |          |         |     |         |     | bit 0    |          |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-13 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 12 **FRMERREN:** Enable Interrupt Events via FRMERR bit  
 1 = Frame error generates an interrupt event  
 0 = Frame error does not generate an interrupt event
- bit 11 **BUSYEN:** Enable Interrupt Events via SPIBUSY bit  
 1 = SPIBUSY generates an interrupt event  
 0 = SPIBUSY does not generate an interrupt event
- bit 10-9 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 8 **SPITUREN:** Enable Interrupt Events via SPITUR bit  
 1 = Transmit Underrun (TUR) generates an interrupt event  
 0 = Transmit Underrun does not generate an interrupt event
- bit 7 **SRMTEN:** Enable Interrupt Events via SRMT bit  
 1 = Shift Register Empty (SRMT) generates an interrupt events  
 0 = Shift Register Empty does not generate an interrupt events
- bit 6 **SPIROVEN:** Enable Interrupt Events via SPIROV bit  
 1 = SPIx receive overflow generates an interrupt event  
 0 = SPIx receive overflow does not generate an interrupt event
- bit 5 **SPIRBEN:** Enable Interrupt Events via SPIRBE bit  
 1 = SPIx RX buffer empty generates an interrupt event  
 0 = SPIx RX buffer empty does not generate an interrupt event
- bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 3 **SPITBEN:** Enable Interrupt Events via SPITBE bit  
 1 = SPIx transmit buffer empty generates an interrupt event  
 0 = SPIx transmit buffer empty does not generate an interrupt event
- bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 1 **SPITBFEN:** Enable Interrupt Events via SPITBF bit  
 1 = SPIx transmit buffer full generates an interrupt event  
 0 = SPIx transmit buffer full does not generate an interrupt event
- bit 0 **SPIRBFEN:** Enable Interrupt Events via SPIRBF bit  
 1 = SPIx receive buffer full generates an interrupt event  
 0 = SPIx receive buffer full does not generate an interrupt event

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 16-7: SPIxIMSKH: SPIx INTERRUPT MASK REGISTER HIGH

| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                   | R/W-0                   | R/W-0                   | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 |
|--------|-----|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| RXWIEN | —   | RXMSK5 <sup>(1)</sup> | RXMSK4 <sup>(1,4)</sup> | RXMSK3 <sup>(1,3)</sup> | RXMSK2 <sup>(1,2)</sup> | RXMSK1 <sup>(1)</sup> | RXMSK0 <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 15 |     |                       |                         |                         |                         |                       | bit 8                 |

| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                   | R/W-0                   | R/W-0                   | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 |
|--------|-----|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| TXWIEN | —   | TXMSK5 <sup>(1)</sup> | TXMSK4 <sup>(1,4)</sup> | TXMSK3 <sup>(1,3)</sup> | TXMSK2 <sup>(1,2)</sup> | TXMSK1 <sup>(1)</sup> | TXMSK0 <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7  |     |                       |                         |                         |                         |                       | bit 0                 |

### Legend:

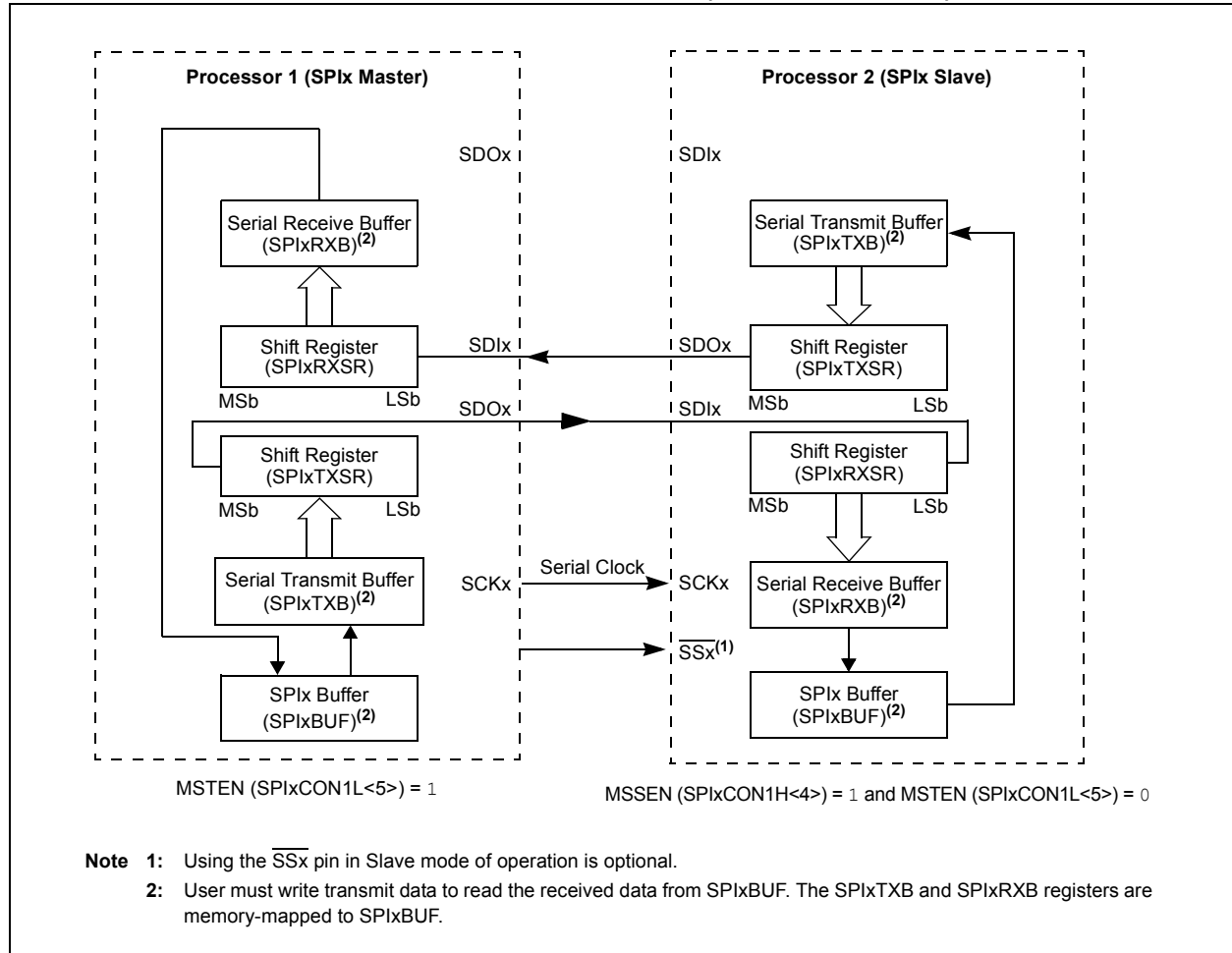
R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **RXWIEN:** Receive Watermark Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Triggers receive buffer element watermark interrupt when RXMSK<5:0> ≤ RXELM<5:0>  
             0 = Disables receive buffer element watermark interrupt
- bit 14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13-8      **RXMSK<5:0>:** RX Buffer Mask bits<sup>(1,2,3,4)</sup>  
             RX mask bits; used in conjunction with the RXWIEN bit.
- bit 7      **TXWIEN:** Transmit Watermark Interrupt Enable bit  
             1 = Triggers transmit buffer element watermark interrupt when TXMSK<5:0> = TXELM<5:0>  
             0 = Disables transmit buffer element watermark interrupt
- bit 6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5-0      **TXMSK<5:0>:** TX Buffer Mask bits<sup>(1,2,3,4)</sup>  
             TX mask bits; used in conjunction with the TXWIEN bit.

- Note 1:** Mask values higher than FIFODEPTH are not valid. The module will not trigger a match for any value in this case.
- 2:** RXMSK2 and TXMSK2 bits are only present when FIFODEPTH = 8 or higher.
- 3:** RXMSK3 and TXMSK3 bits are only present when FIFODEPTH = 16 or higher.
- 4:** RXMSK4 and TXMSK4 bits are only present when FIFODEPTH = 32.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 16-3: SPIx MASTER/SLAVE CONNECTION (STANDARD MODE)**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

FIGURE 16-4: SPIx MASTER/SLAVE CONNECTION (ENHANCED BUFFER MODES)

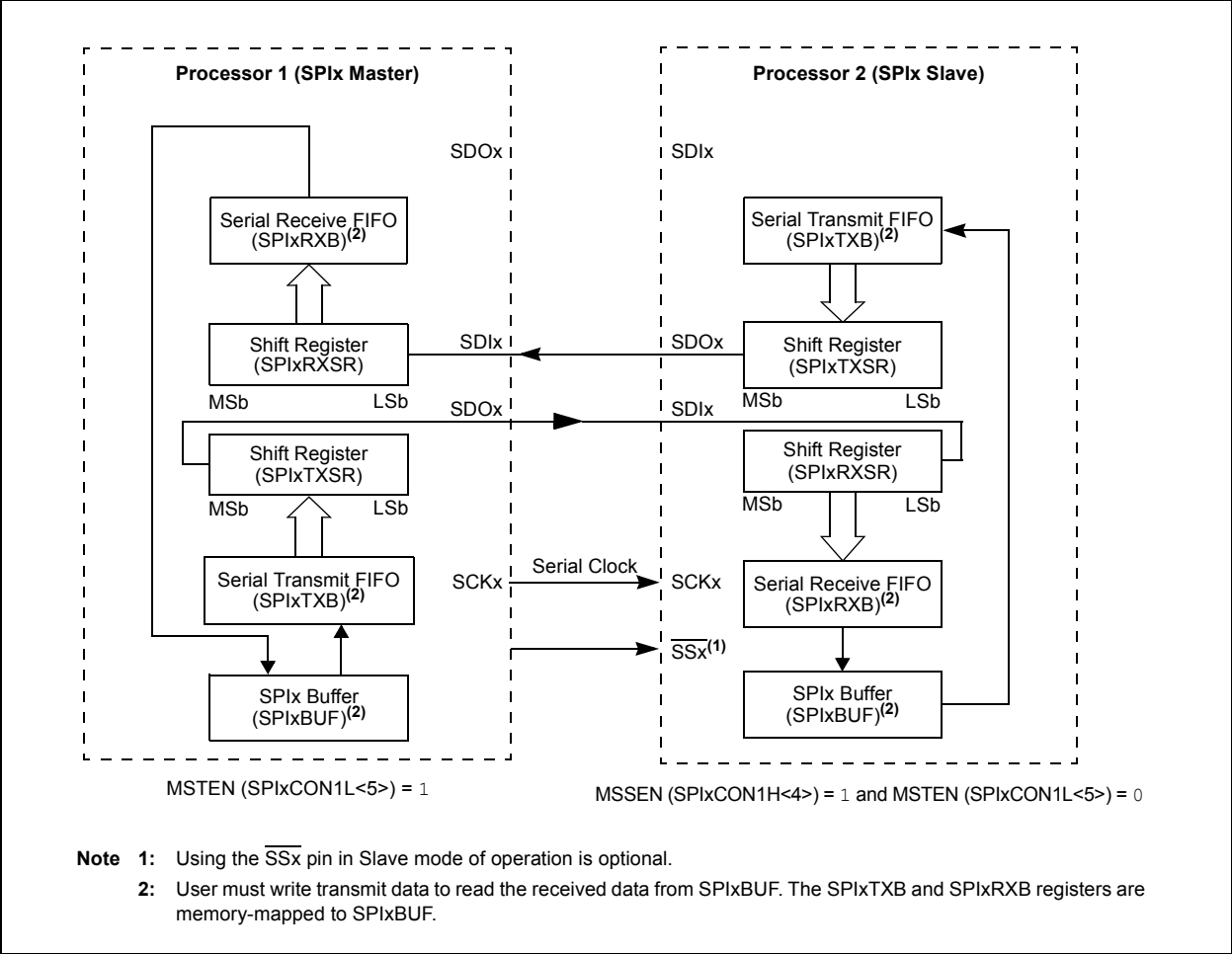
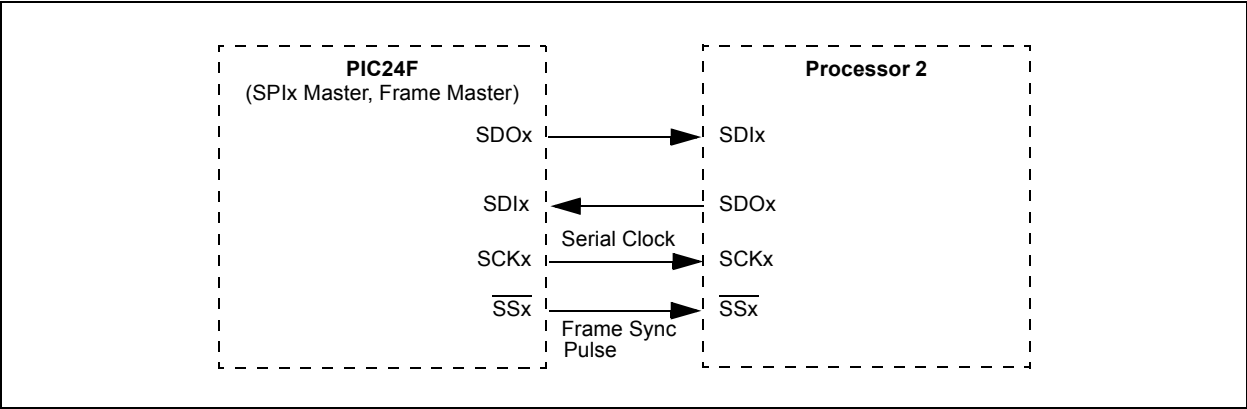
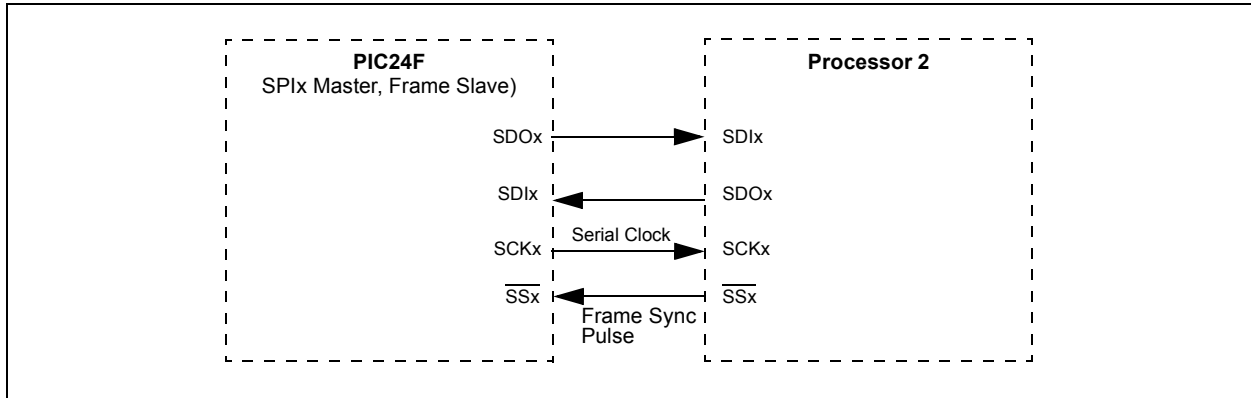


FIGURE 16-5: SPIx MASTER, FRAME MASTER CONNECTION DIAGRAM

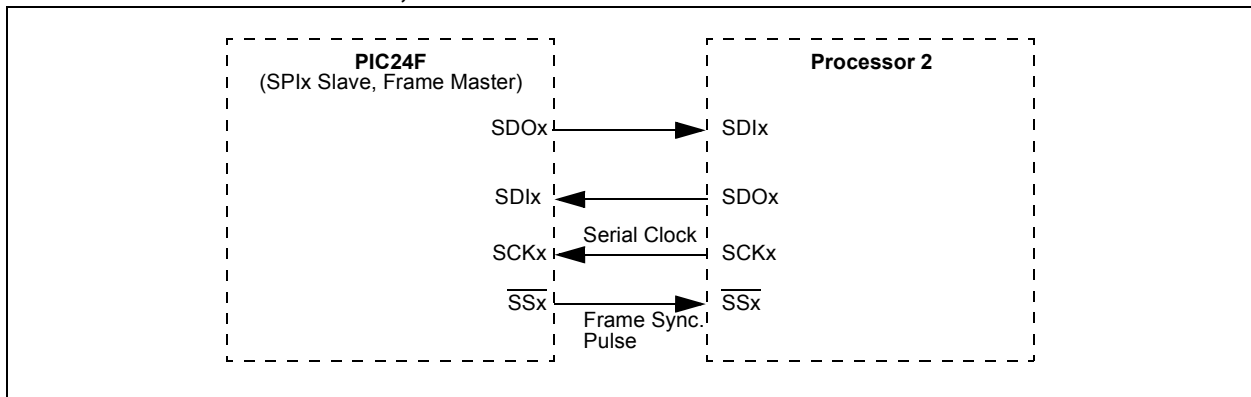


# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

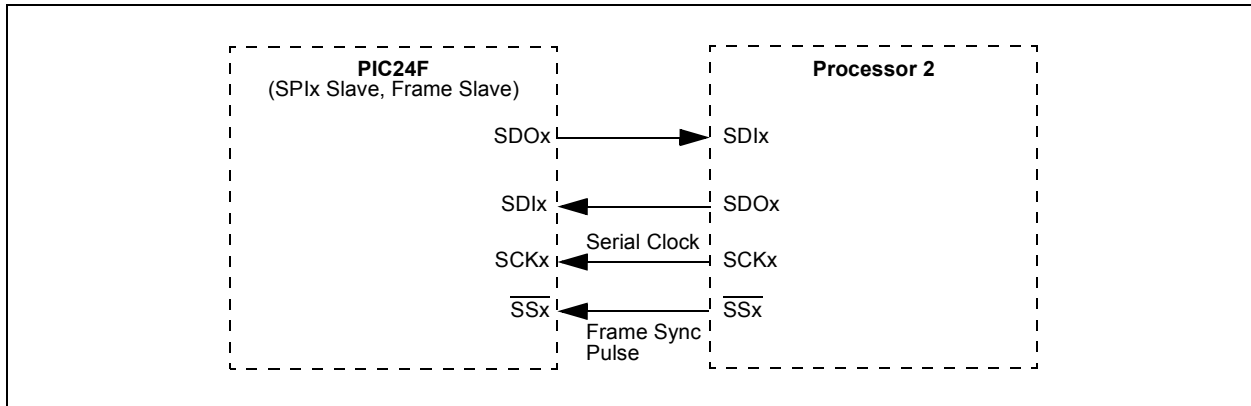
**FIGURE 16-6: SPIx MASTER, FRAME SLAVE CONNECTION DIAGRAM**



**FIGURE 16-7: SPIx SLAVE, FRAME MASTER CONNECTION DIAGRAM**



**FIGURE 16-8: SPIx SLAVE, FRAME SLAVE CONNECTION DIAGRAM**



**EQUATION 16-1: RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN DEVICE AND SPIx CLOCK SPEED**

$$\text{Baud Rate} = \frac{FPB}{(2 * (SPIxBRG + 1))}$$

Where:

FPB is the Peripheral Bus Clock Frequency.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

## 17.0 INTER-INTEGRATED CIRCUIT™ (I<sup>2</sup>C™)

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “*dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual*”, “**Inter-Integrated Circuit™ (I<sup>2</sup>C™)**” (DS70000195). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The Inter-Integrated Circuit™ (I<sup>2</sup>C™) module is a serial interface useful for communicating with other peripheral or microcontroller devices. These peripheral devices may be serial EEPROMs, display drivers, A/D Converters, etc.

The I<sup>2</sup>C module supports these features:

- Independent master and slave logic
- 7-bit and 10-bit device addresses
- General call address as defined in the I<sup>2</sup>C protocol
- Clock stretching to provide delays for the processor to respond to a slave data request
- Both 100 kHz and 400 kHz bus specifications
- Configurable address masking
- Multi-Master modes to prevent loss of messages in arbitration
- Bus Repeater mode, allowing the acceptance of all messages as a slave regardless of the address
- Automatic SCL

A block diagram of the module is shown in [Figure 17-1](#).

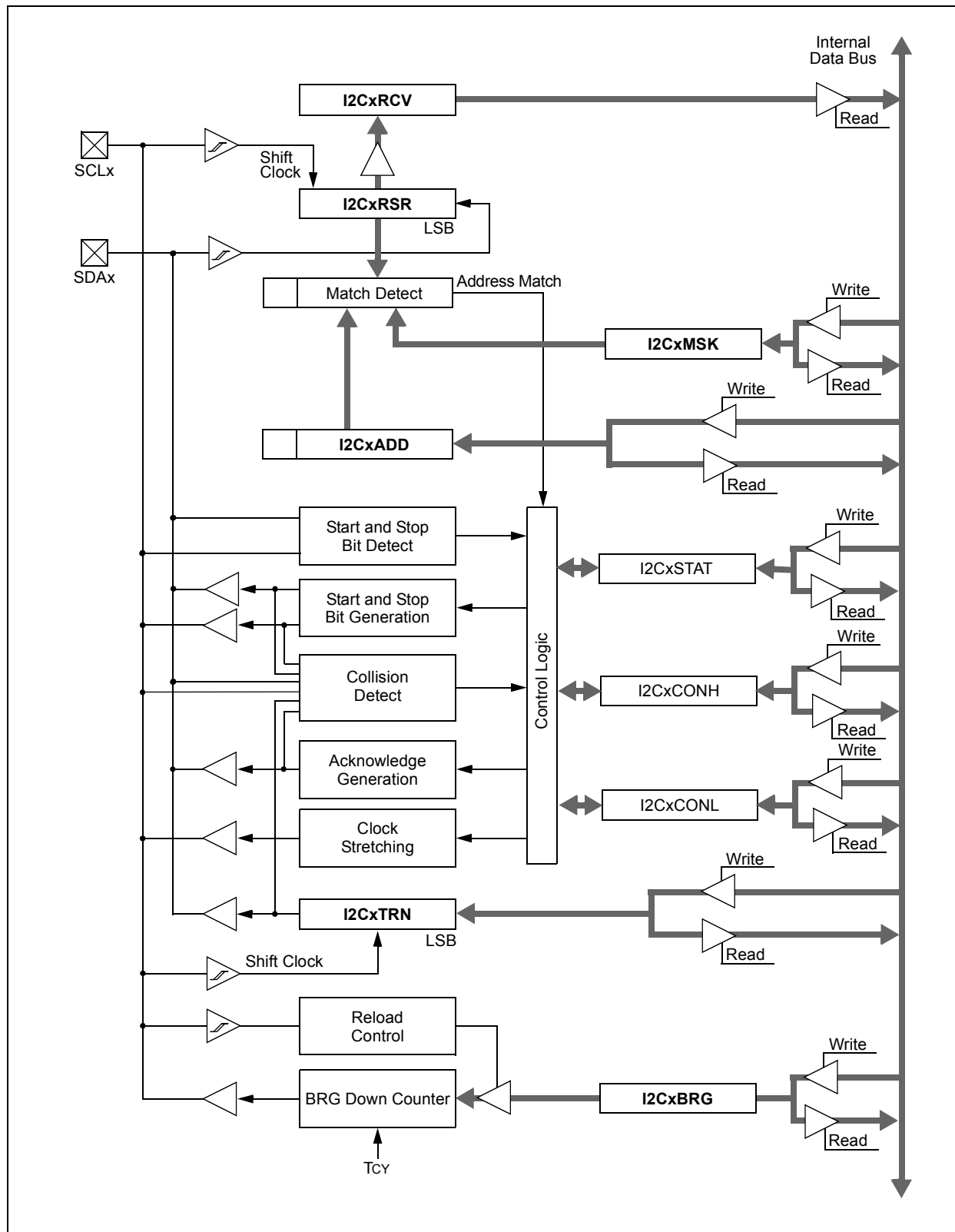
## 17.1 Communicating as a Master in a Single Master Environment

The details of sending a message in Master mode depends on the communication protocols for the device being communicated with. Typically, the sequence of events is as follows:

1. Assert a Start condition on SDAx and SCLx.
2. Send the I<sup>2</sup>C device address byte to the slave with a write indication.
3. Wait for and verify an Acknowledge from the slave.
4. Send the first data byte (sometimes known as the command) to the slave.
5. Wait for and verify an Acknowledge from the slave.
6. Send the serial memory address low byte to the slave.
7. Repeat Steps 4 and 5 until all data bytes are sent.
8. Assert a Repeated Start condition on SDAx and SCLx.
9. Send the device address byte to the slave with a read indication.
10. Wait for and verify an Acknowledge from the slave.
11. Enable master reception to receive serial memory data.
12. Generate an ACK or NACK condition at the end of a received byte of data.
13. Generate a Stop condition on SDAx and SCLx.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

FIGURE 17-1: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BLOCK DIAGRAM



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 17.2 Setting Baud Rate When Operating as a Bus Master

To compute the Baud Rate Generator reload value, use [Equation 17-1](#).

### EQUATION 17-1: COMPUTING BAUD RATE RELOAD VALUE<sup>(1)</sup>

$$I2CxBRG = \left( \left( \frac{1}{F_{SCL}} - PGDX \right) \times \frac{FCY}{2} \right) - 2$$

**Note 1:** Based on  $FCY = F_{OSC}/2$ ; Doze mode and PLL are disabled.

## 17.3 Slave Address Masking

The I2CxMSK register ([Register 17-4](#)) designates address bit positions as “don’t care” for both 7-Bit and 10-Bit Addressing modes. Setting a particular bit location (= 1) in the I2CxMSK register causes the slave module to respond, whether the corresponding address bit value is a ‘0’ or a ‘1’. For example, when I2CxMSK is set to ‘0010000000’, the slave module will detect both addresses, ‘0000000000’ and ‘0010000000’.

To enable address masking, the Intelligent Peripheral Management Interface (IPMI) must be disabled by clearing the STRICT bit (I2CxCONL<11>).

**Note:** As a result of changes in the I<sup>2</sup>C™ protocol, the addresses in [Table 17-1](#) are reserved and will not be Acknowledged in Slave mode. This includes any address mask settings that include any of these addresses.

**TABLE 17-1: I<sup>2</sup>C™ RESERVED ADDRESSES<sup>(1)</sup>**

| Slave Address | R/W Bit | Description                            |
|---------------|---------|--|
| 0000 000      | 0       | General Call Address <sup>(2)</sup>    |
| 0000 000      | 1       | Start Byte                             |
| 0000 001      | x       | Cbus Address                           |
| 0000 01x      | x       | Reserved                               |
| 0000 1xx      | x       | HS Mode Master Code                    |
| 1111 0xx      | x       | 10-Bit Slave Upper Byte <sup>(3)</sup> |
| 1111 1xx      | x       | Reserved                               |

**Note 1:** The address bits listed here will never cause an address match independent of address mask settings.

**2:** The address will be Acknowledged only if GCEN = 1.

**3:** A match on this address can only occur on the upper byte in 10-Bit Addressing mode.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 17-1: I2CxCONL: I2Cx CONTROL REGISTER LOW

| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0, HC | R/W-1                 | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0 |
|--------|-----|-----------|-----------------------|--------|-------|--------|-------|
| I2CEN  | —   | I2CSIDL   | SCLREL <sup>(1)</sup> | STRICT | A10M  | DISSLW | SMEN  |
| bit 15 |     |           |                       |        |       |        | bit 8 |

| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0, HC | R/W-0, HC | R/W-0, HC | R/W-0, HC | R/W-0, HC |
|-------|-------|-------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| GCEN  | STREN | ACKDT | ACKEN     | RCEN      | PEN       | RSEN      | SEN       |
| bit 7 |       |       |           |           |           |           | bit 0     |

|                   |                             |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HC = Hardware Clearable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit            | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set            | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15      **I2CEN:** I2Cx Enable bit (writable from SW only)  
1 = Enables the I<sup>2</sup>C™ module, and configures the SDAx and SCLx pins as serial port pins  
0 = Disables I<sup>2</sup>C module; all I<sup>2</sup>C pins are controlled by port functions
- bit 14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13      **I2CSIDL:** I2Cx Stop in Idle Mode bit  
1 = Discontinues module operation when device enters Idle mode  
0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode
- bit 12      **SCLREL:** SCLx Release Control bit (I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode only)<sup>(1)</sup>  
Module resets and (I2CEN = 0) sets SCLREL = 1.  
If STREN = 0:<sup>(2)</sup>  
1 = Releases clock  
0 = Forces clock low (clock stretch)  
If STREN = 1:  
1 = Releases clock  
0 = Holds clock low (clock stretch); user may program this bit to '0', clock stretch is at the next SCLx low
- bit 11      **STRICT:** I2Cx Strict Reserved Address Rule Enable bit  
1 = Strict reserved addressing is enforced; for reserved addresses, refer to [Table 17-1](#)  
(In Slave Mode) – The device doesn't respond to reserved address space and addresses falling in that category are NACKed.  
(In Master Mode) – The device is allowed to generate addresses with reserved address space.  
0 = Reserved addressing would be Acknowledged  
(In Slave Mode) – The device will respond to an address falling in the reserved address space. When there is a match with any of the reserved addresses, the device will generate an ACK.  
(In Master Mode) – Reserved.
- bit 10      **A10M:** 10-Bit Slave Address Flag bit  
1 = I2CxADD is a 10-bit slave address  
0 = I2CADD is a 7-bit slave address
- bit 9      **DISSLW:** Slew Rate Control Disable bit  
1 = Slew rate control is disabled for Standard Speed mode (100 kHz, also disabled for 1 MHz mode)  
0 = Slew rate control is enabled for High-Speed mode (400 kHz)
- bit 8      **SMEN:** SMBus Input Levels Enable bit  
1 = Enables input logic so thresholds are compliant with the SMBus specification  
0 = Disables SMBus-specific inputs

**Note 1:** Automatically cleared to '0' at the beginning of slave transmission; automatically cleared to '0' at the end of slave reception.

**2:** Automatically cleared to '0' at the beginning of slave transmission.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 17-1: I2CxCONL: I2Cx CONTROL REGISTER LOW (CONTINUED)

- bit 7      **GCEN:** General Call Enable bit (I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode only)  
1 = Enables interrupt when a general call address is received in I2CxRSR; module is enabled for reception  
0 = General call address is disabled
- bit 6      **STREN:** SCLx Clock Stretch Enable bit  
In I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode only; used in conjunction with the SCLREL bit.  
1 = Enables clock stretching  
0 = Disables clock stretching
- bit 5      **ACKDT:** Acknowledge Data bit  
In I<sup>2</sup>C Master mode, during Master Receive mode – The value that will be transmitted when the user initiates an Acknowledge sequence at the end of a receive.  
In I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode when AHEN = 1 or DHEN = 1 – The value that the slave will transmit when it initiates an Acknowledge sequence at the end of an address or data reception.  
1 = A NACK is sent  
0 = An ACK is sent
- bit 4      **ACKEN:** Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit  
In I<sup>2</sup>C Master mode only; applicable during Master Receive mode.  
1 = Initiates Acknowledge sequence on SDAx and SCLx pins, and transmits ACKDT data bit  
0 = Acknowledge sequence is Idle
- bit 3      **RCEN:** Receive Enable bit (I<sup>2</sup>C Master mode only)  
1 = Enables Receive mode for I<sup>2</sup>C, automatically cleared by hardware at the end of the 8-bit receive data byte  
0 = Receive sequence is not in progress
- bit 2      **PEN:** Stop Condition Enable bit (I<sup>2</sup>C Master mode only)  
1 = Initiates Stop condition on the SDAx and SCLx pins  
0 = Stop condition is Idle
- bit 1      **RSEN:** Restart Condition Enable bit (I<sup>2</sup>C Master mode only)  
1 = Initiates Restart condition on the SDAx and SCLx pins  
0 = Restart condition is Idle
- bit 0      **SEN:** Start Condition Enable bit (I<sup>2</sup>C Master mode only)  
1 = Initiates Start condition on the SDAx and SCLx pins  
0 = Start condition is Idle

- Note 1:** Automatically cleared to '0' at the beginning of slave transmission; automatically cleared to '0' at the end of slave reception.
- 2:** Automatically cleared to '0' at the beginning of slave transmission.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 17-2: I2CxCONH: I2Cx CONTROL REGISTER HIGH

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | PCIE  | SCIE  | BOEN  | SDAHT | SBCDE | AHEN  | DHEN  |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **PCIE:** Stop Condition Interrupt Enable bit (I<sup>2</sup>C™ Slave mode only).

1 = Enables interrupt on detection of Stop condition

0 = Stop detection interrupts are disabled

bit 5 **SCIE:** Start Condition Interrupt Enable bit (I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode only)

1 = Enables interrupt on detection of Start or Restart conditions

0 = Start detection interrupts are disabled

bit 4 **BOEN:** Buffer Overwrite Enable bit (I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode only)

1 = I2CxRCV is updated and an ACK is generated for a received address/data byte, ignoring the state of the I2COV bit only if the RBF bit = 0

0 = I2CxRCV is only updated when I2COV is clear

bit 3 **SDAHT:** SDAx Hold Time Selection bit

1 = Minimum of 300 ns hold time on SDAx after the falling edge of SCLx

0 = Minimum of 100 ns hold time on SDAx after the falling edge of SCLx

bit 2 **SBCDE:** Slave Mode Bus Collision Detect Enable bit (I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode only)

If, on the rising edge of SCLx, SDAx is sampled low when the module is outputting a high state, the BCL bit is set and the bus goes Idle. This Detection mode is only valid during data and ACK transmit sequences.

1 = Enables slave bus collision interrupts

0 = Slave bus collision interrupts are disabled

bit 1 **AHEN:** Address Hold Enable bit (I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode only)

1 = Following the 8th falling edge of SCLx for a matching received address byte; SCLREL bit (I2CxCONL<12>) will be cleared and SCLx will be held low

0 = Address holding is disabled

bit 0 **DHEN:** Data Hold Enable bit (I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode only)

1 = Following the 8th falling edge of SCLx for a received data byte; slave hardware clears the SCLREL bit (I2CxCONL<12>) and SCLx is held low

0 = Data holding is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 17-3: I2CxSTAT: I2Cx STATUS REGISTER

|          |          |          |     |     |            |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|-----|-----|------------|----------|----------|
| R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | U-0 | U-0 | R/C-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC |
| ACKSTAT  | TRSTAT   | ACKTIM   | —   | —   | BCL        | GCSTAT   | ADD10    |
| bit 15   |          |          |     |     |            | bit 8    |          |

|           |           |          |            |            |          |          |          |
|-----------|-----------|----------|------------|------------|----------|----------|----------|
| R/C-0, HS | R/C-0, HS | R-0, HSC | R/C-0, HSC | R/C-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC |
| IWCOL     | I2COV     | D/A      | P          | S          | R/W      | RBF      | TBF      |
| bit 7     |           |          |            |            |          | bit 0    |          |

|                   |                            |                                       |
|-------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | C = Clearable bit          | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |
| R = Readable bit  | HS = Hardware Settable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set           | '0' = Bit is cleared                  |
|                   |                            | x = Bit is unknown                    |

- bit 15 **ACKSTAT:** Acknowledge Status bit (updated in all Master and Slave modes)  
 1 = Acknowledge was not received from slave  
 0 = Acknowledge was received from slave
- bit 14 **TRSTAT:** Transmit Status bit (when operating as I<sup>2</sup>C™ master; applicable to master transmit operation)  
 1 = Master transmit is in progress (8 bits + ACK)  
 0 = Master transmit is not in progress
- bit 13 **ACKTIM:** Acknowledge Time Status bit (valid in I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode only)  
 1 = Indicates I<sup>2</sup>C bus is in an Acknowledge sequence, set on 8th falling edge of SCLx clock  
 0 = Not an Acknowledge sequence, cleared on 9th rising edge of SCLx clock
- bit 12-11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10 **BCL:** Bus Collision Detect bit (Master/Slave mode; cleared when I<sup>2</sup>C module is disabled, I2CEN = 0)  
 1 = A bus collision has been detected during a master or slave transmit operation  
 0 = No bus collision has been detected
- bit 9 **GCSTAT:** General Call Status bit (cleared after Stop detection)  
 1 = General call address was received  
 0 = General call address was not received
- bit 8 **ADD10:** 10-Bit Address Status bit (cleared after Stop detection)  
 1 = 10-bit address was matched  
 0 = 10-bit address was not matched
- bit 7 **IWCOL:** I2Cx Write Collision Detect bit  
 1 = An attempt to write to the I2CxTRN register failed because the I<sup>2</sup>C module is busy; must be cleared in software  
 0 = No collision
- bit 6 **I2COV:** I2Cx Receive Overflow Flag bit  
 1 = A byte was received while the I2CxRCV register is still holding the previous byte; I2COV is a "don't care" in Transmit mode, must be cleared in software  
 0 = No overflow
- bit 5 **D/A:** Data/Address bit (when operating as I<sup>2</sup>C slave)  
 1 = Indicates that the last byte received was data  
 0 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was an address
- bit 4 **P:** I2Cx Stop bit  
 Updated when Start, Reset or Stop is detected; cleared when the I<sup>2</sup>C module is disabled, I2CEN = 0.  
 1 = Indicates that a Stop has been detected last  
 0 = Stop bit was not detected last

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 17-3: I2CxSTAT: I2Cx STATUS REGISTER (CONTINUED)

- bit 3      **S:** I2Cx Start bit  
Updated when Start, Reset or Stop is detected; cleared when the I<sup>2</sup>C module is disabled, I2CEN = 0.  
1 = Indicates that a Start (or Repeated Start) bit has been detected last  
0 = Start bit was not detected last
- bit 2      **R/W:** Read/Write Information bit (when operating as I<sup>2</sup>C slave)  
1 = Read: Indicates the data transfer is output from the slave  
0 = Write: Indicates the data transfer is input to the slave
- bit 1      **RBF:** Receive Buffer Full Status bit  
1 = Receive is complete, I2CxRCV is full  
0 = Receive is not complete, I2CxRCV is empty
- bit 0      **TBF:** Transmit Buffer Full Status bit  
1 = Transmit is in progress, I2CxTRN is full (8 bits of data)  
0 = Transmit is complete, I2CxTRN is empty

## REGISTER 17-4: I2CxMSK: I2Cx SLAVE MODE ADDRESS MASK REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |          |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0    | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | MSK<9:8> |       |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |          | bit 8 |

|          |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0    | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| MSK<7:0> |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 7    |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
-n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-10      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 9-0      **MSK<9:0>:** I2Cx Mask for Address Bit x Select bits  
1 = Enables masking for bit x of the incoming message address; bit match is not required in this position  
0 = Disables masking for bit x; bit match is required in this position

## 18.0 UNIVERSAL ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER TRANSMITTER (UART)

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART)” (DS70000582). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART) module is one of the serial I/O modules available in the PIC24F device family. The UART is a full-duplex, asynchronous system that can communicate with peripheral devices, such as personal computers, LIN/J2602, RS-232 and RS-485 interfaces. The module also supports a hardware flow control option with the  $\overline{\text{UxCTS}}$  and  $\overline{\text{UxRTS}}$  pins. The UART module includes the ISO 7816 compliant Smart Card support and the IrDA® encoder/decoder unit.

The PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices are equipped with four UART modules, referred to as UART1, UART2, UART3 and UART4.

The primary features of the UARTx modules are:

- Full-Duplex, 8 or 9-Bit Data Transmission through the  $\text{UxTX}$  and  $\text{UxRX}$  Pins
- Even, Odd or No Parity Options (for 8-bit data)
- One or Two Stop bits
- Hardware Flow Control Option with the  $\overline{\text{UxCTS}}$  and  $\overline{\text{UxRTS}}$  Pins
- Fully Integrated Baud Rate Generator with 16-Bit Prescaler
- Baud Rates Range from 15 bps to 1 Mbps at 16 MIPS in 16x mode

- Baud Rates Range from 61 bps to 4 Mbps at 16 MIPS in 4x mode
- 4-Deep, First-In-First-Out (FIFO) Transmit Data Buffer
- 4-Deep FIFO Receive Data Buffer
- Parity, Framing and Buffer Overrun Error Detection
- Support for 9-Bit mode with Address Detect (9<sup>th</sup> bit = 1)
- Separate Transmit and Receive Interrupts
- Loopback mode for Diagnostic Support
- Polarity Control for Transmit and Receive Lines
- Support for Sync and Break Characters
- Supports Automatic Baud Rate Detection
- IrDA® Encoder and Decoder Logic
- Includes DMA Support
- 16x Baud Clock Output for IrDA Support
- Smart Card ISO 7816 Support (UART1 and UART2 only):
  - T = 0 protocol with automatic error handling
  - T = 1 protocol
  - Dedicated Guard Time Counter (GTC)
  - Dedicated Waiting Time Counter (WTC)

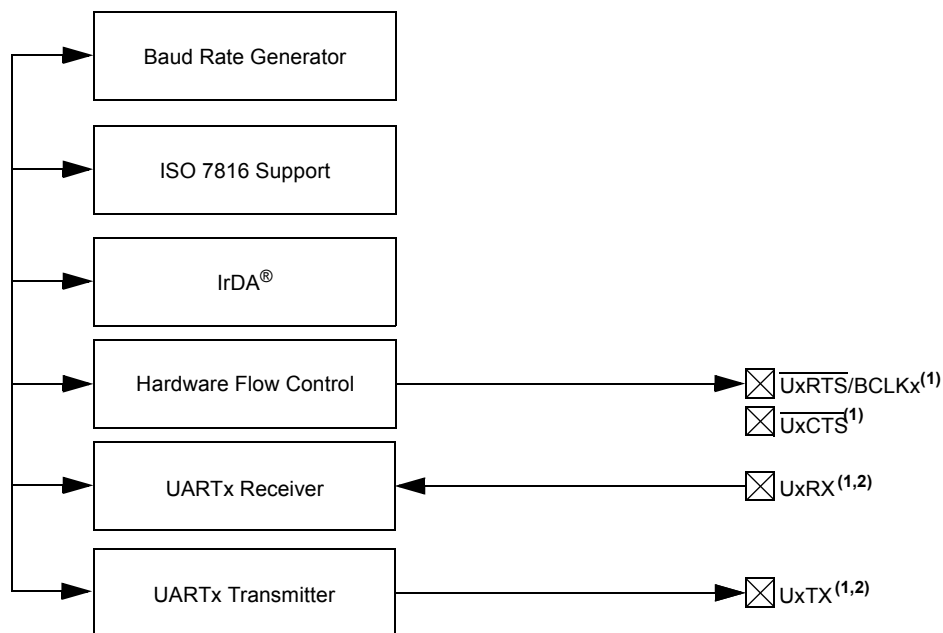
A simplified block diagram of the UARTx module is shown in [Figure 18-1](#). The UARTx module consists of these key important hardware elements:

- Baud Rate Generator
- Asynchronous Transmitter
- Asynchronous Receiver

**Note:** Throughout this section, references to register and bit names that may be associated with a specific UART module are referred to generically by the use of ‘x’ in place of the specific module number. Thus, “UxSTA” might refer to the Status register for either UART1, UART2, UART3 or UART4.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

FIGURE 18-1: UARTx SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM



- Note 1:** The UARTx inputs and outputs must all be assigned to available RPn/RPIn pins before use. See [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#) for more information.
- Note 2:** The UxTX and UxRX pins need to be shorted to be used for the Smart Card interface; this should be taken care of by the user.

## 18.1 UARTx Baud Rate Generator (BRG)

The UARTx module includes a dedicated, 16-bit Baud Rate Generator. The UxBRG register controls the period of a free-running, 16-bit timer. Equation 18-1 shows the formula for computation of the baud rate with BRGH = 0.

### EQUATION 18-1: UARTx BAUD RATE WITH BRGH = 0<sup>(1,2)</sup>

$$\text{Baud Rate} = \frac{FCY}{16 \cdot (UxBRG + 1)}$$

$$UxBRG = \frac{FCY}{16 \cdot \text{Baud Rate}} - 1$$

- Note 1:** FCY denotes the instruction cycle clock frequency (FOSC/2).
- 2:** Based on FCY = FOSC/2; Doze mode and PLL are disabled.

Example 18-1 shows the calculation of the baud rate error for the following conditions:

- FCY = 4 MHz
- Desired Baud Rate = 9600

The maximum baud rate (BRGH = 0) possible is FCY/16 (for UxBRG = 0) and the minimum baud rate possible is FCY/(16 \* 65536).

Equation 18-2 shows the formula for computation of the baud rate with BRGH = 1.

### EQUATION 18-2: UARTx BAUD RATE WITH BRGH = 1<sup>(1,2)</sup>

$$\text{Baud Rate} = \frac{FCY}{4 \cdot (UxBRG + 1)}$$

$$UxBRG = \frac{FCY}{4 \cdot \text{Baud Rate}} - 1$$

- Note 1:** FCY denotes the instruction cycle clock frequency.
- 2:** Based on FCY = FOSC/2; Doze mode and PLL are disabled.

The maximum baud rate (BRGH = 1) possible is FCY/4 (for UxBRG = 0) and the minimum baud rate possible is FCY/(4 \* 65536).

Writing a new value to the UxBRG register causes the BRG timer to be reset (cleared). This ensures the BRG does not wait for a timer overflow before generating the new baud rate.

### EXAMPLE 18-1: BAUD RATE ERROR CALCULATION (BRGH = 0)<sup>(1)</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Desired Baud Rate} &= FCY / (16 (UxBRG + 1)) \\ \text{Solving for UxBRG Value:} \\ UxBRG &= ((FCY / \text{Desired Baud Rate}) / 16) - 1 \\ UxBRG &= ((4000000 / 9600) / 16) - 1 \\ UxBRG &= 25 \\ \text{Calculated Baud Rate} &= 4000000 / (16 (25 + 1)) \\ &= 9615 \\ \text{Error} &= (\text{Calculated Baud Rate} - \text{Desired Baud Rate}) / \text{Desired Baud Rate} \\ &= (9615 - 9600) / 9600 \\ &= 0.16\% \end{aligned}$$

- Note 1:** Based on FCY = FOSC/2; Doze mode and PLL are disabled.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 18.2 Transmitting in 8-Bit Data Mode

1. Set up the UARTx:
  - a) Write appropriate values for data, parity and Stop bits.
  - b) Write appropriate baud rate value to the UxBRG register.
  - c) Set up transmit and receive interrupt enable and priority bits.
2. Enable the UARTx.
3. Set the UTXEN bit (causes a transmit interrupt, two cycles after being set).
4. Write a data byte to the lower byte of the UxTXREG word. The value will be immediately transferred to the Transmit Shift Register (TSR) and the serial bit stream will start shifting out with the next rising edge of the baud clock.
5. Alternatively, the data byte may be transferred while UTXEN = 0 and then, the user may set UTXEN. This will cause the serial bit stream to begin immediately because the baud clock will start from a cleared state.
6. A transmit interrupt will be generated as per interrupt control bits, UTXISEL<1:0>.

## 18.3 Transmitting in 9-Bit Data Mode

1. Set up the UARTx (as described in [Section 18.2 “Transmitting in 8-Bit Data Mode”](#)).
2. Enable the UARTx.
3. Set the UTXEN bit (causes a transmit interrupt).
4. Write UxTXREG as a 16-bit value only.
5. A word write to UxTXREG triggers the transfer of the 9-bit data to the TSR. The serial bit stream will start shifting out with the first rising edge of the baud clock.
6. A transmit interrupt will be generated as per the setting of control bits, UTXISEL<1:0>.

## 18.4 Break and Sync Transmit Sequence

The following sequence will send a message frame header, made up of a Break, followed by an auto-baud Sync byte.

1. Configure the UARTx for the desired mode.
2. Set UTXEN and UTXBRK to set up the Break character.
3. Load the UxTXREG with a dummy character to initiate transmission (value is ignored).
4. Write '55h' to UxTXREG; this loads the Sync character into the transmit FIFO.
5. After the Break has been sent, the UTXBRK bit is reset by hardware. The Sync character now transmits.

## 18.5 Receiving in 8-Bit or 9-Bit Data Mode

1. Set up the UARTx (as described in [Section 18.2 “Transmitting in 8-Bit Data Mode”](#)).
2. Enable the UARTx.
3. Set the URXEN bit (UxSTA<12>).
4. A receive interrupt will be generated when one or more data characters have been received as per interrupt control bits, URXISEL<1:0>.
5. Read the OERR bit to determine if an overrun error has occurred. The OERR bit must be reset in software.
6. Read UxRXREG.

The act of reading the UxRXREG character will move the next character to the top of the receive FIFO, including a new set of PERR and FERR values.

## 18.6 Operation of $\overline{\text{UxCTS}}$ and $\overline{\text{UxRTS}}$ Control Pins

UARTx Clear-to-Send ( $\overline{\text{UxCTS}}$ ) and Request-to-Send ( $\overline{\text{UxRTS}}$ ) are the two hardware controlled pins that are associated with the UARTx modules. These two pins allow the UARTx to operate in Simplex and Flow Control mode. They are implemented to control the transmission and reception between the Data Terminal Equipment (DTE). The UEN<1:0> bits in the UxMODE register configure these pins.

## 18.7 Infrared Support

The UARTx module provides two types of infrared UART support: one is the IrDA clock output to support an external IrDA encoder and decoder device (legacy module support), and the other is the full implementation of the IrDA encoder and decoder. Note that because the IrDA modes require a 16x baud clock, they will only work when the BRGH bit (UxMODE<3>) is '0'.

### 18.7.1 IrDA CLOCK OUTPUT FOR EXTERNAL IrDA SUPPORT

To support external IrDA encoder and decoder devices, the BCLKx pin (same as the  $\overline{\text{UxRTS}}$  pin) can be configured to generate the 16x baud clock. With UEN<1:0> = 11, the BCLKx pin will output the 16x baud clock if the UARTx module is enabled. It can be used to support the IrDA codec chip.

## 18.7.2 BUILT-IN IrDA ENCODER AND DECODER

The UARTx has full implementation of the IrDA encoder and decoder as part of the UARTx module. The built-in IrDA encoder and decoder functionality is enabled using the IREN bit (UxMODE<12>). When enabled (IREN = 1), the receive pin (UxRX) acts as the input from the infrared receiver. The transmit pin (UxTX) acts as the output to the infrared transmitter.

## 18.8 Smart Card ISO 7816 Support

Figure 18-2 shows a Smart Card subsystem using a PIC24F microcontroller with a UARTx module for Smart Card data communication. Vcc to power the Smart Card can be supplied through a terminal or an

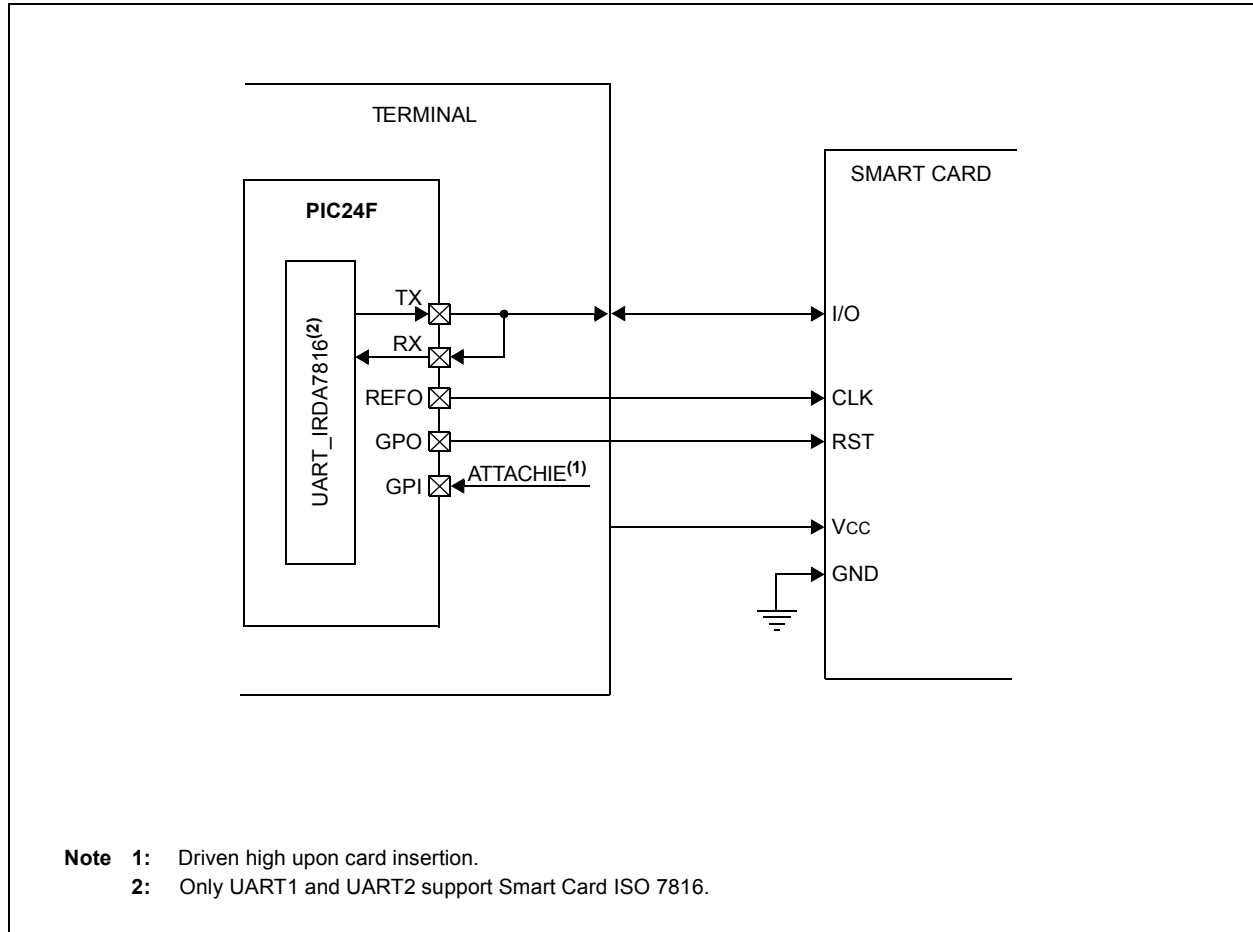
external power supply. The terminal is also responsible for clocking and resetting the Smart Card. The TX and RX line of the PIC24F device has to be shorted externally, and then connected to the I/O line of the Smart Card.

There are two protocols which are widely used for Smart Card communication between terminal and Smart Card:

- T = 0 (asynchronous, half-duplex, byte-oriented protocol)
- T = 1 (asynchronous, half-duplex, block-oriented protocol)

The selection of the T = 0 or T = 1 protocol is done using the PTRCL bit in the UxSCCON register.

**FIGURE 18-2: SMART CARD SUBSYSTEM CONNECTION**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 18.9 Control Registers

The UART module consists of the following Special Function Registers (SFRs):

- UxMODE: UARTx Mode Register ([Register 18-1](#))
- UxSTA: UARTx Status and Control Register ([Register 18-2](#))
- UxRXREG: UARTx Receive Register
- UxTXREG: UARTx Transmit Register (Write-Only) ([Register 18-3](#))
- UxADMD: UARTx Address Mask Detect Register ([Register 18-4](#))
- UxBRG: UARTx Baud Rate Register
- UxSCCON: UARTx Smart Card Control Register ([Register 18-5](#))
- UxSCINT: UARTx Smart Card Interrupt Register ([Register 18-6](#))
- UxGTC: UARTx Guard Time Counter
- UxWTCL and UxWTCH: UARTx Waiting Time Counter Low/High

### REGISTER 18-1: UxMODE: UARTx MODE REGISTER

|                       |     |       |                     |       |     |       |       |
|-----------------------|-----|-------|---------------------|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| R/W-0                 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0               | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| UARTEN <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | USIDL | IREN <sup>(2)</sup> | RTSMD | —   | UEN1  | UEN0  |
| bit 15                |     |       |                     |       |     | bit 8 |       |

|           |        |           |        |       |        |        |       |
|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|-------|--------|--------|-------|
| R/W-0, HC | R/W-0  | R/W-0, HC | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0 |
| WAKE      | LPBACK | ABAUD     | URXINV | BRGH  | PDSEL1 | PDSEL0 | STSEL |
| bit 7     |        |           |        |       |        | bit 0  |       |

|                   |                             |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HC = Hardware Clearable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit            | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set            | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15     **UARTEN:** UARTx Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = UARTx is enabled; all UARTx pins are controlled by UARTx as defined by UEN<1:0>  
0 = UARTx is disabled; all UARTx pins are controlled by port latches, UARTx power consumption is minimal
- bit 14     **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13     **USIDL:** UARTx Stop in Idle Mode bit  
1 = Discontinues module operation when device enters Idle mode  
0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode
- bit 12     **IREN:** IrDA<sup>®</sup> Encoder and Decoder Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
1 = IrDA encoder and decoder are enabled  
0 = IrDA encoder and decoder are disabled
- bit 11     **RTSMD:** Mode Selection for  $\overline{\text{UxRTS}}$  Pin bit  
1 =  $\overline{\text{UxRTS}}$  pin is in Simplex mode  
0 =  $\overline{\text{UxRTS}}$  pin is in Flow Control mode
- bit 10     **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 9-8     **UEN<1:0>:** UARTx Enable bits  
11 = UxTX, UxRX and BCLKx pins are enabled and used;  $\overline{\text{UxCTS}}$  pin is controlled by port latches  
10 = UxTX, UxRX,  $\overline{\text{UxCTS}}$  and  $\overline{\text{UxRTS}}$  pins are enabled and used  
01 = UxTX, UxRX and  $\overline{\text{UxRTS}}$  pins are enabled and used;  $\overline{\text{UxCTS}}$  pin is controlled by port latches  
00 = UxTX and UxRX pins are enabled and used;  $\overline{\text{UxCTS}}$  and  $\overline{\text{UxRTS}}$ /BCLKx pins are controlled by port latches

**Note 1:** If UARTEN = 1, the peripheral inputs and outputs must be configured to an available RPN/RPIN pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).

**2:** This feature is only available for 16x BRG mode (BRGH = 0).

## REGISTER 18-1: UxMODE: UARTx MODE REGISTER (CONTINUED)

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| bit 7   | <b>WAKE:</b> Wake-up on Start Bit Detect During Sleep Mode Enable bit<br>1 = UARTx will continue to sample the UxRX pin; interrupt is generated on the falling edge, bit is cleared in hardware on the following rising edge<br>0 = No wake-up is enabled |
| bit 6   | <b>LPBACK:</b> UARTx Loopback Mode Select bit<br>1 = Enables Loopback mode<br>0 = Loopback mode is disabled   |
| bit 5   | <b>ABAUD:</b> Auto-Baud Enable bit<br>1 = Enables baud rate measurement on the next character – requires reception of a Sync field (55h); cleared in hardware upon completion<br>0 = Baud rate measurement is disabled or has completed                   |
| bit 4   | <b>URXINV:</b> UARTx Receive Polarity Inversion bit<br>1 = UxRX Idle state is '0'<br>0 = UxRX Idle state is '1'   |
| bit 3   | <b>BRGH:</b> High Baud Rate Enable bit<br>1 = High-Speed mode (4 BRG clock cycles per bit)<br>0 = Standard Speed mode (16 BRG clock cycles per bit)   |
| bit 2-1 | <b>PDSEL&lt;1:0&gt;:</b> Parity and Data Selection bits<br>11 = 9-bit data, no parity<br>10 = 8-bit data, odd parity<br>01 = 8-bit data, even parity<br>00 = 8-bit data, no parity  |
| bit 0   | <b>STSEL:</b> Stop Bit Selection bit<br>1 = Two Stop bits<br>0 = One Stop bit   |

- Note 1:** If UARTEN = 1, the peripheral inputs and outputs must be configured to an available RPN/RPIn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).
- 2:** This feature is only available for 16x BRG mode (BRGH = 0).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 18-2: UxSTA: UARTx STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER

|          |                       |          |       |           |                      |          |          |
|----------|-----------------------|----------|-------|-----------|----------------------|----------|----------|
| R/W-0    | R/W-0                 | R/W-0    | R/W-0 | R/W-0, HC | R/W-0                | R-0, HSC | R-1, HSC |
| UTXISEL1 | UTXINV <sup>(1)</sup> | UTXISEL0 | URXEN | UTXBRK    | UTXEN <sup>(2)</sup> | UTXBF    | TRMT     |
| bit 15   |                       |          |       |           |                      | bit 8    |          |

|          |          |       |          |          |          |           |          |
|----------|----------|-------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|----------|
| R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0 | R-1, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R/C-0, HS | R-0, HSC |
| URXISEL1 | URXISEL0 | ADDEN | RIDLE    | PERR     | FERR     | OERR      | URXDA    |
| bit 7    |          |       |          |          |          |           | bit 0    |

|                            |                             |                                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>             | C = Clearable bit           | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |
| R = Readable bit           | W = Writable bit            | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'    |
| -n = Value at POR          | '1' = Bit is set            | '0' = Bit is cleared                  |
| HS = Hardware Settable bit | HC = Hardware Clearable bit | x = Bit is unknown                    |

- bit 15,13 **UTXISEL<1:0>**: UARTx Transmission Interrupt Mode Selection bits
- 11 = Reserved; do not use
  - 10 = Interrupt when a character is transferred to the Transmit Shift Register (TSR), and as a result, the transmit buffer becomes empty
  - 01 = Interrupt when the last character is shifted out of the Transmit Shift Register; all transmit operations are completed
  - 00 = Interrupt when a character is transferred to the Transmit Shift Register (this implies there is at least one character open in the transmit buffer)
- bit 14 **UTXINV**: IrDA<sup>®</sup> Encoder Transmit Polarity Inversion bit<sup>(1)</sup>
- IREN = 0:**
- 1 = UxTX is Idle ('0')
  - 0 = UxTX is Idle ('1')
- IREN = 1:**
- 1 = UxTX is Idle ('1')
  - 0 = UxTX is Idle ('0')
- bit 12 **URXEN**: UARTx Receive Enable bit
- 1 = Receive is enabled, UxRX pin is controlled by UARTx
  - 0 = Receive is disabled, UxRX pin is controlled by the port
- bit 11 **UTXBRK**: UARTx Transmit Break bit
- 1 = Sends Sync Break on next transmission – Start bit, followed by twelve '0' bits, followed by Stop bit; cleared by hardware upon completion
  - 0 = Sync Break transmission is disabled or has completed
- bit 10 **UTXEN**: UARTx Transmit Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>
- 1 = Transmit is enabled, UxTX pin is controlled by UARTx
  - 0 = Transmit is disabled, any pending transmission is aborted and the buffer is reset; UxTX pin is controlled by the port
- bit 9 **UTXBF**: UARTx Transmit Buffer Full Status bit (read-only)
- 1 = Transmit buffer is full
  - 0 = Transmit buffer is not full, at least one more character can be written
- bit 8 **TRMT**: Transmit Shift Register Empty bit (read-only)
- 1 = Transmit Shift Register is empty and transmit buffer is empty (the last transmission has completed)
  - 0 = Transmit Shift Register is not empty, a transmission is in progress or queued

**Note 1:** The value of this bit only affects the transmit properties of the module when the IrDA<sup>®</sup> encoder is enabled (IREN = 1).

**2:** If UARTEN = 1, the peripheral inputs and outputs must be configured to an available RPN/RPIN pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 18-2: UxSTA: UARTx STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER (CONTINUED)

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| bit 7-6 | <b>URXISEL&lt;1:0&gt;</b> : UARTx Receive Interrupt Mode Selection bits<br>11 = Interrupt is set on an RSR transfer, making the receive buffer full (i.e., has 4 data characters)<br>10 = Interrupt is set on an RSR transfer, making the receive buffer 3/4 full (i.e., has 3 data characters)<br>0x = Interrupt is set when any character is received and transferred from the RSR to the receive buffer; receive buffer has one or more characters |
| bit 5   | <b>ADDEN</b> : Address Character Detect bit (bit 8 of received data = 1)<br>1 = Address Detect mode is enabled (if 9-bit mode is not selected, this does not take effect)<br>0 = Address Detect mode is disabled  |
| bit 4   | <b>RIDLE</b> : Receiver Idle bit (read-only)<br>1 = Receiver is Idle<br>0 = Receiver is active  |
| bit 3   | <b>PERR</b> : Parity Error Status bit (read-only)<br>1 = Parity error has been detected for the current character (the character at the top of the receive FIFO)<br>0 = Parity error has not been detected  |
| bit 2   | <b>FERR</b> : Framing Error Status bit (read-only)<br>1 = Framing error has been detected for the current character (the character at the top of the receive FIFO)<br>0 = Framing error has not been detected   |
| bit 1   | <b>OERR</b> : Receive Buffer Overrun Error Status bit (clear/read-only)<br>1 = Receive buffer has overflowed<br>0 = Receive buffer has not overflowed (clearing a previously set OERR bit (1 → 0 transition); will reset the receive buffer and the RSR to the empty state)   |
| bit 0   | <b>URXDA</b> : UARTx Receive Buffer Data Available bit (read-only)<br>1 = Receive buffer has data, at least one more character can be read<br>0 = Receive buffer is empty   |

- Note 1:** The value of this bit only affects the transmit properties of the module when the IrDA® encoder is enabled (IREN = 1).
- 2:** If UARTEN = 1, the peripheral inputs and outputs must be configured to an available RPN/RPIn pin. For more information, see [Section 11.4 “Peripheral Pin Select \(PPS\)”](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 18-3: UxTXREG: UARTx TRANSMIT REGISTER (NORMALLY WRITE-ONLY)

|                     |     |     |     |     |     |     |          |
|---------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------|
| W-x                 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | W-x      |
| LAST <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | UxTXREG8 |
| bit 15              |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8    |

|              |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| W-x          | W-x | W-x | W-x | W-x | W-x | W-x | W-x   |
| UxTXREG<7:0> |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
| bit 7        |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **LAST:** Last Byte Indicator for Smart Card Support bit<sup>(1)</sup>

bit 14-9 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 8 **UxTXREG8:** UARTx Data of the Transmitted Character bit (in 9-bit mode)

bit 7-0 **UxTXREG<7:0>:** UARTx Data of the Transmitted Character bits

**Note 1:** This bit is only available for UART1 and UART2.

## REGISTER 18-4: UxADMD: UARTx ADDRESS MATCH DETECT REGISTER

|          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    |
| ADMMASK7 | ADMMASK6 | ADMMASK5 | ADMMASK4 | ADMMASK3 | ADMMASK2 | ADMMASK1 | ADMMASK0 |
| bit 15   |          |          |          |          |          |          | bit 8    |

|          |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    |
| ADMADDR7 | ADMADDR6 | ADMADDR5 | ADMADDR4 | ADMADDR3 | ADMADDR2 | ADMADDR1 | ADMADDR0 |
| bit 7    |          |          |          |          |          |          | bit 0    |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-8 **ADMMASK<7:0>:** UARTx ADMADDR<7:0> (UxADMD<7:0>) Masking bits

For ADMMASK<x>:

1 = ADMADDR<x> is used to detect the address match

0 = ADMADDR<x> is not used to detect the address match

bit 7-0 **ADMADDR<7:0>:** UARTx Address Detect Task Off-Load bits

Used with the ADMMASK<7:0> bits (UxADMD<15:8>) to off-load the task of detecting the address character from the processor during Address Detect mode.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 18-5: UxSCCON: UARTx SMART CARD CONTROL REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |                       |                       |       |                     |       |       |
|-------|-----|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------|---------------------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 | R/W-0 | R/W-0               | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | TXRPT1 <sup>(2)</sup> | TXRPT0 <sup>(2)</sup> | CONV  | T0PD <sup>(2)</sup> | PTRCL | SCEN  |
| bit 7 |     |                       |                       |       |                     |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **TXRPT<1:0>:** Transmit Repeat Selection bits<sup>(2)</sup>

11 = Retransmits the error byte four times

10 = Retransmits the error byte three times

01 = Retransmits the error byte twice

00 = Retransmits the error byte once

bit 3 **CONV:** Logic Convention Selection bit

1 = Inverse logic convention

0 = Direct logic convention

bit 2 **T0PD:** Pull-Down Duration for T = 0 Error Handling bit<sup>(2)</sup>

1 = 2 ETU

0 = 1 ETU

bit 1 **PTRCL:** Smart Card Protocol Selection bit

1 = T = 1

0 = T = 0

bit 0 **SCEN:** Smart Card Mode Enable bit

1 = Smart Card mode is enabled if UARTEN (UxMODE<15>) = 1

0 = Smart Card mode is disabled

**Note 1:** This register is only available for UART1 and UART2.

**2:** These bits are applicable to T = 0 only, see PTRCL (UxSCCON<1>).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 18-6: UxSCINT: UARTx SMART CARD INTERRUPT REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |                        |                        |       |     |       |       |
|--------|-----|------------------------|------------------------|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  | U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —      | —   | RXRPTIF <sup>(2)</sup> | TXRPTIF <sup>(2)</sup> | —     | —   | WTCIF | GTCIF |
| bit 15 |     |                        |                        | bit 8 |     |       |       |

|       |                      |                        |                        |       |     |       |       |
|-------|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| U-0   | R/W-0                | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  | U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | PARIE <sup>(2)</sup> | RXRPTIE <sup>(2)</sup> | TXRPTIE <sup>(2)</sup> | —     | —   | WTCIE | GTCIE |
| bit 7 |                      |                        |                        | bit 0 |     |       |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13 **RXRPTIF:** Receive Repeat Interrupt Flag bit<sup>(2)</sup>

1 = Parity error has persisted after the same character has been received five times (four retransmits)  
0 = Flag is cleared

bit 12 **TXRPTIF:** Transmit Repeat Interrupt Flag bit<sup>(2)</sup>

1 = Line error has been detected after the last retransmit per TXRPT<1:0> (see [Register 18-5](#))  
0 = Flag is cleared

bit 11-10 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 9 **WTCIF:** Waiting Time Counter Interrupt Flag bit

1 = Waiting Time Counter has reached 0  
0 = Waiting Time Counter has not reached 0

bit 8 **GTCIF:** Guard Time Counter Interrupt Flag bit

1 = Guard Time Counter has reached 0  
0 = Guard Time Counter has not reached 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **PARIE:** Parity Interrupt Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>

1 = An interrupt is invoked when a character is received with a parity error (see PERR (UxSTA<3>) in [Register 18-2](#) for the interrupt flag)  
0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 5 **RXRPTIE:** Receive Repeat Interrupt Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>

1 = An interrupt is invoked when a parity error has persisted after the same character has been received five times (four retransmits)  
0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 4 **TXRPTIE:** Transmit Repeat Interrupt Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>

1 = An interrupt is invoked when a line error is detected after the last retransmit per TXRPT<1:0> has been completed (see [Register 18-5](#))  
0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 3-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **WTCIE:** Waiting Time Counter Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Waiting Time Counter interrupt is enabled  
0 = Waiting Time Counter interrupt is disabled

bit 0 **GTCIE:** Guard Time Counter Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Guard Time Counter interrupt is enabled  
0 = Guard Time Counter interrupt is disabled

**Note 1:** This register is only available for UART1 and UART2.

**2:** These bits are applicable to T = 0 only, see PTRCL (UxSCCON<1>).

## 19.0 UNIVERSAL SERIAL BUS WITH ON-THE-GO SUPPORT (USB OTG)

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “*dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual*”, “**USB On-The-Go (OTG)**” (DS39721). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices contain a full-speed and low-speed compatible, On-The-Go (OTG) USB Serial Interface Engine (SIE). The OTG capability allows the device to act either as a USB peripheral device or as a USB embedded host with limited host capabilities. The OTG capability allows the device to dynamically switch from device to host operation using OTG’s Host Negotiation Protocol (HNP).

For more details on OTG operation, refer to the “*On-The-Go Supplement*” to the “*USB 2.0 Specification*”, published by the USB-IF. For more details on USB operation, refer to the “*Universal Serial Bus Specification*”, v2.0.

The USB OTG module offers these features:

- USB functionality in Device and Host modes, and OTG capabilities for application-controlled mode switching
- Software-selectable module speeds of full speed (12 Mbps) or low speed (1.5 Mbps, available in Host mode only)
- Support for all four USB transfer types: control, interrupt, bulk and isochronous
- Sixteen bidirectional endpoints for a total of 32 unique endpoints
- DMA interface for data RAM access
- Queues up to sixteen unique endpoint transfers without servicing
- Integrated, on-chip USB transceiver
- Integrated VBUS generation with on-chip comparators and boost generation
- Configurations for on-chip bus pull-up and pull-down resistors

A simplified block diagram of the USB OTG module is shown in [Figure 19-1](#).

The USB OTG module can function as a USB peripheral device or as a USB host, and may dynamically switch between Device and Host modes under software control. In either mode, the same data paths and Buffer Descriptors (BDs) are used for the transmission and reception of data.

In discussing USB operation, this section will use a controller-centric nomenclature for describing the direction of the data transfer between the microcontroller and the USB. RX (Receive) will be used to describe transfers that move data from the USB to the microcontroller and TX (Transmit) will be used to describe transfers that move data from the microcontroller to the USB. [Table 19-1](#) shows the relationship between data direction in this nomenclature and the USB tokens exchanged.

**TABLE 19-1: CONTROLLER-CENTRIC DATA DIRECTION FOR USB HOST OR TARGET**

| USB Mode | Direction    |              |
|----------|--------------|--------------|
|          | RX           | TX           |
| Device   | OUT or SETUP | IN           |
| Host     | IN           | OUT or SETUP |

This chapter presents the most basic operations needed to implement USB OTG functionality in an application. A complete and detailed discussion of the USB protocol and its OTG supplement are beyond the scope of this data sheet. It is assumed that the user already has a basic understanding of USB architecture and the latest version of the protocol.

Not all steps for proper USB operation (such as device enumeration) are presented here. It is recommended that application developers use an appropriate device driver to implement all of the necessary features. Microchip provides a number of application-specific resources, such as USB firmware and driver support. Refer to [www.microchip.com/usb](http://www.microchip.com/usb) for the latest firmware and driver support.

---

|  |
|--|
|  |
|--|



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 19.1 Hardware Configuration

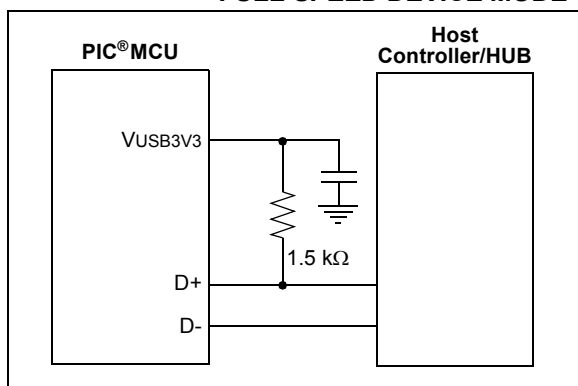
### 19.1.1 DEVICE MODE

#### 19.1.1.1 D+ Pull-up Resistor

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices have a built-in 1.5 k $\Omega$  resistor on the D+ line that is available when the microcontroller is operating in Device mode. This is used to signal an external host that the device is operating in Full-Speed Device mode. It is engaged by setting the USBEN bit (U1CON<0>). If the OTGEN bit (U1OTGCON<2>) is set, then the D+ pull-up is enabled through the DPPULUP bit (U1OTGCON<7>).

Alternatively, an external resistor may be used on D+, as shown in [Figure 19-2](#).

**FIGURE 19-2: EXTERNAL PULL-UP FOR FULL-SPEED DEVICE MODE**



#### 19.1.1.2 Power Modes

Many USB applications will likely have several different sets of power requirements and configuration. The most common power modes encountered are:

- Bus Power Only mode
- Self-Power Only mode
- Dual Power with Self-Power Dominance mode

Bus Power Only mode ([Figure 19-3](#)) is effectively the simplest method. All power for the application is drawn from the USB.

To meet the inrush current requirements of the “USB 2.0 Specification”, the total effective capacitance appearing across VBUS and ground must be no more than 10  $\mu$ F.

In the USB Suspend mode, devices must consume no more than 2.5 mA from the 5V VBUS line of the USB cable. During the USB Suspend mode, the D+ or D- pull-up resistor must remain active, which will consume some of the allowed suspend current.

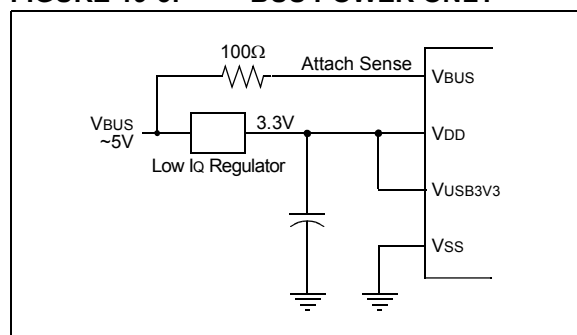
In Self-Power Only mode ([Figure 19-4](#)), the USB application provides its own power, with very little power being pulled from the USB. Note that an attach indication is added to indicate when the USB has been connected and the host is actively powering VBUS.

To meet compliance specifications, the USB module (and the D+ or D- pull-up resistor) should not be enabled until the host actively drives VBUS high. One of the 5.5V tolerant I/O pins may be used for this purpose.

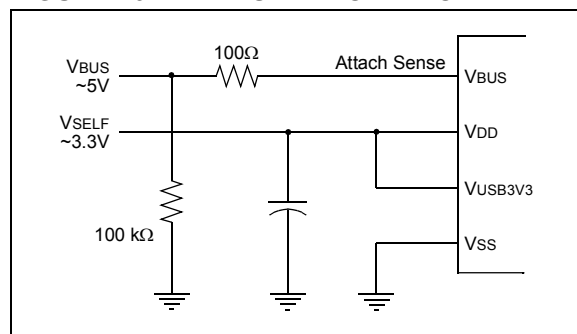
The application should never source any current onto the 5V VBUS pin of the USB cable.

The Dual Power with Self-Power Dominance mode ([Figure 19-5](#)) allows the application to use internal power primarily, but switch to power from the USB when no internal power is available. Dual power devices must also meet all of the special requirements for inrush current and Suspend mode current previously described, and must not enable the USB module until VBUS is driven high.

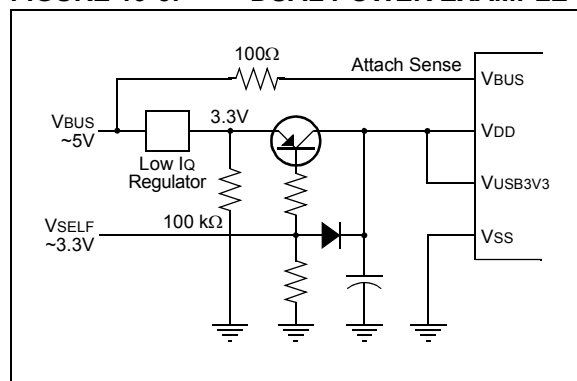
**FIGURE 19-3: BUS POWER ONLY**



**FIGURE 19-4: SELF-POWER ONLY**



**FIGURE 19-5: DUAL POWER EXAMPLE**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 19.1.2 HOST AND OTG MODES

### 19.1.2.1 D+ and D- Pull-Down Resistors

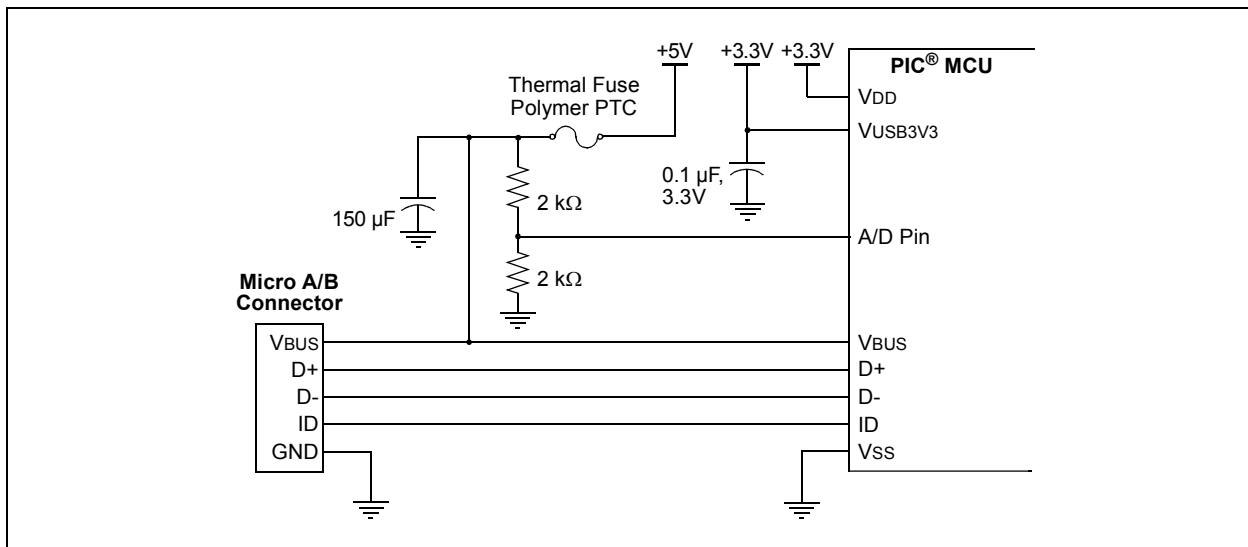
PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices have a built-in 15 k $\Omega$  pull-down resistor on the D+ and D- lines. These are used in tandem to signal to the bus that the microcontroller is operating in Host mode. They are engaged by setting the HOSTEN bit (U1CON<3>). If the OTGEN bit (U1OTGCON<2>) is set, then these pull-downs are enabled by setting the DPPULDWN and DMPULDWN bits (U1OTGCON<5:4>).

### 19.1.2.2 Power Configurations

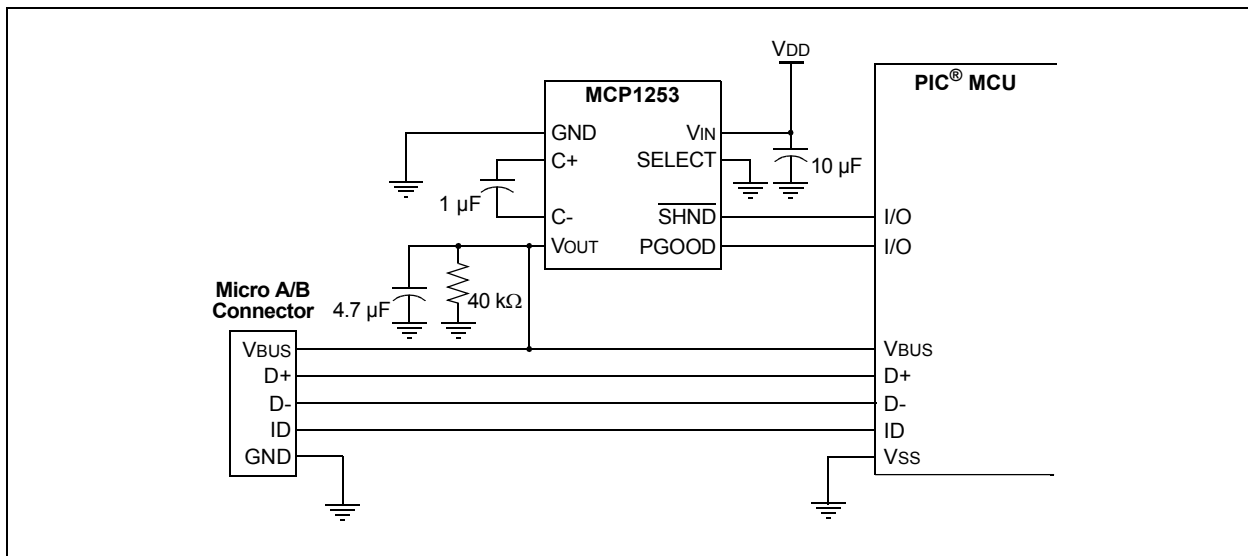
In Host mode, as well as Host mode in On-The-Go operation, the “*USB 2.0 Specification*” requires that the host application should supply power on VBUS. Since the microcontroller is running below VBUS, and is not able to source sufficient current, a separate power supply must be provided.

When the application is always operating in Host mode, a simple circuit can be used to supply VBUS and regulate current on the bus (Figure 19-6). For OTG operation, it is necessary to be able to turn VBUS on or off as needed, as the microcontroller switches between Device and Host modes. A typical example using an external charge pump is shown in Figure 19-7.

**FIGURE 19-6: USB HOST INTERFACE EXAMPLE**



**FIGURE 19-7: USB OTG INTERFACE EXAMPLE**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 19.1.2.3 VBUS Voltage Generation with External Devices

When operating as a USB host, either as an A-device in an OTG configuration or as an embedded host, VBUS must be supplied to the attached device. PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices have an internal VBUS boost assist to help generate the required 5V VBUS from the available voltages on the board. This is comprised of a simple PWM output to control a Switch mode power supply, and built-in comparators to monitor output voltage and limit current.

To enable voltage generation:

1. Verify that the USB module is powered (U1PWRC<0> = 1) and that the VBUS discharge is disabled (U1OTGCON<0> = 0).
2. Select the desired target voltage using the VBUSCHG bit (U1OTGCON<1>).
3. Enable the VBUS generation circuit (U1OTGCON<3> = 1).

**Note:** This section describes the general process for VBUS voltage generation and control. Please refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual” for additional examples.

## 19.1.3 CALCULATING TRANSCEIVER POWER REQUIREMENTS

The USB transceiver consumes a variable amount of current depending on the characteristic impedance of the USB cable, the length of the cable, the VUSB3V3 supply voltage and the actual data patterns moving across the USB cable. Longer cables have larger capacitances and consume more total energy when switching output states. The total transceiver current consumption will be application-specific. [Equation 19-1](#) can help estimate how much current actually may be required in full-speed applications.

Refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “**USB On-The-Go (OTG)**” (DS39721) for a complete discussion on transceiver power consumption.

## EQUATION 19-1: ESTIMATING USB TRANSCEIVER CURRENT CONSUMPTION

$$I_{XCVR} = \frac{40 \text{ mA} \cdot V_{USB3V3} \cdot P_{ZERO} \cdot P_{IN} \cdot L_{CABLE}}{3.3V \cdot 5m} + I_{PULLUP}$$

**Legend:**  $V_{USB3V3}$  – Voltage applied to the VUSB3V3 pin in volts (3.0V to 3.6V).

$P_{ZERO}$  – Percentage (in decimal) of the IN traffic bits sent by the PIC<sup>®</sup> microcontroller that are a value of ‘0’.

$P_{IN}$  – Percentage (in decimal) of total bus bandwidth that is used for In traffic.

$L_{CABLE}$  – Length (in meters) of the USB cable. The “USB 2.0 Specification” requires that full-speed applications use cables no longer than 5m.

$I_{PULLUP}$  – Current which the nominal, 1.5 k $\Omega$  pull-up resistor (when enabled) must supply to the USB cable.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 19.2 USB Buffer Descriptors and the BDT

Endpoint buffer control is handled through a structure called the Buffer Descriptor Table (BDT). This provides a flexible method for users to construct and control endpoint buffers of various lengths and configurations.

The BDT can be located in any available, 512-byte aligned block of data RAM. The BDT Pointer (U1BDTP1) contains the upper address byte of the BDT and sets the location of the BDT in RAM. The user must set this pointer to indicate the table's location.

The BDT is composed of Buffer Descriptors (BDs) which are used to define and control the actual buffers in the USB RAM space. Each BD consists of two, 16-bit "soft" (non-fixed address) registers, BDnSTAT and BDnADR, where n represents one of the 64 possible BDs (range of 0 to 63). BDnSTAT is the status register for BDn, while BDnADR specifies the starting address for the buffer associated with BDn.

**Note:** Since BDnADR is a 16-bit register, only the first 64 Kbytes of RAM can be accessed by the USB module.

Depending on the endpoint buffering configuration used, there are up to 64 sets of Buffer Descriptors, for a total of 256 bytes. At a minimum, the BDT must be at least 8 bytes long. This is because the "USB 2.0 Specification" mandates that every device must have Endpoint 0 with both input and output for initial setup.

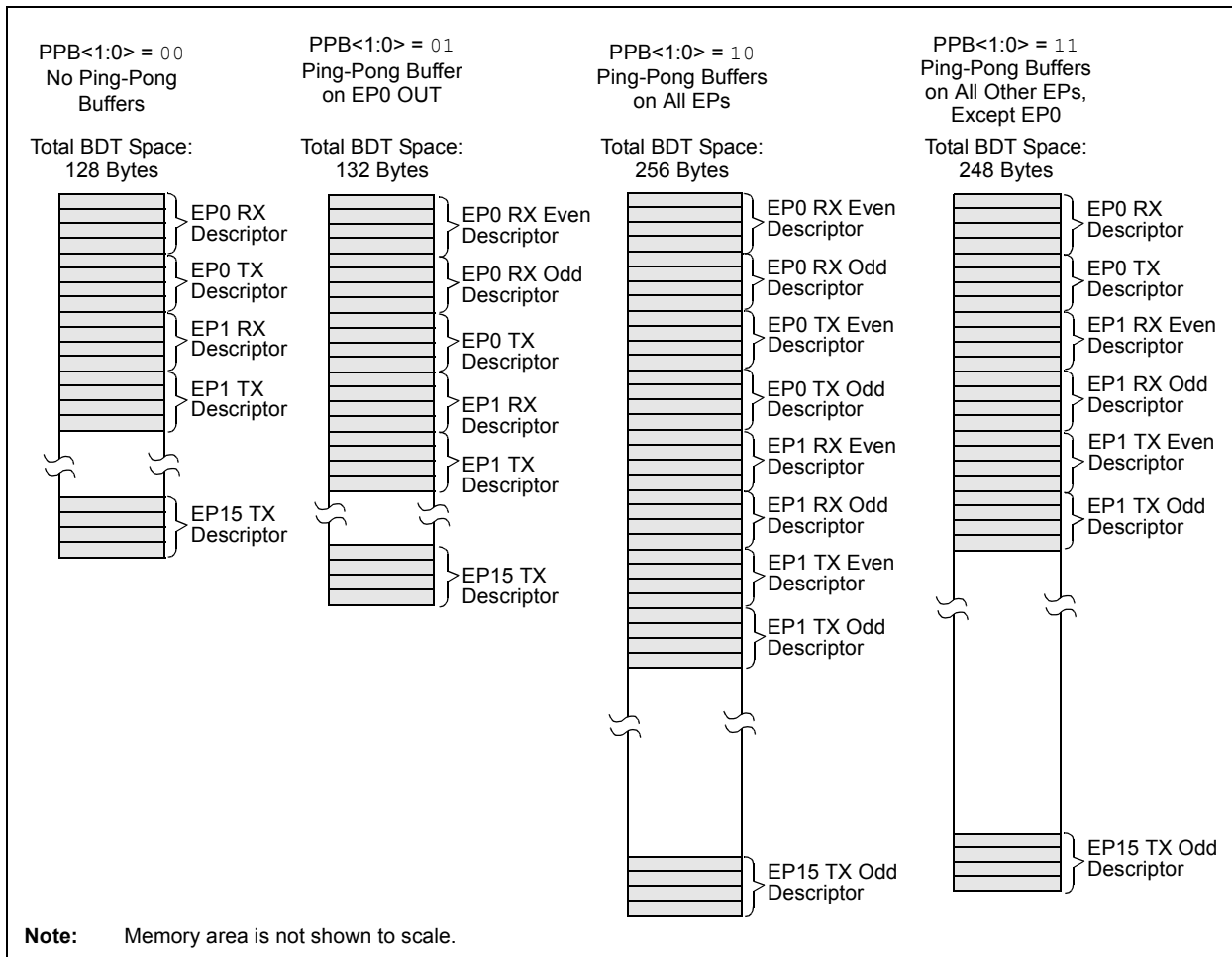
Endpoint mapping in the BDT is dependent on three variables:

- Endpoint number (0 to 15)
- Endpoint direction (RX or TX)
- Ping-pong settings (U1CNFG1<1:0>)

Figure 19-8 illustrates how these variables are used to map endpoints in the BDT.

In Host mode, only Endpoint 0 Buffer Descriptors are used. All transfers utilize the Endpoint 0 Buffer Descriptor and USB Endpoint Control register (U1EP0). For received packets, the attached device's source endpoint is indicated by the value of ENDPT<3:0> in the USB Status register (U1STAT<7:4>). For transmitted packets, the attached device's destination endpoint is indicated by the value written to the USB Token register (U1TOK).

**FIGURE 19-8: BDT MAPPING FOR ENDPOINT BUFFERING MODES**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

BDs have a fixed relationship to a particular endpoint, depending on the buffering configuration. [Table 19-2](#) provides the mapping of BDs to endpoints. This relationship also means that gaps may occur in the BDT if endpoints are not enabled contiguously. This, theoretically, means that the BDs for disabled endpoints could be used as buffer space. In practice, users should avoid using such spaces in the BDT unless a method of validating BD addresses is implemented.

## 19.2.1 BUFFER OWNERSHIP

Because the buffers and their BDs are shared between the CPU and the USB module, a simple semaphore mechanism is used to distinguish which is allowed to update the BD and associated buffers in memory. This is done by using the UOWN bit as a semaphore to distinguish which is allowed to update the BD and associated buffers in memory. UOWN is the only bit that is shared between the two configurations of BDnSTAT.

When UOWN is clear, the BD entry is “owned” by the microcontroller core. When the UOWN bit is set, the BD entry and the buffer memory are “owned” by the USB peripheral. The core should not modify the BD or its

corresponding data buffer during this time. Note that the microcontroller core can still read BDnSTAT while the SIE owns the buffer and vice versa.

The Buffer Descriptors have a different meaning based on the source of the register update. [Register 19-1](#) and [Register 19-2](#) show the differences in BDnSTAT depending on its current “ownership”.

When UOWN is set, the user can no longer depend on the values that were written to the BDs. From this point, the USB module updates the BDs as necessary, overwriting the original BD values. The BDnSTAT register is updated by the SIE with the token PID and the transfer count is updated.

## 19.2.2 DMA INTERFACE

The USB OTG module uses a dedicated DMA to access both the BDT and the endpoint data buffers. Since part of the address space of the DMA is dedicated to the Buffer Descriptors, a portion of the memory connected to the DMA must comprise a contiguous address space, properly mapped for the access by the module.

**TABLE 19-2: ASSIGNMENT OF BUFFER DESCRIPTORS FOR THE DIFFERENT BUFFERING MODES**

| Endpoint | BDs Assigned to Endpoint |    |                                  |    |                                  |                |  |                |
|----------|--------------------------|----|----------------------------------|----|----------------------------------|----------------|--|----------------|
|          | Mode 0<br>(No Ping-Pong) |    | Mode 1<br>(Ping-Pong on EP0 OUT) |    | Mode 2<br>(Ping-Pong on all EPs) |                | Mode 3<br>(Ping-Pong on All Other EPs, Except EP0) |                |
|          | Out                      | In | Out                              | In | Out                              | In             | Out  | In             |
| 0        | 0                        | 1  | 0 (E), 1 (O)                     | 2  | 0 (E), 1 (O)                     | 2 (E), 3 (O)   | 0  | 1              |
| 1        | 2                        | 3  | 3                                | 4  | 4 (E), 5 (O)                     | 6 (E), 7 (O)   | 2 (E), 3 (O)                                       | 4 (E), 5 (O)   |
| 2        | 4                        | 5  | 5                                | 6  | 8 (E), 9 (O)                     | 10 (E), 11 (O) | 6 (E), 7 (O)                                       | 8 (E), 9 (O)   |
| 3        | 6                        | 7  | 7                                | 8  | 12 (E), 13 (O)                   | 14 (E), 15 (O) | 10 (E), 11 (O)                                     | 12 (E), 13 (O) |
| 4        | 8                        | 9  | 9                                | 10 | 16 (E), 17 (O)                   | 18 (E), 19 (O) | 14 (E), 15 (O)                                     | 16 (E), 17 (O) |
| 5        | 10                       | 11 | 11                               | 12 | 20 (E), 21 (O)                   | 22 (E), 23 (O) | 18 (E), 19 (O)                                     | 20 (E), 21 (O) |
| 6        | 12                       | 13 | 13                               | 14 | 24 (E), 25 (O)                   | 26 (E), 27 (O) | 22 (E), 23 (O)                                     | 24 (E), 25 (O) |
| 7        | 14                       | 15 | 15                               | 16 | 28 (E), 29 (O)                   | 30 (E), 31 (O) | 26 (E), 27 (O)                                     | 28 (E), 29 (O) |
| 8        | 16                       | 17 | 17                               | 18 | 32 (E), 33 (O)                   | 34 (E), 35 (O) | 30 (E), 31 (O)                                     | 32 (E), 33 (O) |
| 9        | 18                       | 19 | 19                               | 20 | 36 (E), 37 (O)                   | 38 (E), 39 (O) | 34 (E), 35 (O)                                     | 36 (E), 37 (O) |
| 10       | 20                       | 21 | 21                               | 22 | 40 (E), 41 (O)                   | 42 (E), 43 (O) | 38 (E), 39 (O)                                     | 40 (E), 41 (O) |
| 11       | 22                       | 23 | 23                               | 24 | 44 (E), 45 (O)                   | 46 (E), 47 (O) | 42 (E), 43 (O)                                     | 44 (E), 45 (O) |
| 12       | 24                       | 25 | 25                               | 26 | 48 (E), 49 (O)                   | 50 (E), 51 (O) | 46 (E), 47 (O)                                     | 48 (E), 49 (O) |
| 13       | 26                       | 27 | 27                               | 28 | 52 (E), 53 (O)                   | 54 (E), 55 (O) | 50 (E), 51 (O)                                     | 52 (E), 53 (O) |
| 14       | 28                       | 29 | 29                               | 30 | 56 (E), 57 (O)                   | 58 (E), 59 (O) | 54 (E), 55 (O)                                     | 56 (E), 57 (O) |
| 15       | 30                       | 31 | 31                               | 32 | 60 (E), 61 (O)                   | 62 (E), 63 (O) | 58 (E), 59 (O)                                     | 60 (E), 61 (O) |

**Legend:** (E) = Even transaction buffer, (O) = Odd transaction buffer

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 19-1: BDnSTAT: BUFFER DESCRIPTOR n STATUS REGISTER PROTOTYPE, USB MODE (BD0STAT THROUGH BD63STAT)**

| R/W-x  | R/W-x | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC |
|--------|-------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| UOWN   | DTS   | PID3       | PID2       | PID1       | PID0       | BC9        | BC8        |
| bit 15 |       |            |            |            |            | bit 8      |            |

| R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| BC7        | BC6        | BC5        | BC4        | BC3        | BC2        | BC1        | BC0        |
| bit 7      |            |            |            |            |            | bit 0      |            |

|                   |                                       |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit                      | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                      | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15      **UOWN:** USB Own bit  
              1 = The USB module owns the BD and its corresponding buffer; the CPU must not modify the BD or the buffer
- bit 14      **DTS:** Data Toggle Packet bit  
              1 = Data 1 packet  
              0 = Data 0 packet
- bit 13-10   **PID<3:0>:** Packet Identifier bits (written by the USB module)  
              In Device Mode:  
              Represents the PID of the received token during the last transfer.  
              In Host Mode:  
              Represents the last returned PID or the transfer status indicator.
- bit 9-0     **BC<9:0>:** Byte Count bits  
              This represents the number of bytes to be transmitted or the maximum number of bytes to be received during a transfer. Upon completion, the byte count is updated by the USB module with the actual number of bytes transmitted or received.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 19-2: BDnSTAT: BUFFER DESCRIPTOR n STATUS REGISTER PROTOTYPE,  
CPU MODE (BD0STAT THROUGH BD63STAT)**

| R/W-x  | R/W-x              | r-0 | r-0 | R/W-x | R/W-x  | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC |
|--------|--------------------|-----|-----|-------|--------|------------|------------|
| UOWN   | DTS <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | —   | DTSEN | BSTALL | BC9        | BC8        |
| bit 15 |                    |     |     | bit 8 |        |            |            |

| R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC | R/W-x, HSC |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| BC7        | BC6        | BC5        | BC4        | BC3        | BC2        | BC1        | BC0        |
| bit 7      |            |            |            | bit 0      |            |            |            |

|                   |                  |  |
|-------------------|------------------|--|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | r = Reserved bit | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit      |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'         |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set | 'r' = Reserved bit      x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15      **UOWN:** USB Own bit  
0 = The microcontroller core owns the BD and its corresponding buffer; the USB module ignores all other fields in the BD
- bit 14      **DTS:** Data Toggle Packet bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Data 1 packet  
0 = Data 0 packet
- bit 13-12      **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'
- bit 11      **DTSEN:** Data Toggle Synchronization Enable bit  
1 = Data toggle synchronization is enabled; data packets with incorrect Sync value will be ignored  
0 = No data toggle synchronization is performed
- bit 10      **BSTALL:** Buffer STALL Enable bit  
1 = Buffer STALL is enabled; STALL handshake is issued if a token is received that would use the BD in the given location (UOWN bit remains set, BD value is unchanged); corresponding EPSTALL bit will get set on any STALL handshake  
0 = Buffer STALL is disabled
- bit 9-0      **BC<9:0>:** Byte Count bits  
This represents the number of bytes to be transmitted or the maximum number of bytes to be received during a transfer. Upon completion, the byte count is updated by the USB module with the actual number of bytes transmitted or received.

**Note 1:** This bit is ignored unless DTSEN = 1.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 19.3 USB Interrupts

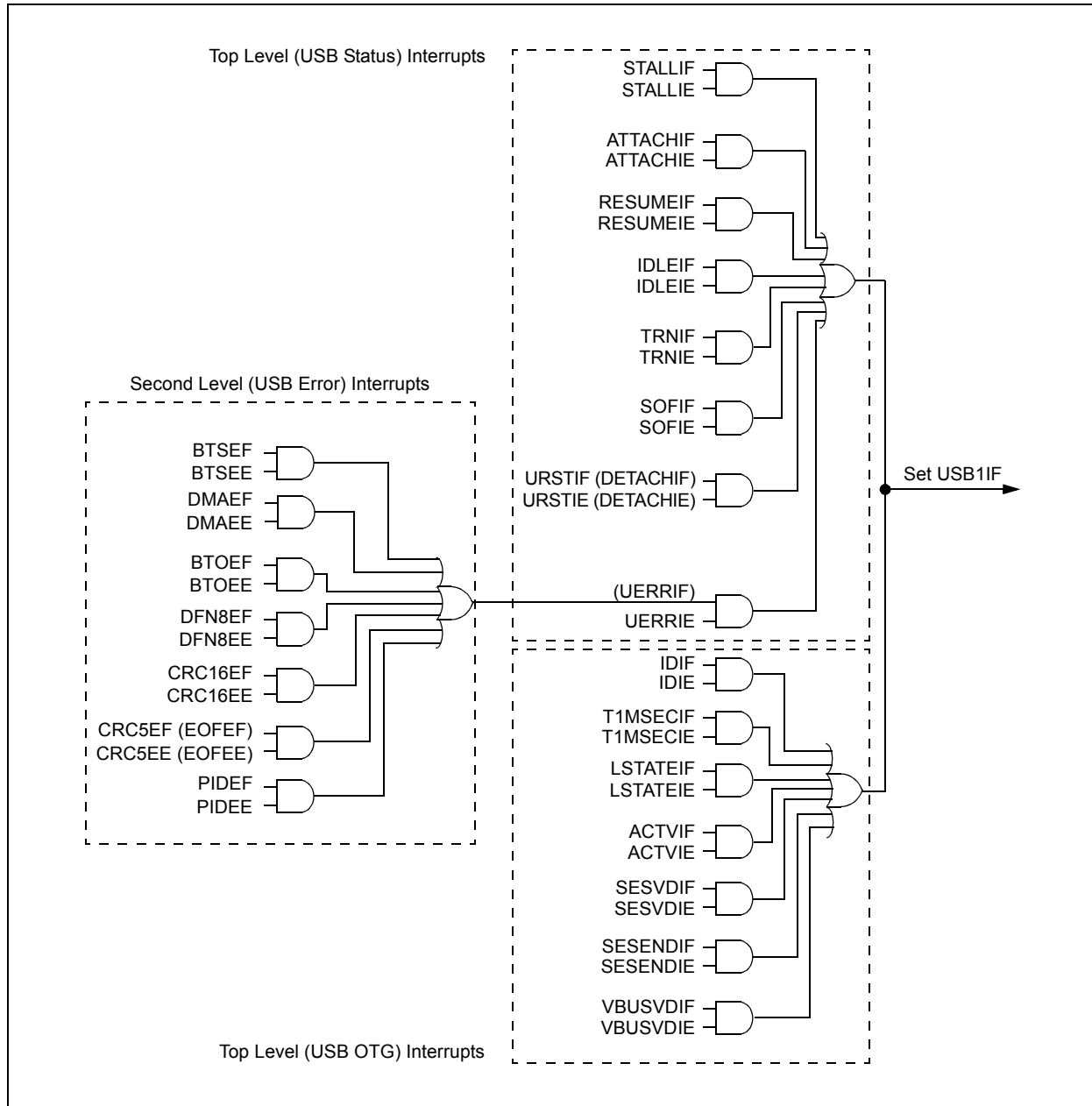
The USB OTG module has many conditions that can be configured to cause an interrupt. All interrupt sources use the same interrupt vector.

Figure 19-9 shows the interrupt logic for the USB module. There are two layers of interrupt registers in the USB module. The top level consists of overall USB status interrupts; these are enabled and flagged in the U1IE and U1IR registers, respectively. The second

level consists of USB error conditions, which are enabled and flagged in the U1EIF and U1EIE registers. An interrupt condition in any of these triggers a USB Error Interrupt Flag (UERRIF) in the top level.

Interrupts may be used to trap routine events in a USB transaction. Figure 19-10 provides some common events within a USB frame and their corresponding interrupts.

**FIGURE 19-9: USB OTG INTERRUPT FUNNEL**



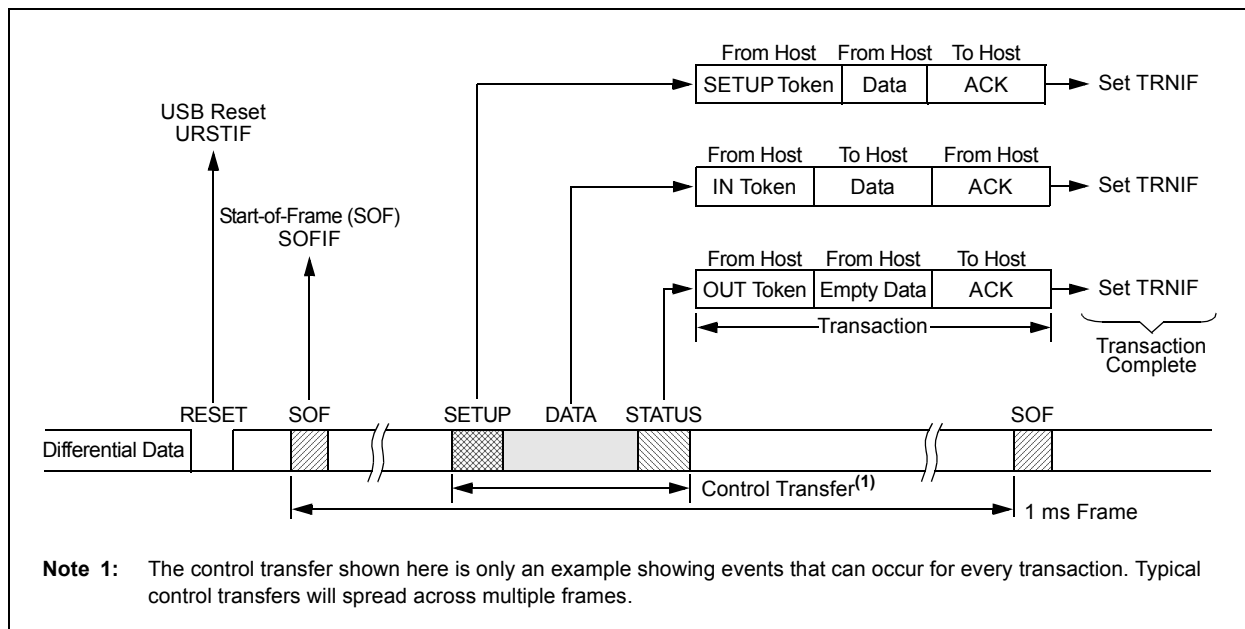
## 19.3.1 CLEARING USB OTG INTERRUPTS

Unlike device-level interrupts, the USB OTG interrupt status flags are not freely writable in software. All USB OTG flag bits are implemented as hardware settable only bits. Additionally, these bits can only be cleared in

software by writing a '1' to their locations (i.e., performing a MOV type instruction). Writing a '0' to a flag bit (i.e., a BCLR instruction) has no effect.

**Note:** Throughout this data sheet, a bit that can only be cleared by writing a '1' to its location is referred to as: "Write '1' to clear". In register descriptions, this function is indicated by the descriptor, "K".

**FIGURE 19-10: EXAMPLE OF A USB TRANSACTION AND INTERRUPT EVENTS**



## 19.4 Device Mode Operation

The following section describes how to perform a common Device mode task. In Device mode, USB transfers are performed at the transfer level. The USB module automatically performs the status phase of the transfer.

### 19.4.1 ENABLING DEVICE MODE

1. Reset the Ping-Pong Buffer Pointers by setting, then clearing, the Ping-Pong Buffer Reset bit, PPBRST (U1CON<1>).
2. Disable all interrupts (U1IE and U1EIE = 00h).
3. Clear any existing interrupt flags by writing FFh to U1IR and U1EIR.
4. Verify that VBUS is present (non-OTG devices only).
5. Enable the USB module by setting the USBEN bit (U1CON<0>).
6. Set the OTGEN bit (U1OTGCON<2>) to enable OTG operation.
7. Enable the Endpoint 0 buffer to receive the first setup packet by setting the EPRXEN and EPHSHK bits for Endpoint 0 (U1EP0<3,0> = 1).
8. Power up the USB module by setting the USBPWR bit (U1PWRC<0>).
9. Enable the D+ pull-up resistor to signal an attach by setting the DPPULUP bit (U1OTGCON<7>).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## 19.4.2 RECEIVING AN IN TOKEN IN DEVICE MODE

1. Attach to a USB host and enumerate as described in Chapter 9 of the *“USB 2.0 Specification”*.
2. Create a data buffer and populate it with the data to send to the host.
3. In the appropriate (Even or Odd) TX BD for the desired endpoint:
  - a) Set up the status register (BDnSTAT) with the correct data toggle (DATA0/1) value and the byte count of the data buffer.
  - b) Set up the address register (BDnADR) with the starting address of the data buffer.
  - c) Set the UOWN bit of the status register to ‘1’.
4. When the USB module receives an IN token, it automatically transmits the data in the buffer. Upon completion, the module updates the status register (BDnSTAT) and sets the Transfer Done Interrupt Flag, TRNIF (U1IR<3>).

## 19.4.3 RECEIVING AN OUT TOKEN IN DEVICE MODE

1. Attach to a USB host and enumerate as described in Chapter 9 of the *“USB 2.0 Specification”*.
2. Create a data buffer with the amount of data you are expecting from the host.
3. In the appropriate (Even or Odd) TX BD for the desired endpoint:
  - a) Set up the status register (BDnSTAT) with the correct data toggle (DATA0/1) value and the byte count of the data buffer.
  - b) Set up the address register (BDnADR) with the starting address of the data buffer.
  - c) Set the UOWN bit of the status register to ‘1’.
4. When the USB module receives an OUT token, it automatically receives the data sent by the host to the buffer. Upon completion, the module updates the status register (BDnSTAT) and sets the Transfer Done Interrupt Flag, TRNIF (U1IR<3>).

## 19.5 Host Mode Operation

The following sections describe how to perform common Host mode tasks. In Host mode, USB transfers are invoked explicitly by the host software. The host software is responsible for the Acknowledge portion of the transfer. Also, all transfers are performed using the USB Endpoint 0 Control register (U1EP0) and Buffer Descriptors.

### 19.5.1 ENABLE HOST MODE AND DISCOVER A CONNECTED DEVICE

1. Enable Host mode by setting the HOSTEN bit (U1CON<3>). This causes the Host mode control bits in other USB OTG registers to become available.
2. Enable the D+ and D- pull-down resistors by setting the DPPULDOWN and DMPULDOWN bits (U1OTGCON<5:4>). Disable the D+ and D-pull-up resistors by clearing the DPPULUP and DMPULUP bits (U1OTGCON<7:6>).
3. At this point, Start-of-Frame (SOF) generation begins with the SOF counter loaded with 12,000. Eliminate noise on the USB by clearing the SOFEN bit (U1CON<0>) to disable Start-of-Frame packet generation.
4. Enable the device attached interrupt by setting the ATTACHIE bit (U1IE<6>).
5. Wait for the device attached interrupt (U1IR<6> = 1). This is signaled by the USB device changing the state of D+ or D- from ‘0’ to ‘1’ (SE0 to J-state). After it occurs, wait 100 ms for the device power to stabilize.
6. Check the state of the JSTATE and SE0 bits in U1CON. If the JSTATE bit (U1CON<7>) is ‘0’, the connecting device is low speed. If the connecting device is low speed, set the LSPDEN and LSPD bits (U1ADDR<7> and U1EP0<7>, respectively) to enable low-speed operation.
7. Reset the USB device by setting the USBRST bit (U1CON<4>) for at least 50 ms, sending Reset signaling on the bus. After 50 ms, terminate the Reset by clearing USBRST.
8. In order to keep the connected device from going into suspend, enable the SOF packet generation by setting the SOFEN bit.
9. Wait 10 ms for the device to recover from Reset.
10. Perform enumeration as described by Chapter 9 of the *“USB 2.0 Specification”*.

## 19.5.2 COMPLETE A CONTROL TRANSACTION TO A CONNECTED DEVICE

1. Follow the procedure described in [Section 19.5.1 “Enable Host Mode and Discover a Connected Device”](#) to discover a device.
2. Set up the Endpoint Control register for bidirectional control transfers by writing 0Dh to U1EP0 (this sets the EPCONDIS, EPTXEN and EPHSHK bits).
3. Place a copy of the device framework setup command in a memory buffer. See Chapter 9 of the “*USB 2.0 Specification*” for information on the device framework command set.
4. Initialize the Buffer Descriptor (BD) for the current (Even or Odd) TX EP0 to transfer the eight bytes of command data for a device framework command (i.e., GET\_DEVICE\_DESCRIPTOR):
  - a) Set the BD Data Buffer Address (BD0ADR) to the starting address of the 8-byte memory buffer containing the command.
  - b) Write 8008h to BD0STAT (this sets the UOWN bit and sets a byte count of 8).
5. Set the USB device address of the target device in the USB Address register (U1ADDR<6:0>). After a USB bus Reset, the device USB address will be zero. After enumeration, it will be set to another value, between 1 and 127.
6. Write D0h to U1TOK; this is a SETUP token to Endpoint 0, the target device's default control pipe. This initiates a SETUP token on the bus, followed by a data packet. The device handshake is returned in the PID field of BD0STAT after the packets are complete. When the USB module updates BD0STAT, a Transfer Done Interrupt Flag is asserted (the TRNIF flag is set). This completes the setup phase of the setup transaction, as referenced in Chapter 9 of the “*USB 2.0 Specification*”.
7. To initiate the data phase of the setup transaction (i.e., get the data for the GET\_DEVICE\_DESCRIPTOR command), set up a buffer in memory to store the received data.

8. Initialize the current (Even or Odd) RX or TX (RX for IN, TX for OUT) EP0 BD to transfer the data.
  - a) Write C040h to BD0STAT. This sets the UOWN, configures Data Toggle Packet (DTS) to DATA1 and sets the byte count to the length of the data buffer (64 or 40h in this case).
  - b) Set BD0ADR to the starting address of the data buffer.
9. Write the USB Token register with the appropriate IN or OUT token to Endpoint 0, the target device's default control pipe (e.g., write 90h to U1TOK for an IN token for a GET\_DEVICE\_DESCRIPTOR command). This initiates an IN token on the bus, followed by a data packet from the device to the host. When the data packet completes, the BD0STAT is written and a Transfer Done Interrupt Flag is asserted (the TRNIF flag is set). For control transfers with a single packet data phase, this completes the data phase of the setup transaction, as referenced in Chapter 9 of the “*USB 2.0 Specification*”. If more data needs to be transferred, return to Step 8.
10. To initiate the status phase of the setup transaction, set up a buffer in memory to receive or send the zero length status phase data packet.
11. Initialize the current (Even or Odd) TX EP0 BD to transfer the status data:
  - a) Set the BDT buffer address field to the starting address of the data buffer.
  - b) Write 8000h to BD0STAT (set UOWN bit, configure DTS to DATA0 and set byte count to 0).
12. Write the USB Token register with the appropriate IN or OUT token to Endpoint 0, the target device's default control pipe (e.g., write 01h to U1TOK for an OUT token for a GET\_DEVICE\_DESCRIPTOR command). This initiates an OUT token on the bus, followed by a zero length data packet from the host to the device. When the data packet completes, the BD is updated with the handshake from the device and a Transfer Done interrupt Flag is asserted (the TRNIF flag is set). This completes the status phase of the setup transaction as described in Chapter 9 of the “*USB 2.0 Specification*”.

**Note:** Only one control transaction can be performed per frame.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 19.5.3 SEND A FULL-SPEED BULK DATA TRANSFER TO A TARGET DEVICE

1. Follow the procedure described in [Section 19.5.1 “Enable Host Mode and Discover a Connected Device”](#) and [Section 19.5.2 “Complete a Control Transaction to a Connected Device”](#) to discover and configure a device.
2. To enable transmit and receive transfers with handshaking enabled, write 1Dh to U1EP0. If the target device is a low-speed device, also set the LSPD (U1EP0<7>) bit. If you want the hardware to automatically retry indefinitely, if the target device asserts a NAK on the transfer, clear the Retry Disable bit, RETRYDIS (U1EP0<6>).
3. Set up the BD for the current (Even or Odd) TX EP0 to transfer up to 64 bytes.
4. Set the USB device address of the target device in the USB Address register (U1ADDR<6:0>).
5. Write an OUT token to the desired endpoint to U1TOK. This triggers the module's transmit state machines to begin transmitting the token and the data.
6. Wait for the Transfer Done Interrupt Flag, TRNIF. This indicates that the BD has been released back to the microprocessor and the transfer has completed. If the Retry Disable bit (RETRYDIS) is set, the handshake (ACK, NAK, STALL or ERROR (0Fh)) is returned in the BD PID field. If a STALL interrupt occurs, the pending packet must be dequeued and the error condition in the target device cleared. If a detach interrupt occurs (SE0 for more than 2.5  $\mu$ s), then the target has detached (U1IR<0> is set).
7. Once the Transfer Done Interrupt Flag occurs (TRNIF is set), the BD can be examined and the next data packet queued by returning to Step 2.

**Note:** USB speed, transceiver and pull-ups should only be configured during the module setup phase. It is not recommended to change these settings while the module is enabled.

## 19.6 OTG Operation

### 19.6.1 SESSION REQUEST PROTOCOL (SRP)

An OTG A-device may decide to power down the VBUS supply when it is not using the USB link through the Session Request Protocol (SRP). Software may do this by clearing VBUSON (U1OTGCON<3>). When the VBUS supply is powered down, the A-device is said to have ended a USB session.

An OTG A-device or embedded host may repower the VBUS supply at any time (initiate a new session). An OTG B-device may also request that the OTG A-device repower the VBUS supply (initiate a new session). This is accomplished via the Session Request Protocol (SRP).

Prior to requesting a new session, the B-device must first check that the previous session has definitely ended. To do this, the B-device must check for two conditions:

1. VBUS supply is below the session valid voltage.
2. Both D+ and D- have been low for at least 2 ms.

The B-device will be notified of Condition 1 by the SESENDIF (U1OTGIR<2>) interrupt. Software will have to manually check for Condition 2.

**Note:** When the A-device powers down the VBUS supply, the B-device must disconnect its pull-up resistor from power. If the device is self-powered, it can do this by clearing DPPULUP (U1OTGCON<7>) and DMPULUP (U1OTGCON<6>).

The B-device may aid in achieving Condition 1 by discharging the VBUS supply through a resistor. Software may do this by setting VBUSDIS (U1OTGCON<0>).

After these initial conditions are met, the B-device may begin requesting the new session. The B-device begins by pulsing the D+ data line. Software should do this by setting DPPULUP (U1OTGCON<7>). The data line should be held high for 5 to 10 ms.

The B-device then proceeds by pulsing the VBUS supply. Software should do this by setting PUVBUS (U1CNFG2<4>). When an A-device detects SRP signaling (either via the ATTACHIF (U1IR<6>) interrupt or via the SESVDIF (U1OTGIR<3>) interrupt), the A-device must restore the VBUS supply by either setting VBUSON (U1OTGCON<3>) or by setting the I/O port controlling the external power source.

The B-device should not monitor the state of the VBUS supply while performing VBUS supply pulsing. When the B-device does detect that the VBUS supply has been restored (via the SESVDIF (U1OTGIR<3>) interrupt), the B-device must reconnect to the USB link by pulling up D+ or D- (via the DPPULUP or DMPULUP bits).

The A-device must complete the SRP by driving USB Reset signaling.

## 19.6.2 HOST NEGOTIATION PROTOCOL (HNP)

In USB OTG applications, a Dual Role Device (DRD) is a device that is capable of being either a host or a peripheral. Any OTG DRD must support Host Negotiation Protocol (HNP).

HNP allows an OTG B-device to temporarily become the USB host. The A-device must first enable the B-device to follow HNP. Refer to the “*On-The-Go Supplement*” to the “*USB 2.0 Specification*” for more information regarding HNP. HNP may only be initiated at full speed.

After being enabled for HNP by the A-device, the B-device requests being the host any time that the USB link is in suspend state by simply indicating a disconnect. This can be done in software by clearing DPPULUP and DMPULUP. When the A-device detects the disconnect condition (via the URSTIF (U1IR<0>) interrupt), the A-device may allow the B-device to take over as host. The A-device does this by signaling connect as a full-speed function. Software may accomplish this by setting DPPULUP.

If the A-device responds instead with resume signaling, the A-device remains as host. When the B-device detects the connect condition (via ATTACHIF), the B-device becomes host. The B-device drives Reset signaling prior to using the bus.

When the B-device has finished in its role as host, it stops all bus activity and turns on its D+ pull-up resistor by setting DPPULUP. When the A-device detects a suspend condition (Idle for 3 ms), the A-device turns off its D+ pull-up. The A-device may also power down the VBUS supply to end the session. When the A-device detects the connect condition (via ATTACHIF), the A-device resumes host operation and drives Reset signaling.

## 19.7 USB OTG Module Registers

There are a total of 37 memory-mapped registers associated with the USB OTG module. They can be divided into four general categories:

- USB OTG Module Control (12)
- USB Interrupt (7)
- USB Endpoint Management (16)
- USB Vbus Power Control (2)

This total does not include the (up to) 128 BD registers in the BDT. Their prototypes, described in [Register 19-1](#) and [Register 19-2](#), are shown separately in [Section 19.2 “USB Buffer Descriptors and the BDT”](#).

All USB OTG registers are implemented in the Least Significant Byte of the register. Bits in the upper byte are unimplemented and have no function. Note that some registers are instantiated only in Host mode, while other registers have different bit instantiations and functions in Device and Host modes.

The registers described in the following sections are those that have bits with specific control and configuration features. The following registers are used for data or address values only:

- U1BDTP1: Specifies the 256-word page in data RAM used for the BDT; 8-bit value with bit 0 fixed as ‘0’ for boundary alignment.
- U1FRML and U1FRMH: Contain the 11-bit byte counter for the current data frame.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 19.7.1 USB OTG MODULE CONTROL REGISTERS

### REGISTER 19-3: U1OTGSTAT: USB OTG STATUS REGISTER (HOST MODE ONLY)

|        |     |     |     |       |     |     |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| bit 15 |     |     |     | bit 8 |     |     |     |

|          |     |          |     |          |          |     |          |
|----------|-----|----------|-----|----------|----------|-----|----------|
| R-0, HSC | U-0 | R-0, HSC | U-0 | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | U-0 | R-0, HSC |
| ID       | —   | LSTATE   | —   | SESVD    | SESEND   | —   | VBUSVD   |
| bit 7    |     |          |     | bit 0    |          |     |          |

|                   |                                    |  |                                       |  |                    |  |  |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|--|--------------------|--|--|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |  |                                       |  |                    |  |  |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit                   |  | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |  |                    |  |  |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                   |  | '0' = Bit is cleared                  |  | x = Bit is unknown |  |  |

- bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 7 **ID:** ID Pin State Indicator bit  
 1 = No plug is attached or a Type B cable has been plugged into the USB receptacle  
 0 = A Type A plug has been plugged into the USB receptacle
- bit 6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5 **LSTATE:** Line State Stable Indicator bit  
 1 = The USB line state (as defined by SE0 and JSTATE) has been stable for the previous 1 ms  
 0 = The USB line state has not been stable for the previous 1 ms
- bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 3 **SESVD:** Session Valid Indicator bit  
 1 = The VBUS voltage is above VA\_SESS\_VLD (as defined in the “USB 2.0 Specification”) on the A or B-device  
 0 = The VBUS voltage is below VA\_SESS\_VLD on the A or B-device
- bit 2 **SESEND:** B Session End Indicator bit  
 1 = The VBUS voltage is below VB\_SESS\_END (as defined in the “USB 2.0 Specification”) on the B-device  
 0 = The VBUS voltage is above VB\_SESS\_END on the B-device
- bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 0 **VBUSVD:** A VBUS Valid Indicator bit  
 1 = The VBUS voltage is above VA\_VBUS\_VLD (as defined in the “USB 2.0 Specification”) on the A-device  
 0 = The VBUS voltage is below VA\_VBUS\_VLD on the A-device

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 19-4: U1OTGCON: USB OTG CONTROL REGISTER**

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|         |         |                          |                          |                       |                      |                        |                        |
|---------|---------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0                    | R/W-0                    | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  |
| DPPULUP | DMPULUP | DPPULDOWN <sup>(1)</sup> | DMPULDOWN <sup>(1)</sup> | VBUSON <sup>(1)</sup> | OTGEN <sup>(1)</sup> | VBUSCHG <sup>(1)</sup> | VBUSDIS <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7   |         |                          |                          |                       |                      |                        | bit 0                  |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7 **DPPULUP:** D+ Pull-up Enable bit

1 = D+ data line pull-up resistor is enabled

0 = D+ data line pull-up resistor is disabled

bit 6 **DMPULUP:** D- Pull-up Enable bit

1 = D- data line pull-up resistor is enabled

0 = D- data line pull-up resistor is disabled

bit 5 **DPPULDOWN:** D+ Pull-Down Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = D+ data line pull-down resistor is enabled

0 = D+ data line pull-down resistor is disabled

bit 4 **DMPULDOWN:** D- Pull-Down Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = D- data line pull-down resistor is enabled

0 = D- data line pull-down resistor is disabled

bit 3 **VBUSON:** VBUS Power-on bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = VBUS line is powered

0 = VBUS line is not powered

bit 2 **OTGEN:** OTG Features Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = USB OTG is enabled; all D+/D- pull-up and pull-down bits are enabled

0 = USB OTG is disabled; D+/D- pull-up and pull-down bits are controlled in hardware by the settings of the HOSTEN and USBEN (U1CON<3,0>) bits

bit 1 **VBUSCHG:** VBUS Charge Select bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = VBUS line is set to charge to 3.3V

0 = VBUS line is set to charge to 5V

bit 0 **VBUSDIS:** VBUS Discharge Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = VBUS line is discharged through a resistor

0 = VBUS line is not discharged

**Note 1:** These bits are only used in Host mode; do not use in Device mode.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-5: U1PWRC: USB POWER CONTROL REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|           |     |     |         |     |     |           |        |
|-----------|-----|-----|---------|-----|-----|-----------|--------|
| R/W-0, HS | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0, HC | R/W-0  |
| UACTPND   | —   | —   | USLPGRD | —   | —   | USUSPND   | USBPWR |
| bit 7     |     |     |         |     |     |           | bit 0  |

|                   |                            |                                    |
|-------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HS = Hardware Settable bit | HC = Hardware Clearable bit        |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit           | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set           | '0' = Bit is cleared               |
|                   |                            | x = Bit is unknown                 |

- bit 15-8      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 7      **UACTPND:** USB Activity Pending bit  
1 = Module should not be suspended at the moment (requires the USLPGRD bit to be set)  
0 = Module may be suspended or powered down
- bit 6-5      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 4      **USLPGRD:** USB Sleep/Suspend Guard bit  
1 = Indicates to the USB module that it is about to be suspended or powered down  
0 = No suspend
- bit 3-2      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 1      **USUSPND:** USB Suspend Mode Enable bit  
1 = USB OTG module is in Suspend mode; USB clock is gated and the transceiver is placed in a low-power state  
0 = Normal USB OTG operation
- bit 0      **USBPWR:** USB Operation Enable bit  
1 = USB OTG module is enabled  
0 = USB OTG module is disabled<sup>(1)</sup>

**Note 1:** Do not clear this bit unless the HOSTEN, USBEN and OTGEN bits (U1CON<3,0> and U1OTGCON<2>) are all cleared.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-6: U1STAT: USB STATUS REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|          |          |          |          |          |                     |     |       |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------------------|-----|-------|
| R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC            | U-0 | U-0   |
| ENDPT3   | ENDPT2   | ENDPT1   | ENDPT0   | DIR      | PPBI <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | —     |
| bit 7    |          |          |          |          |                     |     | bit 0 |

|                   |                                    |                                       |                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                                       |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit                   | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                   | '0' = Bit is cleared                  | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15-8      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 7-4      **ENDPT<3:0>:** Number of the Last Endpoint Activity bits  
(Represents the number of the BDT updated by the last USB transfer.)  
               1111 = Endpoint 15  
               1110 = Endpoint 14  
               •  
               •  
               •  
               0001 = Endpoint 1  
               0000 = Endpoint 0
- bit 3          **DIR:** Last BD Direction Indicator bit  
               1 = The last transaction was a transmit transfer (TX)  
               0 = The last transaction was a receive transfer (RX)
- bit 2          **PPBI:** Ping-Pong BD Pointer Indicator bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
               1 = The last transaction was to the Odd BD bank  
               0 = The last transaction was to the Even BD bank
- bit 1-0       **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**Note 1:** This bit is only valid for endpoints with available Even and Odd BD registers.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-7: U1CON: USB CONTROL REGISTER (DEVICE MODE)

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |          |        |     |        |        |        |       |
|-------|----------|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|-------|
| U-0   | R-x, HSC | R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0 |
| —     | SE0      | PKTDIS | —   | HOSTEN | RESUME | PPBRST | USBEN |
| bit 7 |          |        |     |        |        |        | bit 0 |

|                   |                                    |                                       |                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                                       |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit                   | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                   | '0' = Bit is cleared                  | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15-7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 6 **SE0:** Live Single-Ended Zero Flag bit  
 1 = Single-ended zero is active on the USB bus  
 0 = No single-ended zero is detected
- bit 5 **PKTDIS:** Packet Transfer Disable bit  
 1 = SIE token and packet processing are disabled; automatically set when a SETUP token is received  
 0 = SIE token and packet processing are enabled
- bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 3 **HOSTEN:** Host Mode Enable bit  
 1 = USB host capability is enabled; pull-downs on D+ and D- are activated in hardware  
 0 = USB host capability is disabled
- bit 2 **RESUME:** Resume Signaling Enable bit  
 1 = Resume signaling is activated  
 0 = Resume signaling is disabled
- bit 1 **PPBRST:** Ping-Pong Buffers Reset bit  
 1 = Resets all Ping-Pong Buffer Pointers to the Even BD banks  
 0 = Ping-Pong Buffer Pointers are not reset
- bit 0 **USBEN:** USB Module Enable bit  
 1 = USB module and supporting circuitry are enabled (device attached); D+ pull-up is activated in hardware  
 0 = USB module and supporting circuitry are disabled (device detached)

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 19-8: U1CON: USB CONTROL REGISTER (HOST MODE ONLY)**

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|          |          |         |        |        |        |        |       |
|----------|----------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|
| R-x, HSC | R-x, HSC | R/W-0   | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0 |
| JSTATE   | SE0      | TOKBUSY | USBRST | HOSTEN | RESUME | PPBRST | SOFEN |
| bit 7    |          |         |        |        |        |        | bit 0 |

|                   |                                    |                                       |                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                                       |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit                   | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                   | '0' = Bit is cleared                  | x = Bit is unknown |

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| bit 15-8 | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'  |
| bit 7    | <b>JSTATE:</b> Live Differential Receiver J-State Flag bit<br>1 = J-state (differential '0' in low speed, differential '1' in full speed) is detected on the USB<br>0 = No J-state is detected |
| bit 6    | <b>SE0:</b> Live Single-Ended Zero Flag bit<br>1 = Single-ended zero is active on the USB bus<br>0 = No single-ended zero is detected  |
| bit 5    | <b>TOKBUSY:</b> Token Busy Status bit<br>1 = Token is being executed by the USB module in the On-The-Go state<br>0 = No token is being executed  |
| bit 4    | <b>USBRST:</b> USB Module Reset bit<br>1 = USB Reset is generated for software Reset; application must set this bit for 50 ms, then clear it<br>0 = USB Reset is terminated                    |
| bit 3    | <b>HOSTEN:</b> Host Mode Enable bit<br>1 = USB host capability is enabled; pull-downs on D+ and D- are activated in hardware<br>0 = USB host capability is disabled                            |
| bit 2    | <b>RESUME:</b> Resume Signaling Enable bit<br>1 = Resume signaling is activated; software must set bit for 10 ms and then clear to enable remote wake-up<br>0 = Resume signaling is disabled   |
| bit 1    | <b>PPBRST:</b> Ping-Pong Buffers Reset bit<br>1 = Resets all Ping-Pong Buffer Pointers to the Even BD banks<br>0 = Ping-Pong Buffer Pointers are not reset                                     |
| bit 0    | <b>SOFEN:</b> Start-of-Frame Enable bit<br>1 = Start-of-Frame token is sent every one 1 ms<br>0 = Start-of-Frame token is disabled   |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-9: U1ADDR: USB ADDRESS REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|                       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0                 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| LSPDEN <sup>(1)</sup> | ADDR6 | ADDR5 | ADDR4 | ADDR3 | ADDR2 | ADDR1 | ADDR0 |
| bit 7                 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7 **LSPDEN:** Low-Speed Enable Indicator bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = USB module operates at low speed

0 = USB module operates at full speed

bit 6-0 **ADDR<6:0>:** USB Device Address bits

**Note 1:** Host mode only; in Device mode, this bit is unimplemented and read as '0'.

## REGISTER 19-10: U1TOK: USB TOKEN REGISTER (HOST MODE ONLY)

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| PID3  | PID2  | PID1  | PID0  | EP3   | EP2   | EP1   | EP0   |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7-4 **PID<3:0>:** Token Type Identifier bits

1101 = SETUP (TX) token type transaction<sup>(1)</sup>

1001 = IN (RX) token type transaction<sup>(1)</sup>

0001 = OUT (TX) token type transaction<sup>(1)</sup>

bit 3-0 **EP<3:0>:** Token Command Endpoint Address bits

This value must specify a valid endpoint on the attached device.

**Note 1:** All other combinations are reserved and are not to be used.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-11: U1SOF: USB OTG START-OF-FRAME COUNT REGISTER (HOST MODE ONLY)

|        |     |     |     |       |     |     |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| bit 15 |     |     |     | bit 8 |     |     |     |

|          |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0    | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| CNT<7:0> |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 7    |       |       |       | bit 0 |       |       |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-8      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7-0      **CNT<7:0>:** Start-of-Frame Size bits

Value represents 10 + (packet size of n bytes). For example:

0100 1010 = 64-byte packet

0010 1010 = 32-byte packet

0001 0010 = 8-byte packet

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-12: U1CNFG1: USB CONFIGURATION REGISTER 1

|        |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |     |

|       |                       |     |         |     |     |       |       |
|-------|-----------------------|-----|---------|-----|-----|-------|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0                 | U-0 | R/W-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| UTEYE | UOEMON <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | USBSIDL | —   | —   | PPB1  | PPB0  |
| bit 7 |                       |     |         |     |     | bit 0 |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7 **UTEYE:** USB Eye Pattern Test Enable bit

1 = Eye pattern test is enabled

0 = Eye pattern test is disabled

bit 6 **UOEMON:** USB  $\overline{OE}$  Monitor Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 =  $\overline{OE}$  signal is active; it indicates intervals during which the D+/D- lines are driving

0 =  $\overline{OE}$  signal is inactive

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **USBSIDL:** USB OTG Stop in Idle Mode bit

1 = Discontinues module operation when the device enters Idle mode

0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode

bit 3-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1-0 **PPB<1:0>:** Ping-Pong Buffers Configuration bits

11 = Even/Odd Ping-Pong Buffers are enabled for Endpoints 1 to 15

10 = Even/Odd Ping-Pong Buffers are enabled for all endpoints

01 = Even/Odd Ping-Pong Buffers are enabled for OUT Endpoint 0

00 = Even/Odd Ping-Pong Buffers are disabled

**Note 1:** This bit is only active when the UTRDIS bit (U1CNFG2<0>) is set.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-13: U1CNFG2: USB CONFIGURATION REGISTER 2

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |        |          |                         |     |                       |
|-------|-----|-----|--------|----------|-------------------------|-----|-----------------------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-0                   | U-0 | R/W-0                 |
| —     | —   | —   | PUVBUS | EXTI2CEN | UVBUSDIS <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | UTRDIS <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7 |     |     |        |          |                         |     | bit 0                 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **PUVBUS:** VBUS Pull-up Enable bit

1 = Pull-up on VBUS pin is enabled

0 = Pull-up on VBUS pin is disabled

bit 3 **EXTI2CEN:** I<sup>2</sup>C™ Interface for External Module Control Enable bit

1 = External module(s) is controlled via the I<sup>2</sup>C interface

0 = External module(s) is controlled via the dedicated pins

bit 2 **UVBUSDIS:** USB On-Chip 5V Boost Regulator Builder Disable bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = On-chip boost regulator builder is disabled; digital output control interface is enabled

0 = On-chip boost regulator builder is active

bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **UTRDIS:** USB On-Chip Transceiver Disable bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = On-chip transceiver is disabled; digital transceiver interface is enabled

0 = On-chip transceiver is active

**Note 1:** Never change these bits while the USBPWR bit is set (U1PWRC<0> = 1).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 19.7.2 USB INTERRUPT REGISTERS

### REGISTER 19-14: U1OTGIR: USB OTG INTERRUPT STATUS REGISTER (HOST MODE ONLY)

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|           |           |           |           |           |           |     |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----|-----------|
| R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | U-0 | R/K-0, HS |
| IDIF      | T1MSECIF  | LSTATEIF  | ACTVIF    | SESVDIF   | SESENDIF  | —   | VBUSVDIF  |
| bit 7     |           |           |           |           |           |     | bit 0     |

|                   |                                    |  |  |                            |  |                    |  |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|--|--|----------------------------|--|--------------------|--|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |  |  |                            |  |                    |  |
| R = Readable bit  | K = Write '1' to Clear bit         |  |  | HS = Hardware Settable bit |  |                    |  |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                   |  |  | '0' = Bit is cleared       |  | x = Bit is unknown |  |

- bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 7 **IDIF:** ID State Change Indicator bit  
 1 = Change in ID state is detected  
 0 = No ID state change is detected
- bit 6 **T1MSECIF:** 1 Millisecond Timer bit  
 1 = The 1 millisecond timer has expired  
 0 = The 1 millisecond timer has not expired
- bit 5 **LSTATEIF:** Line State Stable Indicator bit  
 1 = USB line state (as defined by the SE0 and JSTATE bits) has been stable for 1 ms, but different from the last time  
 0 = USB line state has not been stable for 1 ms
- bit 4 **ACTVIF:** Bus Activity Indicator bit  
 1 = Activity on the D+/D- lines or VBUS is detected  
 0 = No activity on the D+/D- lines or VBUS is detected
- bit 3 **SESVDIF:** Session Valid Change Indicator bit  
 1 = VBUS has crossed VA\_SESS\_END (as defined in the "USB 2.0 Specification")<sup>(1)</sup>  
 0 = VBUS has not crossed VA\_SESS\_END
- bit 2 **SESENDIF:** B-Device VBUS Change Indicator bit  
 1 = VBUS change on B-device is detected; VBUS has crossed VB\_SESS\_END (as defined in the "USB 2.0 Specification")<sup>(1)</sup>  
 0 = VBUS has not crossed VB\_SESS\_END
- bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 0 **VBUSVDIF:** A-Device VBUS Change Indicator bit  
 1 = VBUS change on A-device is detected; VBUS has crossed VA\_VBUS\_VLD (as defined in the "USB 2.0 Specification")<sup>(1)</sup>  
 0 = No VBUS change on the A-device is detected

**Note 1:** VBUS threshold crossings may be either rising or falling.

**Note:** Individual bits can only be cleared by writing a '1' to the bit position as part of a word write operation on the entire register. Using Boolean instructions or bitwise operations to write to a single bit position will cause all set bits, at the moment of the write, to become cleared.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-15: U1OTGIE: USB OTG INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER (HOST MODE ONLY)

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |          |          |        |        |          |     |          |
|-------|----------|----------|--------|--------|----------|-----|----------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | U-0 | R/W-0    |
| IDIE  | T1MSECIE | LSTATEIE | ACTVIE | SESVIE | SESENDIE | —   | VBUSVDIE |
| bit 7 |          |          |        |        |          |     | bit 0    |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7 **IDIE:** ID Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 6 **T1MSECIE:** 1 Millisecond Timer Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 5 **LSTATEIE:** Line State Stable Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 4 **ACTVIE:** Bus Activity Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 3 **SESVIE:** Session Valid Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 2 **SESENDIE:** B-Device Session End Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **VBUSVDIE:** A-Device Vbus Valid Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-16: U1IR: USB INTERRUPT STATUS REGISTER (DEVICE MODE ONLY)

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|           |     |           |           |           |           |        |           |
|-----------|-----|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------|-----------|
| R/K-0, HS | U-0 | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R-0    | R/K-0, HS |
| STALLIF   | —   | RESUMEIF  | IDLEIF    | TRNIF     | SOFIF     | UERRIF | URSTIF    |
| bit 7     |     |           |           |           |           |        | bit 0     |

|                   |                                    |                            |                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                            |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | K = Write '1' to Clear bit         | HS = Hardware Settable bit |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                   | '0' = Bit is cleared       | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 7 **STALLIF:** STALL Handshake Interrupt bit  
 1 = A STALL handshake was sent by the peripheral during the handshake phase of the transaction in Device mode  
 0 = A STALL handshake has not been sent
- bit 6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5 **RESUMEIF:** Resume Interrupt bit  
 1 = A K-state is observed on the D+ or D- pin for 2.5  $\mu$ s (differential '1' for low speed, differential '0' for full speed)  
 0 = No K-state is observed
- bit 4 **IDLEIF:** Idle Detect Interrupt bit  
 1 = Idle condition is detected (constant Idle state of 3 ms or more)  
 0 = No Idle condition is detected
- bit 3 **TRNIF:** Token Processing Complete Interrupt bit  
 1 = Processing of the current token is complete; read the U1STAT register for endpoint information  
 0 = Processing of the current token is not complete; clear the U1STAT register or load the next token from U1STAT (clearing this bit causes the U1STAT FIFO to advance)
- bit 2 **SOFIF:** Start-of-Frame Token Interrupt bit  
 1 = A Start-of-Frame token is received by the peripheral or the Start-of-Frame threshold is reached by the host  
 0 = No Start-of-Frame token is received or threshold reached
- bit 1 **UERRIF:** USB Error Condition Interrupt bit (read-only)  
 1 = An unmasked error condition has occurred; only error states enabled in the U1EIE register can set this bit  
 0 = No unmasked error condition has occurred
- bit 0 **URSTIF:** USB Reset Interrupt bit  
 1 = Valid USB Reset has occurred for at least 2.5  $\mu$ s; Reset state must be cleared before this bit can be reasserted  
 0 = No USB Reset has occurred. Individual bits can only be cleared by writing a '1' to the bit position as part of a word write operation on the entire register. Using Boolean instructions or bitwise operations to write to a single bit position will cause all set bits, at the moment of the write, to become cleared.

**Note:** Individual bits can only be cleared by writing a '1' to the bit position as part of a word write operation on the entire register. Using Boolean instructions or bitwise operations to write to a single bit position will cause all set bits, at the moment of the write, to become cleared.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-17: U1IR: USB INTERRUPT STATUS REGISTER (HOST MODE ONLY)

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|           |           |           |           |           |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS |
| STALLIF   | ATTACHIF  | RESUMEIF  | IDLEIF    | TRNIF     | SOFIF     | UERRIF    | DETACHIF  |
| bit 7     |           |           |           |           |           |           | bit 0     |

|                   |                                    |                            |                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                            |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | K = Write '1' to Clear bit         | HS = Hardware Settable bit |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                   | '0' = Bit is cleared       | x = Bit is unknown |

bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7 **STALLIF:** STALL Handshake Interrupt bit

- 1 = A STALL handshake was sent by the peripheral device during the handshake phase of the transaction in Device mode
- 0 = A STALL handshake has not been sent

bit 6 **ATTACHIF:** Peripheral Attach Interrupt bit

- 1 = A peripheral attachment has been detected by the module; it is set if the bus state is not SE0 and there has been no bus activity for 2.5  $\mu$ s
- 0 = No peripheral attachment has been detected

bit 5 **RESUMEIF:** Resume Interrupt bit

- 1 = A K-state is observed on the D+ or D- pin for 2.5  $\mu$ s (differential '1' for low speed, differential '0' for full speed)
- 0 = No K-state is observed

bit 4 **IDLEIF:** Idle Detect Interrupt bit

- 1 = Idle condition is detected (constant Idle state of 3 ms or more)
- 0 = No Idle condition is detected

bit 3 **TRNIF:** Token Processing Complete Interrupt bit

- 1 = Processing of the current token is complete; read the U1STAT register for endpoint information
- 0 = Processing of the current token is not complete; clear the U1STAT register or load the next token from U1STAT

bit 2 **SOFIF:** Start-of-Frame Token Interrupt bit

- 1 = A Start-of-Frame token is received by the peripheral or the Start-of-Frame threshold is reached by the host
- 0 = No Start-of-Frame token is received or threshold is reached

bit 1 **UERRIF:** USB Error Condition Interrupt bit

- 1 = An unmasked error condition has occurred; only error states enabled in the U1EIE register can set this bit
- 0 = No unmasked error condition has occurred

bit 0 **DETACHIF:** Detach Interrupt bit

- 1 = A peripheral detachment has been detected by the module; Reset state must be cleared before this bit can be reasserted
- 0 = No peripheral detachment is detected. Individual bits can only be cleared by writing a '1' to the bit position as part of a word write operation on the entire register. Using Boolean instructions or bitwise operations to write to a single bit position will cause all set bits, at the moment of the write, to become cleared.

**Note:** Individual bits can only be cleared by writing a '1' to the bit position as part of a word write operation on the entire register. Using Boolean instructions or bitwise operations to write to a single bit position will cause all set bits, at the moment of the write, to become cleared.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-18: U1IE: USB INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER (ALL USB MODES)

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|           |                         |           |           |           |           |           |                         |
|-----------|-------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------------------|
| R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS               | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS               |
| STALLIE   | ATTACHIE <sup>(1)</sup> | RESUMEIE  | IDLEIE    | TRNIE     | SOFIE     | UERRIE    | URSTIE                  |
|           |                         |           |           |           |           |           | DETACHIE <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7     |                         |           |           |           |           |           | bit 0                   |

**Legend:** U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
R = Readable bit K = Write '1' to Clear bit HS = Hardware Settable bit  
-n = Value at POR '1' = Bit is set '0' = Bit is cleared x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 7 **STALLIE:** STALL Handshake Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Interrupt is enabled  
0 = Interrupt is disabled
- bit 6 **ATTACHIE:** Peripheral Attach Interrupt bit (Host mode only)<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Interrupt is enabled  
0 = Interrupt is disabled
- bit 5 **RESUMEIE:** Resume Interrupt bit  
1 = Interrupt is enabled  
0 = Interrupt is disabled
- bit 4 **IDLEIE:** Idle Detect Interrupt bit  
1 = Interrupt is enabled  
0 = Interrupt is disabled
- bit 3 **TRNIE:** Token Processing Complete Interrupt bit  
1 = Interrupt is enabled  
0 = Interrupt is disabled
- bit 2 **SOFIE:** Start-of-Frame Token Interrupt bit  
1 = Interrupt is enabled  
0 = Interrupt is disabled
- bit 1 **UERRIE:** USB Error Condition Interrupt bit  
1 = Interrupt is enabled  
0 = Interrupt is disabled
- bit 0 **URSTIE or DETACHIE:** USB Reset Interrupt (Device mode) or USB Detach Interrupt (Host mode) Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Interrupt is enabled  
0 = Interrupt is disabled

**Note 1:** The ATTACHIE and DETACHIE bits are unimplemented in Device mode, read as '0'.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-19: U1EIR: USB ERROR INTERRUPT STATUS REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|           |     |           |           |           |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| R/K-0, HS | U-0 | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS | R/K-0, HS |
| BTSEF     | —   | DMAEF     | BTOEF     | DFN8EF    | CRC16EF   | CRC5EF    | PIDEF     |
|           |     |           |           |           |           | EOFEF     |           |
| bit 7     |     |           |           |           |           |           | bit 0     |

|                   |                                    |                            |                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                            |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | K = Write '1' to Clear bit         | HS = Hardware Settable bit |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                   | '0' = Bit is cleared       | x = Bit is unknown |

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| bit 15-8 | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'   |
| bit 7    | <b>BTSEF:</b> Bit Stuff Error Flag bit<br>1 = Bit stuff error has been detected<br>0 = No bit stuff error has been detected   |
| bit 6    | <b>Unimplemented:</b> Read as '0'   |
| bit 5    | <b>DMAEF:</b> DMA Error Flag bit<br>1 = A USB DMA error condition is detected; the data size indicated by the BD byte count field is less than the number of received bytes, the received data is truncated<br>0 = No DMA error   |
| bit 4    | <b>BTOEF:</b> Bus Turnaround Time-out Error Flag bit<br>1 = Bus turnaround time-out has occurred<br>0 = No bus turnaround time-out  |
| bit 3    | <b>DFN8EF:</b> Data Field Size Error Flag bit<br>1 = Data field was not an integral number of bytes<br>0 = Data field was an integral number of bytes   |
| bit 2    | <b>CRC16EF:</b> CRC16 Failure Flag bit<br>1 = CRC16 failed<br>0 = CRC16 passed  |
| bit 1    | <u>For Device Mode:</u><br><b>CRC5EF:</b> CRC5 Host Error Flag bit<br>1 = Token packet is rejected due to CRC5 error<br>0 = Token packet is accepted (no CRC5 error)<br><u>For Host Mode:</u><br><b>EOFEF:</b> End-of-Frame Error Flag bit<br>1 = End-of-Frame error has occurred<br>0 = End-of-Frame interrupt is disabled |
| bit 0    | <b>PIDEF:</b> PID Check Failure Flag bit<br>1 = PID check failed<br>0 = PID check passed  |

**Note:** Individual bits can only be cleared by writing a '1' to the bit position as part of a word write operation on the entire register. Using Boolean instructions or bitwise operations to write to a single bit position will cause all set bits, at the moment of the write, to become cleared.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 19-20: U1EIE: USB ERROR INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |     |

|       |     |       |       |        |         |        |       |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|--------|---------|--------|-------|
| R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0   | R/W-0  | R/W-0 |
| BTSEE | —   | DMAEE | BTOEE | DFN8EE | CRC16EE | CRC5EE | PIDEE |
|       |     |       |       |        |         | EOFEE  |       |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |        |         | bit 0  |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7 **BTSEE:** Bit Stuff Error Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **DMAEE:** DMA Error Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 4 **BTOEE:** Bus Turnaround Time-out Error Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 3 **DFN8EE:** Data Field Size Error Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 2 **CRC16EE:** CRC16 Failure Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 1 For Device Mode:

**CRC5EE:** CRC5 Host Error Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

For Host Mode:

**EOFEE:** End-of-Frame Error interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

bit 0 **PIDEE:** PID Check Failure Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Interrupt is enabled

0 = Interrupt is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 19.7.3 USB ENDPOINT MANAGEMENT REGISTERS

### REGISTER 19-21: U1EPn: USB ENDPOINT n CONTROL REGISTERS (n = 0 TO 15)

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|                     |                         |     |          |        |        |         |       |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----|----------|--------|--------|---------|-------|
| R/W-0               | R/W-0                   | U-0 | R/W-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0   | R/W-0 |
| LSPD <sup>(1)</sup> | RETRYDIS <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | EPCONDIS | EPRXEN | EPTXEN | EPSTALL | EPHSK |
| bit 7               |                         |     |          |        |        |         | bit 0 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7 **LSPD:** Low-Speed Direct Connection Enable bit (U1EP0 only)<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = Direct connection to a low-speed device is enabled

0 = Direct connection to a low-speed device is disabled

bit 6 **RETRYDIS:** Retry Disable bit (U1EP0 only)<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = Retry NAK transactions are disabled

0 = Retry NAK transactions are enabled; retry is done in hardware

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **EPCONDIS:** Bidirectional Endpoint Control bit

If EPTXEN and EPRXEN = 1:

1 = Disables Endpoint n from control transfers; only TX and RX transfers are allowed

0 = Enables Endpoint n for control (SETUP) transfers; TX and RX transfers are also allowed

For All Other Combinations of EPTXEN and EPRXEN:

This bit is ignored.

bit 3 **EPRXEN:** Endpoint Receive Enable bit

1 = Endpoint n receive is enabled

0 = Endpoint n receive is disabled

bit 2 **EPTXEN:** Endpoint Transmit Enable bit

1 = Endpoint n transmit is enabled

0 = Endpoint n transmit is disabled

bit 1 **EPSTALL:** Endpoint STALL Status bit

1 = Endpoint n was STALLed

0 = Endpoint n was not STALLed

bit 0 **EPHSK:** Endpoint Handshake Enable bit

1 = Endpoint handshake is enabled

0 = Endpoint handshake is disabled (typically used for isochronous endpoints)

**Note 1:** These bits are available only for U1EP0 and only in Host mode. For all other U1EPn registers, these bits are always unimplemented and read as '0'.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

## 20.0 DATA SIGNAL MODULATOR (DSM)

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “Data Signal Modulator (DSM)” (DS39744). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

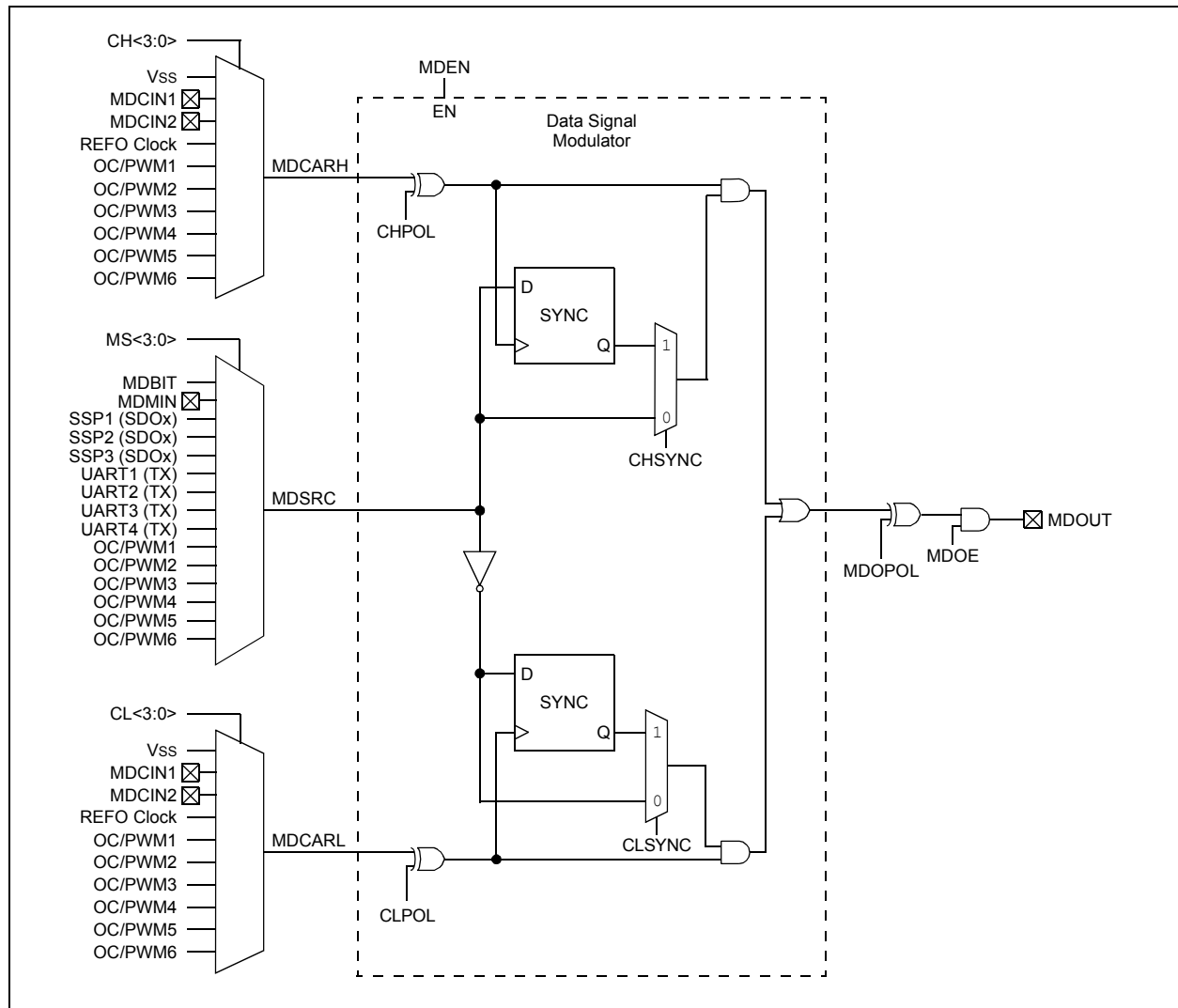
The modulated output signal is generated by performing a logical AND operation of both the carrier and modulator signals, and then it is provided to the MDOUT pin. Using this method, the DSM can generate the following types of key modulation schemes:

- Frequency Shift Keying (FSK)
- Phase-Shift Keying (PSK)
- On-Off Keying (OOK)

Figure 20-1 shows a simplified block diagram of the Data Signal Modulator peripheral.

The Data Signal Modulator (DSM) allows the user to mix a digital data stream (the “modulator signal”) with a carrier signal to produce a modulated output. Both the carrier and the modulator signals are supplied to the DSM module, either internally from the output of a peripheral, or externally through an input pin.

**FIGURE 20-1: SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE DATA SIGNAL MODULATOR**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 20-1: MDCON: DATA SIGNAL MODULATOR CONTROL REGISTER

|        |     |        |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| MDEN   | —   | MDSIDL | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |        |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |       |        |        |     |     |     |                      |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|-----|-----|-----|----------------------|
| U-0   | R/W-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                |
| —     | MDOE  | MDSLRL | MDOPOL | —   | —   | —   | MDBIT <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7 |       |        |        |     |     |     | bit 0                |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **MDEN:** DSM Module Enable bit  
1 = Modulator module is enabled and mixing input signals  
0 = Modulator module is disabled and has no output
- bit 14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13      **MDSIDL:** DSM Stop in Idle Mode bit  
1 = Discontinues module operation when device enters Idle mode  
0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode
- bit 12-7    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 6      **MDOE:** DSM Module Pin Output Enable bit  
1 = Modulator pin output is enabled  
0 = Modulator pin output is disabled
- bit 5      **MDSLRL:** MDOUT Pin Slew Rate Limiting bit  
1 = MDOUT pin slew rate limiting is enabled  
0 = MDOUT pin slew rate limiting is disabled
- bit 4      **MDOPOL:** DSM Output Polarity Select bit  
1 = Modulator output signal is inverted  
0 = Modulator output signal is not inverted
- bit 3-1    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 0      **MDBIT:** Manual Modulation Input bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Carrier is modulated  
0 = Carrier is not modulated

**Note 1:** The MDBIT must be selected as the modulation source (MDSRC<3:0> = 0000).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 20-2: MDSRC: DATA SIGNAL MODULATOR SOURCE CONTROL REGISTER

|                      |     |     |     |                    |                    |                    |                    |
|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| U-0                  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0                | U-0                | U-0                | U-0                |
| —                    | —   | —   | —   | —                  | —                  | —                  | —                  |
| bit 15               |     |     |     | bit 8              |                    |                    |                    |
| R/W-x                | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-x              | R/W-x              | R/W-x              | R/W-x              |
| SODIS <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | —   | —   | MS3 <sup>(2)</sup> | MS2 <sup>(2)</sup> | MS1 <sup>(2)</sup> | MS0 <sup>(2)</sup> |
| bit 7                |     |     |     | bit 0              |                    |                    |                    |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7 **SODIS:** DSM Source Output Disable bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = Output signal driving the peripheral output pin (selected by MS<3:0>) is disabled

0 = Output signal driving the peripheral output pin (selected by MS<3:0>) is enabled

bit 6-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-0 **MS<3:0>** DSM Source Selection bits<sup>(2)</sup>

1111 = Unimplemented

1110 = SPI3 module output (SDO3)

1101 = Output Compare/PWM Module 6 output

1100 = Output Compare/PWM Module 5 output

1011 = Output Compare/PWM Module 4 output

1010 = Output Compare/PWM Module 3 output

1001 = Output Compare/PWM Module 2 output

1000 = Output Compare/PWM Module 1 output

0111 = UART4 TX output

0110 = UART3 TX output

0101 = UART2 TX output

0100 = UART1 TX output

0011 = SPI2 module output (SDO2)

0010 = SPI1 module output (SDO1)

0001 = Input on MDMIN pin

0000 = Manual modulation using MDBIT (MDCON<0>)

**Note 1:** This bit is only affected by a POR.

**2:** These bits are not affected by a POR.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 20-3: MDCAR: DATA SIGNAL MODULATOR CARRIER CONTROL REGISTER

| R/W-x  | R/W-x | R/W-x  | U-0 | R/W-x              | R/W-x              | R/W-x              | R/W-x              |
|--------|-------|--------|-----|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| CHODIS | CHPOL | CHSYNC | —   | CH3 <sup>(1)</sup> | CH2 <sup>(1)</sup> | CH1 <sup>(1)</sup> | CH0 <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 15 |       |        |     |                    |                    |                    | bit 8              |

| R/W-0  | R/W-x | R/W-x  | U-0 | R/W-x              | R/W-x              | R/W-x              | R/W-x              |
|--------|-------|--------|-----|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| CLODIS | CLPOL | CLSYNC | —   | CL3 <sup>(1)</sup> | CL2 <sup>(1)</sup> | CL1 <sup>(1)</sup> | CL0 <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7  |       |        |     |                    |                    |                    | bit 0              |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15 **CHODIS:** DSM High Carrier Output Disable bit  
 1 = Output signal driving the peripheral output pin (selected by CH<3:0>) is disabled  
 0 = Output signal driving the peripheral output pin is enabled
- bit 14 **CHPOL:** DSM High Carrier Polarity Select bit  
 1 = Selected high carrier signal is inverted  
 0 = Selected high carrier signal is not inverted
- bit 13 **CHSYNC:** DSM High Carrier Synchronization Enable bit  
 1 = Modulator waits for a falling edge on the high carrier before allowing a switch to the low carrier  
 0 = Modulator output is not synchronized to the high time carrier signal<sup>(1)</sup>
- bit 12 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 11-8 **CH<3:0>** DSM Data High Carrier Selection bits<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1111  
 ... = Reserved  
 1010  
 1001 = Output Compare/PWM Module 6 output  
 1000 = Output Compare/PWM Module 5 output  
 0111 = Output Compare/PWM Module 4 output  
 0110 = Output Compare/PWM Module 3 output  
 0101 = Output Compare/PWM Module 2 output  
 0100 = Output Compare/PWM Module 1 output  
 0011 = Reference Clock Output (REFO)  
 0010 = Input on MDCIN2 pin  
 0001 = Input on MDCIN1 pin  
 0000 = Vss
- bit 7 **CLODIS:** DSM Low Carrier Output Disable bit  
 1 = Output signal driving the peripheral output pin (selected by CL<3:0>) is disabled  
 0 = Output signal driving the peripheral output pin is enabled
- bit 6 **CLPOL:** DSM Low Carrier Polarity Select bit  
 1 = Selected low carrier signal is inverted  
 0 = Selected low carrier signal is not inverted
- bit 5 **CLSYNC:** DSM Low Carrier Synchronization Enable bit  
 1 = Modulator waits for a falling edge on the low carrier before allowing a switch to the high carrier  
 0 = Modulator output is not synchronized to the low time carrier signal<sup>(1)</sup>
- bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 3-0 **CL<3:0>**: DSM Data Low Carrier Selection bits<sup>(1)</sup>  
 Bit settings are identical to those for CH<3:0>.

**Note 1:** Narrowed carrier pulse widths or spurs may occur in the signal stream if the carrier is not synchronized.

## 21.0 ENHANCED PARALLEL MASTER PORT (EPMP)

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP)” (DS39730). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP) module provides a parallel, 4-bit (Master mode only) and 8-bit (Master and Slave modes) data bus interface to communicate with off-chip modules, such as memories, FIFOs, LCD controllers and other microcontrollers. This module can serve as either the master or the slave on the communication bus.

For EPMP Master modes, all external addresses are mapped into the internal Extended Data Space (EDS). This is done by allocating a region of the EDS for each chip select and then assigning each chip select to a particular external resource, such as a memory or external controller. This region should not be assigned to another device resource, such as RAM or SFRs. To perform a write or read on an external resource, the CPU simply performs a write or read within the address range assigned for the EPMP.

Key features of the EPMP module are:

- Extended Data Space (EDS) Interface allows Direct Access from the CPU
- Up to 10 Programmable Address Lines
- Up to 2 Chip Select Lines
- Up to 1 Acknowledgment Line (one per chip select)
- 4-Bit and 8-Bit Wide Data Bus
- Programmable Strobe Options (per chip select)
  - Individual Read and Write Strobes or;
  - Read/Write Strobe with Enable Strobe
- Programmable Address/Data Multiplexing
- Programmable Address Wait States
- Programmable Data Wait States (per chip select)
- Programmable Polarity on Control Signals (per chip select)
- Legacy Parallel Slave Port (PSP) Support
- Enhanced Parallel Slave Port Support
  - Address Support
  - 4-Byte Deep Auto-Incrementing Buffer

### 21.1 Memory Addressable in Different Modes

The memory space addressable by the device depends on the address/data multiplexing selection; it varies from 1K to 2 MB. Refer to [Table 21-1](#) for different Memory-Addressable modes.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 21-1: MEMORY ADDRESSABLE IN DIFFERENT MODES**

| Data Port Size                           | PMA<9:8>    | PMA<7:0>  | PMD<7:4>       | PMD<3:0>  | Accessible Memory |
|--|-------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|-------------------|
| Demultiplexed Address (ADRMUX<1:0> = 00) |             |           |                |           |                   |
| 8-Bit (PTSZ<1:0> = 00)                   | Addr<9:8>   | Addr<7:0> | Data           |           | 1K                |
| 4-Bit (PTSZ<1:0> = 01)                   | Addr<9:8>   | Addr<7:0> | —              | Data      | 1K                |
| 1 Address Phase (ADRMUX<1:0> = 01)       |             |           |                |           |                   |
| 8-Bit (PTSZ<1:0> = 00)                   | —           | PMALL     | Addr<7:0> Data |           | 1K                |
| 4-Bit (PTSZ<1:0> = 01)                   | Addr<9:8>   | PMALL     | Addr<7:4>      | Addr<3:0> | 1K                |
|  |             |           | —              | Data (1)  |                   |
| 2 Address Phases (ADRMUX<1:0> = 10)      |             |           |                |           |                   |
| 8-Bit (PTSZ<1:0> = 00)                   | —           | PMALL     | Addr<7:0>      |           | 64K               |
|  |             | PMALH     | Addr<15:8>     |           |                   |
|  |             | —         | Data           |           |                   |
| 4-Bit (PTSZ<1:0> = 01)                   | Addr<9:8>   | PMALL     | Addr<3:0>      |           | 1K                |
|  |             | PMALH     | Addr<7:4>      |           |                   |
|  |             | —         | Data           |           |                   |
| 3 Address Phases (ADRMUX<1:0> = 11)      |             |           |                |           |                   |
| 8-Bit (PTSZ<1:0> = 00)                   | —           | PMALL     | Addr<7:0>      |           | 2 MB              |
|  |             | PMALH     | Addr<15:8>     |           |                   |
|  |             | PMALU     | Addr<22:16>    |           |                   |
|  |             | —         | Data           |           |                   |
| 4-Bit (PTSZ<1:0> = 01)                   | Addr<13:12> | PMALL     | Addr<3:0>      |           | 16K               |
|  |             | PMALH     | Addr<7:4>      |           |                   |
|  |             | PMALU     | Addr<11:8>     |           |                   |
|  |             | —         | Data           |           |                   |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 21-2: ENHANCED PARALLEL MASTER PORT PIN DESCRIPTIONS**

| Pin Name<br>(Alternate Function) | Type | Description   |
|----------------------------------|------|---|
| PMA<14><br>(PMCS1)               | O    | Address Bus bit 14  |
|                                  | I/O  | Data Bus bit 14 (16-bit port with Multiplexed Addressing) |
|                                  | O    | Chip Select 1 (alternate location)                        |
| PMA<9:3>                         | O    | Address Bus bits<9:3>                                     |
| PMA<2><br>(PMALU)                | O    | Address Bus bit 2   |
|                                  | O    | Address Latch Upper Strobe for Multiplexed Address        |
| PMA<1><br>(PMALH)                | I/O  | Address Bus bit 1   |
|                                  | O    | Address Latch High Strobe for Multiplexed Address         |
| PMA<0><br>(PMALL)                | I/O  | Address Bus bit 0   |
|                                  | O    | Address Latch Low Strobe for Multiplexed Address          |
| PMD<7:0>                         | I/O  | Data Bus bits<7:0>, Data bits<15:8>                       |
|                                  | O    | Address Bus bits<7:0>                                     |
| PMCS1                            | I/O  | Chip Select 1   |
| PMCS2                            | I/O  | Chip Select 2   |
| PMWR                             | I/O  | Write Strobe  |
| PMRD                             | I/O  | Read Strobe   |
| PMBE1                            | O    | Byte Indicator  |
| PMBE0                            | O    | Nibble or Byte Indicator                                  |
| PMACK1                           | I    | Acknowledgment Signal 1                                   |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 21-1: PMCON1: EPMP CONTROL REGISTER 1

|        |     |       |         |         |     |       |       |
|--------|-----|-------|---------|---------|-----|-------|-------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| PMPEN  | —   | PSIDL | ADRMUX1 | ADRMUX0 | —   | MODE1 | MODE0 |
| bit 15 |     |       |         |         |     | bit 8 |       |

|       |       |       |        |     |         |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|-----|---------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| CSF1  | CSF0  | ALP   | ALMODE | —   | BUSKEEP | IRQM1 | IRQM0 |
| bit 7 |       |       |        |     |         | bit 0 |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **PMPEN:** Enhanced Parallel Master Port Enable bit

1 = EPMP is enabled

0 = EPMP is disabled

bit 14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13 **PSIDL:** PMP Stop in Idle Mode bit

1 = Discontinues module operation when device enters Idle mode

0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode

bit 12-11 **ADRMUX<1:0>:** Address/Data Multiplexing Selection bits

11 = Lower address bits are multiplexed with data bits using 3 address phases

10 = Lower address bits are multiplexed with data bits using 2 address phases

01 = Lower address bits are multiplexed with data bits using 1 address phase

00 = Address and data appear on separate pins

bit 10 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 9-8 **MODE<1:0>:** Parallel Port Mode Select bits

11 = Master mode

10 = Enhanced PSP: Pins used are PMRD, PMWR, PMCS, PMD<7:0> and PMA<1:0>

01 = Buffered PSP: Pins used are PMRD, PMWR, PMCS and PMD<7:0>

00 = Legacy Parallel Slave Port: Pins used are PMRD, PMWR, PMCS and PMD<7:0>

bit 7-6 **CSF<1:0>:** Chip Select Function bits

11 = Reserved

10 = PMA<14> is used for Chip Select 1

01 = Reserved

00 = PMCS1 is used for Chip Select 1

bit 5 **ALP:** Address Latch Polarity bit

1 = Active-high (PMALL, PMALH and PMALU)

0 = Active-low (PMALL, PMALH and PMALU)

bit 4 **ALMODE:** Address Latch Strobe Mode bit

1 = Enables "smart" address strobes (each address phase is only present if the current access would cause a different address in the latch than the previous address)

0 = Disables "smart" address strobes

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **BUSKEEP:** Bus Keeper bit

1 = Data bus keeps its last value when not actively being driven

0 = Data bus is in a high-impedance state when not actively being driven

bit 1-0 **IRQM<1:0>:** Interrupt Request Mode bits

11 = Interrupt is generated when Read Buffer 3 is read or Write Buffer 3 is written (Buffered PSP mode), or on a read or write operation when PMA<1:0> = 11 (Addressable PSP mode only)

10 = Reserved

01 = Interrupt is generated at the end of a read/write cycle

00 = No interrupt is generated

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 21-2: PMCON2: EPMP CONTROL REGISTER 2

|          |     |           |           |     |     |     |       |
|----------|-----|-----------|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| R-0, HSC | U-0 | R/C-0, HS | R/C-0, HS | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| PMPBUSY  | —   | ERROR     | TIMEOUT   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15   |     |           |           |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  | R/W-0                  |
| RADDR23 <sup>(1)</sup> | RADDR22 <sup>(1)</sup> | RADDR21 <sup>(1)</sup> | RADDR20 <sup>(1)</sup> | RADDR19 <sup>(1)</sup> | RADDR18 <sup>(1)</sup> | RADDR17 <sup>(1)</sup> | RADDR16 <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7                  |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        |                        | bit 0                  |

|                   |                            |                                       |
|-------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HS = Hardware Settable bit | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit           | U = Unimplemented, read as '0'        |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set           | '0' = Bit is cleared                  |
|                   |                            | C = Clearable bit                     |

bit 15 **PMPBUSY:** PMP Busy bit (Master mode only)

1 = Port is busy  
0 = Port is not busy

bit 14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13 **ERROR:** PMP Error bit

1 = Transaction error (illegal transaction was requested)  
0 = Transaction completed successfully

bit 12 **TIMEOUT:** PMP Time-out bit

1 = Transaction timed out  
0 = Transaction completed successfully

bit 11-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7-0 **RADDR<23:16>:** Parallel Master Port Reserved Address Space bits<sup>(1)</sup>

**Note 1:** If RADDR<23:16> = 00000000, then the last EDS address for Chip Select 2 will be FFFFFFFh.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 21-3: PMCON3: EPMP CONTROL REGISTER 3

|        |        |         |         |     |         |         |        |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|-----|---------|---------|--------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0  |
| PTWREN | PTRDEN | PTBE1EN | PTBE0EN | —   | AWAITM1 | AWAITM0 | AWAITE |
| bit 15 |        |         |         |     |         |         | bit 8  |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **PTWREN:** PMP Write/Enable Strobe Port Enable bit  
1 = PMWR port is enabled  
0 = PMWR port is disabled
- bit 14      **PTRDEN:** PMP Read/Write Strobe Port Enable bit  
1 = PMRD/ $\overline{\text{PMWR}}$  port is enabled  
0 = PMRD/ $\overline{\text{PMWR}}$  port is disabled
- bit 13      **PTBE1EN:** PMP High Nibble/Byte Enable Port Enable bit  
1 = PMBE1 port is enabled  
0 = PMBE1 port is disabled
- bit 12      **PTBE0EN:** PMP Low Nibble/Byte Enable Port Enable bit  
1 = PMBE0 port is enabled  
0 = PMBE0 port is disabled
- bit 11      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10-9    **AWAITM<1:0>:** Address Latch Strobe Wait State bits  
11 = Wait of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  Tcy  
10 = Wait of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  Tcy  
01 = Wait of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  Tcy  
00 = Wait of  $\frac{1}{2}$  Tcy
- bit 8      **AWAITE:** Address Hold After Address Latch Strobe Wait State bit  
1 = Wait of  $1\frac{1}{4}$  Tcy  
0 = Wait of  $\frac{1}{4}$  Tcy
- bit 7-0    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 21-4: PMCON4: EPMP CONTROL REGISTER 4

|        |        |     |     |     |     |           |       |
|--------|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|-------|
| U-0    | R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0     | R/W-0 |
| —      | PTEN14 | —   | —   | —   | —   | PTEN<9:8> |       |
| bit 15 |        |     |     |     |     |           | bit 8 |

|           |       |       |       |       |           |       |       |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0     | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0     | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| PTEN<7:3> |       |       |       |       | PTEN<2:0> |       |       |
| bit 7     |       |       |       |       |           |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14 **PTEN14:** PMA14 Port Enable bit

1 = PMA14 functions as either Address Line 14 or Chip Select 1

0 = PMA14 functions as port I/O

bit 13-10 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 9-3 **PTEN<9:3>:** EPMP Address Port Enable bits

1 = PMA<9:3> function as EPMP address lines

0 = PMA<9:3> function as port I/Os

bit 2-0 **PTEN<2:0>:** PMALU/PMALH/PMALL Strobe Enable bits

1 = PMA<2:0> function as either address lines or address latch strobes

0 = PMA<2:0> function as port I/Os

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 21-5: PMCSxCF: EPMP CHIP SELECT x CONFIGURATION REGISTER

|        |       |        |       |     |       |       |       |
|--------|-------|--------|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| CSDIS  | CSP   | CSPTEN | BEP   | —   | WRSP  | RDSP  | SM    |
| bit 15 |       |        |       |     |       |       | bit 8 |

|       |       |       |     |     |     |     |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| ACKP  | PTSZ1 | PTSZ0 | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 7 |       |       |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15 **CSDIS:** Chip Select x Disable bit  
 1 = Disables the Chip Select x functionality  
 0 = Enables the Chip Select x functionality
- bit 14 **CSP:** Chip Select x Polarity bit  
 1 = Active-high (PMCSx)  
 0 = Active-low (PMCSx)
- bit 13 **CSPTEN:** PMCSx Port Enable bit  
 1 = PMCSx port is enabled  
 0 = PMCSx port is disabled
- bit 12 **BEP:** Chip Select x Nibble/Byte Enable Polarity bit  
 1 = Nibble/byte enable is active-high (PMBE0, PMBE1)  
 0 = Nibble/byte enable is active-low (PMBE0, PMBE1)
- bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10 **WRSP:** Chip Select x Write Strobe Polarity bit  
For Slave Modes and Master Mode When SM = 0:  
 1 = Write strobe is active-high (PMWR)  
 0 = Write strobe is active-low (PMWR)  
For Master Mode When SM = 1:  
 1 = Enable strobe is active-high  
 0 = Enable strobe is active-low
- bit 9 **RDSP:** Chip Select x Read Strobe Polarity bit  
For Slave Modes and Master Mode When SM = 0:  
 1 = Read strobe is active-high (PMRD)  
 0 = Read strobe is active-low (PMRD)  
For Master Mode When SM = 1:  
 1 = Read/write strobe is active-high (PMRD/PMWR)  
 0 = Read/write strobe is active-low (PMRD/PMWR)
- bit 8 **SM:** Chip Select x Strobe Mode bit  
 1 = Read/write and enable strobes (PMRD/PMWR)  
 0 = Read and write strobes (PMRD and PMWR)
- bit 7 **ACKP:** Chip Select x Acknowledge Polarity bit  
 1 = ACK is active-high (PMACK1)  
 0 = ACK is active-low (PMACK1)
- bit 6-5 **PTSZ<1:0>:** Chip Select x Port Size bits  
 11 = Reserved  
 10 = Reserved  
 01 = 4-bit port size (PMD<3:0>)  
 00 = 8-bit port size (PMD<7:0>)
- bit 4-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 21-6: PMCSxBS: EPMP CHIP SELECT x BASE ADDRESS REGISTER<sup>(2)</sup>

|                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| R/W <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W <sup>(1)</sup> |
| BASE<23:16>        |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |
| bit 15             |                    |                    |                    | bit 8              |                    |                    |                    |

|                    |     |     |     |                    |     |     |     |
|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|
| R/W <sup>(1)</sup> | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W <sup>(1)</sup> | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 |
| BASE15             | —   | —   | —   | BASE11             | —   | —   | —   |
| bit 7              |     |     |     | bit 0              |     |     |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-7 **BASE<23:15>**: Chip Select x Base Address bits<sup>(1)</sup>

bit 6-4 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

bit 3 **BASE11**: Chip Select x Base Address bit<sup>(1)</sup>

bit 2-0 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

**Note 1:** The value at POR is 0080h for PMCS1BS and 0880h for PMCS2BS.

**2:** If the whole PMCS2BS register is written together as 0x0000, then the last EDS address for Chip Select 1 will be FFFFFFFh. In this case, Chip Select 2 should not be used. PMCS1BS has no such feature.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 21-7: PMCSxMD: EPMP CHIP SELECT x MODE REGISTER

| R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
|--------|-------|---------|---------|---------|-----|-----|-------|
| ACKM1  | ACKM0 | AMWAIT2 | AMWAIT1 | AMWAIT0 | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |       |         |         |         |     |     | bit 8 |

| R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| DWAITB1 | DWAITB0 | DWAITM3 | DWAITM2 | DWAITM1 | DWAITM0 | DWAITE1 | DWAITE0 |
| bit 7   |         |         |         |         |         |         | bit 0   |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **ACKM<1:0>**: Chip Select x Acknowledge Mode bits

11 = Reserved

10 = PMACKx is used to determine when a read/write operation is complete

01 = PMACKx is used to determine when a read/write operation is complete with time-out  
(If DWAITM<3:0> = 0000, the maximum time-out is 255 Tcy or else it is DWAITM<3:0> cycles.)

00 = PMACKx is not used

bit 13-11 **AMWAIT<2:0>**: Chip Select x Alternate Master Wait State bits

111 = Wait of 10 alternate master cycles

•

•

•

001 = Wait of 4 alternate master cycles

000 = Wait of 3 alternate master cycles

bit 10-8 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

bit 7-6 **DWAITB<1:0>**: Chip Select x Data Setup Before Read/Write Strobe Wait State bits

11 = Wait of 3¼ Tcy

10 = Wait of 2¼ Tcy

01 = Wait of 1¼ Tcy

00 = Wait of ¼ Tcy

bit 5-2 **DWAITM<3:0>**: Chip Select x Data Read/Write Strobe Wait State bits

For Write Operations:

1111 = Wait of 15½ Tcy

•

•

•

0001 = Wait of 1½ Tcy

0000 = Wait of ½ Tcy

For Read Operations:

1111 = Wait of 15¼ Tcy

•

•

•

0001 = Wait of 1¾ Tcy

0000 = Wait of ¾ Tcy

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 21-7: PMCSxMD: EPMP CHIP SELECT x MODE REGISTER (CONTINUED)

bit 1-0 **DWAITE<1:0>**: Chip Select x Data Hold After Read/Write Strobe Wait State bits

For Write Operations:

11 = Wait of 3¼ Tcy

10 = Wait of 2¼ Tcy

01 = Wait of 1¼ Tcy

00 = Wait of ¼ Tcy

For Read Operations:

11 = Wait of 3 Tcy

10 = Wait of 2 Tcy

01 = Wait of 1 Tcy

00 = Wait of 0 Tcy

## REGISTER 21-8: PMSTAT: EPMP STATUS REGISTER (SLAVE MODE ONLY)

| R-0, HSC | R/W-0, HS | U-0 | U-0 | R-0, HSC            | R-0, HSC            | R-0, HSC            | R-0, HSC            |
|----------|-----------|-----|-----|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| IBF      | IBOV      | —   | —   | IB3F <sup>(1)</sup> | IB2F <sup>(1)</sup> | IB1F <sup>(1)</sup> | IB0F <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 15   |           |     |     | bit 8               |                     |                     |                     |

| R-1, HSC | R/W-0, HS | U-0 | U-0 | R-1, HSC | R-1, HSC | R-1, HSC | R-1, HSC |
|----------|-----------|-----|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| OBE      | OBUF      | —   | —   | OB3E     | OB2E     | OB1E     | OB0E     |
| bit 7    |           |     |     | bit 0    |          |          |          |

|                   |                            |                                       |
|-------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HS = Hardware Settable bit | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit           | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set           | '0' = Bit is cleared                  |
|                   |                            | x = Bit is unknown                    |

bit 15 **IBF**: Input Buffer Full Status bit

1 = All writable Input Buffer registers are full

0 = Some or all of the writable Input Buffer registers are empty

bit 14 **IBOV**: Input Buffer Overflow Status bit

1 = A write attempt to a full Input Buffer register occurred (must be cleared in software)

0 = No overflow occurred

bit 13-12 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

bit 11-8 **IB3F:IB0F**: Input Buffer x Status Full bits<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = Input buffer contains unread data (reading the buffer will clear this bit)

0 = Input buffer does not contain unread data

bit 7 **OBE**: Output Buffer Empty Status bit

1 = All readable Output Buffer registers are empty

0 = Some or all of the readable Output Buffer registers are full

bit 6 **OBUF**: Output Buffer Underflow Status bit

1 = A read occurred from an empty Output Buffer register (must be cleared in software)

0 = No underflow occurred

bit 5-4 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

bit 3-0 **OB3E:OB0E**: Output Buffer x Status Empty bits

1 = Output Buffer register is empty (writing data to the buffer will clear this bit)

0 = Output Buffer register contains untransmitted data

**Note 1:** Even though an individual bit represents the byte in the buffer, the bits corresponding to the word (Byte 0 and 1, or Byte 2 and 3) get cleared, even on byte reading.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 21-9: PADCFG1: PAD CONFIGURATION CONTROL REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |     |        |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | PMPTTL |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0  |

|                   |                  |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    |                  |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15-1
- Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 0
- PMPTTL:** EPMP Module TTL Input Buffer Select bit
- 1 = EPMP module inputs (PMDx, PMCS1) use TTL input buffers
- 0 = EPMP module inputs use Schmitt Trigger input buffers

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 22.0 REAL-TIME CLOCK AND CALENDAR (RTCC)

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information on the Real-Time Clock and Calendar, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “RTCC with External Power Control” (DS39745).

The RTCC provides the user with a Real-Time Clock and Calendar (RTCC) function that can be calibrated.

Key features of the RTCC module are:

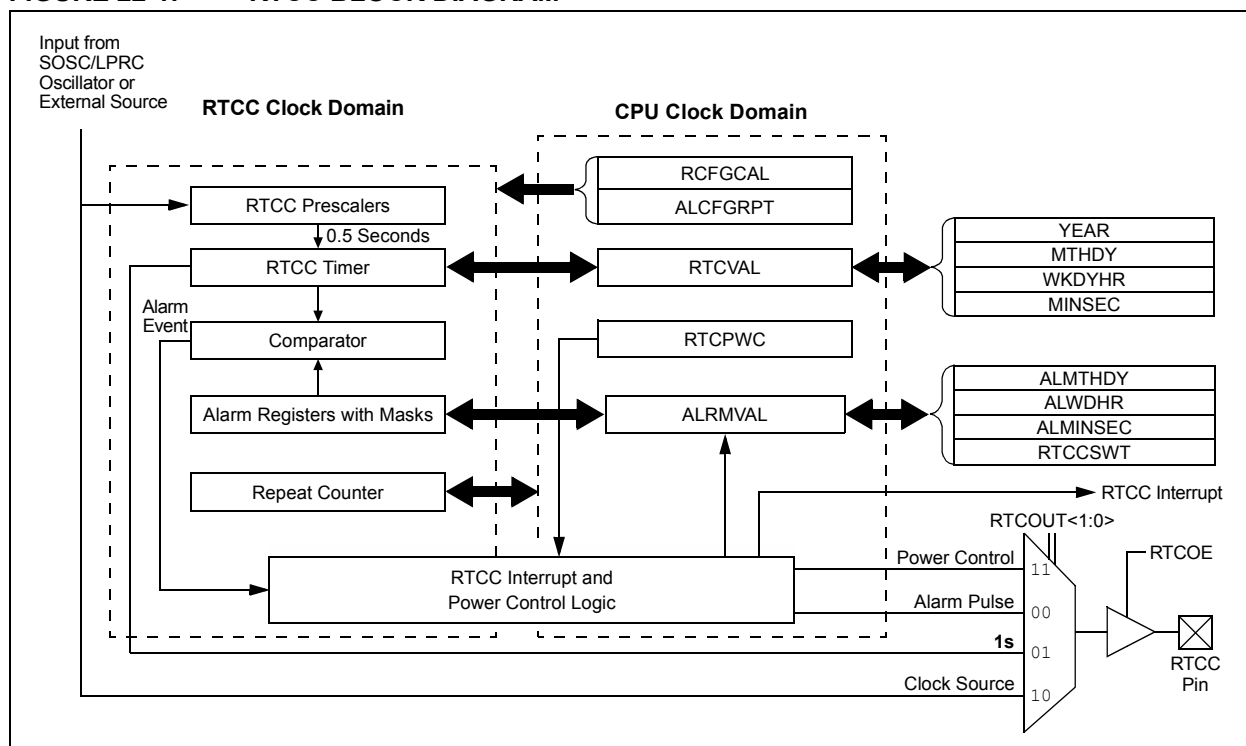
- Operates in Deep Sleep mode
- Selectable clock source
- Provides hours, minutes and seconds using 24-hour format
- Visibility of one half second period
- Provides calendar – weekday, date, month and year
- Alarm-configurable for half a second, one second, 10 seconds, one minute, 10 minutes, one hour, one day, one week, one month or one year
- Alarm repeat with decremting counter
- Alarm with indefinite repeat chime
- Year 2000 to 2099 leap year correction

- BCD format for smaller software overhead
- Optimized for long-term battery operation
- User calibration of the 32.768 kHz clock crystal/32K INTRC frequency with periodic auto-adjust
- Optimized for long-term battery operation
- Fractional second synchronization
- Calibration to within  $\pm 2.64$  seconds error per month
- Calibrates up to 260 ppm of crystal error
- Ability to periodically wake up external devices without CPU intervention (external power control)
- Power control output for external circuit control
- Calibration takes effect every 15 seconds
- Runs from any one of the following:
  - External Real-Time Clock (RTC) of 32.768 kHz
  - Internal 31.25 kHz LPRC clock
  - 50 Hz or 60 Hz external input

### 22.1 RTCC Source Clock

The user can select between the SOSC crystal oscillator, LPRC internal oscillator or an external 50 Hz/60 Hz power line input as the clock reference for the RTCC module. This gives the user an option to trade off system cost, accuracy and power consumption, based on the overall system needs.

**FIGURE 22-1: RTCC BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 22.2 RTCC Module Registers

The RTCC module registers are organized into three categories:

- RTCC Control Registers
- RTCC Value Registers
- Alarm Value Registers

### 22.2.1 REGISTER MAPPING

To limit the register interface, the RTCC Timer and Alarm Time registers are accessed through corresponding register pointers. The RTCC Value register window (RTCVALH and RTCVALL) uses the RTCPTRx bits (RCFGCAL<9:8>) to select the desired Timer register pair (see [Table 22-1](#)).

By writing the RTCVALH byte, the RTCPTR<1:0> bits (the RTCC Pointer value) decrement by one until they reach '00'. Once they reach '00', the MINUTES and SECONDS value will be accessible through RTCVALH and RTCVALL until the pointer value is manually changed.

**TABLE 22-1: RTCVAL REGISTER MAPPING**

| RTCPTR<1:0> | RTCC Value Register Window |             |
|-------------|----------------------------|-------------|
|             | RTCVAL<15:8>               | RTCVAL<7:0> |
| 00          | MINUTES                    | SECONDS     |
| 01          | WEEKDAY                    | HOURS       |
| 10          | MONTH                      | DAY         |
| 11          | —                          | YEAR        |

The Alarm Value register window (ALRMVALH and ALRMVALL) uses the ALRMPTRx bits (ALCFGAL<9:8>) to select the desired Alarm register pair (see [Table 22-2](#)).

By writing the ALRMVALH byte, the ALRMPTR<1:0> bits (the Alarm Pointer value) decrement by one until they reach '00'. Once they reach '00', the ALRMMIN and ALRMSEC value will be accessible through ALRMVALH and ALRMVALL until the pointer value is manually changed.

**TABLE 22-2: ALRMVAL REGISTER MAPPING**

| ALRMPTR<1:0> | Alarm Value Register Window |              |
|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------|
|              | ALRMVAL<15:8>               | ALRMVAL<7:0> |
| 00           | ALRMMIN                     | ALRMSEC      |
| 01           | ALRMWD                      | ALRMHR       |
| 10           | ALRMMNTH                    | ALRMDAY      |
| 11           | —                           | —            |

Considering that the 16-bit core does not distinguish between 8-bit and 16-bit read operations, the user must be aware that when reading either the ALRMVALH or ALRMVALL bytes, the ALRMPTR<1:0> value will be decremented. The same applies to the RTCVALH or RTCVALL bytes with the RTCPTR<1:0> being decremented.

**Note:** This only applies to read operations and not write operations.

### 22.2.2 WRITE LOCK

In order to perform a write to any of the RTCC Timer registers, the RTCWREN bit (RCFGCAL<13>) must be set (see [Example 22-1](#)).

**Note:** To avoid accidental writes to the timer, it is recommended that the RTCWREN bit (RCFGCAL<13>) is kept clear at any other time. For the RTCWREN bit to be set, there is only one instruction cycle time window allowed between the 55h/AA sequence and the setting of RTCWREN; therefore, it is recommended that code follow the procedure in [Example 22-1](#).

### 22.2.3 SELECTING RTCC CLOCK SOURCE

The clock source for the RTCC module can be selected using the RTCLK<1:0> bits in the RTCPWC register. When the bits are set to '00', the Secondary Oscillator (SOSC) is used as the reference clock and when the bits are '01', LPRC is used as the reference clock. When RTCLK<1:0> = 10 and 11, the external power line (50 Hz and 60 Hz) is used as the clock source.

**EXAMPLE 22-1: SETTING THE RTCWREN BIT**

```
asm volatile("push w7");
asm volatile("push w8");
asm volatile("disi #5");
asm volatile("mov #0x55, w7");
asm volatile("mov w7, _NVMKEY");
asm volatile("mov #0xAA, w8");
asm volatile("mov w8, _NVMKEY");
asm volatile("bset _RCFGCAL, #13"); //set the RTCWREN bit
asm volatile("pop w8");
asm volatile("pop w7");
```

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 22.3 Registers

### 22.3.1 RTCC CONTROL REGISTERS

#### REGISTER 22-1: RCFGCAL: RTCC CALIBRATION/CONFIGURATION REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|                      |     |         |          |                        |       |         |         |
|----------------------|-----|---------|----------|------------------------|-------|---------|---------|
| R/W-0                | U-0 | R/W-0   | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC               | R/W-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| RTCEN <sup>(2)</sup> | —   | RTCWREN | RTCSYNC  | HALFSEC <sup>(3)</sup> | RTCOE | RTCPTR1 | RTCPTR0 |
| bit 15               |     |         |          |                        |       |         | bit 8   |

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| CAL7  | CAL6  | CAL5  | CAL4  | CAL3  | CAL2  | CAL1  | CAL0  |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

|                   |                                       |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit                      | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                      | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15     **RTCEN:** RTCC Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
             1 = RTCC module is enabled  
             0 = RTCC module is disabled
- bit 14     **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13     **RTCWREN:** RTCC Value Registers Write Enable bit  
             1 = RTCVALH and RTCVALL registers can be written to by the user  
             0 = RTCVALH and RTCVALL registers are locked out from being written to by the user
- bit 12     **RTCSYNC:** RTCC Value Registers Read Synchronization bit  
             1 = RTCVALH, RTCVALL and ALCFGRPT registers can change while reading due to a rollover ripple resulting in an invalid data read. If the register is read twice and results in the same data, the data can be assumed to be valid.  
             0 = RTCVALH, RTCVALL or ALCFGRPT registers can be read without concern over a rollover ripple
- bit 11     **HALFSEC:** Half Second Status bit<sup>(3)</sup>  
             1 = Second half period of a second  
             0 = First half period of a second
- bit 10     **RTCOE:** RTCC Output Enable bit  
             1 = RTCC output is enabled  
             0 = RTCC output is disabled
- bit 9-8    **RTCPTR<1:0>:** RTCC Value Register Window Pointer bits  
             Points to the corresponding RTCC Value registers when reading the RTCVALH and RTCVALL registers. The RTCPTR<1:0> value decrements on every read or write of RTCVALH until it reaches '00'.  
             RTCVAL<15:8>:  
             11 = Reserved  
             10 = MONTH  
             01 = WEEKDAY  
             00 = MINUTES  
             RTCVAL<7:0>:  
             11 = YEAR  
             10 = DAY  
             01 = HOURS  
             00 = SECONDS

**Note 1:** The RCFGCAL register is only affected by a POR.

**2:** A write to the RTCEN bit is only allowed when RTCWREN = 1.

**3:** This bit is read-only; it is cleared to '0' on a write to the lower half of the MINSEC register.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 22-1: RCFGAL: RTCC CALIBRATION/CONFIGURATION REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup> (CONTINUED)

bit 7-0      **CAL<7:0>**: RTC Drift Calibration bits

01111111 = Maximum positive adjustment; adds 127 RTC clock pulses every 15 seconds

•

•

•

00000001 = Minimum positive adjustment; adds 1 RTC clock pulse every 15 seconds

00000000 = No adjustment

11111111 = Minimum negative adjustment; subtracts 1 RTC clock pulse every 15 seconds

•

•

•

10000000 = Maximum negative adjustment; subtracts 128 RTC clock pulses every 15 seconds

- Note 1:** The RCFGAL register is only affected by a POR.
- 2:** A write to the RTCEN bit is only allowed when RTCWREN = 1.
- 3:** This bit is read-only; it is cleared to '0' on a write to the lower half of the MINSEC register.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 22-2: RTCPWC: RTCC POWER CONTROL REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------|---------|
| PWCEN  | PWCPOL | PWCPRE | PWSPRE | RTCLK1 <sup>(2)</sup> | RTCLK0 <sup>(2)</sup> | RTCOUT1 | RTCOUT0 |
| bit 15 |        |        |        |                       |                       | bit 8   |         |

| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **PWCEN:** Power Control Enable bit  
               1 = Power control is enabled  
               0 = Power control is disabled
- bit 14      **PWCPOL:** Power Control Polarity bit  
               1 = Power control output is active-high  
               0 = Power control output is active-low
- bit 13      **PWCPRE:** Power Control/Stability Prescaler bit  
               1 = PWC stability window clock is divide-by-2 of source RTCC clock  
               0 = PWC stability window clock is divide-by-1 of source RTCC clock
- bit 12      **PWSPRE:** Power Control Sample Prescaler bit  
               1 = PWC sample window clock is divide-by-2 of source RTCC clock  
               0 = PWC sample window clock is divide-by-1 of source RTCC clock
- bit 11-10   **RTCLK<1:0>:** RTCC Clock Source Select bits<sup>(2)</sup>  
               11 = External power line (60 Hz)  
               10 = External power line source (50 Hz)  
               01 = Internal LPRC Oscillator  
               00 = External Secondary Oscillator (SOSC)
- bit 9-8     **RTCOUT<1:0>:** RTCC Output Source Select bits  
               11 = Power control  
               10 = RTCC clock  
               01 = RTCC seconds clock  
               00 = RTCC alarm pulse
- bit 7-0     **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**Note 1:** The RTCPWC register is only affected by a POR.

**2:** When a new value is written to these register bits, the lower half of the MINSEC register should also be written to properly reset the clock prescalers in the RTCC.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 22-3: ALCFGRPT: ALARM CONFIGURATION REGISTER

| R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-0    |
|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------|----------|
| ALRMEN | CHIME | AMASK3 | AMASK2 | AMASK1 | AMASK0 | ALRMPTR1 | ALRMPTR0 |
| bit 15 |       |        |        |        |        | bit 8    |          |

| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ARPT7 | ARPT6 | ARPT5 | ARPT4 | ARPT3 | ARPT2 | ARPT1 | ARPT0 |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15 **ALRMEN:** Alarm Enable bit  
 1 = Alarm is enabled (cleared automatically after an alarm event whenever ARPT<7:0> = 00h and CHIME = 0)  
 0 = Alarm is disabled
- bit 14 **CHIME:** Chime Enable bit  
 1 = Chime is enabled; ARPT<7:0> bits are allowed to roll over from 00h to FFh  
 0 = Chime is disabled; ARPT<7:0> bits stop once they reach 00h
- bit 13-10 **AMASK<3:0>:** Alarm Mask Configuration bits  
 0000 = Every half second  
 0001 = Every second  
 0010 = Every 10 seconds  
 0011 = Every minute  
 0100 = Every 10 minutes  
 0101 = Every hour  
 0110 = Once a day  
 0111 = Once a week  
 1000 = Once a month  
 1001 = Once a year (except when configured for February 29<sup>th</sup>, once every 4 years)  
 101x = Reserved – do not use  
 11xx = Reserved – do not use
- bit 9-8 **ALRMPTR<1:0>:** Alarm Value Register Window Pointer bits  
 Points to the corresponding Alarm Value registers when reading the ALRMVALH and ALRMVALL registers. The ALRMPTR<1:0> value decrements on every read or write of ALRMVALH until it reaches '00'.  
ALRMVAL<15:8>:  
 00 = ALRMMIN  
 01 = ALRMWD  
 10 = ALRMMNTH  
 11 = PWCSTAB  
ALRMVAL<7:0>:  
 00 = ALRMSEC  
 01 = ALRMHR  
 10 = ALRMDAY  
 11 = PWCSAMP
- bit 7-0 **ARPT<7:0>:** Alarm Repeat Counter Value bits  
 11111111 = Alarm will repeat 255 more times  
 •  
 •  
 •  
 00000000 = Alarm will not repeat  
 The counter decrements on any alarm event; it is prevented from rolling over from 00h to FFh unless CHIME = 1.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 22.3.2 RTCVAL REGISTER MAPPINGS

### REGISTER 22-4: YEAR: YEAR VALUE REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  |
| YRTEN3 | YRTEN2 | YRTEN1 | YRTEN0 | YRONE3 | YRONE2 | YRONE1 | YRONE0 |
| bit 7  |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-8                      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
 bit 7-4                      **YRTEN<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Year's Tens Digit bits  
                                     Contains a value from 0 to 9.  
 bit 3-0                      **YRONE<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Year's Ones Digit bits  
                                     Contains a value from 0 to 9.

**Note 1:** A write to the YEAR register is only allowed when RTCWREN = 1.

### REGISTER 22-5: MTHDY: MONTH AND DAY VALUE REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |     |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|-----|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   |
| —      | —   | —   | MHTTEN0 | MTHONE3 | MTHONE2 | MTHONE1 | MTHONE0 |
| bit 15 |     |     |         |         |         |         | bit 8   |

|       |     |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|-------|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   |
| —     | —   | DAYTEN1 | DAYTEN0 | DAYONE3 | DAYONE2 | DAYONE1 | DAYONE0 |
| bit 7 |     |         |         |         |         |         | bit 0   |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-13                      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
 bit 12                      **MHTTEN0:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Month's Tens Digit bit  
                                     Contains a value of '0' or '1'.  
 bit 11-8                      **MTHONE<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Month's Ones Digit bits  
                                     Contains a value from 0 to 9.  
 bit 7-6                      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'  
 bit 5-4                      **DAYTEN<1:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Day's Tens Digit bits  
                                     Contains a value from 0 to 3.  
 bit 3-0                      **DAYONE<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Day's Ones Digit bits  
                                     Contains a value from 0 to 9.

**Note 1:** A write to this register is only allowed when RTCWREN = 1.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 22-6: WKDYHR: WEEKDAY AND HOURS VALUE REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |     |     |     |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | WDAY2 | WDAY1 | WDAY0 |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |       |       | bit 8 |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  |
| —     | —   | HRTEN1 | HRTEN0 | HRONE3 | HRONE2 | HRONE1 | HRONE0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15-11      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 10-8      **WDAY<2:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Weekday Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 6.
- bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 5-4      **HRTEN<1:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Hour's Tens Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 2.
- bit 3-0      **HRONE<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Hour's Ones Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 9.

**Note 1:** A write to this register is only allowed when RTCWREN = 1.

## REGISTER 22-7: MINSEC: MINUTES AND SECONDS VALUE REGISTER

|        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   |
| —      | MINTEN2 | MINTEN1 | MINTEN0 | MINONE3 | MINONE2 | MINONE1 | MINONE0 |
| bit 15 |         |         |         |         |         |         | bit 8   |

|       |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   |
| —     | SECTEN2 | SECTEN1 | SECTEN0 | SECONE3 | SECONE2 | SECONE1 | SECONE0 |
| bit 7 |         |         |         |         |         |         | bit 0   |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 14-12      **MINTEN<2:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Minute's Tens Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 5.
- bit 11-8      **MINONE<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Minute's Ones Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 9.
- bit 7      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 6-4      **SECTEN<2:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Second's Tens Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 5.
- bit 3-0      **SECONE<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Second's Ones Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 9.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 22.3.3 ALRMVAL REGISTER MAPPINGS

### REGISTER 22-8: ALMTHDY: ALARM MONTH AND DAY VALUE REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |     |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|-----|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   |
| —      | —   | —   | MTHTEN0 | MTHONE3 | MTHONE2 | MTHONE1 | MTHONE0 |
| bit 15 |     |     |         |         |         |         |         |
|        |     |     |         |         |         |         | bit 8   |

|       |     |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|-------|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   |
| —     | —   | DAYTEN1 | DAYTEN0 | DAYONE3 | DAYONE2 | DAYONE1 | DAYONE0 |
| bit 7 |     |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|       |     |         |         |         |         |         | bit 0   |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-13 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 12 **MTHTEN0:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Month's Tens Digit bit  
Contains a value of '0' or '1'.

bit 11-8 **MTHONE<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Month's Ones Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 9.

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **DAYTEN<1:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Day's Tens Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 3.

bit 3-0 **DAYONE<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Day's Ones Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 9.

**Note 1:** A write to this register is only allowed when RTCWREN = 1.

### REGISTER 22-9: ALWDHR: ALARM WEEKDAY AND HOURS VALUE REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |     |     |     |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | WDAY2 | WDAY1 | WDAY0 |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |       |       |       |
|        |     |     |     |     |       |       | bit 8 |

|       |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  |
| —     | —   | HRTEN1 | HRTEN0 | HRONE3 | HRONE2 | HRONE1 | HRONE0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|       |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10-8 **WDAY<2:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Weekday Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 6.

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **HRTEN<1:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Hour's Tens Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 2.

bit 3-0 **HRONE<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Hour's Ones Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 9.

**Note 1:** A write to this register is only allowed when RTCWREN = 1.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 22-10: ALMINSEC: ALARM MINUTES AND SECONDS VALUE REGISTER

| U-0    | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| —      | MINTEN2 | MINTEN1 | MINTEN0 | MINONE3 | MINONE2 | MINONE1 | MINONE0 |
| bit 15 |         |         |         |         |         |         | bit 8   |

| U-0   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   | R/W-x   |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| —     | SECTEN2 | SECTEN1 | SECTEN0 | SECONE3 | SECONE2 | SECONE1 | SECONE0 |
| bit 7 |         |         |         |         |         |         | bit 0   |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-12    **MINTEN<2:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Minute's Tens Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 5.

bit 11-8    **MINONE<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Minute's Ones Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 9.

bit 7        **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4     **SECTEN<2:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Second's Tens Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 5.

bit 3-0     **SECONE<3:0>:** Binary Coded Decimal Value of Second's Ones Digit bits  
Contains a value from 0 to 9.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 22-11: RTCCSWT: RTCC POWER CONTROL AND SAMPLE WINDOW TIMER REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

| R/W-x    | R/W-x    | R/W-x    | R/W-x    | R/W-x    | R/W-x    | R/W-x    | R/W-x    |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| PWCSTAB7 | PWCSTAB6 | PWCSTAB5 | PWCSTAB4 | PWCSTAB3 | PWCSTAB2 | PWCSTAB1 | PWCSTAB0 |
| bit 15   |          |          |          |          |          |          | bit 8    |

| R/W-x                   | R/W-x                   | R/W-x                   | R/W-x                   | R/W-x                   | R/W-x                   | R/W-x                   | R/W-x                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| PWCSAMP7 <sup>(2)</sup> | PWCSAMP6 <sup>(2)</sup> | PWCSAMP5 <sup>(2)</sup> | PWCSAMP4 <sup>(2)</sup> | PWCSAMP3 <sup>(2)</sup> | PWCSAMP2 <sup>(2)</sup> | PWCSAMP1 <sup>(2)</sup> | PWCSAMP0 <sup>(2)</sup> |
| bit 7                   |                         |                         |                         |                         |                         |                         | bit 0                   |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-8 **PWCSTAB<7:0>**: Power Control Stability Window Timer bits

11111111 = Stability window is 255 TPWCCLK clock periods

11111110 = Stability window is 254 TPWCCLK clock periods

•

•

•

00000001 = Stability window is 1 TPWCCLK clock period

00000000 = No stability window; sample window starts when the alarm event triggers

bit 7-0 **PWCSAMP<7:0>**: Power Control Sample Window Timer bits<sup>(2)</sup>

11111111 = Sample window is always enabled, even when PWCEN = 0

11111110 = Sample window is 254 TPWCCLK clock periods

•

•

•

00000001 = Sample window is 1 TPWCCLK clock period

00000000 = No sample window

**Note 1:** A write to this register is only allowed when RTCWREN = 1.

**Note 2:** The sample window always starts when the stability window timer expires, except when its initial value is 00h.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 22.4 Calibration

The real-time crystal input can be calibrated using the periodic auto-adjust feature. When properly calibrated, the RTCC can provide an error of less than 3 seconds per month. This is accomplished by finding the number of error clock pulses and storing the value into the lower half of the RCFGAL register. The 8-bit signed value loaded into the lower half of RCFGAL is multiplied by four and will either be added or subtracted from the RTCC timer, once every minute. Refer to the steps below for RTCC calibration:

1. Using another timer resource on the device, the user must find the error of the 32.768 kHz crystal.
2. Once the error is known, it must be converted to the number of error clock pulses per minute.
3. a) If the oscillator is faster than ideal (negative result from Step 2), the RCFGAL register value must be negative. This causes the specified number of clock pulses to be subtracted from the timer counter, once every minute.  
b) If the oscillator is slower than ideal (positive result from Step 2), the RCFGAL register value must be positive. This causes the specified number of clock pulses to be subtracted from the timer counter, once every minute.

### EQUATION 22-1:

$$\begin{aligned} &(\text{Ideal Frequency}^\dagger - \text{Measured Frequency}) * 60 = \\ &\text{Clocks per Minute} \\ &\dagger \text{ Ideal Frequency} = 32,768 \text{ Hz} \end{aligned}$$

Writes to the lower half of the RCFGAL register should only occur when the timer is turned off, or immediately after the rising edge of the seconds pulse, except when SECONDS = 00, 15, 30 or 45. This is due to the auto-adjust of the RTCC at 15 second intervals.

**Note:** It is up to the user to include, in the error value, the initial error of the crystal: drift due to temperature and drift due to crystal aging.

## 22.5 Alarm

- Configurable from half second to one year
- Enabled using the ALRMEN bit (ALCFGRPT<15>)
- One-time alarm and repeat alarm options available

### 22.5.1 CONFIGURING THE ALARM

The alarm feature is enabled using the ALRMEN bit. This bit is cleared when an alarm is issued. Writes to ALRMVAL should only take place when ALRMEN = 0.

As shown in [Figure 22-2](#), the interval selection of the alarm is configured through the AMASKx bits (ALCFGRPT<13:10>). These bits determine which and how many digits of the alarm must match the clock value for the alarm to occur.

The alarm can also be configured to repeat based on a preconfigured interval. The amount of times this occurs, once the alarm is enabled, is stored in the ARPT<7:0> bits (ALCFGRPT<7:0>). When the value of the ARPTx bits equals 00h and the CHIME bit (ALCFGRPT<14>) is cleared, the repeat function is disabled and only a single alarm will occur. The alarm can be repeated, up to 255 times, by loading ARPT<7:0> with FFh.

After each alarm is issued, the value of the ARPTx bits is decremented by one. Once the value has reached 00h, the alarm will be issued one last time, after which, the ALRMEN bit will be cleared automatically and the alarm will turn off.

Indefinite repetition of the alarm can occur if the CHIME bit = 1. Instead of the alarm being disabled when the value of the ARPTx bits reaches 00h, it rolls over to FFh and continues counting indefinitely while CHIME is set.

### 22.5.2 ALARM INTERRUPT

At every alarm event, an interrupt is generated. In addition, an alarm pulse output is provided that operates at half the frequency of the alarm. This output is completely synchronous to the RTCC clock and can be used as a trigger clock to other peripherals.

**Note:** Changing any of the registers, other than the RCFGAL and ALCFGRPT registers, and the CHIME bit while the alarm is enabled (ALRMEN = 1), can result in a false alarm event leading to a false alarm interrupt. To avoid a false alarm event, the timer and alarm values should only be changed while the alarm is disabled (ALRMEN = 0). It is recommended that the ALCFGRPT register and CHIME bit be changed when RTCSYNC = 0.

**FIGURE 22-2: ALARM MASK SETTINGS**

| Alarm Mask Setting<br>(AMASK<3:0>) | Day of<br>the<br>Week      | Month   | Day   | Hours   | Minutes   | Seconds   |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0000 - Every half second           | <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 0001 - Every second                | <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 0010 - Every 10 seconds            | <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> s                        |
| 0011 - Every minute                | <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> s                        |
| 0100 - Every 10 minutes            | <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> m                        | <input type="checkbox"/> s                        |
| 0101 - Every hour                  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> m                        | <input type="checkbox"/> s                        |
| 0110 - Every day                   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> h                        | <input type="checkbox"/> h                        | <input type="checkbox"/> s                        |
| 0111 - Every week                  | <input type="checkbox"/> d | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> h                        | <input type="checkbox"/> h                        | <input type="checkbox"/> s                        |
| 1000 - Every month                 | <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> d                        | <input type="checkbox"/> h                        | <input type="checkbox"/> h                        | <input type="checkbox"/> s                        |
| 1001 - Every year <sup>(1)</sup>   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> m                        | <input type="checkbox"/> m                        | <input type="checkbox"/> d                        | <input type="checkbox"/> d                        | <input type="checkbox"/> s                        |

**Note 1:** Annually, except when configured for February 29.

## 22.6 Power Control

The RTCC includes a power control feature that allows the device to periodically wake-up an external device, wait for the device to be stable before sampling wake-up events from that device and then shut down the external device. This can be done completely autonomously by the RTCC, without the need to wake from the current lower power mode (Sleep, Deep Sleep, etc.).

To use this feature:

1. Enable the RTCC (RTCEN = 1).
2. Set the PWCEN bit (RTCPWC<15>).
3. Configure the RTCC pin to drive the PWC control signal (RTCOC = 1 and RTCOUT<1:0> = 11).

The polarity of the PWC control signal may be chosen using the PWCPOL bit (RTCPWC<14>). An active-low or active-high signal may be used with the appropriate external switch to turn on or off the power to one or

more external devices. The active-low setting may also be used in conjunction with an open-drain setting on the RTCC pin, in order to drive the ground pin(s) of the external device directly (with the appropriate external VDD pull-up device), without the need for external switches. Finally, the CHIME bit should be set to enable the PWC periodicity.

## 22.7 RTCC VBAT Operation

The RTCC can operate in VBAT mode when there is a power loss on the VDD pin. The RTCC will continue to operate if the VBAT pin is powered on (it is usually connected to the battery).

**Note:** It is recommended to connect the VBAT pin to VDD if the VBAT mode is not used (not connected to the battery).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 23.0 CRYPTOGRAPHIC ENGINE

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of the PIC24FJ128GB204 family of devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. To complement the information in this data sheet, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “**Cryptographic Engine**” (DS70005133), which is available from the Microchip web site ([www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com)).

The Cryptographic Engine provides a new set of data security options. Using its own free-standing state machines, the engine can independently perform NIS standard encryption and decryption of data independently of the CPU. This eliminates the concerns of excessive CPU or program memory overhead that encryption and decryption would otherwise require, while enhancing the application's security.

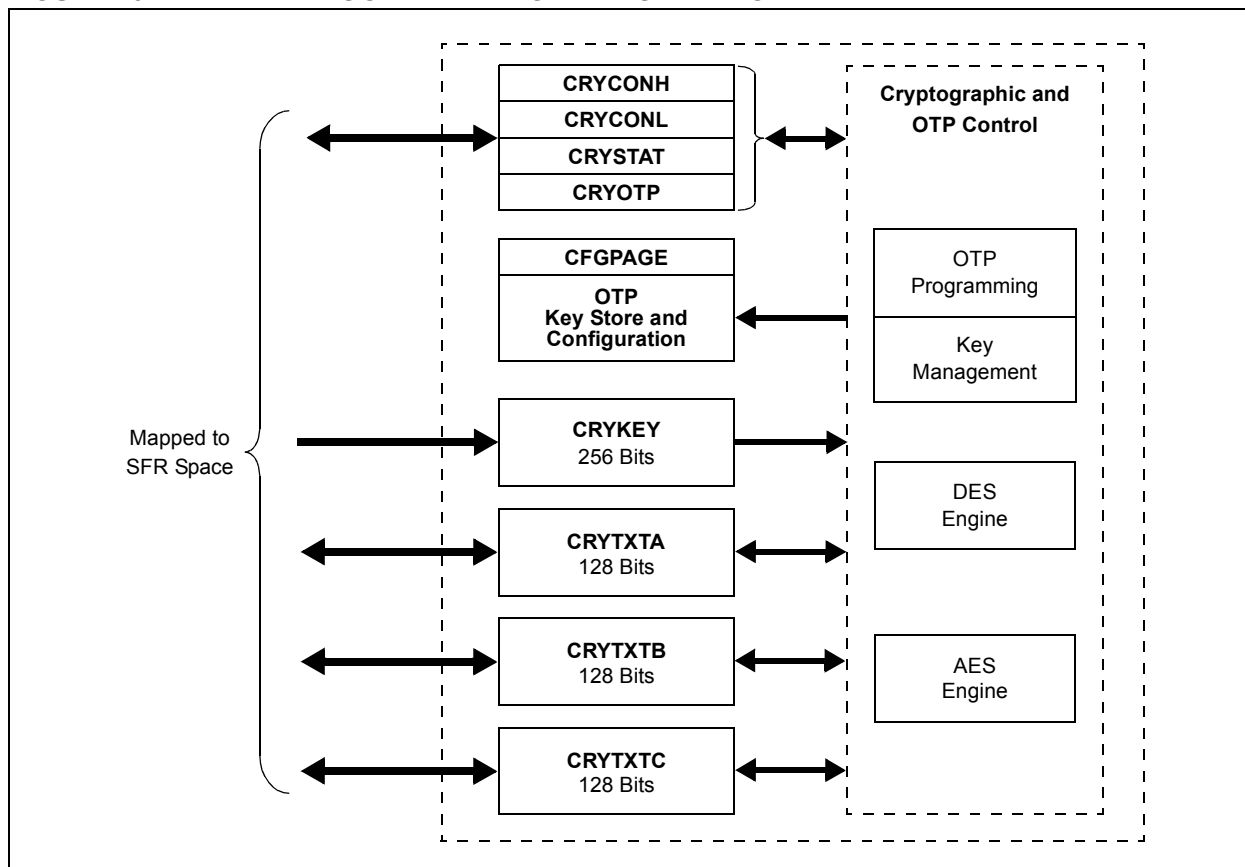
The primary features of the Cryptographic Engine are:

- Memory-mapped 128-bit and 256-bit memory spaces for encryption/decryption data
- Multiple options for key storage, selection and management

- Support for internal context saving
- Session key encryption and loading
- Half-duplex operation
- DES and Triple DES (3DES) encryption and decryption (64-bit block size):
  - Supports 64-bit keys and 2-key or 3-key Triple DES
- AES encryption and decryption (128-bit block size):
  - Supports key sizes of 128, 192 or 256 bits
- Supports ECB, CBC, CFB, OFB and CTR modes for both DES and AES standards
- Programmatically secure key storage:
  - 512-bit OTP array for key storage, not readable from other memory spaces
  - 32-bit Configuration Page
  - Simple in-module programming interface
  - Supports Key Encryption Key (KEK)
- Support for True and Pseudorandom Number Generation (PRNG), NIST SP800-90 compliant

A simplified block diagram of the Cryptographic Engine is shown in [Figure 23-1](#).

**FIGURE 23-1: CRYPTOGRAPHIC ENGINE BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 23.1 Data Register Spaces

There are four register spaces used for cryptographic data and key storage:

- CRYTXTA
- CRYXTB
- CRYXTC
- CRYKEY

Although mapped into the SFR space, all of these Data Spaces are actually implemented as 128-bit or 256-bit wide arrays, rather than groups of 16-bit wide Data registers. Reads and writes to and from these arrays are automatically handled as if they were any other register in the SFR space.

CRYTXTA through CRYXTC are 128-bit wide spaces; they are used for writing data to and reading from the Cryptographic Engine. Additionally, they are also used for storing intermediate results of the encryption/decryption operation. None of these registers may be written to when the module is performing an operation (CRYGO = 1).

CRYTXTA and CRYXTB normally serve as inputs to the encryption/decryption process.

CRYTXTA usually contains the initial plaintext or ciphertext to be encrypted or decrypted. Depending on the mode of operation, CRYXTB may contain the ciphertext output or intermediate cipher data. It may also function as a programmable length counter in certain operations.

CRYXTC is primarily used to store the final output of an encryption/decryption operation. It is also used as the input register for data to be programmed to the secure OTP array.

CRYKEY is a 256-bit wide space, used to store cryptographic keys for the selected operation. It is writable from both the SFR space and the secure OTP array. Although mapped into the SFR space, it is a write-only memory area; any data placed here, regardless of its source, cannot be read back by any run-time operations. This feature helps to ensure the security of any key data.

## 23.2 Modes of Operation

The Cryptographic Engine supports the following modes of operation, determined by the OPMOD<3:0> bits:

- Block Encryption
- Block Decryption
- AES Decryption Key Expansion
- Random Number Generation
- Session Key Generation
- Session Key Encryption
- Session Key Loading

The OPMODx bits may be changed while CRYON is set. They should only be changed when a cryptographic operation is not being done (CRYGO = 0).

Once the encryption operation, and the appropriate and valid key configuration is selected, the operation is performed by setting the CRYGO bit. This bit is automatically

cleared by hardware when the operation is complete. The CRYGO bit can also be manually cleared by software; this causes any operation in progress to terminate immediately. Clearing this bit in software also sets the CRYABRT bit (CRYSTAT<5>).

For most operations, CRYGO can only be set when an OTP operation is not being performed and there are no other error conditions. CRYREAD, CRYWR, CRYABRT, ROLLOVR, MODFAIL and KEYFAIL must all be '0'.

Setting CRYWR and CRYGO simultaneously will not initiate an OTP programming operation or any other operation. Setting CRYGO when the module is disabled (CRYON = 0) also has no effect.

## 23.3 Enabling the Engine

The Cryptographic Engine is enabled by setting the CRYON bit. Clearing this bit disables both the DES and AES engines, as well as causing the following register bits to be held in Reset:

- CRYGO (CRYCONL<8>)
- TXTABSY (CRYSTAT<6>)
- CRYWR (CRYOTP<0>)

All other register bits and registers may be read and written while CRYON = 0.

## 23.4 Operation During Sleep and Idle Modes

### 23.4.1 OPERATION DURING SLEEP MODES

Whenever the device enters any Sleep or Deep Sleep mode, all operation engine state machines are reset. This feature helps to preserve the integrity, or any data being encrypted or decrypted, by discarding any intermediate text that might be used to break the key.

Any OTP programming operations under way when a Sleep mode is entered are also halted. Depending on what is being programmed, this may result in permanent loss of a memory location or potentially, the use of the entire secure OTP array. Users are advised to perform OTP programming only when entry into power-saving modes is disabled.

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| <b>Note:</b> | OTP programming errors, regardless of the source, are not recoverable errors. Users should ensure that all foreseeable interruptions to the programming operation, including device interrupts and entry into power-saving modes, are disabled. |
|--------------|---|

### 23.4.2 OPERATION DURING IDLE MODE

When the CRYSIDL bit (CRYCONL<13>) is '0', the engine will continue any ongoing operations without interruption when the device enters Idle mode.

When CRYSIDL is '1', the module behaves as in Sleep modes.

## 23.5 Specific Cryptographic Operations

This section provides the step-wise details for each operation type that is available with the Cryptographic Engine.

### 23.5.1 ENCRYPTING DATA

1. If not already set, set the CRYON bit.
2. Configure the CPHRSEL, CPHRMODx, KEYMODx and KEYSRCx bits as desired to select the proper mode and key length.
3. Set OPMOD<3:0> to '0000'.
4. If a software key is being used, write it to the CRYKEY register. It is only necessary to write the lowest  $n$  bits of CRYKEY for a key length of  $n$ , as all unused CRYKEY bits are ignored.
5. Read the KEYFAIL bit. If this bit is '1', an illegal configuration has been selected and the encrypt operation will NOT be performed.
6. Write the data to be encrypted to the appropriate CRYTXT register. For a single DES encrypt operation, it is only necessary to write the lowest 64 bits. However, for data less than the block size (64 bits for DES, 128 bits for AES), it is the responsibility of the software to properly pad the upper bits within the block.
7. Set the CRYGO bit.
8. In ECB and CBC modes, set the FREEIE bit (CRYCONL<10>) to enable the optional CRYTXTA interrupt to indicate when the next plaintext block can be loaded.
9. Poll the CRYGO bit until it is cleared or wait for the CRYDNIF module interrupt (DONEIE must be set). If other Cryptographic Engine interrupts are enabled, it will be necessary to poll the CRYGO bit to verify the interrupt source.
10. Read the encrypted block from the appropriate CRYTXT register.
11. Repeat Steps 5 through 8 to encrypt further blocks in the message with the same key.

### 23.5.2 DECRYPTING DATA

1. If not already set, set the CRYON bit.
2. Configure the CPHRSEL, CPHRMODx, KEYMODx and KEYSRCx bits as desired to select the proper mode and key length.
3. Set OPMOD<3:0> to '0001'.
4. If a software key is being used, write the CRYKEY register. It is only necessary to write the lowest  $n$  bits of CRYKEY for a key length of  $n$ , as all unused CRYKEY bits are ignored.
5. If an AES-ECB or AES-CBC mode decryption is being performed, you must first perform an AES decryption key expansion operation.
6. Read the KEYFAIL status bit. If this bit is '1', an illegal configuration has been selected and the decrypt operation will not be performed.
7. Write the data to be decrypted into the appropriate text/data register. For a DES decrypt operation, it is only necessary to write the lowest 64 bits of CRYXTB.
8. Set the CRYGO bit.
9. If this is the first decrypt operation after a Reset, or if a key storage program operation was performed after the last decrypt operation, or if the KEYMODx or KEYSRCx fields are changed, the engine will perform a new key expansion operation. This will result in extra clock cycles for the decrypt operation, but will otherwise be transparent to the application (i.e., the CRYGO bit will be cleared only after the key expansion and the decrypt operation have completed).
10. In ECB and CBC modes, set the FREEIE bit (CRYCONL<10>) to enable the optional CRYTXTA interrupt to indicate when the next plaintext block can be loaded.
11. Poll the CRYGO bit until it is cleared or wait for the CRYDNIF module interrupt (DONEIE must be set). If other Cryptographic Engine interrupts are enabled, it will be necessary to poll the CRYGO bit to verify the interrupt source.
12. Read the decrypted block out of the appropriate text/data register.
13. Repeat Steps 6 through 10 to decrypt further blocks in the message with the same key.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 23.5.3 ENCRYPTING A SESSION KEY

**Note:** ECB and CBC modes are restricted to 128-bit session keys only.

1. If not already set, set the CRYON bit.
2. If not already programmed, program the SKEYEN bit to '1'.

**Note:** Setting SKEYEN permanently makes Key #1 available as a Key Encryption Key only. It cannot be used for other encryption or decryption operations after that.

3. Set OPMOD<3:0> to '1110'.
4. Configure the CPHRSEL, CPHRMOD<2:0> and KEYMOD<1:0> register bit fields as desired, set SKEYSEL to '0'.
5. Read the KEYFAIL status bit. If this bit is '1', an illegal configuration has been selected, and the encrypt operation will not be performed.
6. Write the software generated session key into the CRYKEY register or generate a random key into the CRYKEY register. It is only necessary to write the lowest  $n$  bits of CRYKEY for a key length of  $n$ , as all unused key bits are ignored.
7. Set the CRYGO bit. Poll the bit until it is cleared by hardware; alternatively, set the DONEIE bit (CRYCONL<11>) to generate an interrupt when the encryption is done.
8. Read the encrypted session key out of the appropriate CRYTXT register.
9. For total key lengths of more than 128 bits, set SKEYSEL to '1' and repeat Steps 6 and 7.
10. Set KEYSRC<3:0> to '0000' to use the session key to encrypt data.

## 23.5.4 RECEIVING A SESSION KEY

**Note:** ECB and CBC modes are restricted to 128-bit session keys only.

1. If not already set, set the CRYON bit.
2. If not already programmed, program the SKEYEN bit to '1'.

**Note:** Setting SKEYEN permanently makes Key #1 available as a Key Encryption Key only. It cannot be used for other encryption or decryption operations after that. It also permanently disables the ability of software to decrypt the session key into the CRYXTA register, thereby breaking programmatic security (i.e., software can read the unencrypted key).

3. Set OPMOD<3:0> to '1111'.
4. Configure the CPHRSEL, CPHRMOD<2:0> and KEYMOD<1:0> register bit fields as desired, set SKEYSEL to '0'.
5. Read the KEYFAIL status bit. If this bit is '1', an illegal configuration has been selected and the encrypt operation will NOT be performed.
6. Write the encrypted session key received into the appropriate CRYTXT register.
7. Set the CRYGO bit. Poll the bit until it is cleared by hardware; alternatively, set the DONEIE bit (CRYCONL<11>) to generate an interrupt when the process is done.
8. For total key lengths of more than 128 bits, set SKEYSEL to '1' and repeat Steps 6 and 7.
9. Set KEYSRC<3:0> to '0000' to use the newly generated session key to encrypt and decrypt data.

## 23.5.5 GENERATING A PSEUDORANDOM NUMBER (PRN)

For operations that require a Pseudorandom Number (PRN), the method outlined in NIST SP800-90 can be adapted for efficient use with the Cryptographic Engine. This method uses the AES algorithm in CTR mode to create PRNs with minimal CPU overhead. PRNs generated in this manner can be used for cryptographic purposes or any other purpose that the host application may require.

The random numbers used as initial seeds can be taken from any source convenient to the user's application. If possible, a non-deterministic random number source should be used.

**Note:** PRN generation is not available when software keys are disabled (SWKYDIS = 1).

To perform the initial reseeding operation, and subsequent reseeds after the reseeding interval has expired:

1. Store a random number (128 bits) in CRYTXTA.
2. For the initial generation ONLY, use a key value of 0h (128 bits), and a counter value of 0h.
3. Configure the engine for AES encryption, CTR mode (OPMOD<3:0> = 0000, CPHRSEL = 1, CPHMOD<2:0> = 100).
4. Perform an encrypt operation by setting CRYGO.
5. Move the results in CRYTXTC to RAM. This is the new key value (NEW\_KEY).
6. Store another random number (128 bits) in CRYTXTA.
7. Configure the module for encryption as in Step 3.
8. Perform an encrypt operation by setting CRYGO.
9. Store this value in RAM. This is the new counter value (NEW\_CTR).
10. For subsequent reseeding operations, use NEW\_KEY and NEW\_CTR for the starting key and counter values.

To generate the pseudorandom number:

1. Load NEW\_KEY value from RAM into CRYKEY.
2. Load NEW\_CTR value from RAM into CRYXTB.
3. Load CRYTXA with 0h (128 bits).
4. Configure the engine for AES encryption, CTR mode (OPMOD<3:0> = 0000, CPHRSEL = 1, CPHMOD<2:0> = 100).
5. Perform an encrypt operation by setting CRYGO.
6. Copy the generated PRN in CRYTXC (PRNG\_VALUE) to RAM.
7. Repeat the encrypt operation.
8. Store the value of CRYTXC from this round as the new value of NEW\_KEY.
9. Repeat the encrypt operation.
10. Store the value of CRYTXC from this round as the new value of NEW\_CTR.

Subsequent PRNs can be generated by repeating this procedure until the reseeding interval has expired. At that point, the reseeding operation is performed using the stored values of NEW\_KEY and NEW\_CTR.

## 23.5.6 GENERATING A RANDOM NUMBER

1. Enable the Cryptographic mode (CRYON (CRYCONL<15>) = 1).
2. Set the OPMOD<3:0> bits to '1010'.
3. Start the request by setting the CRYGO bit (CRYCONL<8>) to '1'.
4. Wait for the CRYGO bit to be cleared to '0' by the hardware.
5. Read the random number from the CRYTXA register.

## 23.5.7 TESTING THE KEY SOURCE CONFIGURATION

The validity of the key source configuration can always be tested by writing the appropriate register bits and then reading the KEYFAIL register bit. No operation needs to be started to perform this check; the module does not even need to be enabled.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 23.5.8 PROGRAMMING CFGPAGE (PAGE 0) CONFIGURATION BITS

1. If not already set, set the CRYON bit. Set KEYPG<3:0> to '0000'.
2. Read the PGMFAIL status bit. If this bit is '1', an illegal configuration has been selected and the programming operation will not be performed.
3. Write the data to be programmed into the Configuration Page into CRYTXXTC<31:0>. Any bits that are set ('1') will be permanently programmed, while any bits that are cleared ('0') will not be programmed and may be programmed at a later time.
4. Set the CRYWR bit. Poll the bit until it is cleared; alternatively, set the OTPIE bit (CRYOTP<6>) to enable the optional OTP done interrupt.
5. Once all programming has completed, set the CRYREAD bit to reload the values from the on-chip storage. A read operation must be performed to complete programming.

**Note:** Do not clear the CRYON bit while the CRYREAD bit is set; this will result in an incomplete read operation and unavailable key data. To recover, set CRYON and CRYREAD, and allow the read operation to fully complete.

6. Poll the CRYREAD bit until it is cleared; alternatively, set the OTPIE bit (CRYOTP<6>) to enable the optional OTP done interrupt.
7. For production programming, the TSTPGM bit can be set to indicate a successful programming operation. When TSTPGM is set, the PGMTST bit (CRYOTP<7>) will also be set, allowing users to see the OTP array status with performing a read operation on the array.

**Note:** If the device enters Sleep mode during OTP programming, the contents of the OTP array may become corrupted. This is not a recoverable error. Users must ensure that entry into power-saving modes is disabled before OTP programming is performed.

## 23.5.9 PROGRAMMING KEYS

1. If not already set, set the CRYON bit.
2. Configure KEYPG<3:0> to the page you want to program.
3. Read the PGMFAIL status bit. If this bit is '1', an illegal configuration has been selected and the programming operation will not be performed.
4. Write the data to be programmed into the Configuration Page into CRYTXXTC<63:0>. Any bits that are set ('1') will be permanently programmed, while any bits that are cleared ('0') will not be programmed and may be programmed at a later time.
5. Set the CRYWR bit. Poll the bit until it is cleared; alternatively, set the OTPIE bit (CRYOTP<6>) to enable the optional OTP done interrupt.
6. Repeat Steps 2 through 5 for each OTP array page to be programmed.
7. Once all programming has completed, set the CRYREAD bit to reload the values from the on-chip storage. A read operation must be performed to complete programming.

**Note:** Do not clear the CRYON bit while the CRYREAD bit is set; this will result in an incomplete read operation and unavailable key data. To recover, set CRYON and CRYREAD, and allow the read operation to fully complete.

8. Poll the CRYREAD bit until it is cleared; alternatively, set the OTPIE bit (CRYOTP<6>) to enable the optional OTP done interrupt.
9. For production programming, the TSTPGM bit can be set to indicate a successful programming operation. When TSTPGM is set, the PGMTST bit (CRYOTP<7>) will also be set, allowing users to see the OTP array status with performing a read operation on the array.

**Note:** If the device enters Sleep Mode during OTP programming, the contents of the OTP array may become corrupted. This is not a recoverable error. Users must ensure that entry into power-saving modes is disabled before OTP programming is performed.

## 23.5.10 VERIFYING PROGRAMMED KEYS

To maintain key security, the secure OTP array has no provision to read back its data to any user-accessible memory space in any operating mode. Therefore, there is no way to directly verify programmed data. The only method for verifying that they have been programmed correctly is to perform an encryption operation with a known plaintext/ciphertext pair for each programmed key.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 23.6 Control Registers

**REGISTER 23-1: CRYCONL: CRYPTOGRAPHIC CONTROL LOW REGISTER**

| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0                  | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | U-0 | R/W-0, HC <sup>(1)</sup> |
|--------|-----|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----|--------------------------|
| CRYON  | —   | CRYSIDL <sup>(3)</sup> | ROLLIE               | DONEIE               | FREEIE               | —   | CRYGO                    |
| bit 15 |     |                        |                      |                      |                      |     | bit 8                    |

| R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>  | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>  | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>  | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>  | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>   | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>    | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>    | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>    |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| OPMOD3 <sup>(2)</sup> | OPMOD2 <sup>(2)</sup> | OPMOD1 <sup>(2)</sup> | OPMOD0 <sup>(2)</sup> | CPHRSEL <sup>(2)</sup> | CPHRMOD2 <sup>(2)</sup> | CPHRMOD1 <sup>(2)</sup> | CPHRMOD0 <sup>(2)</sup> |
| bit 7                 |                       |                       |                       |                        |                         |                         | bit 0                   |

|                   |                             |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HC = Hardware Clearable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit            | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set            | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15 **CRYON:** Cryptographic Enable bit  
1 = Module is enabled  
0 = Module is disabled
- bit 14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13 **CRYSIDL:** Cryptographic Stop in Idle Control bit<sup>(3)</sup>  
1 = Stops module operation in Idle mode  
0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode
- bit 12 **ROLLIE:** CRYXTB Rollover Interrupt Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Generates an interrupt event when the counter portion of CRYXTB rolls over to '0'  
0 = Does not generate an interrupt event when the counter portion of CRYXTB rolls over to '0'
- bit 11 **DONEIE:** Operation Done Interrupt Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Generates an interrupt event when the current cryptographic operation completes  
0 = Does not generate an interrupt event when the current cryptographic operation completes; software must poll the CRYGO or CRYBSY bit to determine when current cryptographic operation is complete
- bit 10 **FREEIE:** Input Text Interrupt Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Generates an interrupt event when the input text (plaintext or ciphertext) is consumed during the current cryptographic operation  
0 = Does not generate an interrupt event when the input text is consumed
- bit 9 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 8 **CRYGO:** Cryptographic Engine Start bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Starts the operation specified by OPMOD<3:0> (cleared automatically when operation is done)  
0 = Stops the current operation (when cleared by software); also indicates the current operation has completed (when cleared by hardware)

- Note 1:** These bits are reset on system Resets or whenever the CRYMD bit is set.
- 2:** Writes to these bit fields are locked out whenever an operation is in progress (CRYGO bit is set).
- 3:** If the device enters Idle mode when CRYSIDL = 1, the module will stop its current operation. Entering into Idle mode while an OTP write operation is in process can result in irreversible corruption of the OTP.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 23-1: CRYCONL: CRYPTOGRAPHIC CONTROL LOW REGISTER (CONTINUED)

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| bit 7-4 | <b>OPMOD&lt;3:0&gt;</b> : Cryptographic Operating Mode Selection bits <sup>(1,2)</sup><br>1111 = Loads session key (decrypt session key in CRYTXTA/CRYXTB using the Key Encryption Key and write to CRYKEY)<br>1110 = Encrypts session key (encrypt session key in CRYKEY using the Key Encryption Key and write to CRYTXTA/CRYXTB)<br>1011 = Reserved<br>1010 = Generates a random number<br>1001 =<br>1000 =<br>•<br>• = Reserved<br>•<br>0011 =<br>0010 = AES decryption key expansion<br>0001 = Decryption<br>0000 = Encryption |
| bit 3   | <b>CPHRSEL</b> : Cipher Engine Select bit <sup>(1,2)</sup><br>1 = AES engine<br>0 = DES engine  |
| bit 2-0 | <b>CPHRMOD&lt;2:0&gt;</b> : Cipher Mode bits <sup>(1,2)</sup><br>11x = Reserved<br>101 = Reserved<br>100 = Counter (CTR) mode<br>011 = Output Feedback (OFB) mode<br>010 = Cipher Feedback (CFB) mode<br>001 = Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) mode<br>000 = Electronic Codebook (ECB) mode   |

- Note 1:** These bits are reset on system Resets or whenever the CRYMD bit is set.
- 2:** Writes to these bit fields are locked out whenever an operation is in progress (CRYGO bit is set).
- 3:** If the device enters Idle mode when CRYSIDL = 1, the module will stop its current operation. Entering into Idle mode while an OTP write operation is in process can result in irreversible corruption of the OTP.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 23-2: CRYCONH: CRYPTOGRAPHIC CONTROL HIGH REGISTER

| U-0    | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>      | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>      | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>      | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>      | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>      | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>      | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>      |
|--------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| —      | CTRSIZE6 <sup>(2,3)</sup> | CTRSIZE5 <sup>(2,3)</sup> | CTRSIZE4 <sup>(2,3)</sup> | CTRSIZE3 <sup>(2,3)</sup> | CTRSIZE2 <sup>(2,3)</sup> | CTRSIZE1 <sup>(2,3)</sup> | CTRSIZE0 <sup>(2,3)</sup> |
| bit 15 |                           |                           |                           |                           |                           |                           | bit 8                     |

| R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>   | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>   | U-0 | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>   | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>   | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>   | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup>   |
|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-----|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| SKEYSEL              | KEYMOD1 <sup>(2)</sup> | KEYMOD0 <sup>(2)</sup> | —   | KEYSRC3 <sup>(2)</sup> | KEYSRC2 <sup>(2)</sup> | KEYSRC1 <sup>(2)</sup> | KEYSRC0 <sup>(2)</sup> |
| bit 7                |                        |                        |     |                        |                        |                        | bit 0                  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 14-8 **CTRSIZE<6:0>:** Counter Size Select bits<sup>(1,2,3)</sup>

Counter is defined as CRYXTB<n:0>, where n = CTRSIZEx. Counter increments after each operation and generates a rollover event when the counter rolls over from  $(2^{n-1} - 1)$  to 0.

1111111 = 128 bits (CRYXTB<127:0>)

1111110 = 127 bits (CRYXTB<126:0>)

•

•

0000010 = 3 bits (CRYXTB<2:0>)

0000001 = 2 bits (CRYXTB<1:0>)

0000000 = 1 bit (CRYXTB<0>); rollover event occurs when CRYXTB<0> toggles from '1' to '0'

bit 7 **SKEYSEL:** Session Key Select bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = Key generation/encryption/loading are performed with CRYKEY<255:128>

0 = Key generation/encryption/loading are performed with CRYKEY<127:0>

bit 6-5 **KEYMOD<1:0>:** AES/DES Encrypt/Decrypt Key Mode/Key Length Select bits<sup>(1,2)</sup>

For DES Encrypt/Decrypt Operations (CPHRSEL = 0):

11 = 64-bit, 3-key 3DES

10 = Reserved

01 = 64-bit, standard 2-key 3DES

00 = 64-bit DES

For AES Encrypt/Decrypt Operations (CPHRSEL = 1):

11 = Reserved

10 = 256-bit AES

01 = 192-bit AES

00 = 128-bit AES

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-0 **KEYSRC<3:0>:** Cipher Key Source bits<sup>(1,2)</sup>

Refer to [Table 23-1](#) and [Table 23-2](#) for KEYSRC<3:0> values.

**Note 1:** These bits are reset on system Resets or whenever the CRYMD bit is set.

**2:** Writes to these bit fields are locked out whenever an operation is in progress (CRYGO bit is set).

**3:** Used only in CTR operations when CRYXTB is being used as a counter; otherwise, these bits have no effect.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 23-3: CRYSTAT: CRYPTOGRAPHIC STATUS REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|                        |                        |                          |                          |     |                        |                          |                          |
|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| R/HSC-x <sup>(1)</sup> | R/HSC-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/C-0, HS <sup>(2)</sup> | R/C-0, HS <sup>(2)</sup> | U-0 | R/HSC-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/HSC-x <sup>(1)</sup>   | R/HSC-x <sup>(1)</sup>   |
| CRYBSY <sup>(4)</sup>  | TXATABSY               | CRYABRT <sup>(5)</sup>   | ROLLOVR                  | —   | MODFAIL <sup>(3)</sup> | KEYFAIL <sup>(3,4)</sup> | PGMFAIL <sup>(3,4)</sup> |
| bit 7                  |                        |                          |                          |     |                        |                          | bit 0                    |

### Legend:

|                            |                   |                                       |
|----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| R = Readable bit           | W = Writable bit  | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'    |
| HS = Hardware Settable bit | C = Clearable bit | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |
| -n = Value at POR          | '1' = Bit is set  | '0' = Bit is cleared                  |
|                            |                   | x = Reset State Conditional bit       |

- bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 7 **CRYBSY:** Cryptographic OTP Array Busy Status bit<sup>(1,4)</sup>  
 1 = The cryptography module is performing a cryptographic operation or OTP operation  
 0 = The module is not currently performing any operation
- bit 6 **TXATABSY:** CRYTXA Busy Status bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = The CRYTXA register is busy and may not be written to  
 0 = The CRYTXA is free and may be written to
- bit 5 **CRYABRT:** Cryptographic Operation Aborted Status bit<sup>(2,5)</sup>  
 1 = Last operation was aborted by clearing the CRYGO bit in software  
 0 = Last operation completed normally (CRYGO cleared in hardware)
- bit 4 **ROLLOVR:** Counter Rollover Status bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
 1 = The CRYTXTB counter rolled over on the last CTR mode operation; once set, this bit must be cleared by software before the CRYGO bit can be set again  
 0 = No rollover event has occurred
- bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 2 **MODFAIL:** Mode Configuration Fail Flag bit<sup>(1,3)</sup>  
 1 = Currently selected operating and Cipher mode configuration is invalid; the CRYWR bit cannot be set until a valid mode is selected (automatically cleared by hardware with any valid configuration)  
 0 = Currently selected operating and Cipher mode configuration are valid
- bit 1 **KEYFAIL:** Key Configuration Fail Status bit<sup>(1,3,4)</sup>  
 See [Table 23-1](#) and [Table 23-2](#) for invalid key configurations.  
 1 = Currently selected key and mode configurations are invalid; the CRYWR bit cannot be set until a valid mode is selected (automatically cleared by hardware with any valid configuration)  
 0 = Currently selected configurations are valid
- bit 0 **PGMFAIL:** Key Storage/Configuration Program Fail Flag bit<sup>(1,3,4)</sup>  
 1 = The page indicated by KEYPG<3:0> is reserved or locked; the CRYWR bit cannot be set and no programming operation can be started  
 0 = The page indicated by KEYPG<3:0> is available for programming

- Note 1:** These bits are reset on system Resets or whenever the CRYMD bit is set.
- Note 2:** These bits are reset on system Resets when the CRYMD bit is set or when CRYGO is cleared.
- Note 3:** These bits are functional even when the module is disabled (CRYON = 0); this allows mode configurations to be validated for compatibility before enabling the module.
- Note 4:** These bits are automatically set during all OTP read operations, including the initial read at POR. Once the read is completed, the bit assumes the proper state that reflects the current configuration.
- Note 5:** If this bit is set, a cryptographic operation cannot be performed.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 23-4: CRYOTP: CRYPTOGRAPHIC OTP PAGE PROGRAM CONTROL REGISTER

|                        |                      |                          |                      |                      |                      |                      |                         |
|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| U-0                    | U-0                  | U-0                      | U-0                  | U-0                  | U-0                  | U-0                  | U-0                     |
| —                      | —                    | —                        | —                    | —                    | —                    | —                    | —                       |
| bit 15                 |                      |                          |                      |                      |                      |                      | bit 8                   |
| R/HSC-x <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/S/HC-1                 | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/W-0 <sup>(1)</sup> | R/S/HC-0 <sup>(2)</sup> |
| PGMTST                 | OTPIE                | CRYREAD <sup>(3,4)</sup> | KEYPG3               | KEYPG2               | KEYPG1               | KEYPG0               | CRYWR <sup>(3,4)</sup>  |
| bit 7                  |                      |                          |                      |                      |                      |                      | bit 0                   |

### Legend:

|                   |                             |                                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit            | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'    |
| S = Settable bit  | HC = Hardware Clearable bit | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set            | '0' = Bit is cleared                  |
|                   |                             | x = Bit is unknown                    |

bit 15-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7 **PGMTST:** Key Storage/Configuration Program Test bit<sup>(1)</sup>

This bit mirrors the state of the TSTPGM bit and is used to test the programming of the secure OTP array after programming.

1 = TSTPGM (CFGPAGE<30>) is programmed ('1')

0 = TSTPGM is not programmed ('0')

bit 6 **OTPIE:** Key Storage/Configuration Program Interrupt Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = Generates an interrupt when the current programming or read operation completes

0 = Does not generate an interrupt when the current programming or read operation completes; software must poll the CRYWR, CRYREAD or CRYBSY bit to determine when the current programming operation is complete

bit 5 **CRYREAD:** Cryptographic Key Storage/Configuration Read bit<sup>(3,4)</sup>

1 = This bit is set to start a read operation; read operation is in progress while this bit is set and CRYGO = 1

0 = Read operation has completed

bit 4-1 **KEYPG<3:0>:** Key Storage/Configuration Program Page Select bits<sup>(1)</sup>

1111 =

•

• = Reserved

•

1001 =

1000 = OTP Page 8

0111 = OTP Page 7

0110 = OTP Page 6

0101 = OTP Page 5

0100 = OTP Page 4

0011 = OTP Page 3

0010 = OTP Page 2

0001 = OTP Page 1

0000 = Configuration Page (CFGPAGE, OTP Page 0)

bit 0 **CRYWR:** Cryptographic Key Storage/Configuration Program bit<sup>(2,3,4)</sup>

1 = Programs the Key Storage/Configuration bits with the value found in CRYTXTC<63:0>

0 = Program operation has completed

**Note 1:** These bits are reset on system Resets or whenever the CRYMD bit is set.

**2:** These bits are reset on system Resets, when the CRYMD bit is set, or when CRYGO is cleared.

**3:** Set this bit only when CRYON = 1 and CRYGO = 0. Do not set CRYREAD or CRYWR both at any given time.

**4:** Do not clear CRYON or these bits while they are set; always allow the hardware operation to complete and clear the bit automatically.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 23-5: CFGPAGE: SECURE ARRAY CONFIGURATION BITS (OTP PAGE 0) REGISTER

| r-x    | R/PO-x                | U-x | U-x | R/PO-x    | R/PO-x    | R/PO-x    | R/PO-x    |
|--------|-----------------------|-----|-----|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| —      | TSTPGM <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | —   | KEY4TYPE1 | KEY4TYPE0 | KEY3TYPE1 | KEY3TYPE0 |
| bit 31 |                       |     |     |           |           |           | bit 24    |

| R/PO-x    | R/PO-x    | R/PO-x    | R/PO-x    | R/PO-x | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| KEY2TYPE1 | KEY2TYPE0 | KEY1TYPE1 | KEY1TYPE0 | SKEYEN | LKYSRC7 | LKYSRC6 | LKYSRC5 |
| bit 23    |           |           |           |        |         |         | bit 16  |

| R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|---------|---------|
| LKYSRC4 | LKYSRC3 | LKYSRC2 | LKYSRC1 | LKYSRC0 | SRCLK  | WRLOCK8 | WRLOCK7 |
| bit 15  |         |         |         |         |        |         | bit 8   |

| R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  | R/PO-x  |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| WRLOCK6 | WRLOCK5 | WRLOCK4 | WRLOCK3 | WRLOCK2 | WRLOCK1 | WRLOCK0 | SWKYDIS |
| bit 7   |         |         |         |         |         |         | bit 0   |

|                   |                       |  |                                    |  |                    |  |  |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--|------------------------------------|--|--------------------|--|--|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | r = Reserved bit      |  |                                    |  |                    |  |  |
| R = Readable bit  | PO = Program Once bit |  | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |  |                    |  |  |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set      |  | '0' = Bit is cleared               |  | x = Bit is unknown |  |  |

- bit 31      **Reserved:** Do not modify
- bit 30      **TSTPGM:** Customer Program Test bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
                  1 = CFGPAGE has been programmed  
                  0 = CFGPAGE has not been programmed
- bit 29-28      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 27-26      **KEY4TYPE<1:0>:** Key Type for OTP Pages 7 and 8 bits  
                  00 = Keys in these pages are for DES/DES2 operations only  
                  01 = Keys in these pages are for DES3 operations only  
                  10 = Keys in these pages are for 128-bit AES operations only  
                  11 = Keys in these pages are for 192-bit/256-bit AES operations only
- bit 25-24      **KEY3TYPE<1:0>:** Key Type for OTP Pages 5 and 6 bits  
                  00 = Keys in these pages are for DES/DES2 operations only  
                  01 = Keys in these pages are for DES3 operations only  
                  10 = Keys in these pages are for 128-bit AES operations only  
                  11 = Keys in these pages are for 192-bit/256-bit AES operations only
- bit 23-22      **KEY2TYPE<1:0>:** Key Type for OTP Pages 3 and 4 bits  
                  00 = Keys in these pages are for DES/DES2 operations only  
                  01 = Keys in these pages are for DES3 operations only  
                  10 = Keys in these pages are for 128-bit AES operations only  
                  11 = Keys in these pages are for 192-bit/256-bit AES operations only
- bit 21-20      **KEY1TYPE<1:0>:** Key Type for OTP Pages 1 and 2 bits  
                  00 = Keys in these pages are for DES/DES2 operations only  
                  01 = Keys in these pages are for DES3 operations only  
                  10 = Keys in these pages are for 128-bit AES operations only  
                  11 = Keys in these pages are for 192-bit/256-bit AES operations only

**Note 1:** This bit's state is mirrored by the PGMTEST bit (CRYOTP<7>).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 23-5: CFGPAGE: SECURE ARRAY CONFIGURATION BITS (OTP PAGE 0) REGISTER (CONTINUED)

- bit 19      **SKEYEN**: Session Key Enable bit  
1 = Stored Key #1 may be used only as a Key Encryption Key  
0 = Stored Key #1 may be used for any operation
- bit 18-11      **LKYSRC<7:0>**: Locked Key Source Configuration bits  
If SRCLCK = 1:  
1xxxxxxx = Key Source is as if KEYSRC<3:0> = 1111  
01xxxxxx = Key Source is as if KEYSRC<3:0> = 0111  
001xxxxx = Key Source is as if KEYSRC<3:0> = 0110  
0001xxxx = Key Source is as if KEYSRC<3:0> = 0101  
00001xxx = Key Source is as if KEYSRC<3:0> = 0100  
000001xx = Key Source is as if KEYSRC<3:0> = 0011  
0000001x = Key Source is as if KEYSRC<3:0> = 0010  
00000001 = Key Source is as if KEYSRC<3:0> = 0001  
00000000 = Key Source is as if KEYSRC<3:0> = 0000  
If SRCLCK = 0:  
These bits are ignored.
- bit 10      **SRCLCK**: Key Source Lock bit  
1 = The key source is determined by the KEYSRC<3:0> (CRYCONH<3:0>) bits (software key selection is disabled)  
0 = The key source is determined by the KEYSRC<3:0> (CRYCONH<3:0>) bits (locked key selection is disabled)
- bit 9-1      **WRLOCK<8:0>**: Write Lock Page Enable bits  
For OTP Pages 0 (CFGPAGE) through 8:  
1 = OTP page is permanently locked and may not be programmed  
0 = OTP page is unlocked and may be programmed
- bit 0      **SWKYDIS**: Software Key Disable bit  
1 = Software key (CRYKEY register) is disabled; when KEYSRC<3:0> = 0000, the KEYFAIL status bit will be set and no encryption/decryption/session key operations can be started until the KEYSRC<3:0> bits are changed to a value other than '0000'  
0 = Software key (CRYKEY register) can be used as a key source when KEYSRC<3:0> = 0000

**Note 1:** This bit's state is mirrored by the PGMST bit (CRYOTP<7>).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 23-1: DES/3DES KEY SOURCE SELECTION**

| Mode of Operation                                 | KEYMOD<1:0> | KEYSRC<3:0>         | Session Key Source  |                                 | OTP Array Address                   |
|---|-------------|---------------------|---|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
|   |             |                     | SKEYEN = 0  | SKEYEN = 1                      |                                     |
| 64-Bit DES  | 00          | 0000 <sup>(1)</sup> | CRYKEY<63:0>  |                                 | —                                   |
|   |             | 0001                | DES Key #1  | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup> | <63:0>                              |
|   |             | 0010                | DES Key #2  |                                 | <127:64>                            |
|   |             | 0011                | DES Key #3  |                                 | <191:128>                           |
|   |             | 0100                | DES Key #4  |                                 | <255:192>                           |
|   |             | 0101                | DES Key #5  |                                 | <319:256>                           |
|   |             | 0110                | DES Key #6  |                                 | <383:320>                           |
|   |             | 0111                | DES Key #7  |                                 | <447:384>                           |
|   |             | 1111                | Reserved <sup>(2)</sup>   |                                 | —                                   |
|   |             | All Others          | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup>   |                                 | —                                   |
| 64-Bit 2-Key 3DES<br>(Standard 2-Key E-D-E/D-E-D) | 01          | 0000 <sup>(1)</sup> | CRYKEY<63:0> (1st/3rd)<br>CRYKEY<127:64> (2nd)  |                                 | —                                   |
|   |             | 0001                | DES Key #1 (1st/3rd)<br>DES Key #2 (2nd)  | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup> | <63:0><br><127:64>                  |
|   |             | 0010                | DES Key #3 (1st/3rd)<br>DES Key #4 (2nd)  |                                 | <191:128><br><255:192>              |
|   |             | 0011                | DES Key #5 (1st/3rd)<br>DES Key #6 (2nd)  |                                 | <319:256><br><383:320>              |
|   |             | 0100                | DES Key #7 (1st/3rd)<br>DES Key #8 (2nd)  |                                 | <447:384><br><511:448>              |
|   |             | 1111                | Reserved <sup>(2)</sup>   |                                 | —                                   |
|   |             | All Others          | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup>   |                                 | —                                   |
| (Reserved)  | 10          | xxxx                | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup>   |                                 | —                                   |
| 64-Bit 3-Key 3DES                                 | 11          | 0000 <sup>(1)</sup> | CRYKEY<63:0> (1st Iteration)<br>CRYKEY<127:64> (2nd Iteration)<br>CRYKEY<191:128> (3rd Iteration) |                                 | —                                   |
|   |             | 0001                | DES Key #1 (1st)<br>DES Key #2 (2nd)<br>DES Key #3 (3rd)  | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup> | <63:0><br><127:64><br><191:128>     |
|   |             | 0010                | DES Key #4 (1st)<br>DES Key #5 (2nd)<br>DES Key #6 (3rd)  |                                 | <255:192><br><319:256><br><383:320> |
|   |             | 1111                | Reserved <sup>(2)</sup>   |                                 | —                                   |
|   |             | All Others          | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup>   |                                 | —                                   |

**Note 1:** This configuration is considered a Key Configuration Error (KEYFAIL bit is set) if SWKYDIS is also set.

**2:** The KEYFAIL bit (CRYSTAT<1>) is set when these configurations are selected and remains set until a valid configuration is selected.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 23-2: AES KEY MODE/SOURCE SELECTION**

| Mode of Operation | KEYMOD<1:0> | KEYSRC<3:0>         | Key Source                      |                                 | OTP Address |
|-------------------|-------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|
|                   |             |                     | SKEYEN = 0                      | SKEYEN = 1                      |             |
| 128-Bit AES       | 00          | 0000 <sup>(1)</sup> | CRYKEY<127:0>                   |                                 | —           |
|                   |             | 0001                | AES Key #1                      | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup> | <127:0>     |
|                   |             | 0010                | AES Key #2                      |                                 | <255:128>   |
|                   |             | 0011                | AES Key #3                      |                                 | <383:256>   |
|                   |             | 0100                | AES Key #4                      |                                 | <511:384>   |
|                   |             | 1111                | Reserved <sup>(2)</sup>         |                                 | —           |
|                   |             | All Others          | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup> |                                 | —           |
| 192-Bit AES       | 01          | 0000 <sup>(1)</sup> | CRYKEY<191:0>                   |                                 | —           |
|                   |             | 0001                | AES Key #1                      | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup> | <191:0>     |
|                   |             | 0010                | AES Key #2                      |                                 | <383:192>   |
|                   |             | 1111                | Reserved <sup>(2)</sup>         |                                 | —           |
|                   |             | All Others          | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup> |                                 | —           |
| 256-Bit AES       | 10          | 0000 <sup>(1)</sup> | CRYKEY<255:0>                   |                                 | —           |
|                   |             | 0001                | AES Key #1                      | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup> | <255:0>     |
|                   |             | 0010                | AES Key #2                      |                                 | <511:256>   |
|                   |             | 1111                | Reserved <sup>(2)</sup>         |                                 | —           |
|                   |             | All Others          | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup> |                                 | —           |
| (Reserved)        | 11          | xxxx                | Key Config Error <sup>(2)</sup> |                                 | —           |

**Note 1:** This configuration is considered a Key Configuration Error (KEYFAIL bit is set) if SWKYDIS is also set.

**2:** The KEYFAIL bit (CRYSTAT<1>) is set when these configurations are selected and remains set until a valid configuration is selected.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 24.0 32-BIT PROGRAMMABLE CYCLIC REDUNDANCY CHECK (CRC) GENERATOR

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “32-Bit Programmable Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)” (DS30009729). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The 32-bit programmable CRC generator provides a hardware implemented method of quickly generating checksums for various networking and security applications. It offers the following features:

- User-programmable CRC polynomial equation, up to 32 bits
- Programmable shift direction (little or big-endian)
- Independent data and polynomial lengths
- Configurable interrupt output
- Data FIFO

Figure 24-1 displays a simplified block diagram of the CRC generator. A simple version of the CRC shift engine is displayed in Figure 24-2.

FIGURE 24-1: CRC MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM

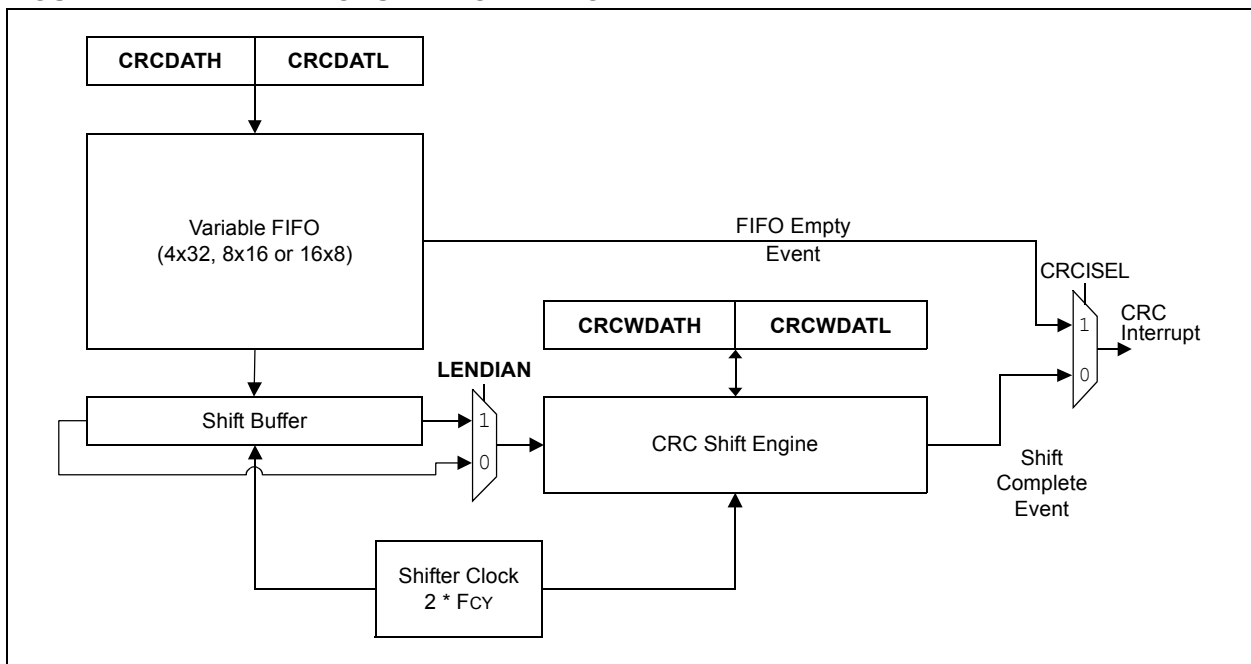
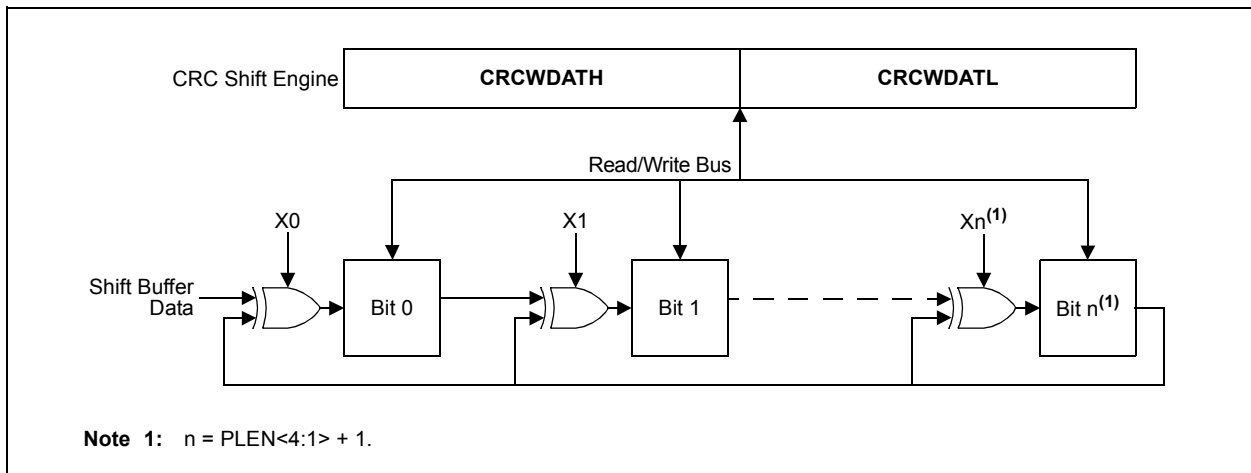


FIGURE 24-2: CRC SHIFT ENGINE DETAIL



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 24.1 User Interface

### 24.1.1 POLYNOMIAL INTERFACE

The CRC module can be programmed for CRC polynomials of up to the 32<sup>nd</sup> order, using up to 32 bits.

Polynomial length, which reflects the highest exponent in the equation, is selected by the PLEN<4:0> bits (CRCCON2<4:0>).

The CRCXORL and CRCXORH registers control which exponent terms are included in the equation. Setting a particular bit includes that exponent term in the equation. Functionally, this includes an XOR operation on the corresponding bit in the CRC engine. Clearing the bit disables the XOR.

For example, consider two CRC polynomials, one is a 16-bit and the other is a 32-bit equation.

#### EQUATION 24-1: 16-BIT, 32-BIT CRC POLYNOMIALS

$$X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$$

and

$$X^{32} + X^{26} + X^{23} + X^{22} + X^{16} + X^{12} + X^{11} + X^{10} + X^8 + X^7 + X^5 + X^4 + X^2 + X + 1$$

To program these polynomials into the CRC generator, set the register bits, as shown in [Table 24-1](#).

Note that the appropriate positions are set to '1' to indicate that they are used in the equation (for example, X26 and X23). The '0' bit required by the equation is always X0Red; thus, X0 is a don't care. For a polynomial of length 32, it is assumed that the 32<sup>nd</sup> bit will be used. Therefore, the X<31:1> bits do not have the 32<sup>nd</sup> bit.

### 24.1.2 DATA INTERFACE

The module incorporates a FIFO that works with a variable data width. Input data width can be configured to any value between 1 and 32 bits using the DWIDTH<4:0> bits (CRCCON2<12:8>). When the data width is greater than 15, the FIFO is 4 words deep. When the DWIDTHx bits are between 15 and 8, the FIFO is 8 words deep. When the DWIDTHx bits are less than 8, the FIFO is 16 words deep.

The data for which the CRC is to be calculated must first be written into the FIFO. Even if the data width is less than 8, the smallest data element that can be written into the FIFO is 1 byte. For example, if the DWIDTHx bits are 5, then the size of the data is DWIDTH<4:0> + 1 or 6. The data is written as a whole byte; the two unused upper bits are ignored by the module.

Once data is written into the MSb of the CRCDAT registers (that is, the MSb as defined by the data width), the value of the VWORD<4:0> bits (CRCCON1<12:8>) increments by one. For example, if the DWIDTHx bits are 24, the VWORDx bits will increment when bit 7 of CRCDATH is written. Therefore, CRCDATL must always be written to before CRCDATH.

The CRC engine starts shifting data when the CRCGO bit is set and the value of the VWORDx bits is greater than zero.

Each word is copied out of the FIFO into a buffer register, which decrements the VWORDx bits. The data is then shifted out of the buffer. The CRC engine continues shifting at a rate of two bits per instruction cycle, until the VWORDx bits reach zero. This means that for a given data width, it takes half that number of instructions for each word to complete the calculation. For example, it takes 16 cycles to calculate the CRC for a single word of 32-bit data.

When the VWORDx bits reach the maximum value for the configured value of the DWIDTHx bits (4, 8 or 16), the CRCFUL bit becomes set. When the VWORDx bits reach zero, the CRCMPT bit becomes set. The FIFO is emptied and the VWORD<4:0> bits are set to '00000' whenever CRCEN is '0'.

At least one instruction cycle must pass after a write to CRCWDAT before a read of the VWORDx bits is done.

TABLE 24-1: CRC SETUP EXAMPLES FOR 16 AND 32-BIT POLYNOMIALS

| CRC Control Bits | Bit Values          |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
|                  | 16-Bit Polynomial   | 32-Bit Polynomial   |
| PLEN<4:0>        | 01111               | 11111               |
| X<31:16>         | 0000 0000 0000 0001 | 0000 0100 1100 0001 |
| X<15:0>          | 0001 0000 0010 00x  | 0001 1101 1011 011x |

## 24.1.3 DATA SHIFT DIRECTION

The LENDIAN bit (CRCCON1<3>) is used to control the shift direction. By default, the CRC will shift data through the engine, MSb first. Setting LENDIAN (= 1) causes the CRC to shift data, LSb first. This setting allows better integration with various communication schemes and removes the overhead of reversing the bit order in software. Note that this only changes the direction the data is shifted into the engine. The result of the CRC calculation will still be a normal CRC result, not a reverse CRC result.

## 24.1.4 INTERRUPT OPERATION

The module generates an interrupt that is configurable by the user for either of two conditions.

If CRCISEL is '0', an interrupt is generated when the VWORD<4:0> bits make a transition from a value of '1' to '0'. If CRCISEL is '1', an interrupt will be generated after the CRC operation finishes and the module sets the CRCGO bit to '0'. Manually setting CRCGO to '0' will not generate an interrupt. Note that when an interrupt occurs, the CRC calculation would not yet be complete. The module will still need  $(PLEN + 1)/2$  clock cycles, after the interrupt is generated, until the CRC calculation is finished.

## 24.1.5 TYPICAL OPERATION

To use the module for a typical CRC calculation:

1. Set the CRCEN bit to enable the module.
2. Configure the module for desired operation:
  - a) Program the desired polynomial using the CRCXORL and CRCXORH registers, and the PLEN<4:0> bits.
  - b) Configure the data width and shift direction using the DWIDTHx and LENDIAN bits.
  - c) Select the desired Interrupt mode using the CRCISEL bit.
3. Preload the FIFO by writing to the CRCDATL and CRCDATH registers until the CRCFUL bit is set or no data is left.

4. Clear old results by writing 00h to CRCWDATL and CRCWDATH. The CRCWDAT registers can also be left unchanged to resume a previously halted calculation.
5. Set the CRCGO bit to start calculation.
6. Write remaining data into the FIFO as space becomes available.
7. When the calculation completes, CRCGO is automatically cleared. An interrupt will be generated if CRCISEL = 1.
8. Read CRCWDATL and CRCWDATH for the result of the calculation.

There are eight registers used to control programmable CRC operation:

- CRCCON1
- CRCCON2
- CRCXORL
- CRCXORH
- CRCDATL
- CRCDATH
- CRCWDATL
- CRCWDATH

The CRCCON1 and CRCCON2 registers ([Register 24-1](#) and [Register 24-2](#)) control the operation of the module and configure the various settings.

The CRCXORL/H registers ([Register 24-3](#) and [Register 24-4](#)) select the polynomial terms to be used in the CRC equation. The CRCDAT and CRCWDAT registers are each register pairs that serve as buffers for the double-word input data and CRC processed output, respectively.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 24-1: CRCCON1: CRC CONTROL 1 REGISTER

|        |     |       |          |          |          |          |          |
|--------|-----|-------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0 | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC |
| CRCEN  | —   | CSIDL | VWORD4   | VWORD3   | VWORD2   | VWORD1   | VWORD0   |
| bit 15 |     |       |          |          |          |          | bit 8    |

|          |          |         |           |         |     |     |       |
|----------|----------|---------|-----------|---------|-----|-----|-------|
| R-0, HSC | R-1, HSC | R/W-0   | R/W-0, HC | R/W-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| CRCFUL   | CRCMPT   | CRCISEL | CRCGO     | LENDIAN | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 7    |          |         |           |         |     |     | bit 0 |

|                   |                             |                                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HC = Hardware Clearable bit | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit            | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set            | '0' = Bit is cleared                  |
|                   |                             | x = Bit is unknown                    |

- bit 15      **CRCEN:** CRC Enable bit  
1 = Enables module  
0 = Disables module; all state machines, pointers and the CRCWDAT/CRCDAT registers reset; other SFRs are NOT reset
- bit 14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13      **CSIDL:** CRC Stop in Idle Mode bit  
1 = Discontinues module operation when device enters Idle mode  
0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode
- bit 12-8    **VWORD<4:0>:** Pointer Value bits  
Indicates the number of valid words in the FIFO. Has a maximum value of 8 when PLEN<4:0> ≥ 7 or 16 when PLEN<4:0> ≤ 7.
- bit 7      **CRCFUL:** CRC FIFO Full bit  
1 = FIFO is full  
0 = FIFO is not full
- bit 6      **CRCMPT:** CRC FIFO Empty bit  
1 = FIFO is empty  
0 = FIFO is not empty
- bit 5      **CRCISEL:** CRC Interrupt Selection bit  
1 = Interrupt on FIFO is empty; the final word of data is still shifting through the CRC  
0 = Interrupt on shift is complete and results are ready
- bit 4      **CRCGO:** Start CRC bit  
1 = Starts CRC serial shifter  
0 = CRC serial shifter is turned off
- bit 3      **LENDIAN:** Data Shift Direction Select bit  
1 = Data word is shifted into the FIFO, starting with the LSb (little-endian)  
0 = Data word is shifted into the FIFO, starting with the MSb (big-endian)
- bit 2-0    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 24-2: CRCCON2: CRC CONTROL 2 REGISTER

|        |     |     |         |         |         |         |         |
|--------|-----|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | DWIDTH4 | DWIDTH3 | DWIDTH2 | DWIDTH1 | DWIDTH0 |
| bit 15 |     |     | bit 8   |         |         |         |         |

|       |     |     |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | PLEN4 | PLEN3 | PLEN2 | PLEN1 | PLEN0 |
| bit 7 |     |     | bit 0 |       |       |       |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-13 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 12-8 **DWIDTH<4:0>:** Data Word Width Configuration bits  
Configures the width of the data word (Data Word Width – 1).

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-0 **PLEN<4:0>:** Polynomial Length Configuration bits  
Configures the length of the polynomial (Polynomial Length – 1).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 24-3: CRCXORL: CRC XOR POLYNOMIAL REGISTER, LOW BYTE

|         |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|---------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0   | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| X<15:8> |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 15  |       |       |       | bit 8 |       |       |       |

|        |       |       |       |       |       |       |     |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 |
| X<7:1> |       |       |       |       |       |       | —   |
| bit 7  |       |       |       | bit 0 |       |       |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-1 **X<15:1>**: XOR of Polynomial Term  $x^n$  Enable bits

bit 0 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

## REGISTER 24-4: CRCXORH: CRC XOR POLYNOMIAL REGISTER, HIGH BYTE

|          |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0    | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| X<31:24> |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 15   |       |       |       | bit 8 |       |       |       |

|          |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0    | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| X<23:16> |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 7    |       |       |       | bit 0 |       |       |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-0 **X<31:16>**: XOR of Polynomial Term  $x^n$  Enable bits

## 25.0 12-BIT A/D CONVERTER WITH THRESHOLD DETECT

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information on the 12-Bit A/D Converter, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “12-Bit A/D Converter with Threshold Detect” (DS39739).

The 12-bit A/D Converter has the following key features:

- Successive Approximation Register (SAR) Conversion
- Conversion Speeds of up to 200 ksps
- Up to 19 Analog Input Channels (internal and external)
- Selectable 10-Bit or 12-Bit (default) Conversion Resolution
- Multiple Internal Reference Input Channels
- External Voltage Reference Input Pins
- Unipolar Differential Sample-and-Hold (S/H) Amplifier
- Automated Threshold Scan and Compare Operation to Pre-Evaluate Conversion Results
- Selectable Conversion Trigger Source
- Fixed Length (one word per channel), Configurable Conversion Result Buffer
- Four Options for Results Alignment
- Configurable Interrupt Generation
- Enhanced DMA Operations with Indirect Address Generation
- Operation During CPU Sleep and Idle modes

The 12-bit A/D Converter module is an enhanced version of the 10-bit module offered in earlier PIC24 devices. It is a Successive Approximation Register (SAR) Converter, enhanced with 12-bit resolution, a wide range of automatic sampling options, tighter integration with other analog modules and a configurable results buffer.

It also includes a unique Threshold Detect feature that allows the module itself to make simple decisions based on the conversion results, and enhanced operation with the DMA Controller through Peripheral Indirect Addressing (PIA).

A simplified block diagram for the module is shown in [Figure 25-1](#).

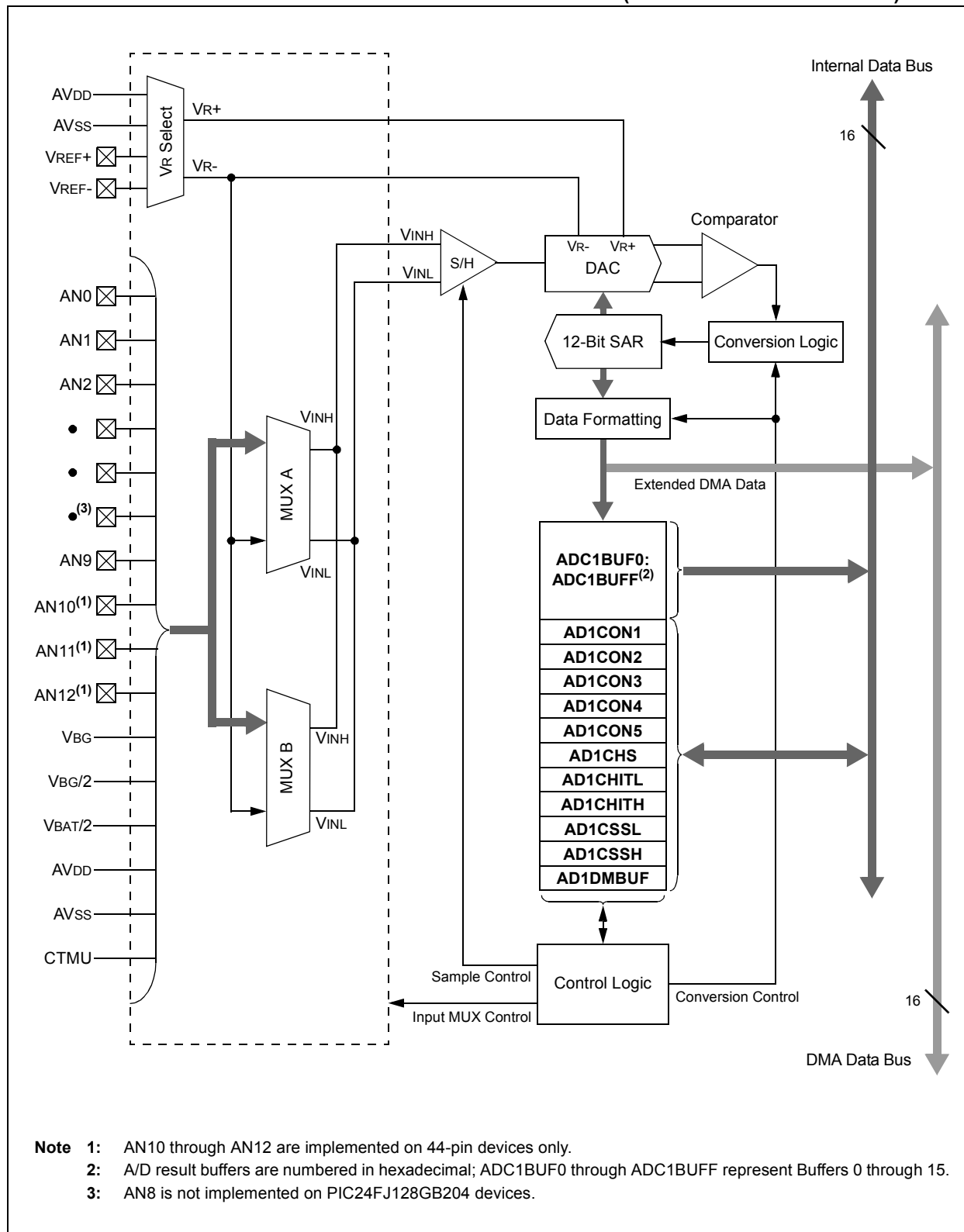
## 25.1 Basic Operation

To perform a standard A/D conversion:

1. Configure the module:
  - a) Configure port pins as analog inputs by setting the appropriate bits in the ANSx registers (see [Section 11.2 “Configuring Analog Port Pins \(ANSx\)”](#) for more information).
  - b) Select the voltage reference source to match the expected range on analog inputs (AD1CON2<15:13>).
  - c) Select the positive and negative multiplexer inputs for each channel (AD1CHS<15:0>).
  - d) Select the analog conversion clock to match the desired data rate with the processor clock (AD1CON3<7:0>).
  - e) Select the appropriate sample/conversion sequence (the AD1CON1<7:4> and AD1CON3<12:8> bits).
  - f) For Channel A scanning operations, select the positive channels to be included (AD1CSSH and AD1CSSL registers).
  - g) Select how the conversion results are presented in the buffer (AD1CON1<9:8> and the AD1CON5 register).
  - h) Select the interrupt rate (AD1CON2<6:2>).
  - i) Turn on A/D module (AD1CON1<15>).
2. Configure the A/D interrupt (if required):
  - a) Clear the AD1IF bit (IFS0<13>).
  - b) Enable the AD1IE interrupt (IEC0<13>).
  - c) Select the A/D interrupt priority (IPC3<6:4>).
3. If the module is configured for manual sampling, set the SAMP bit (AD1CON1<1>) to begin sampling.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 25-1: 12-BIT A/D CONVERTER BLOCK DIAGRAM (PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY)**



## 25.2 Extended DMA Operations

In addition to the standard features available on all 12-bit A/D Converters, PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices implement a limited extension of DMA functionality. This extension adds features that work with the device's DMA Controller to expand the A/D module's data storage abilities beyond the module's built-in buffer.

The Extended DMA functionality is controlled by the DMAEN bit (AD1CON1<11>); setting this bit enables the functionality. The DMABM bit (AD1CON1<12>) configures how the DMA feature operates.

### 25.2.1 EXTENDED BUFFER MODE

Extended Buffer mode (DMABM = 1) is useful for storing the results of channels. It can also be used to store the conversion results on any A/D channel in any implemented address in data RAM.

In Extended Buffer mode, all data from the A/D Buffer register, and channels above 26, are mapped into data RAM. Conversion data is written to a destination specified by the DMA Controller, specifically by the DMADSTn register. This allows users to read the conversion results of channels above 26, which do not have their own memory-mapped A/D buffer locations, from data memory.

When using Extended Buffer mode, always set the BUFREGEN bit to disable FIFO operation. In addition, disable the Split Buffer mode by clearing the BUFM bit.

### 25.2.2 PIA MODE

When DMABM = 0, the A/D module is configured to function with the DMA Controller for Peripheral Indirect Addressing (PIA) mode operations. In this mode, the A/D module generates an 11-bit Indirect Address (IA). This is ORed with the destination address in the DMA Controller to define where the A/D conversion data will be stored.

In PIA mode, the buffer space is created as a series of contiguous smaller buffers, one per analog channel. The size of the channel buffer determines how many analog channels can be accommodated. The size of the buffer is selected by the DMABLx bits (AD1CON4<2:0>). The size options range from a single word per buffer to 128 words. Each channel is allocated a buffer of this size, regardless of whether or not the channel will actually have conversion data.

The IA is created by combining the base address within a channel buffer with three to five bits (depending on the buffer size) to identify the channel. The base address ranges from zero to seven bits wide, depending on the buffer size. The address is right-padded with a '0' in order to maintain address alignment in the Data Space. The concatenated channel and base address bits are then left-padded with zeros, as necessary, to complete the 11-bit IA.

The IA is configured to auto-increment during write operations by using the SMPix bits (AD1CON2<6:2>).

As with PIA operations for any DMA-enabled module, the base destination address in the DMADSTn register must be masked properly to accommodate the IA. Table 25-1 shows how complete addresses are formed. Note that the address masking varies for each buffer size option. Because of masking requirements, some address ranges may not be available for certain buffer sizes. Users should verify that the DMA base address is compatible with the buffer size selected.

Figure 25-2 shows how the parts of the address define the buffer locations in data memory. In this case, the module "allocates" 256 bytes of data RAM (1000h to 1100h) for 32 buffers of four words each. However, this is not a hard allocation and nothing prevents these locations from being used for other purposes. For example, in the current case, if Analog Channels 1, 3 and 8 are being sampled and converted, conversion data will only be written to the channel buffers, starting at 1008h, 1018h and 1040h. The holes in the PIA buffer space can be used for any other purpose. It is the user's responsibility to keep track of buffer locations and preventing data overwrites.

## 25.3 A/D Operation with VBAT

One of the A/D channels is connected to the VBAT pin to monitor the VBAT voltage. This allows monitoring the VBAT pin voltage (battery voltage) with no external connection. The voltage measured, using the A/D VBAT monitor, is  $V_{BAT}/2$ . The voltage can be calculated by reading  $A/D = ((V_{BAT}/2)/V_{DD}) * 1024$  for 10-bit A/D and  $((V_{BAT}/2)/V_{DD}) * 4096$  for 12 bit A/D.

When using the VBAT A/D monitor:

- Connect the A/D channel to ground to discharge the sample capacitor.
- Because of the high-impedance of VBAT, select higher sampling time to get an accurate reading.

Since the VBAT pin is connected to the A/D during sampling, to prolong the VBAT battery life, the recommendation is to only select the VBAT channel when needed.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 25.4 Registers

The 12-bit A/D Converter is controlled through a total of 11 registers:

- AD1CON1 through AD1CON5 ([Register 25-1](#) through [Register 25-5](#))
- AD1CHS ([Register 25-6](#))
- AD1CHITL ([Register 25-8](#))
- AD1CSSH and AD1CSSL ([Register 25-9](#) and [Register 25-10](#))
- AD1CTMENL ([Register 25-11](#))
- AD1DMBUF (not shown) – The 16-bit conversion buffer for Extended Buffer mode

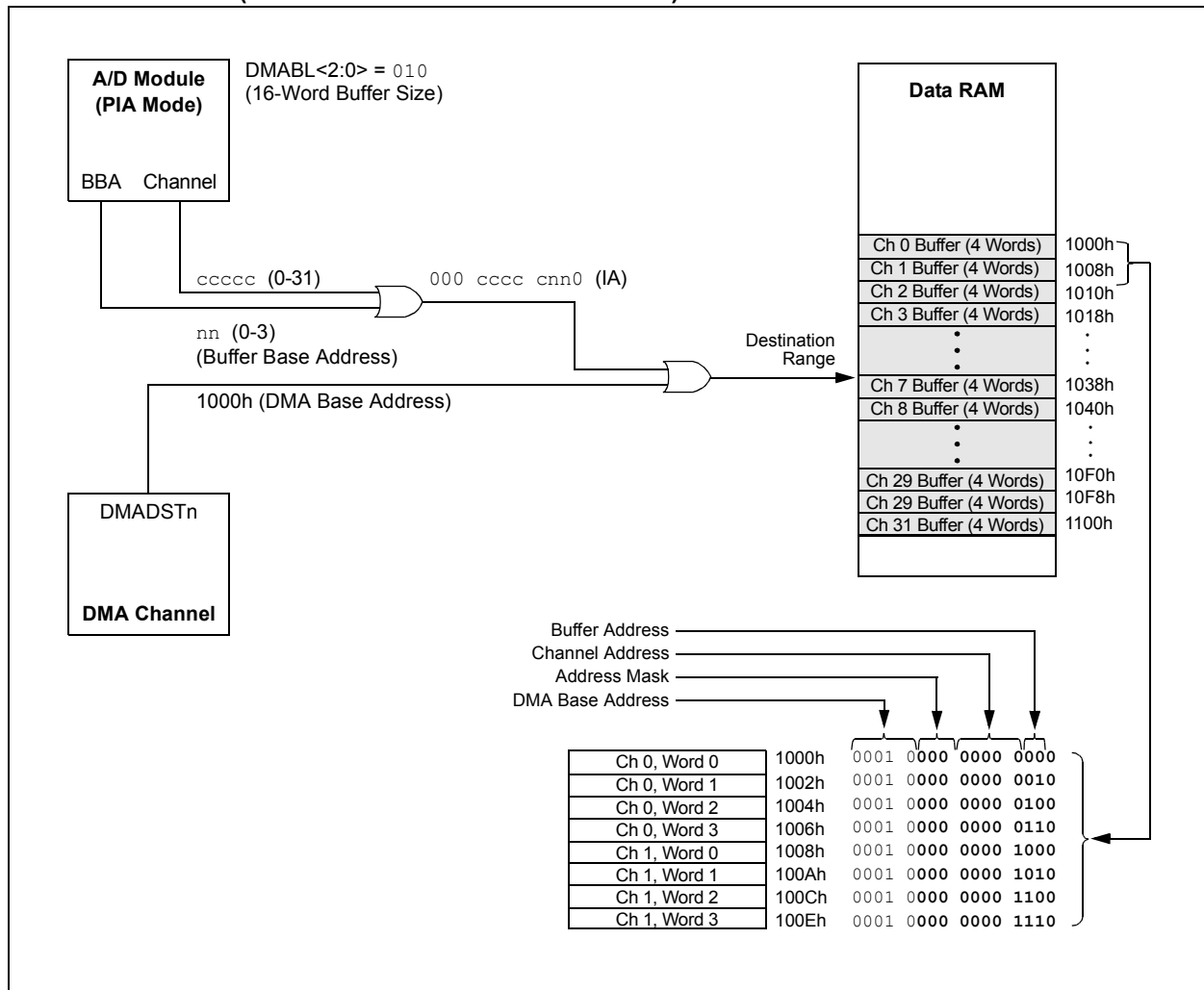
**TABLE 25-1: INDIRECT ADDRESS GENERATION IN PIA MODE**

| DMABL<2:0> | Buffer Size per Channel (words) | Generated Offset Address (lower 11 bits) | Available Input Channels | Allowable DMADSTn Addresses |
|------------|---------------------------------|--|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 000        | 1                               | 000 00cc ccc0                            | 32                       | xxxx xxxx xx00 0000         |
| 001        | 2                               | 000 0ccc ccn0                            | 32                       | xxxx xxxx x000 0000         |
| 010        | 4                               | 000 cccc cnn0                            | 32                       | xxxx xxxx 0000 0000         |
| 011        | 8                               | 00c cccc nnn0                            | 32                       | xxxx xxx0 0000 0000         |
| 100        | 16                              | 0cc ccnn nnn0                            | 32                       | xxxx xx00 0000 0000         |
| 101        | 32                              | ccc ccnn nnn0                            | 32                       | xxxx x000 0000 0000         |
| 110        | 64                              | ccc cnnn nnn0                            | 16                       | xxxx x000 0000 0000         |
| 111        | 128                             | ccc nnnn nnn0                            | 8                        | xxxx x000 0000 0000         |

**Legend:** ccc = Channel number (three to five bits), n = Base buffer address (zero to seven bits),  
x = User-definable range of DMADSTn for base address, 0 = Masked bits of DMADSTn for IA.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 25-2: EXAMPLE OF BUFFER ADDRESS GENERATION IN PIA MODE  
(4-WORD BUFFERS PER CHANNEL)**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 25-1: AD1CON1: ADC1 CONTROL REGISTER 1

|        |     |        |                      |       |        |       |       |
|--------|-----|--------|----------------------|-------|--------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0                | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| ADON   | —   | ADSIDL | DMABM <sup>(1)</sup> | DMAEN | MODE12 | FORM1 | FORM0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |                      |       |        | bit 8 |       |

|       |       |       |       |     |       |            |            |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|-------|------------|------------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0, HSC | R/C-0, HSC |
| SSRC3 | SSRC2 | SSRC1 | SSRC0 | —   | ASAM  | SAMP       | DONE       |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |     |       | bit 0      |            |

|                   |                   |                                       |
|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | C = Clearable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit  | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set  | '0' = Bit is cleared                  |
|                   |                   | x = Bit is unknown                    |

- bit 15      **ADON:** ADC1 Operating Mode bit  
1 = A/D Converter module is operating  
0 = A/D Converter is off
- bit 14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13      **ADSIDL:** ADC1 Stop in Idle Mode bit  
1 = Discontinues module operation when device enters Idle mode  
0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode
- bit 12      **DMABM:** Extended DMA Buffer Mode Select bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Extended Buffer mode: Buffer address is defined by the DMADSTn register  
0 = PIA mode: Buffer addresses are defined by the DMA Controller and AD1CON4<2:0>
- bit 11      **DMAEN:** Extended DMA/Buffer Enable bit  
1 = Extended DMA and buffer features are enabled  
0 = Extended features are disabled
- bit 10      **MODE12:** ADC1 12-Bit Operation Mode bit  
1 = 12-bit A/D operation  
0 = 10-bit A/D operation
- bit 9-8      **FORM<1:0>:** Data Output Format bits (see the following formats)  
11 = Fractional result, signed, left justified  
10 = Absolute fractional result, unsigned, left justified  
01 = Decimal result, signed, right justified  
00 = Absolute decimal result, unsigned, right justified
- bit 7-4      **SSRC<3:0>:** Sample Clock Source Select bits  
1xxx = Unimplemented, do not use  
0111 = Internal counter ends sampling and starts conversion (auto-convert); do not use in Auto-Scan mode  
0110 = Unimplemented  
0101 = TMR1  
0100 = CTMU  
0011 = TMR5  
0010 = TMR3  
0001 = INT0  
0000 = The SAMP bit must be cleared by software to start conversion
- bit 3      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 2      **ASAM:** ADC1 Sample Auto-Start bit  
1 = Sampling begins immediately after last conversion; SAMP bit is auto-set  
0 = Sampling begins when SAMP bit is manually set

**Note 1:** This bit is only available when Extended DMA/Buffer features are available (DMAEN = 1).

## REGISTER 25-1: AD1CON1: ADC1 CONTROL REGISTER 1 (CONTINUED)

- bit 1      **SAMP:** ADC1 Sample Enable bit  
            1 = A/D Sample-and-Hold amplifiers are sampling  
            0 = A/D Sample-and-Hold amplifiers are holding
- bit 0      **DONE:** ADC1 Conversion Status bit  
            1 = A/D conversion cycle has completed  
            0 = A/D conversion cycle has not started or is in progress

**Note 1:** This bit is only available when Extended DMA/Buffer features are available (DMAEN = 1).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 25-2: AD1CON2: ADC1 CONTROL REGISTER 2

|        |        |        |        |          |       |       |     |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------|-------|-------|-----|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0    | R/W-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| PVCFG1 | PVCFG0 | NVCFG0 | OFFCAL | BUFREGEN | CSCNA | —     | —   |
| bit 15 |        |        |        |          |       | bit 8 |     |

|                     |       |       |       |       |       |                     |       |
|---------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------------------|-------|
| R/W-0               | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0               | R/W-0 |
| BUFS <sup>(1)</sup> | SMPI4 | SMPI3 | SMPI2 | SMPI1 | SMPI0 | BUFM <sup>(1)</sup> | ALTS  |
| bit 7               |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0               |       |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-14 **PVCFG<1:0>**: Converter Positive Voltage Reference Configuration bits

1x = Unimplemented, do not use

01 = External VREF+

00 = AVDD

bit 13 **NVCFG0**: Converter Negative Voltage Reference Configuration bit

1 = External VREF-

0 = AVSS

bit 12 **OFFCAL**: Offset Calibration Mode Select bit

1 = Inverting and non-inverting inputs of channel Sample-and-Hold are connected to AVSS

0 = Inverting and non-inverting inputs of channel Sample-and-Hold are connected to normal inputs

bit 11 **BUFREGEN**: ADC1 Buffer Register Enable bit

1 = Conversion result is loaded into the buffer location determined by the converted channel

0 = A/D result buffer is treated as a FIFO

bit 10 **CSCNA**: Scan Input Selections for CH0+ During Sample A bit

1 = Scans inputs

0 = Does not scan inputs

bit 9-8 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

bit 7 **BUFS**: Buffer Fill Status bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = A/D is currently filling ADC1BUF8-ADC1BUFF, user should access data in ADC1BUF0-ADC1BUF7

0 = A/D is currently filling ADC1BUF0-ADC1BUF7, user should access data ADC1BUF8-ADC1BUFF

**Note 1:** These bits are only applicable when the buffer is used in FIFO mode (BUFREGEN = 0). In addition, BUFS is only used when BUFM = 1.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 25-2: AD1CON2: ADC1 CONTROL REGISTER 2 (CONTINUED)

- bit 6-2     **SMPI<4:0>**: Interrupt Sample/DMA Increment Rate Select bits
- When DMAEN = 1:
- 11111 = Increments the DMA address after completion of the 32nd sample/conversion operation
- 11110 = Increments the DMA address after completion of the 31st sample/conversion operation
- 
- 
- 
- 00001 = Increments the DMA address after completion of the 2nd sample/conversion operation
- 00000 = Increments the DMA address after completion of each sample/conversion operation
- When DMAEN = 0:
- 11111 = Interrupts at the completion of the conversion for each 32nd sample
- 11110 = Interrupts at the completion of the conversion for each 31st sample
- 
- 
- 
- 00001 = Interrupts at the completion of the conversion for every other sample
- 00000 = Interrupts at the completion of the conversion for each sample
- bit 1     **BUFM**: Buffer Fill Mode Select bit<sup>(1)</sup>
- 1 = Starts buffer filling at ADC1BUF0 on the first interrupt and ADC1BUF8 on the next interrupt
- 0 = Always starts filling buffer at ADC1BUF0
- bit 0     **ALTS**: Alternate Input Sample Mode Select bit
- 1 = Uses channel input selects for Sample A on the first sample and Sample B on the next sample
- 0 = Always uses channel input selects for Sample A

**Note 1:** These bits are only applicable when the buffer is used in FIFO mode (BUFREGEN = 0). In addition, BUFS is only used when BUFM = 1.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 25-3: AD1CON3: ADC1 CONTROL REGISTER 3

|        |        |        |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0  | R-0    | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| ADRC   | EXTSAM | PUMPEN | SAMC4 | SAMC3 | SAMC2 | SAMC1 | SAMC0 |
| bit 15 |        |        |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| ADCS7 | ADCS6 | ADCS5 | ADCS4 | ADCS3 | ADCS2 | ADCS1 | ADCS0 |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **ADRC:** ADC1 Conversion Clock Source bit

1 = RC clock

0 = Clock derived from system clock

bit 14 **EXTSAM:** Extended Sampling Time bit

1 = A/D is still sampling after SAMP = 0

0 = A/D is finished sampling

bit 13 **PUMPEN:** Charge Pump Enable bit

1 = Charge pump for switches is enabled

0 = Charge pump for switches is disabled

bit 12-8 **SAMC<4:0>:** Auto-Sample Time Select bits

11111 = 31 TAD

•

•

•

00001 = 1 TAD

00000 = 0 TAD

bit 7-0 **ADCS<7:0>:** ADC1 Conversion Clock Select bits

11111111 = 256 • T<sub>CY</sub> = TAD

•

•

•

00000001 = 2 • T<sub>CY</sub> = TAD

00000000 = T<sub>CY</sub> = TAD

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 25-4: AD1CON4: ADC1 CONTROL REGISTER 4

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |     |                           |       |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------------------------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                     | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | DMABL<2:0> <sup>(1)</sup> |       |       |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |                           |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **DMABL<2:0>:** DMA Buffer Size Select bits<sup>(1)</sup>

111 = Allocates 128 words of buffer to each analog input

110 = Allocates 64 words of buffer to each analog input

101 = Allocates 32 words of buffer to each analog input

100 = Allocates 16 words of buffer to each analog input

011 = Allocates 8 words of buffer to each analog input

010 = Allocates 4 words of buffer to each analog input

001 = Allocates 2 words of buffer to each analog input

000 = Allocates 1 word of buffer to each analog input

**Note 1:** The DMABL<2:0> bits are only used when AD1CON1<11> = 1 and AD1CON<12> = 0; otherwise, their value is ignored.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**REGISTER 25-5: AD1CON5: ADC1 CONTROL REGISTER 5**

|        |       |        |       |     |     |        |        |
|--------|-------|--------|-------|-----|-----|--------|--------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| ASEN   | LPEN  | CTMREQ | BGREQ | —   | —   | ASINT1 | ASINT0 |
| bit 15 |       |        |       |     |     | bit 8  |        |

|       |     |     |     |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | WM1   | WM0   | CM1   | CM0   |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |       |       | bit 0 |       |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **ASEN:** Auto-Scan Enable bit

1 = Auto-scan is enabled

0 = Auto-scan is disabled

bit 14 **LPEN:** Low-Power Enable bit

1 = Low power is enabled after scan

0 = Full power is enabled after scan

bit 13 **CTMREQ:** CTMU Request bit

1 = CTMU is enabled when the A/D is enabled and active

0 = CTMU is not enabled by the A/D

bit 12 **BGREQ:** Band Gap Request bit

1 = Band gap is enabled when the A/D is enabled and active

0 = Band gap is not enabled by the A/D

bit 11-10 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 9-8 **ASINT<1:0>:** Auto-Scan (Threshold Detect) Interrupt Mode bits

11 = Interrupt after Threshold Detect sequence completed and valid compare has occurred

10 = Interrupt after valid compare has occurred

01 = Interrupt after Threshold Detect sequence completed

00 = No interrupt

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-2 **WM<1:0>:** Write Mode bits

11 = Reserved

10 = Auto-compare only (conversion results are not saved, but interrupts are generated when a valid match occurs, as defined by the CMx and ASINTx bits)

01 = Convert and save (conversion results are saved to locations as determined by the register bits when a match occurs, as defined by the CMx bits)

00 = Legacy operation (conversion data is saved to a location determined by the buffer register bits)

bit 1-0 **CM<1:0>:** Compare Mode bits

11 = Outside Window mode (valid match occurs if the conversion result is outside of the window defined by the corresponding buffer pair)

10 = Inside Window mode (valid match occurs if the conversion result is inside the window defined by the corresponding buffer pair)

01 = Greater Than mode (valid match occurs if the result is greater than the value in the corresponding buffer register)

00 = Less Than mode (valid match occurs if the result is less than the value in the corresponding buffer register)

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 25-6: AD1CHS: ADC1 SAMPLE SELECT REGISTER

| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| CH0NB2 | CH0NB1 | CH0NB0 | CH0SB4 | CH0SB3 | CH0SB2 | CH0SB1 | CH0SB0 |
| bit 15 |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| CH0NA2 | CH0NA1 | CH0NA0 | CH0SA4 | CH0SA3 | CH0SA2 | CH0SA1 | CH0SA0 |
| bit 7  |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-13 **CH0NB<2:0>**: Sample B Channel 0 Negative Input Select bits

1xx = Unimplemented

011 = Unimplemented

010 = AN1

001 = Unimplemented

000 = VREF-/AVss

bit 12-8 **CH0SB<4:0>**: Sample B Channel 0 Positive Input Select bits

11111 = VBAT/2<sup>(1)</sup>

11110 = AVDD<sup>(1)</sup>

11101 = AVss<sup>(1)</sup>

11100 = Band Gap Voltage (V<sub>BG</sub>) reference<sup>(1)</sup>

11011 = V<sub>BG</sub>/2<sup>(1)</sup>

01110 = CTMU

01101 = CTMU temperature sensor input (does not require AD1CTMENL<12> to be set)

01100 = AN12<sup>(2)</sup>

01011 = AN11<sup>(2)</sup>

01010 = AN10<sup>(2)</sup>

01001 = AN9

01000 = Unimplemented

00111 = AN7

00110 = AN6

00101 = AN5

00100 = AN4

00011 = AN3

00010 = AN2

00001 = AN1

00000 = AN0

bit 7-5 **CH0NA<2:0>**: Sample A Channel 0 Negative Input Select bits

Same definitions as for CH0NB<2:0>.

bit 4-0 **CH0SA<4:0>**: Sample A Channel 0 Positive Input Select bits

Same definitions as for CH0SB<4:0>.

**Note 1:** These input channels do not have corresponding memory-mapped result buffers.

**2:** These channels are unimplemented in 28-pin devices.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 25-7: ANCFG: A/D BAND GAP REFERENCE CONFIGURATION REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |     |       |        |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|--------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | VBG2EN | VBGEN |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |       |        | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-2      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1      **VBG2EN:** A/D Input VBG/2 Enable bit

1 = Band Gap Voltage, divided by two reference (VBG/2), is enabled

0 = Band Gap Voltage, divided by two reference (VBG/2), is disabled

bit 0      **VBGEN:** A/D Input VBG Enable bit

1 = Band Gap Voltage (VBG) reference is enabled

0 = Band Gap Voltage (VBG) reference is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 25-8: AD1CHITL: ADC1 SCAN COMPARE HIT REGISTER (LOW WORD)

|        |     |     |                          |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-----|--------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                    | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | CHH<12:9> <sup>(1)</sup> |       |       |       | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |                          |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|          |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0    | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| CHH<7:0> |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 7    |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-13      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 12-9      **CHH<12:9>:** ADC1 Compare Hit bits<sup>(1)</sup>

If CM<1:0> = 11:

1 = A/D Result Buffer n has been written with data or a match has occurred

0 = A/D Result Buffer n has not been written with data

For All Other Values of CM<1:0>:

1 = A match has occurred on A/D Result Channel n

0 = No match has occurred on A/D Result Channel n

bit 8      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7-0      **CHH<8:0>:** ADC1 Compare Hit bits

If CM<1:0> = 11:

1 = A/D Result Buffer n has been written with data or a match has occurred

0 = A/D Result Buffer n has not been written with data

For All Other Values of CM<1:0>:

1 = A match has occurred on A/D Result Channel n

0 = No match has occurred on A/D Result Channel n

**Note 1:** The CHH<12:10> bits are unimplemented in 28-pin devices, read as '0'.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 25-9: AD1CSSH: ADC1 INPUT SCAN SELECT REGISTER (HIGH WORD)

|            |       |       |       |       |       |     |     |
|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|-----|
| R/W-0      | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   | U-0 | U-0 |
| CSS<31:27> |       |       |       |       | —     | —   | —   |
| bit 15     |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |     |     |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-11 **CSS<31:27>**: ADC1 Input Scan Selection bits

1 = Includes corresponding channel for input scan

0 = Skips channel for input scan

bit 10-0 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

## REGISTER 25-10: AD1CSSL: ADC1 INPUT SCAN SELECT REGISTER (LOW WORD)

|        |                          |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|--------|--------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | R/W-0                    | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   |
| —      | CSS<14:9> <sup>(1)</sup> |       |       |       |       |       | —     |
| bit 15 |                          |       |       |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|          |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0    | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| CSS<7:0> |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 7    |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

bit 14-9 **CSS<14:9>**: ADC1 Input Scan Selection bits<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = Includes corresponding channel for input scan

0 = Skips channel for input scan

bit 8 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

bit 7-0 **CSS<7:0>**: ADC1 Input Scan Selection bits

1 = Includes corresponding channel for input scan

0 = Skips channel for input scan

**Note 1:** The CSS<12:10> bits are unimplemented in 28-pin devices, read as '0'.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 25-11: AD1CTMENL: ADC1 CTMU ENABLE REGISTER (LOW WORD)<sup>(1)</sup>

|        |     |     |                            |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-----|-----|----------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                      | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | CTMEN<12:9> <sup>(2)</sup> |       |       |       | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |                            |       |       |       | bit 8 |

|            |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0      | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| CTMEN<7:0> |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| bit 7      |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-13 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 12-9 **CTMEN<12:9>:** CTMU Enable During Conversion bits<sup>(2)</sup>

1 = CTMU is enabled and connected to the selected channel during conversion

0 = CTMU is not connected to this channel

bit 8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7-0 **CTMEN<7:0>:** CTMU Enable During Conversion bits

1 = CTMU is enabled and connected to the selected channel during conversion

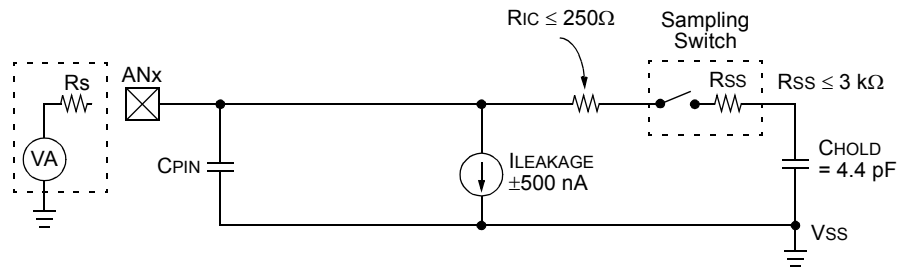
0 = CTMU is not connected to this channel

**Note 1:** The actual number of channels available depends on which channels are implemented on a specific device. For more information, refer to [Table 1-1](#) and [Table 1-2](#) in [Section 1.0 “Device Overview”](#). Unimplemented channels are read as '0'.

**2:** The CTMEN<12:10> bits are unimplemented in 28-pin devices, read as '0'.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 25-3: 10-BIT A/D CONVERTER ANALOG INPUT MODEL**



|                |          |   |
|----------------|----------|---|
| <b>Legend:</b> | CPIN     | = Input Capacitance <sup>(1)</sup>                    |
|                | VT       | = Threshold Voltage                                   |
|                | ILEAKAGE | = Leakage Current at the pin due to Various Junctions |
|                | RIC      | = Interconnect Resistance                             |
|                | RSS      | = Sampling Switch Resistance                          |
|                | CHOLD    | = Sample/Hold Capacitance (from DAC)                  |

**Note 1:** The CPIN value depends on the device package and is not tested. The effect of CPIN is negligible if  $R_s \leq 5 \text{ k}\Omega$ .

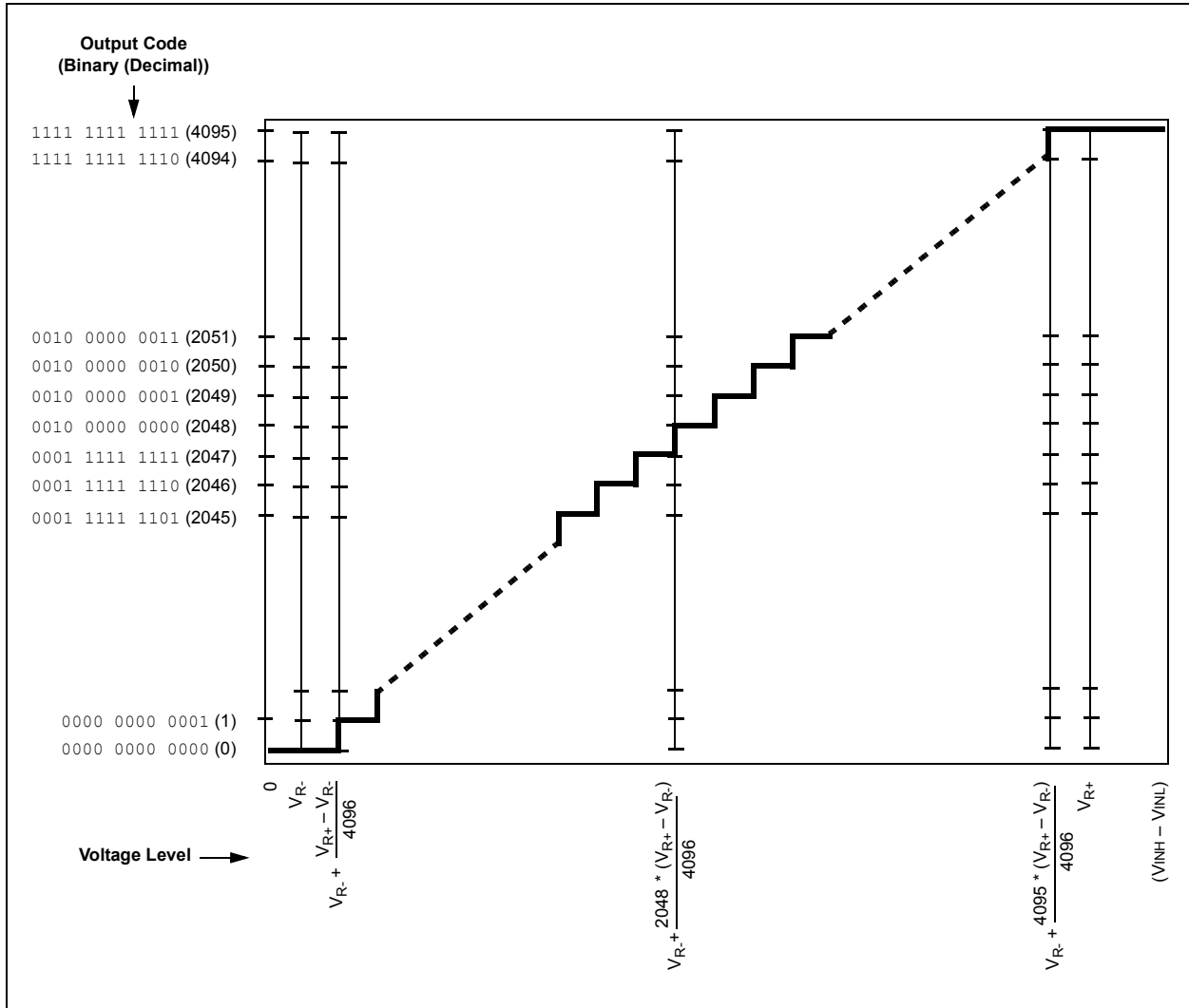
**EQUATION 25-1: A/D CONVERSION CLOCK PERIOD**

$$T_{AD} = T_{CY} (ADCS + 1)$$

$$ADCS = \frac{T_{AD}}{T_{CY}} - 1$$

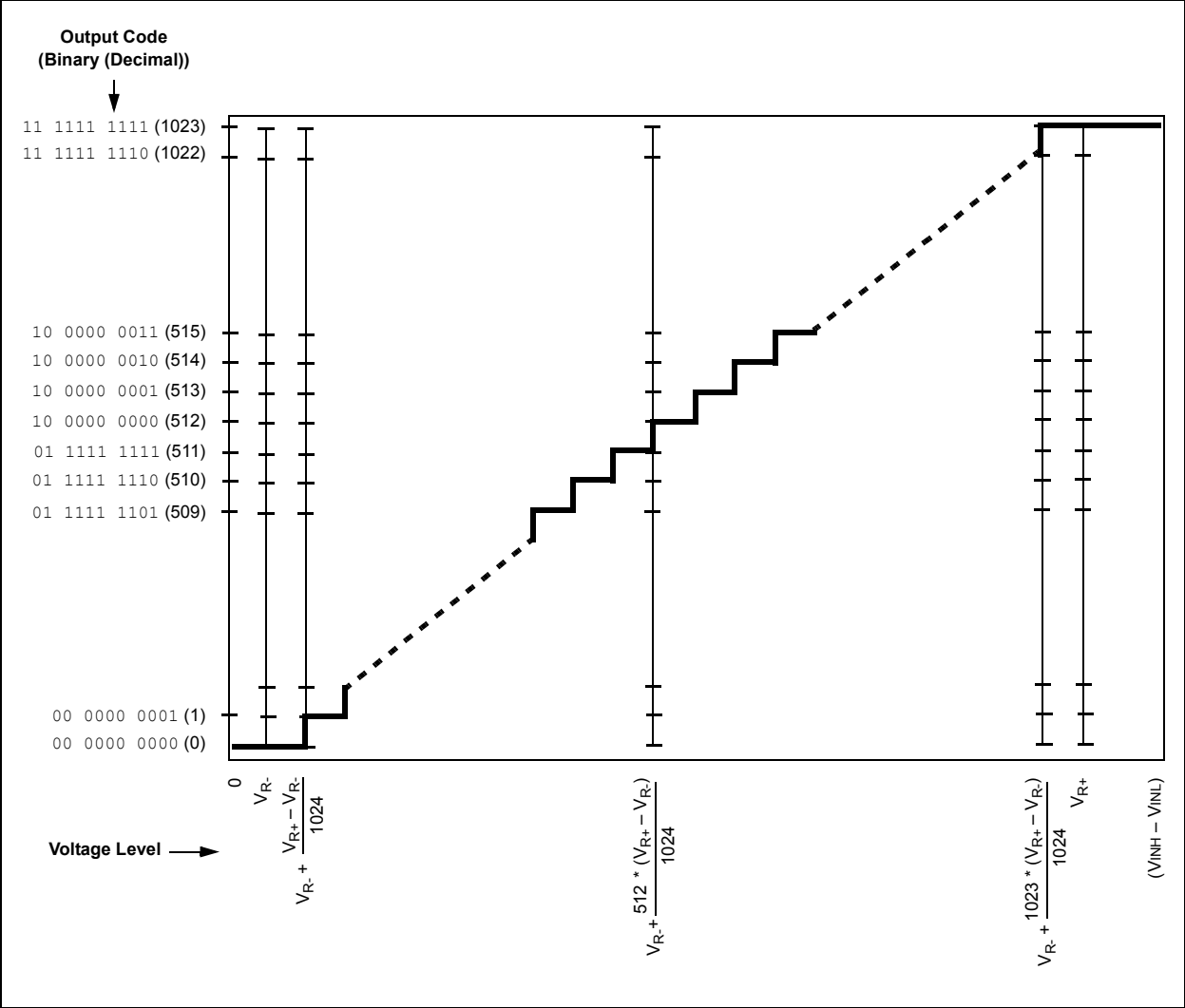
**Note:** Based on  $T_{CY} = 2/F_{OSC}$ ; Doze mode and PLL are disabled.

**FIGURE 25-4: 12-BIT A/D TRANSFER FUNCTION**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

FIGURE 25-5: 10-BIT A/D TRANSFER FUNCTION



## 26.0 TRIPLE COMPARATOR MODULE

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “**Scalable Comparator Module**” (DS39734). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The triple comparator module provides three dual input comparators. The inputs to the comparator can be configured to use any one of five external analog inputs (CxINA, CxINB, CxINC, CxIND and VREF+) and a

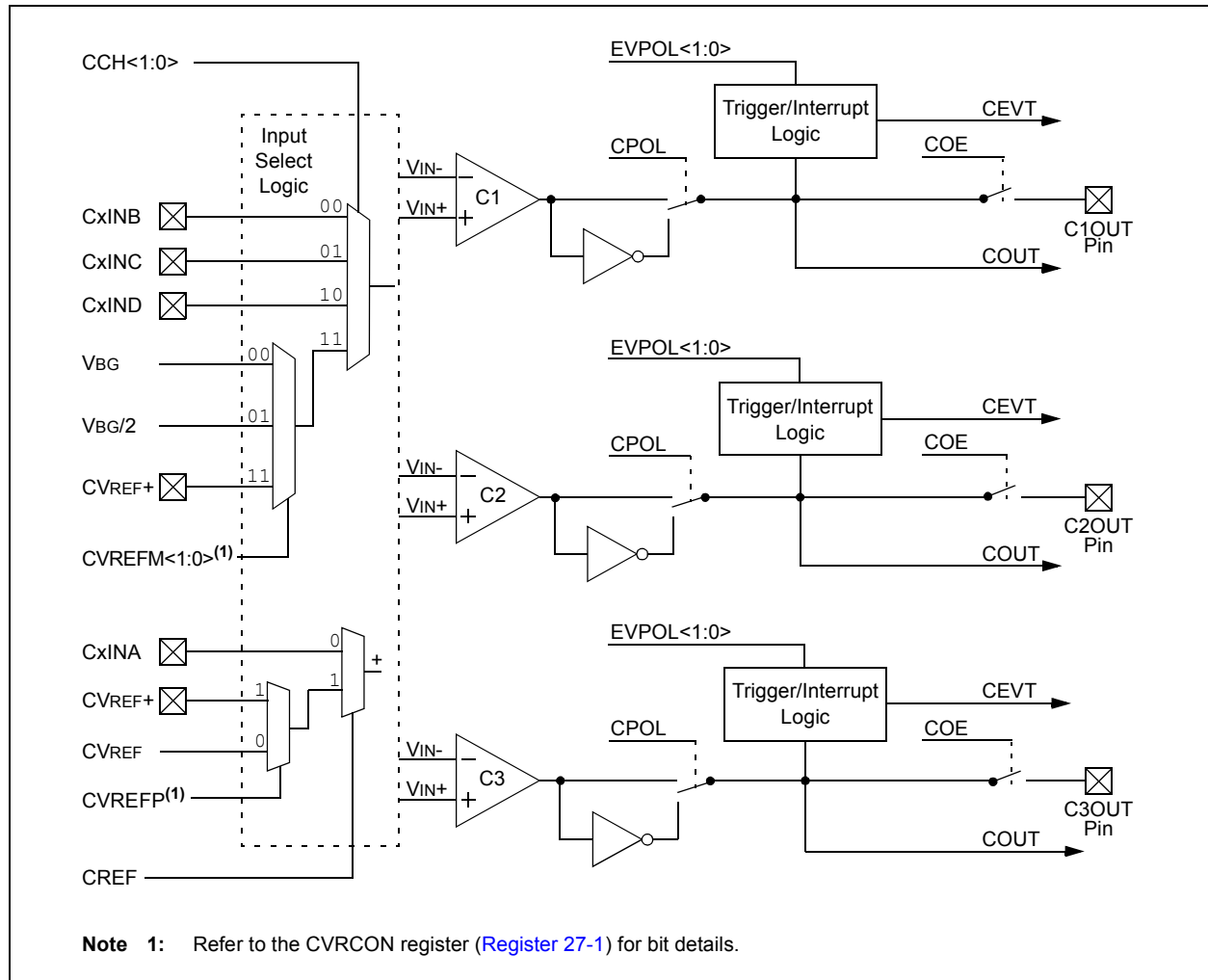
voltage reference input from one of the internal band gap references or the comparator voltage reference generator (V<sub>BG</sub>, V<sub>BG</sub>/2 and CVREF).

The comparator outputs may be directly connected to the CxOUT pins. When the respective COE equals ‘1’, the I/O pad logic makes the unsynchronized output of the comparator available on the pin.

A simplified block diagram of the module is shown in [Figure 26-1](#). Diagrams of the possible individual comparator configurations are shown in [Figure 26-2](#), [Figure 26-3](#) and [Figure 26-4](#).

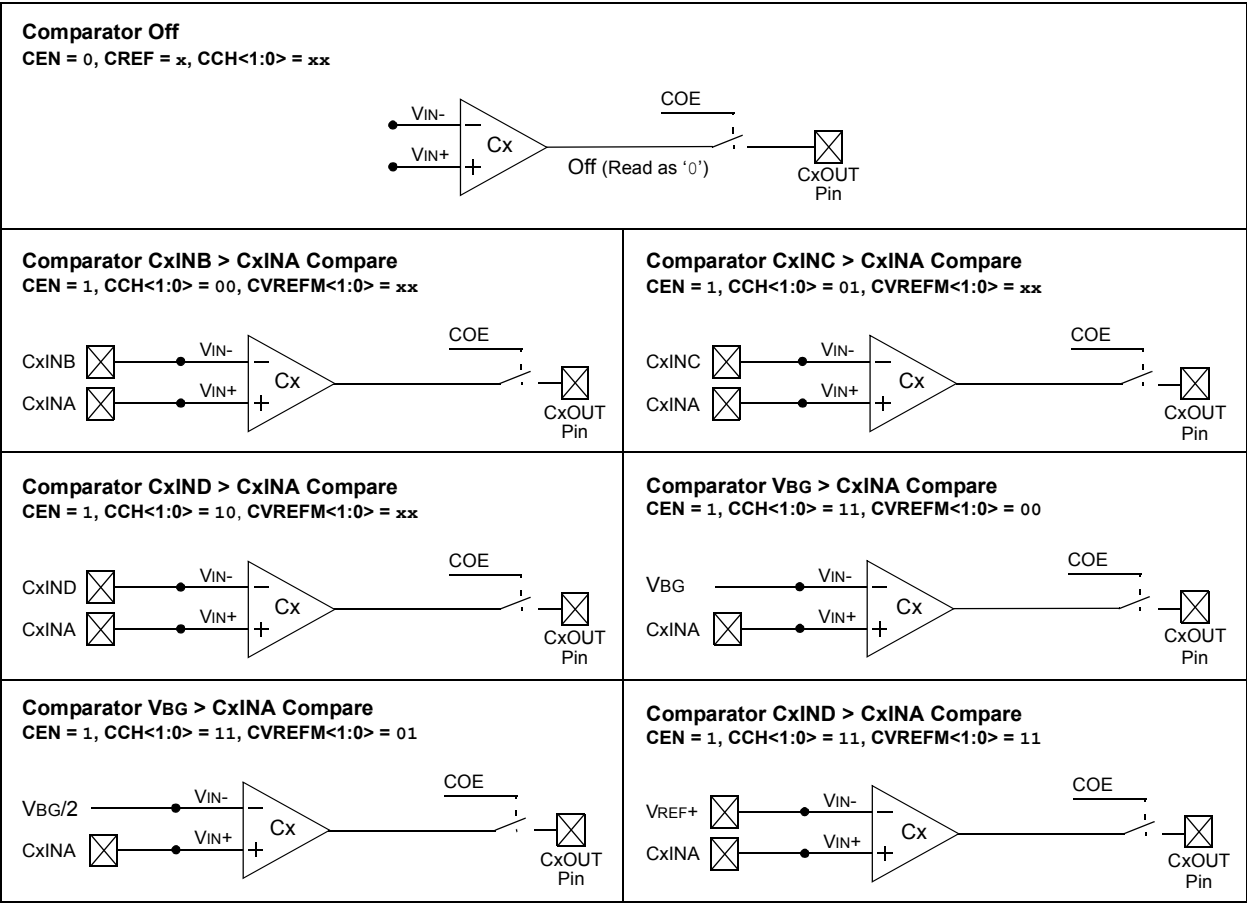
Each comparator has its own control register, CMxCON ([Register 26-1](#)), for enabling and configuring its operation. The output and event status of all three comparators is provided in the CMSTAT register ([Register 26-2](#)).

**FIGURE 26-1: TRIPLE COMPARATOR MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM**



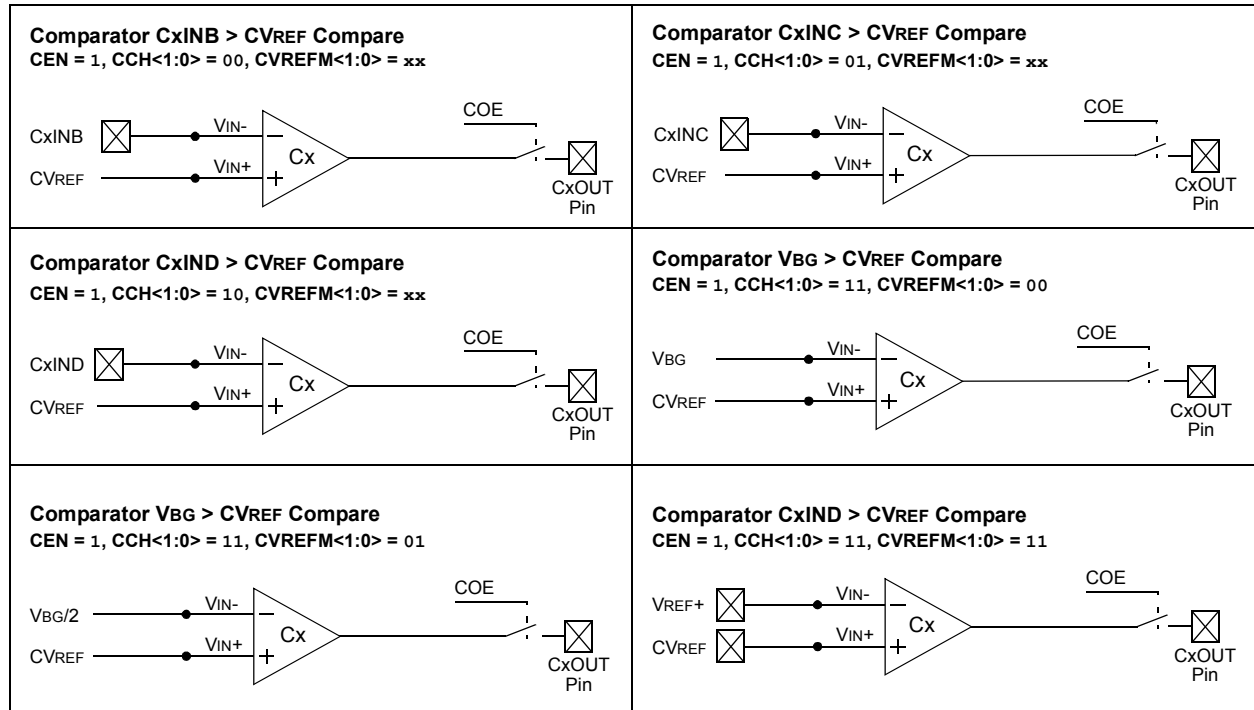
# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

FIGURE 26-2: INDIVIDUAL COMPARATOR CONFIGURATIONS WHEN CREF = 0

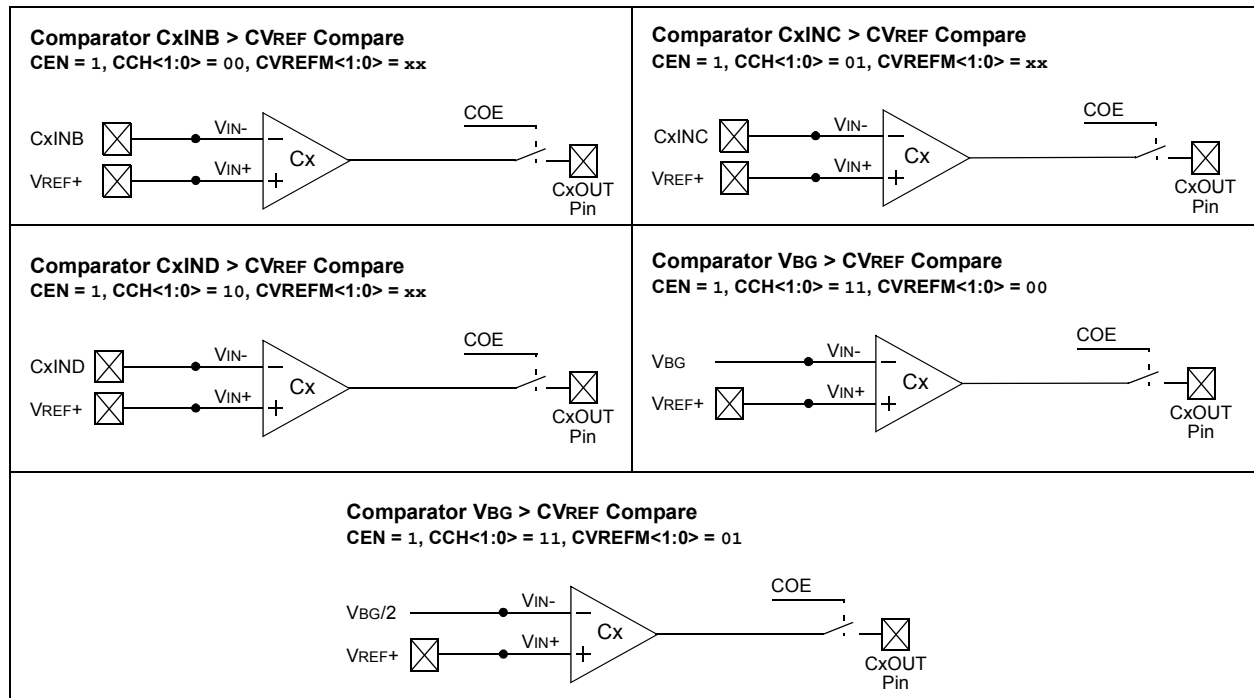


# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 26-3: INDIVIDUAL COMPARATOR CONFIGURATIONS WHEN CREF = 1 AND CVREFP = 0**



**FIGURE 26-4: INDIVIDUAL COMPARATOR CONFIGURATIONS WHEN CREF = 1 AND CVREFP = 1**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 26-1: CMxCON: COMPARATOR x CONTROL REGISTERS (COMPARATORS 1 THROUGH 3)

|        |       |       |     |     |     |           |          |
|--------|-------|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----------|----------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0, HS | R-0, HSC |
| CON    | COE   | CPOL  | —   | —   | —   | CEVT      | COUT     |
| bit 15 |       |       |     |     |     |           | bit 8    |

|                       |                       |     |       |     |     |       |       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----|-------|-----|-----|-------|-------|
| R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 | U-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| EVPOL1 <sup>(1)</sup> | EVPOL0 <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | CREF  | —   | —   | CCH1  | CCH0  |
| bit 7                 |                       |     |       |     |     |       | bit 0 |

|                   |                            |  |
|-------------------|----------------------------|--|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HS = Hardware Settable bit | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit        |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit           | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'           |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set           | '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15      **CON:** Comparator Enable bit  
1 = Comparator is enabled  
0 = Comparator is disabled
- bit 14      **COE:** Comparator Output Enable bit  
1 = Comparator output is present on the CxOUT pin  
0 = Comparator output is internal only
- bit 13      **CPOL:** Comparator Output Polarity Select bit  
1 = Comparator output is inverted  
0 = Comparator output is not inverted
- bit 12-10      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 9      **CEVT:** Comparator Event bit  
1 = Comparator event that is defined by the EVPOL<1:0> bits has occurred; subsequent triggers and interrupts are disabled until the bit is cleared  
0 = Comparator event has not occurred
- bit 8      **COUT:** Comparator Output bit  
When CPOL = 0:  
1 =  $V_{IN+} > V_{IN-}$   
0 =  $V_{IN+} < V_{IN-}$   
When CPOL = 1:  
1 =  $V_{IN+} < V_{IN-}$   
0 =  $V_{IN+} > V_{IN-}$
- bit 7-6      **EVPOL<1:0>:** Trigger/Event/Interrupt Polarity Select bits<sup>(1)</sup>  
11 = Trigger/event/interrupt is generated on any change of the comparator output (while CEVT = 0)  
10 = Trigger/event/interrupt is generated on the high-to-low transition of the comparator output  
01 = Trigger/event/interrupt is generated on the low-to-high transition of the comparator output  
00 = Trigger/event/interrupt generation is disabled
- bit 5      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 4      **CREF:** Comparator Reference Select bit (non-inverting input)  
1 = Non-inverting input connects to the internal CVREF voltage  
0 = Non-inverting input connects to the CxINA pin
- bit 3-2      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

**Note 1:** If the EVPOL<1:0> bits are set to a value other than '00', the first interrupt generated will occur on any transition of COUT. Subsequent interrupts will occur based on the EVPOLx bits setting.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 26-1: CMxCON: COMPARATOR x CONTROL REGISTERS (COMPARATORS 1 THROUGH 3) (CONTINUED)

- bit 1-0 **CCH<1:0>**: Comparator Channel Select bits
- 11 = Inverting input of the comparator connects to the internal selectable reference voltage specified by the CVREFM<1:0> bits in the CVRCON register
  - 10 = Inverting input of the comparator connects to the CxIND pin
  - 01 = Inverting input of the comparator connects to the CxINC pin
  - 00 = Inverting input of the comparator connects to the CxINB pin

**Note 1:** If the EVPOL<1:0> bits are set to a value other than '00', the first interrupt generated will occur on any transition of COUT. Subsequent interrupts will occur based on the EVPOLx bits setting.

## REGISTER 26-2: CMSTAT: COMPARATOR MODULE STATUS REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |       |          |          |          |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-------|----------|----------|----------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC |
| CMIDL  | —   | —   | —   | —     | C3EVT    | C2EVT    | C1EVT    |
| bit 15 |     |     |     | bit 8 |          |          |          |

|       |     |     |     |       |          |          |          |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-------|----------|----------|----------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC | R-0, HSC |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —     | C3OUT    | C2OUT    | C1OUT    |
| bit 7 |     |     |     | bit 0 |          |          |          |

|                   |                                       |                                    |                    |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | HSC = Hardware Settable/Clearable bit |                                    |                    |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit                      | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |                    |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set                      | '0' = Bit is cleared               | x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 15 **CMIDL**: Comparator Stop in Idle Mode bit
- 1 = Discontinues operation of all comparators when device enters Idle mode
  - 0 = Continues operation of all enabled comparators in Idle mode
- bit 14-11 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'
- bit 10 **C3EVT**: Comparator 3 Event Status bit (read-only)
- Shows the current event status of Comparator 3 (CM3CON<9>).
- bit 9 **C2EVT**: Comparator 2 Event Status bit (read-only)
- Shows the current event status of Comparator 2 (CM2CON<9>).
- bit 8 **C1EVT**: Comparator 1 Event Status bit (read-only)
- Shows the current event status of Comparator 1 (CM1CON<9>).
- bit 7-3 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'
- bit 2 **C3OUT**: Comparator 3 Output Status bit (read-only)
- Shows the current output of Comparator 3 (CM3CON<8>).
- bit 1 **C2OUT**: Comparator 2 Output Status bit (read-only)
- Shows the current output of Comparator 2 (CM2CON<8>).
- bit 0 **C1OUT**: Comparator 1 Output Status bit (read-only)
- Shows the current output of Comparator 1 (CM1CON<8>).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

## 27.0 COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE

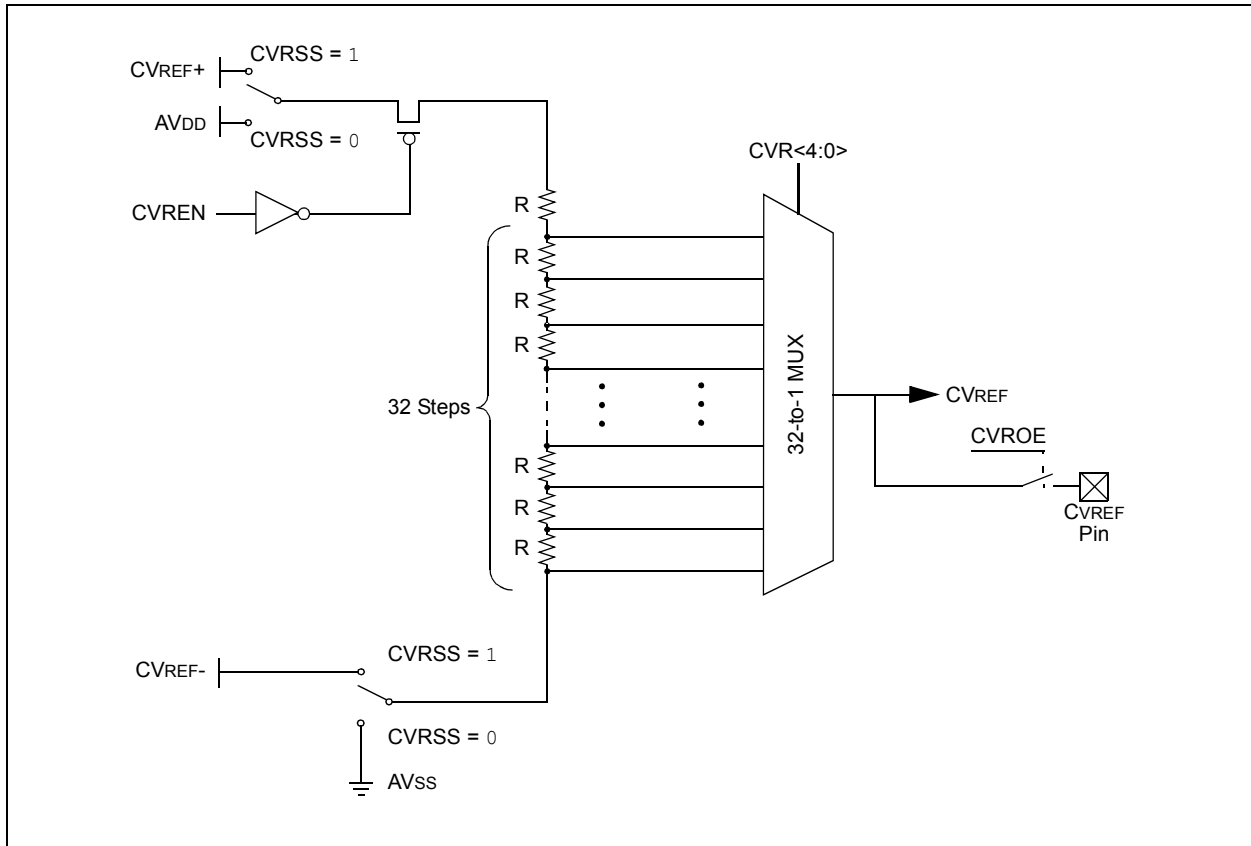
**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “**Comparator Voltage Reference Module**” (DS39709). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

## 27.1 Configuring the Comparator Voltage Reference

The comparator voltage reference module is controlled through the CVRCON register ([Register 27-1](#)). The comparator voltage reference provides a range of output voltages with 32 distinct levels. The comparator reference supply voltage can come from either VDD and VSS, or the external CVREF+ and CVREF- pins. The voltage source is selected by the CVRSS bit (CVRCON<5>).

The settling time of the comparator voltage reference must be considered when changing the CVREF output.

**FIGURE 27-1: COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 27-1: CVRCON: COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE CONTROL REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |        |         |         |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|---------|---------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | CVREFP | CVREFM1 | CVREFM0 |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     | bit 8  |         |         |

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| CVREN | CVROE | CVRSS | CVR4  | CVR3  | CVR2  | CVR1  | CVR0  |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-11 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 10 **CVREFP:** Voltage Reference Select bit (valid only when CREF is '1')

1 = VREF+ is used as a reference voltage to the comparators

0 = The CVR<4:0> bits (4-bit DAC) within this module provide the reference voltage to the comparators

bit 9-8 **CVREFM<1:0>:** Band Gap Reference Source Select bits (valid only when CCH<1:0> = 11)

00 = Band gap voltage is provided as an input to the comparators

01 = Band gap voltage, divided by two, is provided as an input to the comparators

10 = Reserved

11 = VREF+ pin is provided as an input to the comparators

bit 7 **CVREN:** Comparator Voltage Reference Enable bit

1 = CVREF circuit is powered on

0 = CVREF circuit is powered down

bit 6 **CVROE:** Comparator VREF Output Enable bit

1 = CVREF voltage level is output on the CVREF pin

0 = CVREF voltage level is disconnected from the CVREF pin

bit 5 **CVRSS:** Comparator VREF Source Selection bit

1 = Comparator reference source, CVRSRC = VREF+ – VREF-

0 = Comparator reference source, CVRSRC = AVDD – AVSS

bit 4-0 **CVR<4:0>:** Comparator VREF Value Selection bits

$CVREF = (CVR<4:0>/32) \cdot (CVRSRC)$

## 28.0 CHARGE TIME MEASUREMENT UNIT (CTMU)

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information on the Charge Time Measurement Unit, refer to the *“dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”*, **“Charge Time Measurement Unit (CTMU) with Threshold Detect”** (DS39743). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRM.

The Charge Time Measurement Unit (CTMU) is a flexible analog module that provides charge measurement, accurate differential time measurement between pulse sources and asynchronous pulse generation. Its key features include:

- Thirteen external edge input trigger sources
- Polarity control for each edge source
- Control of edge sequence
- Control of response to edge levels or edge transitions
- Time measurement resolution of one nanosecond
- Accurate current source suitable for capacitive measurement

Together with other on-chip analog modules, the CTMU can be used to precisely measure time, measure capacitance, measure relative changes in capacitance or generate output pulses that are independent of the system clock. The CTMU module is ideal for interfacing with capacitive-based touch sensors.

The CTMU is controlled through three registers: CTMUCON1, CTMUCON2 and CTMUICON. CTMUCON1 enables the module and controls the mode of operation of the CTMU, as well as controlling edge sequencing. CTMUCON2 controls edge source selection and edge source polarity selection. The CTMUICON register selects the current range of the current source and trims the current.

## 28.1 Measuring Capacitance

The CTMU module measures capacitance by generating an output pulse, with a width equal to the time between edge events, on two separate input channels. The pulse edge events to both input channels can be selected from four sources: two internal peripheral modules (OC1 and Timer1) and up to 13 external pins (CTED1 through CTED13). This pulse is used with the module's precision current source to calculate capacitance according to the relationship:

### EQUATION 28-1:

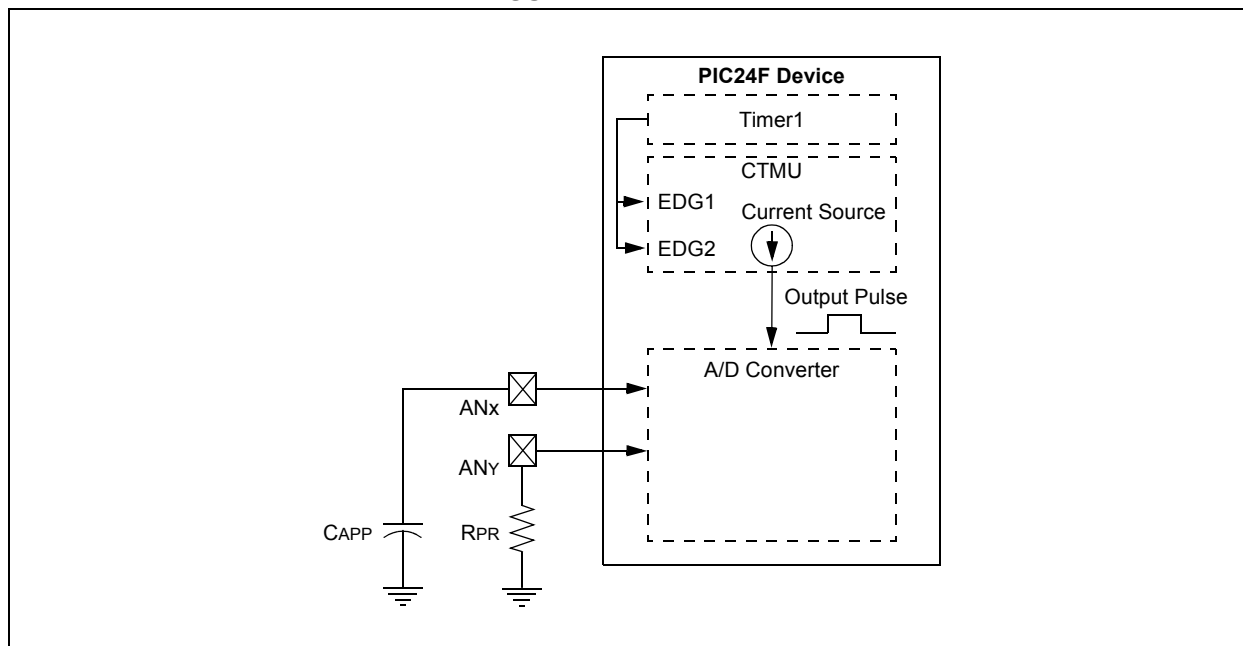
$$I = C \cdot \frac{dV}{dT}$$

For capacitance measurements, the A/D Converter samples an external Capacitor (CAPP) on one of its input channels after the CTMU output's pulse. A Precision Resistor (RPR) provides current source calibration on a second A/D channel. After the pulse ends, the converter determines the voltage on the capacitor. The actual calculation of capacitance is performed in software by the application.

Figure 28-1 illustrates the external connections used for capacitance measurements and how the CTMU and A/D modules are related in this application. This example also shows the edge events coming from Timer1, but other configurations using external edge sources are possible. A detailed discussion on measuring capacitance and time with the CTMU module is provided in the *“dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”*, **“Charge Time Measurement Unit (CTMU) with Threshold Detect”** (DS39743).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

FIGURE 28-1: TYPICAL CONNECTIONS AND INTERNAL CONFIGURATION FOR CAPACITANCE MEASUREMENT



## 28.2 Measuring Time

Time measurements on the pulse width can be similarly performed using the A/D module's Internal Capacitor (CAD) and a precision resistor for current calibration.

Figure 28-2 displays the external connections used for time measurements, and how the CTMU and A/D modules are related in this application. This example also shows both edge events coming from the external CTED pins, but other configurations using internal edge sources are possible.

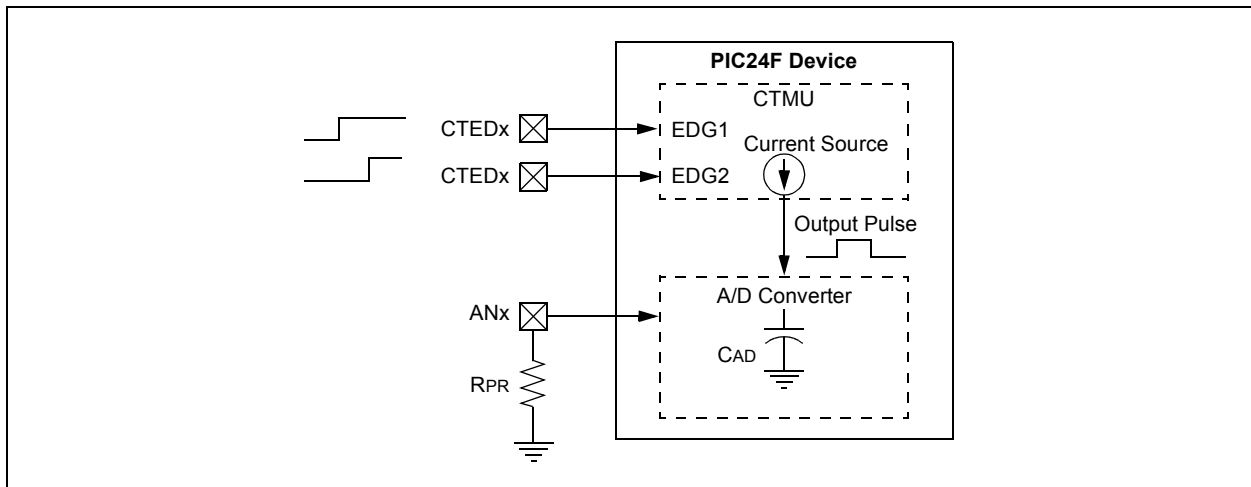
## 28.3 Pulse Generation and Delay

The CTMU module can also generate an output pulse with edges that are not synchronous with the device's system clock. More specifically, it can generate a pulse with a programmable delay from an edge event input to the module.

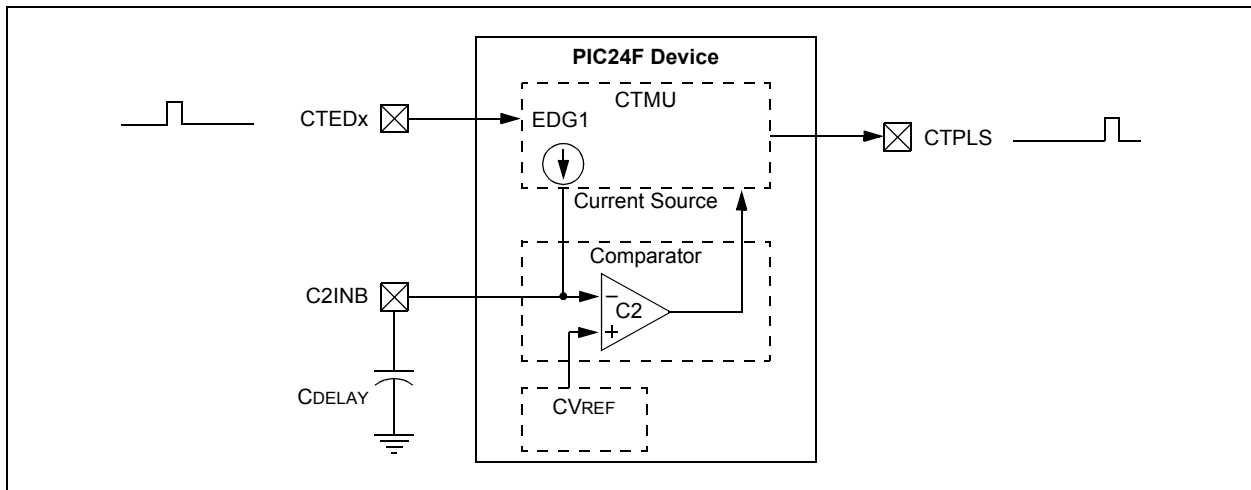
When the module is configured for pulse generation delay by setting the TGEN bit (CTMUCON1<12>), the internal current source is connected to the B input of Comparator 2. A Capacitor (CDELAY) is connected to the Comparator 2 pin, C2INB, and the Comparator voltage Reference, CVREF, is connected to C2INA. CVREF is then configured for a specific trip point. The module begins to charge CDELAY when an edge event is detected. When CDELAY charges above the CVREF trip point, a pulse is output on CTPLS. The length of the pulse delay is determined by the value of CDELAY and the CVREF trip point.

Figure 28-3 illustrates the external connections for pulse generation, as well as the relationship of the different analog modules required. While CTED1 is shown as the input pulse source, other options are available. A detailed discussion on pulse generation with the CTMU module is provided in the "dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual".

**FIGURE 28-2: TYPICAL CONNECTIONS AND INTERNAL CONFIGURATION FOR TIME MEASUREMENT**



**FIGURE 28-3: TYPICAL CONNECTIONS AND INTERNAL CONFIGURATION FOR PULSE DELAY GENERATION**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 28-1: CTMUCON1: CTMU CONTROL REGISTER 1

|        |     |          |       |       |          |         |        |
|--------|-----|----------|-------|-------|----------|---------|--------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0    | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0    | R/W-0   | R/W-0  |
| CTMUEN | —   | CTMUSIDL | TGEN  | EDGEN | EDGSEQEN | IDISSEN | CTTRIG |
| bit 15 |     |          |       |       |          |         | bit 8  |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 15      **CTMUEN:** CTMU Enable bit  
               1 = Module is enabled  
               0 = Module is disabled
- bit 14      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 13      **CTMUSIDL:** CTMU Stop in Idle Mode bit  
               1 = Discontinues module operation when device enters Idle mode  
               0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode
- bit 12      **TGEN:** Time Generation Enable bit  
               1 = Enables edge delay generation  
               0 = Disables edge delay generation
- bit 11      **EDGEN:** Edge Enable bit  
               1 = Edges are not blocked  
               0 = Edges are blocked
- bit 10      **EDGSEQEN:** Edge Sequence Enable bit  
               1 = Edge 1 event must occur before Edge 2 event can occur  
               0 = No edge sequence is needed
- bit 9        **IDISSEN:** Analog Current Source Control bit  
               1 = Analog current source output is grounded  
               0 = Analog current source output is not grounded
- bit 8        **CTTRIG:** CTMU Trigger Control bit  
               1 = Trigger output is enabled  
               0 = Trigger output is disabled
- bit 7-0     **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 28-2: CTMUCON2: CTMU CONTROL REGISTER 2

|         |         |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    |
| EDG1MOD | EDG1POL | EDG1SEL3 | EDG1SEL2 | EDG1SEL1 | EDG1SEL0 | EDG2STAT | EDG1STAT |
| bit 15  |         |          |          |          |          |          | bit 8    |

|         |         |          |          |          |          |     |       |
|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----|-------|
| R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | R/W-0    | U-0 | U-0   |
| EDG2MOD | EDG2POL | EDG2SEL3 | EDG2SEL2 | EDG2SEL1 | EDG2SEL0 | —   | —     |
| bit 7   |         |          |          |          |          |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **EDG1MOD:** Edge 1 Edge-Sensitive Select bit

1 = Input is edge-sensitive

0 = Input is level-sensitive

bit 14 **EDG1POL:** Edge 1 Polarity Select bit

1 = Edge 1 is programmed for a positive edge response

0 = Edge 1 is programmed for a negative edge response

bit 13-10 **EDG1SEL<3:0>:** Edge 1 Source Select bits

1111 = Edge 1 source is the Comparator 3 output

1110 = Edge 1 source is the Comparator 2 output

1101 = Edge 1 source is the Comparator 1 output

1100 = Edge 1 source is IC3

1011 = Edge 1 source is IC2

1010 = Edge 1 source is IC1

1001 = Edge 1 source is CTED8

1000 = Edge 1 source is CTED7<sup>(1)</sup>

0111 = Edge 1 source is CTED6

0110 = Edge 1 source is CTED5

0101 = Edge 1 source is CTED4

0100 = Edge 1 source is CTED3

0011 = Edge 1 source is CTED1

0010 = Edge 1 source is CTED2

0001 = Edge 1 source is OC1

0000 = Edge 1 source is Timer1

bit 9 **EDG2STAT:** Edge 2 Status bit

Indicates the status of Edge 2 and can be written to control the current source.

1 = Edge 2 has occurred

0 = Edge 2 has not occurred

bit 8 **EDG1STAT:** Edge 1 Status bit

Indicates the status of Edge 1 and can be written to control the current source.

1 = Edge 1 has occurred

0 = Edge 1 has not occurred

bit 7 **EDG2MOD:** Edge 2 Edge-Sensitive Select bit

1 = Input is edge-sensitive

0 = Input is level-sensitive

bit 6 **EDG2POL:** Edge 2 Polarity Select bit

1 = Edge 2 is programmed for a positive edge

0 = Edge 2 is programmed for a negative edge

**Note 1:** Edge source, CTED7, is not available in 28-pin packages.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 28-2: CTMUCON2: CTMU CONTROL REGISTER 2 (CONTINUED)

bit 5-2      **EDG2SEL<3:0>**: Edge 2 Source Select bits

- 1111 = Edge 2 source is the Comparator 3 output
- 1110 = Edge 2 source is the Comparator 2 output
- 1101 = Edge 2 source is the Comparator 1 output
- 1100 = Unimplemented; do not use
- 1011 = Edge 2 source is IC3
- 1010 = Edge 2 source is IC2
- 1001 = Edge 2 source is IC1
- 1000 = Edge 2 source is CTED13
- 0111 = Edge 2 source is CTED12
- 0110 = Edge 2 source is CTED11
- 0101 = Edge 2 source is CTED10
- 0100 = Edge 2 source is CTED9
- 0011 = Edge 2 source is CTED1
- 0010 = Edge 2 source is CTED2
- 0001 = Edge 2 source is OC1
- 0000 = Edge 2 source is Timer1

bit 1-0      **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

**Note 1:** Edge source, CTED7, is not available in 28-pin packages.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 28-3: CTMUICON: CTMU CURRENT CONTROL REGISTER

|        |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| ITRIM5 | ITRIM4 | ITRIM3 | ITRIM2 | ITRIM1 | ITRIM0 | IRNG1 | IRNG0 |
| bit 15 |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8 |       |

|       |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   | U-0 |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     | —   |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15-10 **ITRIM<5:0>**: Current Source Trim bits

011111 = Maximum positive change from nominal current

011110

•

•

•

000001 = Minimum positive change from nominal current

000000 = Nominal current output specified by IRNG<1:0>

111111 = Minimum negative change from nominal current

•

•

•

100010

100001 = Maximum negative change from nominal current

bit 9-8 **IRNG<1:0>**: Current Source Range Select bits

11 = 100 × Base Current

10 = 10 × Base Current

01 = Base current level (0.55 μA nominal)

00 = 1000 × Base Current

bit 7-0 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

## 29.0 HIGH/LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT (HLVD)

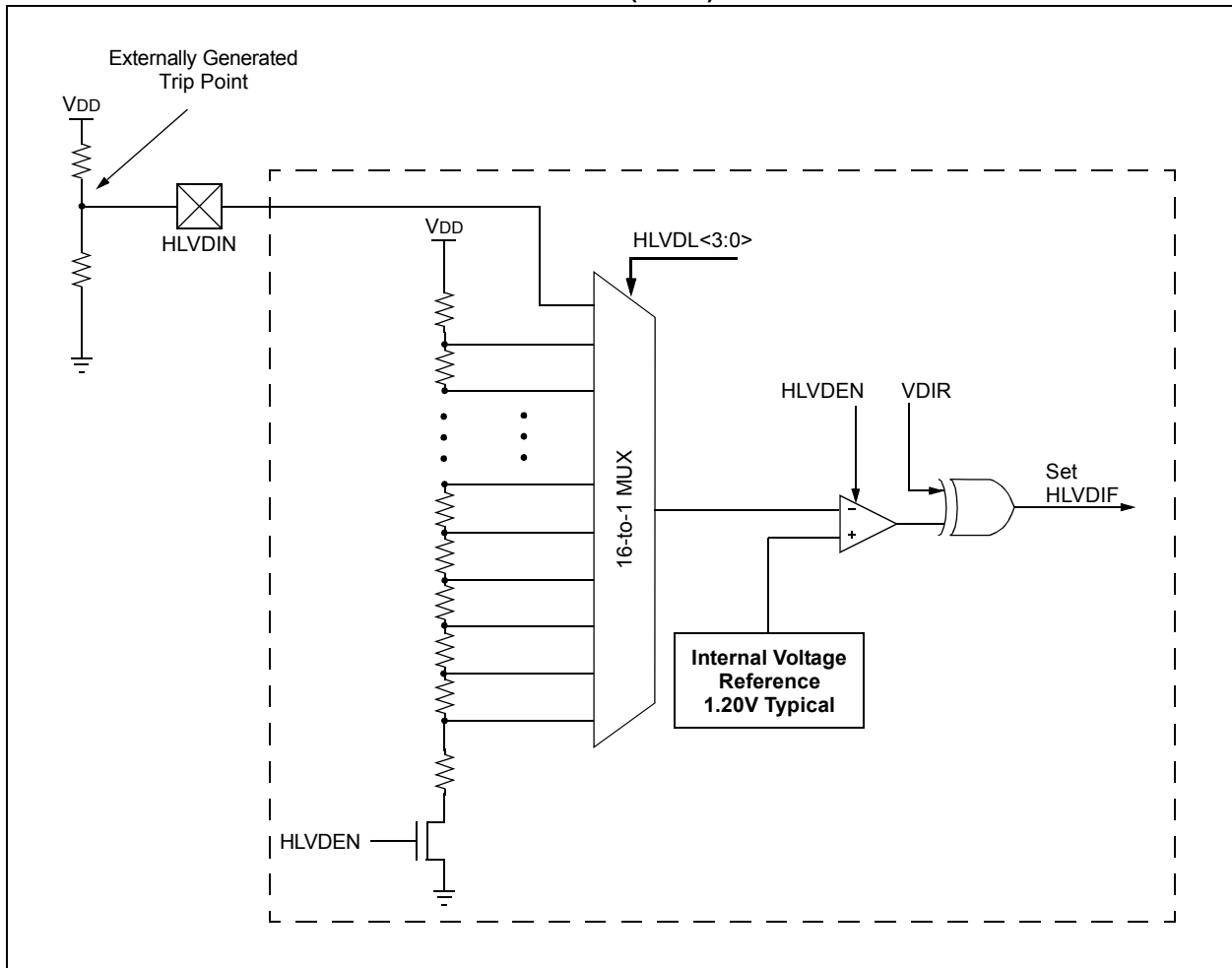
**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information on the High/Low-Voltage Detect, refer to the “dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual”, “High-Level Integration with Programmable High/Low-Voltage Detect (HLVD)” (DS39725).

The High/Low-Voltage Detect (HLVD) module is a programmable circuit that allows the user to specify both the device voltage trip point and the direction of change.

An interrupt flag is set if the device experiences an excursion past the trip point in the direction of change. If the interrupt is enabled, the program execution will branch to the interrupt vector address and the software can then respond to the interrupt.

The HLVD Control register (see [Register 29-1](#)) completely controls the operation of the HLVD module. This allows the circuitry to be “turned off” by the user under software control, which minimizes the current consumption for the device.

**FIGURE 29-1: HIGH/LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT (HLVD) MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 29-1: HLVDCON: HIGH/LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT CONTROL REGISTER

|        |     |       |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| HLVDEN | —   | LSIDL | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |       |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |       |       |     |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-------|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| VDIR  | BGVST | IRVST | —   | HLVDL3 | HLVDL2 | HLVDL1 | HLVDL0 |
| bit 7 |       |       |     |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 15 **HLVDEN:** High/Low-Voltage Detect Power Enable bit

1 = HLVD is enabled

0 = HLVD is disabled

bit 14 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 13 **LSIDL:** HLVD Stop in Idle Mode bit

1 = Discontinues module operation when device enters Idle mode

0 = Continues module operation in Idle mode

bit 12-8 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 7 **VDIR:** Voltage Change Direction Select bit

1 = Event occurs when voltage equals or exceeds the trip point (HLVDL<3:0>)

0 = Event occurs when voltage equals or falls below the trip point (HLVDL<3:0>)

bit 6 **BGVST:** Band Gap Voltage Stable Flag bit

1 = Indicates that the band gap voltage is stable

0 = Indicates that the band gap voltage is unstable

bit 5 **IRVST:** Internal Reference Voltage Stable Flag bit

1 = Internal reference voltage is stable; the High-Voltage Detect logic generates the interrupt flag at the specified voltage range

0 = Internal reference voltage is unstable; the High-Voltage Detect logic will not generate the interrupt flag at the specified voltage range and the HLVD interrupt should not be enabled

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-0 **HLVDL<3:0>:** High/Low-Voltage Detection Limit bits

1111 = External analog input is used (input comes from the HLVDIN pin)

1110 = Trip Point 1<sup>(1)</sup>

1101 = Trip Point 2<sup>(1)</sup>

1100 = Trip Point 3<sup>(1)</sup>

•

•

•

0100 = Trip Point 11<sup>(1)</sup>

00xx = Unused

**Note 1:** For the actual trip point, see [Section 33.0 “Electrical Characteristics”](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 30.0 SPECIAL FEATURES

**Note:** This data sheet summarizes the features of this group of PIC24F devices. It is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source. For more information, refer to the following sections of the “*dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual*”. The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the FRMs.

- “**Watchdog Timer (WDT)**” (DS39697)
- “**High-Level Device Integration**” (DS39719)
- “**Programming and Diagnostics**” (DS39716)

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices include several features intended to maximize application flexibility and reliability, and minimize cost through elimination of external components. These are:

- Flexible Configuration
- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- Code Protection
- JTAG Boundary Scan Interface
- In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™)
- In-Circuit Emulation (ICE)

### 30.1 Configuration Bits

The Configuration bits can be programmed (read as ‘0’), or left unprogrammed (read as ‘1’), to select various device configurations. These bits are mapped starting at program memory location, F80000h. A detailed explanation of the various bit functions is provided in [Register 30-1](#) through [Register 30-6](#).

Note that address, F80000h, is beyond the user program memory space. In fact, it belongs to the configuration memory space (800000h-FFFFFFh), which can only be accessed using Table Reads and Table Writes.

#### 30.1.1 CONSIDERATIONS FOR CONFIGURING PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY DEVICES

In PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices, the Configuration bytes are implemented as volatile memory. This means that configuration data must be programmed each time the device is powered up. Configuration data is stored in the four words at the top of the on-chip program memory space, known as the Flash Configuration Words. Their specific locations are shown in [Table 30-1](#). These are packed representations of the actual device Configuration bits, whose actual locations are distributed among several locations in configuration space. The configuration data is automatically loaded from the Flash Configuration Words to the proper Configuration registers during device Resets.

**Note:** Configuration data is reloaded on all types of device Resets.

When creating applications for these devices, users should always specifically allocate the location of the Flash Configuration Word for configuration data. This is to make certain that program code is not stored in this address when the code is compiled.

The upper byte of all Flash Configuration Words in program memory should always be: ‘0000 0000’. This makes them appear to be NOP instructions in the remote event that their locations are ever executed by accident. Since Configuration bits are not implemented in the corresponding locations, writing ‘0’s to these locations has no effect on device operation.

**Note:** Performing a page erase operation on the last page of program memory clears the Flash Configuration Words, enabling code protection as a result. Therefore, users should avoid performing page erase operations on the last page of program memory.

**TABLE 30-1: FLASH CONFIGURATION WORD LOCATIONS FOR THE PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY**

| Device          | Configuration Word Addresses |        |        |        |
|-----------------|------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|
|                 | 1                            | 2      | 3      | 4      |
| PIC24FJ64GB2XX  | ABFEh                        | ABFCh  | ABFAh  | ABF8h  |
| PIC24FJ128GB2XX | 157FEh                       | 157FCh | 157FAh | 157F8h |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 30-1: CW1: FLASH CONFIGURATION WORD 1

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |        |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| U-1    | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1    |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —      |
| bit 23 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 16 |

|        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| r-x    | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 |
| —      | JTAGEN | GCP    | GWRP   | DEBUG  | LPCFG  | ICS1   | ICS0   |
| bit 15 |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|         |         |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| R/PO-1  | R/PO-1  | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 |
| FWDTEN1 | FWDTEN0 | WINDIS | FWPSA  | WDTPS3 | WDTPS2 | WDTPS1 | WDTPS0 |
| bit 7   |         |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

|                   |                  |                                    |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | r = Reserved bit | PO = Program Once bit              |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set | '0' = Bit is cleared               |
|                   |                  | x = Bit is unknown                 |

- bit 23-16 **Unimplemented:** Read as '1'
- bit 15 **Reserved:** The value is unknown; program as '0'
- bit 14 **JTAGEN:** JTAG Port Enable bit  
1 = JTAG port is enabled  
0 = JTAG port is disabled
- bit 13 **GCP:** General Segment Program Memory Code Protection bit  
1 = Code protection is disabled  
0 = Code protection is enabled for the entire program memory space
- bit 12 **GWRP:** General Segment Code Flash Write Protection bit  
1 = Writes to program memory are allowed  
0 = Writes to program memory are not allowed
- bit 11 **DEBUG:** Background Debugger Enable bit  
1 = Device resets into Operational mode  
0 = Device resets into Debug mode
- bit 10 **LPCFG:** Low-Voltage/Retention Regulator Configuration bit  
1 = Low-voltage/retention regulator is always disabled  
0 = Low-power, low-voltage/retention regulator is enabled and controlled in firmware by the RETEN bit
- bit 9-8 **ICS<1:0>:** Emulator Pin Placement Select bits  
11 = Emulator functions are shared with PGEC1/PGED1  
10 = Emulator functions are shared with PGEC2/PGED2  
01 = Emulator functions are shared with PGEC3/PGED3  
00 = Reserved; do not use
- bit 7-6 **FWDTEN<1:0>:** Watchdog Timer Configuration bits  
11 = WDT is always enabled; SWDTEN bit has no effect  
10 = WDT is enabled and controlled in firmware by the SWDTEN bit  
01 = WDT is enabled only in Run mode and disabled in Sleep modes; SWDTEN bit is disabled  
00 = WDT is disabled; SWDTEN bit is disabled
- bit 5 **WINDIS:** Windowed Watchdog Timer Disable bit  
1 = Standard Watchdog Timer is enabled  
0 = Windowed Watchdog Timer is enabled (FWDTEN<1:0> must not be '00')

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 30-1: CW1: FLASH CONFIGURATION WORD 1 (CONTINUED)

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| bit 4   | <b>FWPSA:</b> WDT Prescaler Ratio Select bit                   |
|         | 1 = Prescaler ratio of 1:128                                   |
|         | 0 = Prescaler ratio of 1:32                                    |
| bit 3-0 | <b>WDTPS&lt;3:0&gt;:</b> Watchdog Timer Postscaler Select bits |
|         | 1111 = 1:32,768  |
|         | 1110 = 1:16,384  |
|         | 1101 = 1:8,192   |
|         | 1100 = 1:4,096   |
|         | 1011 = 1:2,048   |
|         | 1010 = 1:1,024   |
|         | 1001 = 1:512   |
|         | 1000 = 1:256   |
|         | 0111 = 1:128   |
|         | 0110 = 1:64  |
|         | 0101 = 1:32  |
|         | 0100 = 1:16  |
|         | 0011 = 1:8   |
|         | 0010 = 1:4   |
|         | 0001 = 1:2   |
|         | 0000 = 1:1   |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 30-2: CW2: FLASH CONFIGURATION WORD 2

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |        |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| U-1    | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1    |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —      |
| bit 23 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 16 |

|        |     |        |         |                       |        |        |        |
|--------|-----|--------|---------|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|
| R/PO-1 | r-0 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1  | R/PO-1                | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 |
| IESO   | —   | WDTCMX | ALTCMPI | ALTRB6 <sup>(2)</sup> | FNOSC2 | FNOSC1 | FNOSC0 |
| bit 15 |     |        |         |                       |        |        | bit 8  |

|        |        |          |         |         |     |         |         |
|--------|--------|----------|---------|---------|-----|---------|---------|
| R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1   | R/PO-1  | R/PO-1  | r-1 | R/PO-1  | R/PO-1  |
| FCKSM1 | FCKSM0 | OSCIOFCN | WDTCLK1 | WDTCLK0 | —   | POSCMD1 | POSCMD0 |
| bit 7  |        |          |         |         |     |         | bit 0   |

|                   |                  |  |
|-------------------|------------------|--|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | r = Reserved bit | PO = Program Once bit                        |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'           |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set | '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 23-16    **Unimplemented:** Read as '1'
- bit 15      **IESO:** Internal External Switchover bit  
               1 = IESO mode (Two-Speed Start-up) is enabled  
               0 = IESO mode (Two-Speed Start-up) is disabled
- bit 14      **Reserved:** Read as '0'
- bit 13      **WDTCMX:** WDT Clock Multiplex Control bit  
               1 = WDT clock source is determined by the WDTCLK<1:0> Configuration bits  
               0 = WDT always uses LPRC as its clock source
- bit 12      **ALTCMPI:** Alternate Comparator Input bit  
               1 = C1INC is on RB13, C2INC is on RB9 and C3INC is on RA0  
               0 = C1INC, C2INC and C3INC are on RB9
- bit 11      **ALTRB6:** Alternate RB6 Pin Function Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
               1 = Appends the RP6/ASCL1/PMD6 functions of RB6 to RA1 pin functions  
               0 = Keeps the RP6/ASCL1/PMD6 functions to RB6
- bit 10-8    **FNOSC<2:0>:** Initial Oscillator Select bits  
               111 = Fast RC Oscillator with Postscaler (FRCDIV)  
               110 = Reserved  
               101 = Low-Power RC Oscillator (LPRC)  
               100 = Secondary Oscillator (SOSC)  
               011 = Primary Oscillator with PLL module (XTPLL, HSPLL, ECPLL)  
               010 = Primary Oscillator (XT, HS, EC)  
               001 = Fast RC Oscillator with Postscaler and PLL module (FRCPLL)  
               000 = Fast RC Oscillator (FRC)
- bit 7-6    **FCKSM<1:0>:** Clock Switching and Fail-Safe Clock Monitor Configuration bits  
               1x = Clock switching and Fail-Safe Clock Monitor are disabled  
               01 = Clock switching is enabled, Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is disabled  
               00 = Clock switching is enabled, Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is enabled

- Note 1:** The 31 kHz FRC source is used when a Windowed WDT mode is selected and the LPRC is not being used as the system clock. The LPRC is used when the device is in Sleep mode and in all other cases.
- 2:** When VBUS functionality is used, this Configuration bit must be programmed to '1'.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 30-2: CW2: FLASH CONFIGURATION WORD 2 (CONTINUED)

- bit 5      **OSCIOFCN:** OSCO Pin Configuration bit  
    If POSCMD<1:0> = 11 or 00:  
    1 = OSCO/CLKO/RA3 functions as CLKO ( $F_{osc}/2$ )  
    0 = OSCO/CLKO/RA3 functions as port I/O (RA3)  
    If POSCMD<1:0> = 10 or 01:  
    OSCIOFCN has no effect on OSCO/CLKO/RA3.
- bit 4-3    **WDTCLK<1:0>:** WDT Clock Source Select bits  
    When WDTCMX = 1:  
    11 = LPRC  
    10 = Either the 31 kHz FRC source or LPRC, depending on device configuration<sup>(1)</sup>  
    01 = SOSC input  
    00 = System clock when active, LPRC while in Sleep mode  
    When WDTCMX = 0:  
    LPRC is always the WDT clock source.
- bit 2      **Reserved:** Configure as '1'
- bit 1-0    **POSCMD<1:0>:** Primary Oscillator Configuration bits  
    11 = Primary Oscillator mode is disabled  
    10 = HS Oscillator mode is selected  
    01 = XT Oscillator mode is selected  
    00 = EC Oscillator mode is selected

**Note 1:** The 31 kHz FRC source is used when a Windowed WDT mode is selected and the LPRC is not being used as the system clock. The LPRC is used when the device is in Sleep mode and in all other cases.

**2:** When VBUS functionality is used, this Configuration bit must be programmed to '1'.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 30-3: CW3: FLASH CONFIGURATION WORD 3

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |        |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| U-1    | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1    |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —      |
| bit 23 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 16 |

|        |        |        |        |                      |         |         |         |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1               | R/PO-1  | R/PO-1  | R/PO-1  |
| WPEND  | WPCFG  | WPDIS  | BOREN  | PLLSS <sup>(4)</sup> | WDTWIN1 | WDTWIN0 | SOSCSEL |
| bit 15 |        |        |        |                      |         |         | bit 8   |

|       |                      |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| r-1   | R/PO-1               | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 | R/PO-1 |
| —     | WPFP6 <sup>(3)</sup> | WPFP5  | WPFP4  | WPFP3  | WPFP2  | WPFP1  | WPFP0  |
| bit 7 |                      |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

|                   |                  |                                    |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | r = Reserved bit | PO = Program Once bit              |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0' |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set | '0' = Bit is cleared               |
|                   |                  | x = Bit is unknown                 |

bit 23-16 **Unimplemented:** Read as '1'

bit 15 **WPEND:** Segment Write Protection End Page Select bit

1 = Protected program memory segment upper boundary is at the last page of program memory; the lower boundary is the code page specified by WPFP<6:0>

0 = Protected program memory segment lower boundary is at the bottom of the program memory (000000h); upper boundary is the code page specified by WPFP<6:0>

bit 14 **WPCFG:** Configuration Word Code Page Write Protection Select bit

1 = Last page (at the top of program memory) and Flash Configuration Words are not write-protected<sup>(1)</sup>

0 = Last page and Flash Configuration Words are write-protected provided WPDIS = 0

bit 13 **WPDIS:** Segment Write Protection Disable bit

1 = Segmented program memory write protection is disabled

0 = Segmented program memory write protection is enabled; protected segment is defined by the WPEND, WPCFG and WPFPx Configuration bits

bit 12 **BOREN:** Brown-out Reset Enable bit

1 = BOR is enabled (all modes except Deep Sleep)

0 = BOR is disabled

bit 11 **PLLSS:** PLL Secondary Selection Configuration bit<sup>(4)</sup>

1 = PLL is fed by the Primary Oscillator

0 = PLL is fed by the on-chip Fast RC (FRC) Oscillator

bit 10-9 **WDTWIN<1:0>:** Watchdog Timer Window Width Select bits

11 = 25%

10 = 37.5%

01 = 50%

00 = 75%

bit 8 **SOSCSEL:** SOSC Selection bit

1 = SOSC circuit is selected

0 = Digital (SCLKI) mode<sup>(2)</sup>

**Note 1:** Regardless of WPCFG status, if WPEND = 1 or if the WPFP<6:0> bits correspond to the Configuration Word page, the Configuration Word page is protected.

**2:** Ensure that the SCLKI pin is made a digital input while using this configuration (see [Table 11-1](#)).

**3:** For the 64K devices (PIC24FJ64GB2XX), maintain WPFP6 as '0'.

**4:** This Configuration bit only takes effect when PLL is not being used.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## REGISTER 30-3: CW3: FLASH CONFIGURATION WORD 3 (CONTINUED)

bit 7           **Reserved:** Always maintain as '1'

bit 6-0       **WPFP<6:0>:** Write-Protected Code Segment Boundary Page bits<sup>(3)</sup>

Designates the 512 instruction words page boundary of the protected Code Segment.

If WPEND = 1:

Specifies the lower page boundary of the protected Code Segment; the last page being the last implemented page in the device.

If WPEND = 0:

Specifies the upper page boundary of the protected Code Segment; Page 0 being the lower boundary.

**Note 1:** Regardless of WPCFG status, if WPEND = 1 or if the WPFP<6:0> bits correspond to the Configuration Word page, the Configuration Word page is protected.

**2:** Ensure that the SCLKI pin is made a digital input while using this configuration (see [Table 11-1](#)).

**3:** For the 64K devices (PIC24FJ64GB2XX), maintain WPFP6 as '0'.

**4:** This Configuration bit only takes effect when PLL is not being used.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 30-4: CW4: FLASH CONFIGURATION WORD 4

|        |     |     |     |     |     |        |     |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|-----|
| U-1    | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1    | U-1 |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —      | —   |
| bit 23 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 16 |     |

|         |         |         |         |         |         |       |        |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|-------|--------|
| R/PO-1  | R/PO-1  | R/PO-1  | R/PO-1  | R/PO-1  | R/PO-1  | r-1   | R/PO-1 |
| IOL1WAY | I2C1SEL | PLLDIV3 | PLLDIV2 | PLLDIV1 | PLLDIV0 | —     | DSSWEN |
| bit 15  |         |         |         |         |         | bit 8 |        |

|         |         |          |          |          |          |          |          |
|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| R/PO-1  | R/PO-1  | R/PO-1   | R/PO-1   | R/PO-1   | R/PO-1   | R/PO-1   | R/PO-1   |
| DSWDTEN | DSBOREN | DSWDTOSC | DSWDTPS4 | DSWDTPS3 | DSWDTPS2 | DSWDTPS1 | DSWDTPS0 |
| bit 7   |         |          |          |          |          | bit 0    |          |

|                   |                  |  |
|-------------------|------------------|--|
| <b>Legend:</b>    | r = Reserved bit | PO = Program Once bit                        |
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'           |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set | '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown |

bit 23-16 **Unimplemented:** Read as '1'

bit 15 **IOL1WAY:** IOLOCK One-Way Set Enable bit

- 1 = The IOLOCK bit (OSCCON<6>) can be set once, provided the unlock sequence has been completed; once set, the Peripheral Pin Select registers cannot be written to a second time
- 0 = The IOLOCK bit can be set and cleared as needed, provided the unlock sequence has been completed

bit 14 **I2C1SEL:** Alternate I2C1 Location Select bit

- 1 = I2C1 uses the SCL1 and SDA1 pins
- 0 = I2C1 uses the ASCL1 and ASDA1 pins

bit 13-10 **PLLDIV<3:0>:** USB 96 MHz PLL Prescaler Select bits

- 1111 = PLL is disabled
- 1110 = 8x PLL is selected
- 1101 = 6x PLL is selected
- 1100 = 4x PLL is selected
- 1011
- .... = Reserved, do not use
- 1000
- 0111 = Oscillator input divided by 12 (48 MHz input)
- 0110 = Oscillator input divided by 8 (32 MHz input)
- 0101 = Oscillator input divided by 6 (24 MHz input)
- 0100 = Oscillator input divided by 5 (20 MHz input)
- 0011 = Oscillator input divided by 4 (16 MHz input)
- 0010 = Oscillator input divided by 3 (12 MHz input)
- 0001 = Oscillator input divided by 2 (8 MHz input)
- 0000 = Oscillator input used directly (4 MHz input)

bit 9 **Reserved:** Always maintain as '1'

bit 8 **DSSWEN:** Deep Sleep Software Control Select bit

- 1 = Deep Sleep operation is enabled and controlled by the DSEN bit
- 0 = Deep Sleep operation is disabled

bit 7 **DSWDTEN:** Deep Sleep Watchdog Timer Enable bit

- 1 = Deep Sleep WDT is enabled
- 0 = Deep Sleep WDT is disabled

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 30-4: CW4: FLASH CONFIGURATION WORD 4 (CONTINUED)

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| bit 6   | <b>DSBOREN:</b> Deep Sleep Brown-out Reset Enable bit<br>1 = BOR is enabled in Deep Sleep mode<br>0 = BOR is disabled in Deep Sleep mode (remains active in other Sleep modes)  |
| bit 5   | <b>DSWDTOSC:</b> Deep Sleep Watchdog Timer Clock Select bit<br>1 = Clock source is LPRC<br>0 = Clock source is SOSC   |
| bit 4-0 | <b>DSWDTPS&lt;4:0&gt;:</b> Deep Sleep Watchdog Timer Postscaler Select bits<br>11111 = 1:68,719,476,736 (25.7 days)<br>11110 = 1:34,359,738,368 (12.8 days)<br>11101 = 1:17,179,869,184 (6.4 days)<br>11100 = 1:8,589,934,592 (77.0 hours)<br>11011 = 1:4,294,967,296 (38.5 hours)<br>11010 = 1:2,147,483,648 (19.2 hours)<br>11001 = 1:1,073,741,824 (9.6 hours)<br>11000 = 1:536,870,912 (4.8 hours)<br>10111 = 1:268,435,456 (2.4 hours)<br>10110 = 1:134,217,728 (72.2 minutes)<br>10101 = 1:67,108,864 (36.1 minutes)<br>10100 = 1:33,554,432 (18.0 minutes)<br>10011 = 1:16,777,216 (9.0 minutes)<br>10010 = 1:8,388,608 (4.5 minutes)<br>10001 = 1:4,194,304 (135.3s)<br>10000 = 1:2,097,152 (67.7s)<br>01111 = 1:1,048,576 (33.825s)<br>01110 = 1:524,288 (16.912s)<br>01101 = 1:262,144 (8.456s)<br>01100 = 1:131,072 (4.228s)<br>01011 = 1:65,536 (2.114s)<br>01010 = 1:32,768 (1.057s)<br>01001 = 1:16,384 (528.5 ms)<br>01000 = 1:8,192 (264.3 ms)<br>00111 = 1:4,096 (132.1 ms)<br>00110 = 1:2,048 (66.1 ms)<br>00101 = 1:1,024 (33 ms)<br>00100 = 1:512 (16.5 ms)<br>00011 = 1:256 (8.3 ms)<br>00010 = 1:128 (4.1 ms)<br>00001 = 1:64 (2.1 ms)<br>00000 = 1:32 (1 ms) |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## REGISTER 30-5: DEVID: DEVICE ID REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |        |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| U-1    | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1 | U-1    |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —      |
| bit 23 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 16 |

|        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| R      | R      | R      | R      | R      | R      | R      | R      |
| FAMID7 | FAMID6 | FAMID5 | FAMID4 | FAMID3 | FAMID2 | FAMID1 | FAMID0 |
| bit 15 |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 8  |

|       |      |      |      |      |      |      |       |
|-------|------|------|------|------|------|------|-------|
| R     | R    | R    | R    | R    | R    | R    | R     |
| DEV7  | DEV6 | DEV5 | DEV4 | DEV3 | DEV2 | DEV1 | DEV0  |
| bit 7 |      |      |      |      |      |      | bit 0 |

|                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b> R = Readable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '1' |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|

bit 23-16      **Unimplemented:** Read as '1'

bit 15-8      **FAMID<7:0>:** Device Family Identifier bits  
0100 1100 = PIC24FJ128GB204 family

bit 7-0      **DEV<7:0>:** Individual Device Identifier bits  
0101 1000 = PIC24FJ64GB202  
0101 1010 = PIC24FJ128GB202  
0101 1001 = PIC24FJ64GB204  
0101 1011 = PIC24FJ128GB204

## REGISTER 30-6: DEVREV: DEVICE REVISION REGISTER

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |        |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0    |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —      |
| bit 23 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 16 |

|        |     |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| U-0    | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
| —      | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 15 |     |     |     |     |     |     | bit 8 |

|       |     |     |     |      |      |      |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|-------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R    | R    | R    | R     |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | REV3 | REV2 | REV1 | REV0  |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |      |      |      | bit 0 |

|                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b> R = Readable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '1' |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|

bit 23-4      **Unimplemented:** Read as '1'

bit 3-0      **REV<3:0>:** Device Revision Identifier bits

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

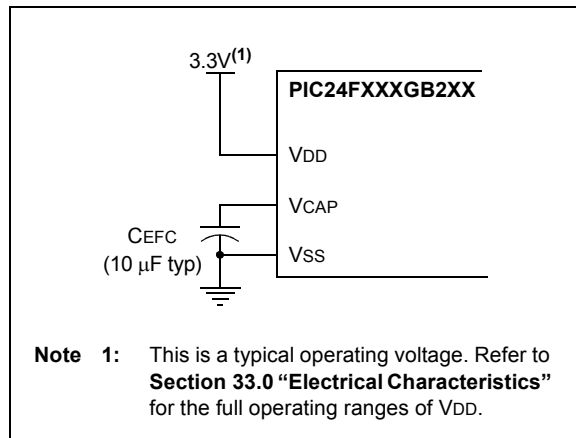
## 30.2 On-Chip Voltage Regulator

All PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices power their core digital logic at a nominal 1.8V. This may create an issue for designs that are required to operate at a higher typical voltage, such as 3.3V. To simplify system design, all devices in the PIC24FJ128GB204 family incorporate an on-chip regulator that allows the device to run its core logic from VDD.

This regulator is always enabled. It provides a constant voltage (1.8V nominal) to the digital core logic, from a VDD of about 2.1V, all the way up to the device's VDDMAX. It does not have the capability to boost VDD levels. In order to prevent "brown-out" conditions when the voltage drops too low for the regulator, the Brown-out Reset occurs. Then, the regulator output follows VDD with a typical voltage drop of 300 mV.

A low-ESR capacitor (such as ceramic) must be connected to the VCAP pin (Figure 30-1). This helps to maintain the stability of the regulator. The recommended value for the filter capacitor (CEFC) is provided in [Section 33.1 "DC Characteristics"](#).

**FIGURE 30-1: CONNECTIONS FOR THE ON-CHIP REGULATOR**



### 30.2.1 ON-CHIP REGULATOR AND POR

The voltage regulator requires a small amount of time to transition from a disabled or standby state into normal operating mode. During this time, designated as TVREG, code execution is disabled. TVREG is applied every time the device resumes operation after any power-down, including Sleep mode. TVREG is determined by the status of the VREGS bit (RCON<8>). Refer to [Section 33.0 "Electrical Characteristics"](#) for more information on TVREG.

**Note:** For more information, see [Section 33.0 "Electrical Characteristics"](#). The information in this data sheet supersedes the information in the *dsPIC33/PIC24 Family Reference Manual*.

### 30.2.2 VOLTAGE REGULATOR STANDBY MODE

The on-chip regulator always consumes a small incremental amount of current over IDD/IPD, including when the device is in Sleep mode, even though the core digital logic does not require power. To provide additional savings in applications where power resources are critical, the regulator can be made to enter Standby mode on its own, whenever the device goes into Sleep mode. This feature is controlled by the VREGS bit (RCON<8>). Clearing the VREGS bit enables the Standby mode. When waking up from Standby mode, the regulator needs to wait for TVREG to expire before wake-up.

### 30.2.3 LOW-VOLTAGE/RETENTION REGULATOR

When a power-saving mode, such as Sleep is used, PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices may use a separate low-power, low-voltage/retention regulator to power critical circuits. This regulator, which operates at 1.2V nominal, maintains power to data RAM and the RTCC while all other core digital logic is powered down. It operates only in Sleep and VBAT modes.

The low-voltage/retention regulator is described in more detail in [Section 10.1.3 "Low-Voltage/Retention Regulator"](#).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 30.3 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

For PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices, the WDT is driven by the LPRC Oscillator. When the WDT is enabled, the clock source is also enabled.

The nominal WDT clock source from LPRC is 31 kHz. This feeds a prescaler that can be configured for either 5-bit (divide-by-32) or 7-bit (divide-by-128) operation. The prescaler is set by the FWPSA Configuration bit. With a 31 kHz input, the prescaler yields a nominal WDT Time-out (TWDT) period of 1 ms in 5-bit mode or 4 ms in 7-bit mode.

A variable postscaler divides down the WDT prescaler output and allows for a wide range of time-out periods. The postscaler is controlled by the WDTPS<3:0> Configuration bits (CW1<3:0>), which allows the selection of a total of 16 settings, from 1:1 to 1:32,768. Using the prescaler and postscaler time-out periods, ranges from 1 ms to 131 seconds can be achieved.

The WDT, prescaler and postscaler are reset:

- On any device Reset
- On the completion of a clock switch, whether invoked by software (i.e., setting the OSWEN bit after changing the NOSC<sub>x</sub> bits) or by hardware (i.e., Fail-Safe Clock Monitor)
- When a PWRSAV instruction is executed (i.e., Sleep or Idle mode is entered)
- When the device exits Sleep or Idle mode to resume normal operation
- By a CLRWDT instruction during normal execution

If the WDT is enabled, it will continue to run during Sleep or Idle modes. When the WDT time-out occurs, the device will wake the device and code execution will continue from where the PWRSAV instruction was executed. The corresponding SLEEP or IDLE (RCON<3:2>) bits will need to be cleared in software after the device wakes up.

The WDT Flag bit, WDTO (RCON<4>), is not automatically cleared following a WDT time-out. To detect subsequent WDT events, the flag must be cleared in software.

**Note:** The CLRWDT and PWRSAV instructions clear the prescaler and postscaler counts when executed.

### 30.3.1 WINDOWED OPERATION

The Watchdog Timer has an optional Fixed Window mode of operation. In this Windowed mode, CLRWDT instructions can only reset the WDT during the window width, 25%, 37.5%, 50% or 75% of the programmed WDT period, controlled by the WDTWIN<1:0> Configuration bits (CW3<10:9>). A CLRWDT instruction executed before that window causes a WDT Reset, similar to a WDT time-out.

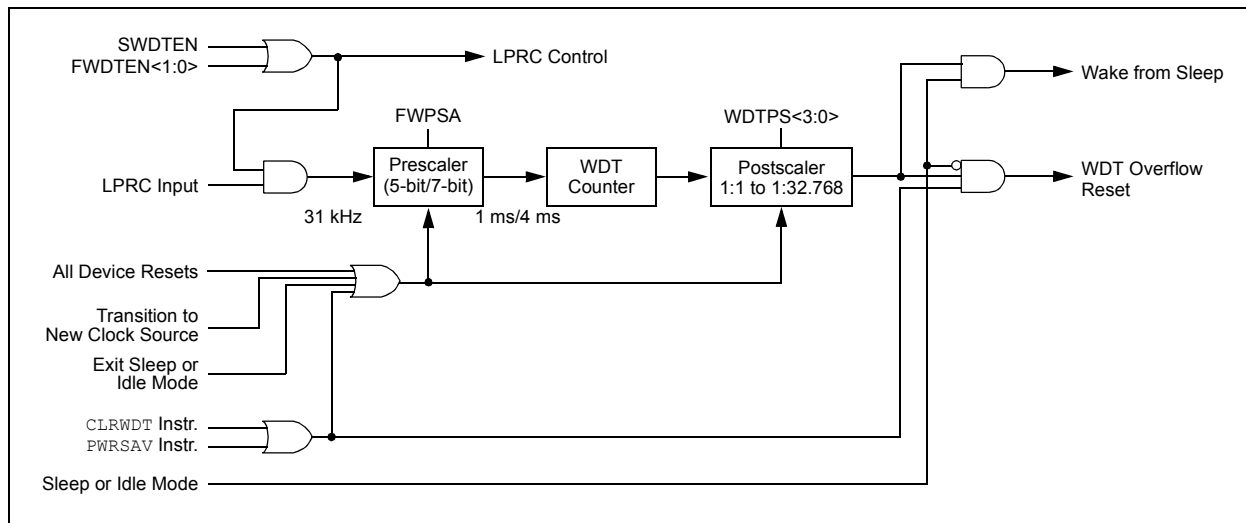
Windowed WDT mode is enabled by programming the WINDIS Configuration bit (CW1<5>) to '0'.

### 30.3.2 CONTROL REGISTER

The WDT is enabled or disabled by the FWDTEN<1:0> Configuration bits. When the Configuration bits, FWDTEN<1:0> = 11, the WDT is always enabled.

The WDT can be optionally controlled in software when the Configuration bits, FWDTEN<1:0> = 10. When FWDTEN<1:0> = 00, the Watchdog Timer is always disabled. The WDT is enabled in software by setting the SWDTEN control bit (RCON<5>). The SWDTEN control bit is cleared on any device Reset. The software WDT option allows the user to enable the WDT for critical code segments and disable the WDT during non-critical segments for maximum power savings.

**FIGURE 30-2: WDT BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 30.4 Program Verification and Code Protection

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices provide two complementary methods to protect application code from overwrites and erasures. These also help to protect the device from inadvertent configuration changes during run time.

### 30.4.1 GENERAL SEGMENT PROTECTION

For all devices in the PIC24FJ128GB204 family, the on-chip program memory space is treated as a single block, known as the General Segment (GS). Code protection for this block is controlled by one Configuration bit, GCP. This bit inhibits external reads and writes to the program memory space. It has no direct effect in normal execution mode.

Write protection is controlled by the GWRP bit in Configuration Word 1. When GWRP is programmed to '0', internal write and erase operations to program memory are blocked.

### 30.4.2 CODE SEGMENT PROTECTION

In addition to global General Segment protection, a separate subrange of the program memory space can be individually protected against writes and erases. This area can be used for many purposes where a separate block of write and erase-protected code is needed, such as bootloader applications. Unlike common boot block implementations, the specially protected segment in the PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices can be located by the user anywhere in the program space and configured in a wide range of sizes.

Code Segment (CS) protection provides an added level of protection to a designated area of program memory by disabling the NVM safety interlock whenever a write or erase address falls within a specified range. It does not override General Segment protection controlled by the GCP or GWRP bits. For example, if GCP and GWRP are enabled, enabling segmented code protection for the bottom half of program memory does not undo General Segment protection for the top half.

The size and type of protection for the segmented code range are configured by the WFPx, WPEND, WPCFG and WPDIS bits in Configuration Word 3. Code Segment protection is enabled by programming the WPDIS bit (= 0). The WFPx bits specify the size of the segment to be protected, by specifying the 512-word code page that is the start or end of the protected segment. The specified region is inclusive, therefore, this page will also be protected.

The WPEND bit determines if the protected segment uses the top or bottom of the program space as a boundary. Programming WPEND (= 0) sets the bottom of program memory (000000h) as the lower boundary of the protected segment. Leaving WPEND unprogrammed (= 1) protects the specified page through the last page of implemented program memory, including the Configuration Word locations.

A separate bit, WPCFG, is used to protect the last page of program space, including the Flash Configuration Words. Programming WPCFG (= 0) protects the last page in addition to the pages selected by the WPEND and WFPx<6:0> bits setting. This is useful in circumstances where write protection is needed for both the Code Segment in the bottom of the memory and the Flash Configuration Words.

The various options for segment code protection are shown in [Table 30-2](#).

**TABLE 30-2: CODE SEGMENT PROTECTION CONFIGURATION OPTIONS**

| Segment Configuration Bits |       |       | Write/Erase Protection of Code Segment  |
|----------------------------|-------|-------|---|
| WPDIS                      | WPEND | WPCFG |   |
| 1                          | x     | x     | No additional protection is enabled; all program memory protection is configured by GCP and GWRP.   |
| 0                          | 1     | x     | Addresses from the first address of the code page are defined by WFPx<6:0> through the end of implemented program memory (inclusive); erase/write-protected, including Flash Configuration Words.             |
| 0                          | 0     | 1     | Address, 000000h through the last address of the code page, is defined by WFPx<6:0> (inclusive); erase/write-protected.   |
| 0                          | 0     | 0     | Address, 000000h through the last address of the code page, is defined by WFPx<6:0> (inclusive); erase/write-protected and the last page, including the Flash Configuration Words, are erase/write-protected. |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## 30.4.3 CONFIGURATION REGISTER PROTECTION

The Configuration registers are protected against inadvertent or unwanted changes or reads in two ways. The primary protection method is the same as that of the RP registers – shadow registers contain a complimentary value which is constantly compared with the actual value.

To safeguard against unpredictable events, Configuration bit changes, resulting from individual cell-level disruptions (such as ESD events), will cause a parity error and trigger a device Reset.

The data for the Configuration registers is derived from the Flash Configuration Words in program memory. When the GCP bit is set, the source data for device configuration is also protected as a consequence. Even if General Segment protection is not enabled, the device configuration can be protected by using the appropriate Code Segment protection setting.

## 30.5 JTAG Interface

PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices implement a JTAG interface, which supports boundary scan device testing and programming.

## 30.6 In-Circuit Serial Programming

PIC24FJ128GB204 family microcontrollers can be serially programmed while in the end application circuit. This is simply done with two lines for clock (PGECx) and data (PGEDx), and three other lines for power (VDD), ground (VSS) and MCLR. This allows customers to manufacture boards with unprogrammed devices and then program the microcontroller just before shipping the product. This also allows the most recent firmware or a custom firmware to be programmed.

## 30.7 In-Circuit Debugger

When MPLAB® ICD 3 is selected as a debugger, the in-circuit debugging functionality is enabled. This function allows simple debugging functions when used with MPLAB X IDE. Debugging functionality is controlled through the PGECx (Emulation/Debug Clock) and PGEDx (Emulation/Debug Data) pins.

To use the in-circuit debugger function of the device, the design must implement ICSP connections to MCLR, VDD, VSS and the PGECx/PGEDx pin pair, designated by the ICSx Configuration bits. In addition, when the feature is enabled, some of the resources are not available for general use. These resources include the first 80 bytes of data RAM and two I/O pins.

## 31.0 DEVELOPMENT SUPPORT

The PIC® microcontrollers (MCU) and dsPIC® digital signal controllers (DSC) are supported with a full range of software and hardware development tools:

- Integrated Development Environment
  - MPLAB® X IDE Software
- Compilers/Assemblers/Linkers
  - MPLAB XC Compiler
  - MPASM™ Assembler
  - MPLINK™ Object Linker/  
MPLIB™ Object Librarian
  - MPLAB Assembler/Linker/Librarian for  
Various Device Families
- Simulators
  - MPLAB X SIM Software Simulator
- Emulators
  - MPLAB REAL ICE™ In-Circuit Emulator
- In-Circuit Debuggers/Programmers
  - MPLAB ICD 3
  - PICKit™ 3
- Device Programmers
  - MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer
- Low-Cost Demonstration/Development Boards,  
Evaluation Kits and Starter Kits
- Third-party development tools

## 31.1 MPLAB X Integrated Development Environment Software

The MPLAB X IDE is a single, unified graphical user interface for Microchip and third-party software, and hardware development tool that runs on Windows®, Linux and Mac OS® X. Based on the NetBeans IDE, MPLAB X IDE is an entirely new IDE with a host of free software components and plug-ins for high-performance application development and debugging. Moving between tools and upgrading from software simulators to hardware debugging and programming tools is simple with the seamless user interface.

With complete project management, visual call graphs, a configurable watch window and a feature-rich editor that includes code completion and context menus, MPLAB X IDE is flexible and friendly enough for new users. With the ability to support multiple tools on multiple projects with simultaneous debugging, MPLAB X IDE is also suitable for the needs of experienced users.

Feature-Rich Editor:

- Color syntax highlighting
- Smart code completion makes suggestions and provides hints as you type
- Automatic code formatting based on user-defined rules
- Live parsing

User-Friendly, Customizable Interface:

- Fully customizable interface: toolbars, toolbar buttons, windows, window placement, etc.
- Call graph window

Project-Based Workspaces:

- Multiple projects
- Multiple tools
- Multiple configurations
- Simultaneous debugging sessions

File History and Bug Tracking:

- Local file history feature
- Built-in support for Bugzilla issue tracker

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## 31.2 MPLAB XC Compilers

The MPLAB XC Compilers are complete ANSI C compilers for all of Microchip's 8, 16, and 32-bit MCU and DSC devices. These compilers provide powerful integration capabilities, superior code optimization and ease of use. MPLAB XC Compilers run on Windows, Linux or MAC OS X.

For easy source level debugging, the compilers provide debug information that is optimized to the MPLAB X IDE.

The free MPLAB XC Compiler editions support all devices and commands, with no time or memory restrictions, and offer sufficient code optimization for most applications.

MPLAB XC Compilers include an assembler, linker and utilities. The assembler generates relocatable object files that can then be archived or linked with other relocatable object files and archives to create an executable file. MPLAB XC Compiler uses the assembler to produce its object file. Notable features of the assembler include:

- Support for the entire device instruction set
- Support for fixed-point and floating-point data
- Command-line interface
- Rich directive set
- Flexible macro language
- MPLAB X IDE compatibility

## 31.3 MPASM Assembler

The MPASM Assembler is a full-featured, universal macro assembler for PIC10/12/16/18 MCUs.

The MPASM Assembler generates relocatable object files for the MPLINK Object Linker, Intel® standard HEX files, MAP files to detail memory usage and symbol reference, absolute LST files that contain source lines and generated machine code, and COFF files for debugging.

The MPASM Assembler features include:

- Integration into MPLAB X IDE projects
- User-defined macros to streamline assembly code
- Conditional assembly for multipurpose source files
- Directives that allow complete control over the assembly process

## 31.4 MPLINK Object Linker/ MPLIB Object Librarian

The MPLINK Object Linker combines relocatable objects created by the MPASM Assembler. It can link relocatable objects from precompiled libraries, using directives from a linker script.

The MPLIB Object Librarian manages the creation and modification of library files of precompiled code. When a routine from a library is called from a source file, only the modules that contain that routine will be linked in with the application. This allows large libraries to be used efficiently in many different applications.

The object linker/library features include:

- Efficient linking of single libraries instead of many smaller files
- Enhanced code maintainability by grouping related modules together
- Flexible creation of libraries with easy module listing, replacement, deletion and extraction

## 31.5 MPLAB Assembler, Linker and Librarian for Various Device Families

MPLAB Assembler produces relocatable machine code from symbolic assembly language for PIC24, PIC32 and dsPIC DSC devices. MPLAB XC Compiler uses the assembler to produce its object file. The assembler generates relocatable object files that can then be archived or linked with other relocatable object files and archives to create an executable file. Notable features of the assembler include:

- Support for the entire device instruction set
- Support for fixed-point and floating-point data
- Command-line interface
- Rich directive set
- Flexible macro language
- MPLAB X IDE compatibility

## 31.6 MPLAB X SIM Software Simulator

The MPLAB X SIM Software Simulator allows code development in a PC-hosted environment by simulating the PIC MCUs and dsPIC DSCs on an instruction level. On any given instruction, the data areas can be examined or modified and stimuli can be applied from a comprehensive stimulus controller. Registers can be logged to files for further run-time analysis. The trace buffer and logic analyzer display extend the power of the simulator to record and track program execution, actions on I/O, most peripherals and internal registers.

The MPLAB X SIM Software Simulator fully supports symbolic debugging using the MPLAB XC Compilers, and the MPASM and MPLAB Assemblers. The software simulator offers the flexibility to develop and debug code outside of the hardware laboratory environment, making it an excellent, economical software development tool.

## 31.7 MPLAB REAL ICE In-Circuit Emulator System

The MPLAB REAL ICE In-Circuit Emulator System is Microchip's next generation high-speed emulator for Microchip Flash DSC and MCU devices. It debugs and programs all 8, 16 and 32-bit MCU, and DSC devices with the easy-to-use, powerful graphical user interface of the MPLAB X IDE.

The emulator is connected to the design engineer's PC using a high-speed USB 2.0 interface and is connected to the target with either a connector compatible with in-circuit debugger systems (RJ-11) or with the new high-speed, noise tolerant, Low-Voltage Differential Signal (LVDS) interconnection (CAT5).

The emulator is field upgradable through future firmware downloads in MPLAB X IDE. MPLAB REAL ICE offers significant advantages over competitive emulators including full-speed emulation, run-time variable watches, trace analysis, complex breakpoints, logic probes, a ruggedized probe interface and long (up to three meters) interconnection cables.

## 31.8 MPLAB ICD 3 In-Circuit Debugger System

The MPLAB ICD 3 In-Circuit Debugger System is Microchip's most cost-effective, high-speed hardware debugger/programmer for Microchip Flash DSC and MCU devices. It debugs and programs PIC Flash microcontrollers and dsPIC DSCs with the powerful, yet easy-to-use graphical user interface of the MPLAB X IDE.

The MPLAB ICD 3 In-Circuit Debugger probe is connected to the design engineer's PC using a high-speed USB 2.0 interface and is connected to the target with a connector compatible with the MPLAB ICD 2 or MPLAB REAL ICE systems (RJ-11). MPLAB ICD 3 supports all MPLAB ICD 2 headers.

## 31.9 PICkit 3 In-Circuit Debugger/Programmer

The MPLAB PICkit 3 allows debugging and programming of PIC and dsPIC Flash microcontrollers at a most affordable price point using the powerful graphical user interface of the MPLAB X IDE. The MPLAB PICkit 3 is connected to the design engineer's PC using a full-speed USB interface and can be connected to the target via a Microchip debug (RJ-11) connector (compatible with MPLAB ICD 3 and MPLAB REAL ICE). The connector uses two device I/O pins and the Reset line to implement in-circuit debugging and In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™).

## 31.10 MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer

The MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer is a universal, CE compliant device programmer with programmable voltage verification at VDDMIN and VDDMAX for maximum reliability. It features a large LCD display (128 x 64) for menus and error messages, and a modular, detachable socket assembly to support various package types. The ICSP cable assembly is included as a standard item. In Stand-Alone mode, the MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer can read, verify and program PIC devices without a PC connection. It can also set code protection in this mode. The MPLAB PM3 connects to the host PC via an RS-232 or USB cable. The MPLAB PM3 has high-speed communications and optimized algorithms for quick programming of large memory devices, and incorporates an MMC card for file storage and data applications.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## 31.11 Demonstration/Development Boards, Evaluation Kits, and Starter Kits

A wide variety of demonstration, development and evaluation boards for various PIC MCUs and dsPIC DSCs allows quick application development on fully functional systems. Most boards include prototyping areas for adding custom circuitry and provide application firmware and source code for examination and modification.

The boards support a variety of features, including LEDs, temperature sensors, switches, speakers, RS-232 interfaces, LCD displays, potentiometers and additional EEPROM memory.

The demonstration and development boards can be used in teaching environments, for prototyping custom circuits and for learning about various microcontroller applications.

In addition to the PICDEM™ and dsPICDEM™ demonstration/development board series of circuits, Microchip has a line of evaluation kits and demonstration software for analog filter design, KEELOQ® security ICs, CAN, IrDA®, PowerSmart battery management, SEEVAL® evaluation system, Sigma-Delta ADC, flow rate sensing, plus many more.

Also available are starter kits that contain everything needed to experience the specified device. This usually includes a single application and debug capability, all on one board.

Check the Microchip web page ([www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com)) for the complete list of demonstration, development and evaluation kits.

## 31.12 Third-Party Development Tools

Microchip also offers a great collection of tools from third-party vendors. These tools are carefully selected to offer good value and unique functionality.

- Device Programmers and Gang Programmers from companies, such as SoftLog and CCS
- Software Tools from companies, such as Gimpel and Trace Systems
- Protocol Analyzers from companies, such as Saleae and Total Phase
- Demonstration Boards from companies, such as MikroElektronika, Digilent® and Olimex
- Embedded Ethernet Solutions from companies, such as EZ Web Lynx, WIZnet and IPLogika®

## 32.0 INSTRUCTION SET SUMMARY

**Note:** This chapter is a brief summary of the PIC24F Instruction Set Architecture (ISA) and is not intended to be a comprehensive reference source.

The PIC24F instruction set adds many enhancements to the previous PIC® MCU instruction sets, while maintaining an easy migration from previous PIC MCU instruction sets. Most instructions are a single program memory word. Only three instructions require two program memory locations.

Each single-word instruction is a 24-bit word divided into an 8-bit opcode, which specifies the instruction type and one or more operands, which further specify the operation of the instruction. The instruction set is highly orthogonal and is grouped into four basic categories:

- Word or byte-oriented operations
- Bit-oriented operations
- Literal operations
- Control operations

Table 32-1 shows the general symbols used in describing the instructions. The PIC24F instruction set summary in Table 32-2 lists all the instructions, along with the status flags affected by each instruction.

Most word or byte-oriented W register instructions (including barrel shift instructions) have three operands:

- The first source operand, which is typically a register, 'Wb', without any address modifier
- The second source operand, which is typically a register, 'Ws', with or without an address modifier
- The destination of the result, which is typically a register, 'Wd', with or without an address modifier

However, word or byte-oriented file register instructions have two operands:

- The file register specified by the value, 'f'
- The destination, which could either be the file register, 'f', or the W0 register, which is denoted as 'WREG'

Most bit-oriented instructions (including simple rotate/shift instructions) have two operands:

- The W register (with or without an address modifier) or file register (specified by the value of 'Ws' or 'f')
- The bit in the W register or file register (specified by a literal value or indirectly by the contents of register, 'Wb')

The literal instructions that involve data movement may use some of the following operands:

- A literal value to be loaded into a W register or file register (specified by the value of 'k')
- The W register or file register where the literal value is to be loaded (specified by 'Wb' or 'f')

However, literal instructions that involve arithmetic or logical operations use some of the following operands:

- The first source operand, which is a register, 'Wb', without any address modifier
- The second source operand, which is a literal value
- The destination of the result (only if not the same as the first source operand), which is typically a register, 'Wd', with or without an address modifier

The control instructions may use some of the following operands:

- A program memory address
- The mode of the Table Read and Table Write instructions

All instructions are a single word, except for certain double-word instructions, which were made double-word instructions so that all the required information is available in these 48 bits. In the second word, the 8 MSBs are '0's. If this second word is executed as an instruction (by itself), it will execute as a NOP.

Most single-word instructions are executed in a single instruction cycle, unless a conditional test is true or the Program Counter is changed as a result of the instruction. In these cases, the execution takes two instruction cycles, with the additional instruction cycle(s) executed as a NOP. Notable exceptions are the BRA (unconditional/computed branch), indirect CALL/GOTO, all Table Reads and Table Writes, and RETURN/RETFIE instructions, which are single-word instructions but take two or three cycles.

Certain instructions that involve skipping over the subsequent instruction require either two or three cycles if the skip is performed, depending on whether the instruction being skipped is a single-word or two-word instruction. Moreover, double-word moves require two cycles. The double-word instructions execute in two instruction cycles.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 32-1: SYMBOLS USED IN OPCODE DESCRIPTIONS**

| Field           | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| #text           | Means literal defined by "text"   |
| (text)          | Means "content of text"   |
| <text]          | Means "the location addressed by text"  |
| { }             | Optional field or operation   |
| <n:m>           | Register bit field  |
| .b              | Byte mode selection   |
| .d              | Double-Word mode selection  |
| .S              | Shadow register select  |
| .w              | Word mode selection (default)   |
| bit4            | 4-bit Bit Selection field (used in word addressed instructions) $\in \{0...15\}$          |
| C, DC, N, OV, Z | MCU Status bits: Carry, Digit Carry, Negative, Overflow, Sticky Zero                      |
| Expr            | Absolute address, label or expression (resolved by the linker)                            |
| f               | File register address $\in \{0000h...1FFFh\}$   |
| lit1            | 1-bit unsigned literal $\in \{0,1\}$  |
| lit4            | 4-bit unsigned literal $\in \{0...15\}$   |
| lit5            | 5-bit unsigned literal $\in \{0...31\}$   |
| lit8            | 8-bit unsigned literal $\in \{0...255\}$  |
| lit10           | 10-bit unsigned literal $\in \{0...255\}$ for Byte mode, $\{0:1023\}$ for Word mode       |
| lit14           | 14-bit unsigned literal $\in \{0...16383\}$   |
| lit16           | 16-bit unsigned literal $\in \{0...65535\}$   |
| lit23           | 23-bit unsigned literal $\in \{0...8388607\}$ ; LSB must be '0'                           |
| None            | Field does not require an entry, may be blank   |
| PC              | Program Counter   |
| Slit10          | 10-bit signed literal $\in \{-512...511\}$  |
| Slit16          | 16-bit signed literal $\in \{-32768...32767\}$  |
| Slit6           | 6-bit signed literal $\in \{-16...16\}$   |
| Wb              | Base W register $\in \{W0..W15\}$   |
| Wd              | Destination W register $\in \{Wd, [Wd], [Wd++], [Wd--], [++Wd], [--Wd]\}$                 |
| Wdo             | Destination W register $\in \{Wnd, [Wnd], [Wnd++], [Wnd--], [++Wnd], [--Wnd], [Wnd+Wb]\}$ |
| Wm,Wn           | Dividend, Divisor Working register pair (direct addressing)                               |
| Wn              | One of 16 Working registers $\in \{W0..W15\}$   |
| Wnd             | One of 16 Destination Working registers $\in \{W0..W15\}$                                 |
| Wns             | One of 16 Source Working registers $\in \{W0..W15\}$                                      |
| WREG            | W0 (Working register used in file register instructions)                                  |
| Ws              | Source W register $\in \{Ws, [Ws], [Ws++], [Ws--], [++Ws], [--Ws]\}$                      |
| Wso             | Source W register $\in \{Wns, [Wns], [Wns++], [Wns--], [++Wns], [--Wns], [Wns+Wb]\}$      |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 32-2: INSTRUCTION SET OVERVIEW**

| Assembly Mnemonic | Assembly Syntax    | Description   | # of Words | # of Cycles   | Status Flags Affected |
|-------------------|--------------------|---|------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| ADD               | ADD f              | $f = f + \text{WREG}$   | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | ADD f, WREG        | $\text{WREG} = f + \text{WREG}$   | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | ADD #lit10, Wn     | $\text{Wd} = \text{lit10} + \text{Wd}$                                  | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | ADD Wb, Ws, Wd     | $\text{Wd} = \text{Wb} + \text{Ws}$                                     | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | ADD Wb, #lit5, Wd  | $\text{Wd} = \text{Wb} + \text{lit5}$                                   | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| ADDC              | ADDC f             | $f = f + \text{WREG} + (\text{C})$                                      | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | ADDC f, WREG       | $\text{WREG} = f + \text{WREG} + (\text{C})$                            | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | ADDC #lit10, Wn    | $\text{Wd} = \text{lit10} + \text{Wd} + (\text{C})$                     | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | ADDC Wb, Ws, Wd    | $\text{Wd} = \text{Wb} + \text{Ws} + (\text{C})$                        | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | ADDC Wb, #lit5, Wd | $\text{Wd} = \text{Wb} + \text{lit5} + (\text{C})$                      | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| AND               | AND f              | $f = f .\text{AND. WREG}$   | 1          | 1             | N, Z                  |
|                   | AND f, WREG        | $\text{WREG} = f .\text{AND. WREG}$                                     | 1          | 1             | N, Z                  |
|                   | AND #lit10, Wn     | $\text{Wd} = \text{lit10} .\text{AND. Wd}$                              | 1          | 1             | N, Z                  |
|                   | AND Wb, Ws, Wd     | $\text{Wd} = \text{Wb} .\text{AND. Ws}$                                 | 1          | 1             | N, Z                  |
|                   | AND Wb, #lit5, Wd  | $\text{Wd} = \text{Wb} .\text{AND. lit5}$                               | 1          | 1             | N, Z                  |
| ASR               | ASR f              | $f = \text{Arithmetic Right Shift } f$                                  | 1          | 1             | C, N, OV, Z           |
|                   | ASR f, WREG        | $\text{WREG} = \text{Arithmetic Right Shift } f$                        | 1          | 1             | C, N, OV, Z           |
|                   | ASR Ws, Wd         | $\text{Wd} = \text{Arithmetic Right Shift } \text{Ws}$                  | 1          | 1             | C, N, OV, Z           |
|                   | ASR Wb, Wns, Wnd   | $\text{Wnd} = \text{Arithmetic Right Shift } \text{Wb by } \text{Wns}$  | 1          | 1             | N, Z                  |
|                   | ASR Wb, #lit5, Wnd | $\text{Wnd} = \text{Arithmetic Right Shift } \text{Wb by } \text{lit5}$ | 1          | 1             | N, Z                  |
| BCLR              | BCLR f, #bit4      | Bit Clear f   | 1          | 1             | None                  |
|                   | BCLR Ws, #bit4     | Bit Clear Ws  | 1          | 1             | None                  |
| BRA               | BRA C, Expr        | Branch if Carry   | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA GE, Expr       | Branch if Greater than or Equal   | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA GEU, Expr      | Branch if Unsigned Greater than or Equal                                | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA GT, Expr       | Branch if Greater than  | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA GTU, Expr      | Branch if Unsigned Greater than   | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA LE, Expr       | Branch if Less than or Equal  | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA LEU, Expr      | Branch if Unsigned Less than or Equal                                   | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA LT, Expr       | Branch if Less than   | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA LTU, Expr      | Branch if Unsigned Less than  | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA N, Expr        | Branch if Negative  | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA NC, Expr       | Branch if Not Carry   | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA NN, Expr       | Branch if Not Negative  | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA NOV, Expr      | Branch if Not Overflow  | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA NZ, Expr       | Branch if Not Zero  | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA OV, Expr       | Branch if Overflow  | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA Expr           | Branch Unconditionally  | 1          | 2             | None                  |
|                   | BRA Z, Expr        | Branch if Zero  | 1          | 1 (2)         | None                  |
|                   | BRA Wn             | Computed Branch   | 1          | 2             | None                  |
| BSET              | BSET f, #bit4      | Bit Set f   | 1          | 1             | None                  |
|                   | BSET Ws, #bit4     | Bit Set Ws  | 1          | 1             | None                  |
| BSW               | BSW.C Ws, Wb       | Write C bit to Ws<Wb>   | 1          | 1             | None                  |
|                   | BSW.Z Ws, Wb       | Write Z bit to Ws<Wb>   | 1          | 1             | None                  |
| BTG               | BTG f, #bit4       | Bit Toggle f  | 1          | 1             | None                  |
|                   | BTG Ws, #bit4      | Bit Toggle Ws   | 1          | 1             | None                  |
| BTSC              | BTSC f, #bit4      | Bit Test f, Skip if Clear   | 1          | 1<br>(2 or 3) | None                  |
|                   | BTSC Ws, #bit4     | Bit Test Ws, Skip if Clear  | 1          | 1<br>(2 or 3) | None                  |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 32-2: INSTRUCTION SET OVERVIEW (CONTINUED)**

| Assembly Mnemonic | Assembly Syntax              | Description   | # of Words | # of Cycles   | Status Flags Affected |
|-------------------|------------------------------|---|------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| BTSS              | BTSS <i>f</i> , #bit4        | Bit Test <i>f</i> , Skip if Set   | 1          | 1<br>(2 or 3) | None                  |
|                   | BTSS <i>Ws</i> , #bit4       | Bit Test <i>Ws</i> , Skip if Set  | 1          | 1<br>(2 or 3) | None                  |
| BTST              | BTST <i>f</i> , #bit4        | Bit Test <i>f</i>   | 1          | 1             | Z                     |
|                   | BTST.C <i>Ws</i> , #bit4     | Bit Test <i>Ws</i> to C   | 1          | 1             | C                     |
|                   | BTST.Z <i>Ws</i> , #bit4     | Bit Test <i>Ws</i> to Z   | 1          | 1             | Z                     |
|                   | BTST.C <i>Ws</i> , <i>Wb</i> | Bit Test <i>Ws</i> < <i>Wb</i> > to C                                       | 1          | 1             | C                     |
|                   | BTST.Z <i>Ws</i> , <i>Wb</i> | Bit Test <i>Ws</i> < <i>Wb</i> > to Z                                       | 1          | 1             | Z                     |
| BTSTS             | BTSTS <i>f</i> , #bit4       | Bit Test then Set <i>f</i>  | 1          | 1             | Z                     |
|                   | BTSTS.C <i>Ws</i> , #bit4    | Bit Test <i>Ws</i> to C, then Set   | 1          | 1             | C                     |
|                   | BTSTS.Z <i>Ws</i> , #bit4    | Bit Test <i>Ws</i> to Z, then Set   | 1          | 1             | Z                     |
| CALL              | CALL <i>lit</i> 23           | Call Subroutine   | 2          | 2             | None                  |
|                   | CALL <i>Wn</i>               | Call Indirect Subroutine  | 1          | 2             | None                  |
| CLR               | CLR <i>f</i>                 | <i>f</i> = 0x0000   | 1          | 1             | None                  |
|                   | CLR <i>WREG</i>              | WREG = 0x0000   | 1          | 1             | None                  |
|                   | CLR <i>Ws</i>                | <i>Ws</i> = 0x0000  | 1          | 1             | None                  |
| CLRWDT            | CLRWDT                       | Clear Watchdog Timer  | 1          | 1             | WDTO, Sleep           |
| COM               | COM <i>f</i>                 | <i>f</i> = $\bar{f}$  | 1          | 1             | N, Z                  |
|                   | COM <i>f</i> , <i>WREG</i>   | WREG = $\bar{f}$  | 1          | 1             | N, Z                  |
|                   | COM <i>Ws</i> , <i>Wd</i>    | <i>Wd</i> = $\overline{Ws}$   | 1          | 1             | N, Z                  |
| CP                | CP <i>f</i>                  | Compare <i>f</i> with WREG  | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | CP <i>Wb</i> , #lit5         | Compare <i>Wb</i> with lit5   | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | CP <i>Wb</i> , <i>Ws</i>     | Compare <i>Wb</i> with <i>Ws</i> ( <i>Wb</i> – <i>Ws</i> )                  | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| CP0               | CP0 <i>f</i>                 | Compare <i>f</i> with 0x0000  | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | CP0 <i>Ws</i>                | Compare <i>Ws</i> with 0x0000   | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| CPB               | CPB <i>f</i>                 | Compare <i>f</i> with WREG, with Borrow                                     | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | CPB <i>Wb</i> , #lit5        | Compare <i>Wb</i> with lit5, with Borrow                                    | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | CPB <i>Wb</i> , <i>Ws</i>    | Compare <i>Wb</i> with <i>Ws</i> , with Borrow ( <i>Wb</i> – <i>Ws</i> – C) | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| CPSEQ             | CPSEQ <i>Wb</i> , <i>Wn</i>  | Compare <i>Wb</i> with <i>Wn</i> , Skip if =                                | 1          | 1<br>(2 or 3) | None                  |
| CPSGT             | CPSGT <i>Wb</i> , <i>Wn</i>  | Compare <i>Wb</i> with <i>Wn</i> , Skip if >                                | 1          | 1<br>(2 or 3) | None                  |
| CPSLT             | CPSLT <i>Wb</i> , <i>Wn</i>  | Compare <i>Wb</i> with <i>Wn</i> , Skip if <                                | 1          | 1<br>(2 or 3) | None                  |
| CPSNE             | CPSNE <i>Wb</i> , <i>Wn</i>  | Compare <i>Wb</i> with <i>Wn</i> , Skip if ≠                                | 1          | 1<br>(2 or 3) | None                  |
| DAW               | DAW.B <i>Wn</i>              | <i>Wn</i> = Decimal Adjust <i>Wn</i>  | 1          | 1             | C                     |
| DEC               | DEC <i>f</i>                 | <i>f</i> = <i>f</i> – 1   | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | DEC <i>f</i> , <i>WREG</i>   | WREG = <i>f</i> – 1   | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | DEC <i>Ws</i> , <i>Wd</i>    | <i>Wd</i> = <i>Ws</i> – 1   | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| DEC2              | DEC2 <i>f</i>                | <i>f</i> = <i>f</i> – 2   | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | DEC2 <i>f</i> , <i>WREG</i>  | WREG = <i>f</i> – 2   | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | DEC2 <i>Ws</i> , <i>Wd</i>   | <i>Wd</i> = <i>Ws</i> – 2   | 1          | 1             | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| DISI              | DISI #lit14                  | Disable Interrupts for <i>k</i> Instruction Cycles                          | 1          | 1             | None                  |
| DIV               | DIV.SW <i>Wm</i> , <i>Wn</i> | Signed 16/16-bit Integer Divide   | 1          | 18            | N, Z, C, OV           |
|                   | DIV.SD <i>Wm</i> , <i>Wn</i> | Signed 32/16-bit Integer Divide   | 1          | 18            | N, Z, C, OV           |
|                   | DIV.UW <i>Wm</i> , <i>Wn</i> | Unsigned 16/16-bit Integer Divide   | 1          | 18            | N, Z, C, OV           |
|                   | DIV.UD <i>Wm</i> , <i>Wn</i> | Unsigned 32/16-bit Integer Divide   | 1          | 18            | N, Z, C, OV           |
| EXCH              | EXCH <i>Wns</i> , <i>Wnd</i> | Swap <i>Wns</i> with <i>Wnd</i>   | 1          | 1             | None                  |
| FF1L              | FF1L <i>Ws</i> , <i>Wnd</i>  | Find First One from Left (MSb) Side   | 1          | 1             | C                     |
| FF1R              | FF1R <i>Ws</i> , <i>Wnd</i>  | Find First One from Right (LSb) Side  | 1          | 1             | C                     |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 32-2: INSTRUCTION SET OVERVIEW (CONTINUED)**

| Assembly Mnemonic | Assembly Syntax       | Description  | # of Words | # of Cycles | Status Flags Affected |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--|------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| GOTO              | GOTO Expr             | Go to Address  | 2          | 2           | None                  |
|                   | GOTO Wn               | Go to Indirect   | 1          | 2           | None                  |
| INC               | INC f                 | $f = f + 1$  | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | INC f, WREG           | $WREG = f + 1$   | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | INC Ws, Wd            | $Wd = Ws + 1$  | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| INC2              | INC2 f                | $f = f + 2$  | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | INC2 f, WREG          | $WREG = f + 2$   | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | INC2 Ws, Wd           | $Wd = Ws + 2$  | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| IOR               | IOR f                 | $f = f .IOR. WREG$   | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | IOR f, WREG           | $WREG = f .IOR. WREG$  | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | IOR #lit10, Wn        | $Wd = lit10 .IOR. Wd$  | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | IOR Wb, Ws, Wd        | $Wd = Wb .IOR. Ws$   | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | IOR Wb, #lit5, Wd     | $Wd = Wb .IOR. lit5$   | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
| LNK               | LNK #lit14            | Link Frame Pointer   | 1          | 1           | None                  |
| LSR               | LSR f                 | $f = \text{Logical Right Shift } f$                            | 1          | 1           | C, N, OV, Z           |
|                   | LSR f, WREG           | $WREG = \text{Logical Right Shift } f$                         | 1          | 1           | C, N, OV, Z           |
|                   | LSR Ws, Wd            | $Wd = \text{Logical Right Shift } Ws$                          | 1          | 1           | C, N, OV, Z           |
|                   | LSR Wb, Wns, Wnd      | $Wnd = \text{Logical Right Shift } Wb \text{ by } Wns$         | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | LSR Wb, #lit5, Wnd    | $Wnd = \text{Logical Right Shift } Wb \text{ by } lit5$        | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
| MOV               | MOV f, Wn             | Move f to Wn   | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MOV [Wns+Slit10], Wnd | Move [Wns+Slit10] to Wnd                                       | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MOV f                 | Move f to f  | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | MOV f, WREG           | Move f to WREG   | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | MOV #lit16, Wn        | Move 16-bit Literal to Wn                                      | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MOV.b #lit8, Wn       | Move 8-bit Literal to Wn                                       | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MOV Wn, f             | Move Wn to f   | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MOV Wns, [Wns+Slit10] | Move Wns to [Wns+Slit10]                                       | 1          | 1           |                       |
|                   | MOV Wso, Wdo          | Move Ws to Wd  | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MOV WREG, f           | Move WREG to f   | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | MOV.D Wns, Wd         | Move Double from W(ns):W(ns+1) to Wd                           | 1          | 2           | None                  |
|                   | MOV.D Ws, Wnd         | Move Double from Ws to W(nd+1):W(nd)                           | 1          | 2           | None                  |
| MUL               | MUL.SS Wb, Ws, Wnd    | $\{Wnd+1, Wnd\} = \text{Signed}(Wb) * \text{Signed}(Ws)$       | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MUL.SU Wb, Ws, Wnd    | $\{Wnd+1, Wnd\} = \text{Signed}(Wb) * \text{Unsigned}(Ws)$     | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MUL.US Wb, Ws, Wnd    | $\{Wnd+1, Wnd\} = \text{Unsigned}(Wb) * \text{Signed}(Ws)$     | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MUL.UU Wb, Ws, Wnd    | $\{Wnd+1, Wnd\} = \text{Unsigned}(Wb) * \text{Unsigned}(Ws)$   | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MUL.SU Wb, #lit5, Wnd | $\{Wnd+1, Wnd\} = \text{Signed}(Wb) * \text{Unsigned}(lit5)$   | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MUL.UU Wb, #lit5, Wnd | $\{Wnd+1, Wnd\} = \text{Unsigned}(Wb) * \text{Unsigned}(lit5)$ | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | MUL f                 | $W3:W2 = f * WREG$   | 1          | 1           | None                  |
| NEG               | NEG f                 | $f = \bar{f} + 1$  | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | NEG f, WREG           | $WREG = \bar{f} + 1$   | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | NEG Ws, Wd            | $Wd = \overline{Ws} + 1$                                       | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| NOP               | NOP                   | No Operation   | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | NOPR                  | No Operation   | 1          | 1           | None                  |
| POP               | POP f                 | Pop f from Top-of-Stack (TOS)                                  | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | POP Wdo               | Pop from Top-of-Stack (TOS) to Wdo                             | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | POP.D Wnd             | Pop from Top-of-Stack (TOS) to W(nd):W(nd+1)                   | 1          | 2           | None                  |
|                   | POP.S                 | Pop Shadow Registers   | 1          | 1           | All                   |
| PUSH              | PUSH f                | Push f to Top-of-Stack (TOS)                                   | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | PUSH Wso              | Push Wso to Top-of-Stack (TOS)                                 | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | PUSH.D Wns            | Push W(ns):W(ns+1) to Top-of-Stack (TOS)                       | 1          | 2           | None                  |
|                   | PUSH.S                | Push Shadow Registers  | 1          | 1           | None                  |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 32-2: INSTRUCTION SET OVERVIEW (CONTINUED)**

| Assembly Mnemonic | Assembly Syntax     | Description                             | # of Words | # of Cycles | Status Flags Affected |
|-------------------|---------------------|---|------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| PWRSV             | PWRSV #lit1         | Go into Sleep or Idle mode              | 1          | 1           | WDTO, Sleep           |
| RCALL             | RCALL Expr          | Relative Call                           | 1          | 2           | None                  |
|                   | RCALL Wn            | Computed Call                           | 1          | 2           | None                  |
| REPEAT            | REPEAT #lit14       | Repeat Next Instruction lit14 + 1 times | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | REPEAT Wn           | Repeat Next Instruction (Wn) + 1 times  | 1          | 1           | None                  |
| RESET             | RESET               | Software Device Reset                   | 1          | 1           | None                  |
| RETFIE            | RETFIE              | Return from Interrupt                   | 1          | 3 (2)       | None                  |
| RETLW             | RETLW #lit10, Wn    | Return with Literal in Wn               | 1          | 3 (2)       | None                  |
| RETURN            | RETURN              | Return from Subroutine                  | 1          | 3 (2)       | None                  |
| RLC               | RLC f               | f = Rotate Left through Carry f         | 1          | 1           | C, N, Z               |
|                   | RLC f, WREG         | WREG = Rotate Left through Carry f      | 1          | 1           | C, N, Z               |
|                   | RLC Ws, Wd          | Wd = Rotate Left through Carry Ws       | 1          | 1           | C, N, Z               |
| RLNC              | RLNC f              | f = Rotate Left (No Carry) f            | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | RLNC f, WREG        | WREG = Rotate Left (No Carry) f         | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | RLNC Ws, Wd         | Wd = Rotate Left (No Carry) Ws          | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
| RRC               | RRC f               | f = Rotate Right through Carry f        | 1          | 1           | C, N, Z               |
|                   | RRC f, WREG         | WREG = Rotate Right through Carry f     | 1          | 1           | C, N, Z               |
|                   | RRC Ws, Wd          | Wd = Rotate Right through Carry Ws      | 1          | 1           | C, N, Z               |
| RRNC              | RRNC f              | f = Rotate Right (No Carry) f           | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | RRNC f, WREG        | WREG = Rotate Right (No Carry) f        | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | RRNC Ws, Wd         | Wd = Rotate Right (No Carry) Ws         | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
| SE                | SE Ws, Wnd          | Wnd = Sign-Extended Ws                  | 1          | 1           | C, N, Z               |
| SETM              | SETM f              | f = FFFFh                               | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | SETM WREG           | WREG = FFFFh                            | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | SETM Ws             | Ws = FFFFh                              | 1          | 1           | None                  |
| SL                | SL f                | f = Left Shift f                        | 1          | 1           | C, N, OV, Z           |
|                   | SL f, WREG          | WREG = Left Shift f                     | 1          | 1           | C, N, OV, Z           |
|                   | SL Ws, Wd           | Wd = Left Shift Ws                      | 1          | 1           | C, N, OV, Z           |
|                   | SL Wb, Wns, Wnd     | Wnd = Left Shift Wb by Wns              | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | SL Wb, #lit5, Wnd   | Wnd = Left Shift Wb by lit5             | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
| SUB               | SUB f               | f = f – WREG                            | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUB f, WREG         | WREG = f – WREG                         | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUB #lit10, Wn      | Wn = Wn – lit10                         | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUB Wb, Ws, Wd      | Wd = Wb – Ws                            | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUB Wb, #lit5, Wd   | Wd = Wb – lit5                          | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| SUBB              | SUBB f              | f = f – WREG – ( $\overline{C}$ )       | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUBB f, WREG        | WREG = f – WREG – ( $\overline{C}$ )    | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUBB #lit10, Wn     | Wn = Wn – lit10 – ( $\overline{C}$ )    | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUBB Wb, Ws, Wd     | Wd = Wb – Ws – ( $\overline{C}$ )       | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUBB Wb, #lit5, Wd  | Wd = Wb – lit5 – ( $\overline{C}$ )     | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| SUBR              | SUBR f              | f = WREG – f                            | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUBR f, WREG        | WREG = WREG – f                         | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUBR Wb, Ws, Wd     | Wd = Ws – Wb                            | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUBR Wb, #lit5, Wd  | Wd = lit5 – Wb                          | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| SUBBR             | SUBBR f             | f = WREG – f – ( $\overline{C}$ )       | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUBBR f, WREG       | WREG = WREG – f – ( $\overline{C}$ )    | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUBBR Wb, Ws, Wd    | Wd = Ws – Wb – ( $\overline{C}$ )       | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
|                   | SUBBR Wb, #lit5, Wd | Wd = lit5 – Wb – ( $\overline{C}$ )     | 1          | 1           | C, DC, N, OV, Z       |
| SWAP              | SWAP.b Wn           | Wn = Nibble Swap Wn                     | 1          | 1           | None                  |
|                   | SWAP Wn             | Wn = Byte Swap Wn                       | 1          | 1           | None                  |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 32-2: INSTRUCTION SET OVERVIEW (CONTINUED)**

| Assembly Mnemonic | Assembly Syntax          | Description                           | # of Words | # of Cycles | Status Flags Affected |
|-------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| TBLRDH            | TBLRDH <i>Ws, Wd</i>     | Read Prog<23:16> to Wd<7:0>           | 1          | 2           | None                  |
| TBLRDL            | TBLRDL <i>Ws, Wd</i>     | Read Prog<15:0> to Wd                 | 1          | 2           | None                  |
| TBLWTH            | TBLWTH <i>Ws, Wd</i>     | Write Ws<7:0> to Prog<23:16>          | 1          | 2           | None                  |
| TBLWTL            | TBLWTL <i>Ws, Wd</i>     | Write Ws to Prog<15:0>                | 1          | 2           | None                  |
| ULNK              | ULNK                     | Unlink Frame Pointer                  | 1          | 1           | None                  |
| XOR               | XOR <i>f</i>             | $f = f \text{ .XOR. WREG}$            | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | XOR <i>f, WREG</i>       | $WREG = f \text{ .XOR. WREG}$         | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | XOR <i>#lit10, Wn</i>    | $Wd = \text{lit10} \text{ .XOR. } Wd$ | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | XOR <i>Wb, Ws, Wd</i>    | $Wd = Wb \text{ .XOR. } Ws$           | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
|                   | XOR <i>Wb, #lit5, Wd</i> | $Wd = Wb \text{ .XOR. lit5}$          | 1          | 1           | N, Z                  |
| ZE                | ZE <i>Ws, Wnd</i>        | $Wnd = \text{Zero-Extend } Ws$        | 1          | 1           | C, Z, N               |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 33.0 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

This section provides an overview of the PIC24FJ128GB204 family electrical characteristics. Additional information will be provided in future revisions of this document as it becomes available.

Absolute maximum ratings for the PIC24FJ128GB204 family are listed below. Exposure to these maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability. Functional operation of the device at these, or any other conditions above the parameters indicated in the operation listings of this specification, is not implied.

### Absolute Maximum Ratings<sup>(†)</sup>

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Ambient temperature under bias .....  | -40°C to +100°C                                   |
| Storage temperature .....   | -65°C to +150°C                                   |
| Voltage on VDD with respect to VSS .....  | -0.3V to +4.0V                                    |
| Voltage on any general purpose digital or analog pin (not 5.5V tolerant) with respect to VSS .....        | -0.3V to (VDD + 0.3V)                             |
| Voltage on any general purpose digital or analog pin (5.5V tolerant, including MCLR) with respect to VSS: |   |
| When VDD = 0V: .....  | -0.3V to +4.0V                                    |
| When VDD ≥ 2.0V: .....  | -0.3V to +6.0V                                    |
| Voltage on AVDD with respect to VSS .....   | (VDD – 0.3V) to (lesser of: 4.0V or (VDD + 0.3V)) |
| Voltage on AVSS with respect to VSS .....   | -0.3V to +0.3V                                    |
| Voltage on VBAT with respect to VSS .....   | -0.3V to +4.0V                                    |
| Voltage on VUSB3V3 with respect to VSS .....  | (VCAP – 0.3V) to +4.0V                            |
| Voltage on VBUS with respect to VSS .....   | -0.3V to +6.0V                                    |
| Voltage on D+ or D- with respect to VSS:  |   |
| 0Ω source impedance ( <b>Note 1</b> ) .....   | -0.5V to (VUSB3V3 + 0.5V)                         |
| Source Impedance ≥ 28Ω, VUSB3V3 ≥ 3.0V .....  | -1.0V to +4.6V                                    |
| Maximum current out of VSS pin .....  | 300 mA  |
| Maximum current into VDD pin ( <b>Note 2</b> ) .....  | 250 mA  |
| Maximum output current sunk by any I/O pin .....  | 25 mA   |
| Maximum output current sourced by any I/O pin .....   | 25 mA   |
| Maximum current sunk by all ports .....   | 200 mA  |
| Maximum current sourced by all ports ( <b>Note 2</b> ) .....  | 200 mA  |

**Note 1:** The original USB 2.0 Specifications indicated that USB devices should withstand 24-hour short circuits of D+ or D- to VBUS voltages. This requirement was later removed in an Engineering Change Notice (ECN) supplement to the USB Specifications, which supersedes the original specifications. PIC24FJ128GB204 family devices will typically be able to survive this short-circuit test, but it is recommended to adhere to the absolute maximum specified here to avoid damaging the device.

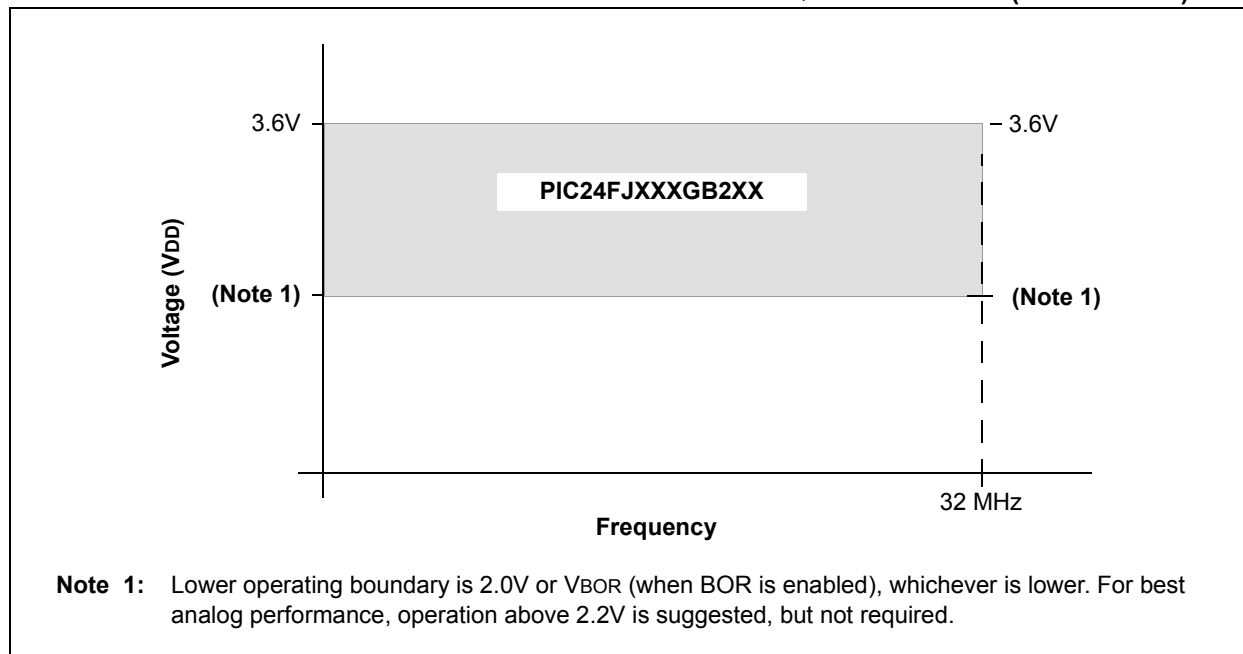
**2:** Maximum allowable current is a function of device maximum power dissipation (see [Table 33-1](#)).

† **NOTICE:** Stresses above those listed under “Absolute Maximum Ratings” may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at those or any other conditions above those indicated in the operation listings of this specification is not implied. Exposure to maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 33.1 DC Characteristics

**FIGURE 33-1: PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (INDUSTRIAL)**



**TABLE 33-1: THERMAL OPERATING CONDITIONS**

| Rating  | Symbol            | Min  | Typ | Max  | Unit |
|---|-------------------|--|-----|------|------|
| PIC24FJ128GB204:  |                   |  |     |      |      |
| Operating Junction Temperature Range  | T <sub>J</sub>    | -40  | —   | +125 | °C   |
| Operating Ambient Temperature Range   | T <sub>A</sub>    | -40  | —   | +85  | °C   |
| Power Dissipation:  |                   |  |     |      |      |
| Internal Chip Power Dissipation:<br>P <sub>INT</sub> = V <sub>DD</sub> x (I <sub>DD</sub> - Σ I <sub>OH</sub> )                                       | P <sub>D</sub>    | P <sub>INT</sub> + P <sub>I/O</sub>                |     |      | W    |
| I/O Pin Power Dissipation:<br>P <sub>I/O</sub> = Σ ({V <sub>DD</sub> - V <sub>OH</sub> } x I <sub>OH</sub> ) + Σ (V <sub>OL</sub> x I <sub>OL</sub> ) |                   |  |     |      |      |
| Maximum Allowed Power Dissipation   | P <sub>DMAX</sub> | (T <sub>J</sub> - T <sub>A</sub> )/θ <sub>JA</sub> |     |      | W    |

**TABLE 33-2: THERMAL PACKAGING CHARACTERISTICS**

| Characteristic                                      | Symbol          | Typ  | Max | Unit | Notes    |
|---|-----------------|------|-----|------|----------|
| Package Thermal Resistance, 7.50 mm 28-Pin SOIC     | θ <sub>JA</sub> | 49   | —   | °C/W | (Note 1) |
| Package Thermal Resistance, 6x6x0.9 mm 28-Pin QFN-S | θ <sub>JA</sub> | 33.7 | —   | °C/W | (Note 1) |
| Package Thermal Resistance, 8x8 mm 44-Pin QFN       | θ <sub>JA</sub> | 28   | —   | °C/W | (Note 1) |
| Package Thermal Resistance, 10x10x1 mm 44-Pin TQFP  | θ <sub>JA</sub> | 39.3 | —   | °C/W | (Note 1) |
| Package Thermal Resistance, 5.30 mm 28-Pin SSOP     | θ <sub>JA</sub> | —    | —   | °C/W | (Note 1) |
| Package Thermal Resistance, 300 mil 28-Pin SPDIP    | θ <sub>JA</sub> | —    | —   | °C/W | (Note 1) |

**Note 1:** Junction to ambient thermal resistance; Theta-JA (θ<sub>JA</sub>) numbers are achieved by package simulations.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-3: DC CHARACTERISTICS: TEMPERATURE AND VOLTAGE SPECIFICATIONS**

| DC CHARACTERISTICS       |         |   | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |      |      |       |   |
|--------------------------|---------|---|--|------|------|-------|---|
| Param No.                | Symbol  | Characteristic  | Min  | Typ  | Max  | Units | Conditions                                      |
| <b>Operating Voltage</b> |         |   |  |      |      |       |   |
| DC10                     | VDD     | <b>Supply Voltage</b>   | 2.0  | —    | 3.6  | V     | BOR disabled                                    |
|                          |         |   | VBOR   | —    | 3.6  | V     | BOR enabled                                     |
| DC12                     | VDR     | <b>RAM Data Retention Voltage<sup>(1)</sup></b>                                     | Greater of:<br>VPORREL or<br>VBOR  | —    | —    | V     | VBOR used only if BOR is enabled (BOREN = 1)    |
| DC16                     | VPOR    | <b>VDD Start Voltage</b><br>to Ensure Internal<br>Power-on Reset Signal             | VSS  | —    | —    | V     | (Note 2)  |
| DC16A                    | VPORREL | <b>VDD Power-on Reset<br/>Release Voltage</b>                                       | 1.80   | 1.88 | 1.95 | V     | (Note 3)  |
| DC17A                    | SRVDD   | <b>Recommended<br/>VDD Rise Rate</b><br>to Ensure Internal<br>Power-on Reset Signal | 0.05   | —    | —    | V/ms  | 0-3.3V in 66 ms,<br>0-2.5V in 50 ms<br>(Note 2) |
| DC17B                    | VBOR    | <b>Brown-out Reset<br/>Voltage</b> on VDD Transition,<br>High-to-Low                | 2.0  | 2.1  | 2.2  | V     | (Note 3)  |

**Note 1:** This is the limit to which VDD may be lowered and the RAM contents will always be retained.

**2:** If the VPOR or SRVDD parameters are not met, or the application experiences slow power-down VDD ramp rates, it is recommended to enable and use BOR.

**3:** On a rising VDD power-up sequence, application firmware execution begins at the higher of the VPORREL or VBOR level (when BOREN = 1).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-4: DC CHARACTERISTICS: OPERATING CURRENT (IDD)**

| DC CHARACTERISTICS                           |                        |      | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V (unless otherwise stated)   |   |      |                                    |
|--|------------------------|------|---|---|------|------------------------------------|
|  |                        |      | Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |   |      |                                    |
| Parameter No.                                | Typical <sup>(1)</sup> | Max  | Units   | Operating Temperature                           | VDD  | Conditions                         |
| <b>Operating Current (IDD)<sup>(2)</sup></b> |                        |      |   |   |      |                                    |
| DC19   | 0.20                   | 0.28 | mA  | $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+125^{\circ}\text{C}$ | 2.0V | 0.5 MIPS,<br>FOSC = 1 MHz          |
| DC20A  | 0.21                   | 0.28 | mA  | $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+125^{\circ}\text{C}$ | 3.3V |                                    |
| DC20   | 0.38                   | 0.52 | mA  | $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+125^{\circ}\text{C}$ | 2.0V | 1 MIPS,<br>FOSC = 2 MHz            |
|  | 0.39                   | 0.52 | mA  | $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+125^{\circ}\text{C}$ | 3.3V |                                    |
| DC23   | 1.5                    | 2.0  | mA  | $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+125^{\circ}\text{C}$ | 2.0V | 4 MIPS,<br>FOSC = 8 MHz            |
|  | 1.5                    | 2.0  | mA  | $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+125^{\circ}\text{C}$ | 3.3V |                                    |
| DC24   | 5.6                    | 7.6  | mA  | $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+125^{\circ}\text{C}$ | 2.0V | 16 MIPS,<br>FOSC = 32 MHz          |
|  | 5.7                    | 7.6  | mA  | $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+125^{\circ}\text{C}$ | 3.3V |                                    |
| DC31   | 23                     | 78   | $\mu\text{A}$   | $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$  | 2.0V | LPRC (15.5 KIPS),<br>FOSC = 31 kHz |
|  | —                      | 98   | $\mu\text{A}$   | $+125^{\circ}\text{C}$                          | 2.0V |                                    |
|  | 25                     | 80   | $\mu\text{A}$   | $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$  | 3.3V |                                    |
|  | —                      | 100  | $\mu\text{A}$   | $+125^{\circ}\text{C}$                          | 3.3V |                                    |

**Note 1:** Data in the “Typical” column is at 3.3V,  $+25^{\circ}\text{C}$  unless otherwise stated. Typical parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- 2:** The test conditions for all IDD measurements are as follows: OSC1 driven with external square wave from rail-to-rail. All I/O pins are configured as outputs and driven to VSS. MCLR = VDD; WDT and FSCM are disabled. CPU, program memory and data memory are operational. No peripheral modules are operating; however, every peripheral is being clocked (PMDx bits are all zeroed).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-5: DC CHARACTERISTICS: IDLE CURRENT (I<sub>IDLE</sub>)**

| DC CHARACTERISTICS                                   |                        |      | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ T <sub>A</sub> ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ T <sub>A</sub> ≤ +125°C for Extended |                       |                 |                                    |
|--|------------------------|------|--|-----------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| Parameter No.  | Typical <sup>(1)</sup> | Max  | Units  | Operating Temperature | V <sub>DD</sub> | Conditions                         |
| <b>Idle Current (I<sub>IDLE</sub>)<sup>(2)</sup></b> |                        |      |  |                       |                 |                                    |
| DC40   | 116                    | 150  | μA   | -40°C to +85°C        | 2.0V            | 1 MIPS,<br>Fosc = 2 MHz            |
|  | —                      | 170  | μA   | +125°C                | 2.0V            |                                    |
|  | 123                    | 160  | μA   | -40°C to +85°C        | 3.3V            |                                    |
|  | —                      | 180  | μA   | +125°C                | 3.3V            |                                    |
| DC43   | 0.39                   | 0.5  | mA   | -40°C to +85°C        | 2.0V            | 4 MIPS,<br>Fosc = 8 MHz            |
|  | —                      | 0.52 | mA   | +125°C                | 2.0V            |                                    |
|  | 0.41                   | 0.54 | mA   | -40°C to +85°C        | 3.3V            |                                    |
|  | —                      | 0.56 | mA   | +125°C                | 3.3V            |                                    |
| DC47   | 1.5                    | 1.9  | mA   | -40°C to +85°C        | 2.0V            | 16 MIPS,<br>Fosc = 32 MHz          |
|  | —                      | 2    | mA   | +125°C                | 2.0V            |                                    |
|  | 1.6                    | 2.0  | mA   | -40°C to +85°C        | 3.3V            |                                    |
|  | —                      | 2.1  | mA   | +125°C                | 3.3V            |                                    |
| DC50   | 0.54                   | 0.61 | mA   | -40°C to +85°C        | 2.0V            | 4 MIPS (FRC),<br>Fosc = 8 MHz      |
|  | 0.54                   | 0.64 | mA   | -40°C to +85°C        | 3.3V            |                                    |
| DC51   | 17                     | 78   | μA   | -40°C to +85°C        | 2.0V            | LPRC (15.5 KIPS),<br>Fosc = 31 kHz |
|  | —                      | 128  | μA   | +125°C                | 2.0V            |                                    |
|  | 18                     | 80   | μA   | -40°C to +85°C        | 3.3V            |                                    |
|  | —                      | 130  | μA   | +125°C                | 3.3V            |                                    |

**Note 1:** Data in the “Typical” column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated. Parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**2:** Base I<sub>IDLE</sub> current is measured with the core off, the clock on and all modules turned off. Peripheral Module Disable SFR registers are zeroed. All I/O pins are configured as inputs and pulled to V<sub>SS</sub>.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-6: DC CHARACTERISTICS: POWER-DOWN CURRENT (IPD)**

| DC CHARACTERISTICS                        |                        |      | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature    -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |                       |      |  |
|---|------------------------|------|---|-----------------------|------|--|
| Parameter No.                             | Typical <sup>(1)</sup> | Max  | Units   | Operating Temperature | VDD  | Conditions                                     |
| Power-Down Current (IPD) <sup>(5,6)</sup> |                        |      |   |                       |      |  |
| DC60                                      | 2.9                    | 17   | μA  | -40°C                 | 2.0V | Sleep <sup>(2)</sup>                           |
|   | 4.3                    | 17   | μA  | +25°C                 |      |  |
|   | 8.3                    | 27.5 | μA  | +60°C                 |      |  |
|   | 20                     | 27.5 | μA  | +85°C                 |      |  |
|   | —                      | 79   | μA  | +125°C                |      |  |
|   | 2.9                    | 18   | μA  | -40°C                 | 3.3V |  |
|   | 4.3                    | 18   | μA  | +25°C                 |      |  |
|   | 8.4                    | 28   | μA  | +60°C                 |      |  |
|   | 20.5                   | 28   | μA  | +85°C                 |      |  |
|   | —                      | 80   | μA  | +125°C                |      |  |
| DC61                                      | 0.07                   | —    | μA  | -40°C                 | 2.0V | Low-Voltage Sleep <sup>(3)</sup>               |
|   | 0.38                   | —    | μA  | +25°C                 |      |  |
|   | 2.6                    | —    | μA  | +60°C                 |      |  |
|   | 9.0                    | —    | μA  | +125°C                |      |  |
|   | 0.09                   | —    | μA  | -40°C                 | 3.3V |  |
|   | 0.42                   | —    | μA  | +25°C                 |      |  |
|   | 2.75                   | —    | μA  | +60°C                 |      |  |
|   | 9.0                    | —    | μA  | +125°C                |      |  |
| DC70                                      | 0.1                    | 700  | nA  | -40°C                 | 2.0V | Deep Sleep                                     |
|   | 18                     | 700  | nA  | +25°C                 |      |  |
|   | 230                    | 1700 | nA  | +60°C                 |      |  |
|   | 1.8                    | 3.0  | μA  | +85°C                 |      |  |
|   | —                      | 24   | μA  | +125°C                |      |  |
|   | 5                      | 900  | nA  | -40°C                 | 3.3V |  |
|   | 75                     | 900  | nA  | +25°C                 |      |  |
|   | 540                    | 3450 | nA  | +60°C                 |      |  |
|   | 1.5                    | 6.0  | μA  | +85°C                 |      |  |
|   | —                      | 48   | μA  | +125°C                |      |  |
| DC74                                      | 0.4                    | 2.0  | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 0V   | RTCC with VBAT mode (LPRC/SOSC) <sup>(4)</sup> |

**Note 1:** Data in the Typical column is at 3.3V,  $+25^{\circ}\text{C}$  unless otherwise stated. Parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**2:** The retention low-voltage regulator is disabled; RETEN (RCON<12>) = 0,  $\overline{\text{LPCFG}}$  (CW1<10>) = 1.

**3:** The retention low-voltage regulator is enabled; RETEN (RCON<12>) = 1,  $\overline{\text{LPCFG}}$  (CW1<10>) = 0.

**4:** The VBAT pin is connected to the battery and RTCC is running with VDD = 0.

**5:** Base IPD is measured with all peripherals and clocks shut down. All I/Os are configured as inputs and pulled to Vss. WDT, etc., are all switched off.

**6:** These currents are measured on the device containing the most memory in this family.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-7: DC CHARACTERISTICS:  $\Delta$  CURRENT (BOR, WDT, DSBOR, DSWDT)<sup>(4)</sup>**

| DC CHARACTERISTICS  |                        |      | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature    -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |                       |      |                                  |
|---|------------------------|------|---|-----------------------|------|----------------------------------|
| Parameter No.   | Typical <sup>(1)</sup> | Max  | Units   | Operating Temperature | VDD  | Conditions                       |
| Incremental Current Brown-out Reset (ΔBOR) <sup>(2)</sup>                   |                        |      |   |                       |      |                                  |
| DC25  | 3.1                    | 5.0  | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 2.0V | ΔBOR <sup>(2)</sup>              |
|   | 4.3                    | 6.0  | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 3.3V |                                  |
| Incremental Current Watchdog Timer (ΔWDT) <sup>(2)</sup>                    |                        |      |   |                       |      |                                  |
| DC71  | 0.8                    | 1.5  | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 2.0V | ΔWDT <sup>(2)</sup>              |
|   | 0.8                    | 1.5  | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 3.3V |                                  |
| Incremental Current High/Low-Voltage Detect (ΔHLVD) <sup>(2)</sup>          |                        |      |   |                       |      |                                  |
| DC75  | 4.2                    | 15   | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 2.0V | ΔHLVD <sup>(2)</sup>             |
|   | 4.2                    | 15   | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 3.3V |                                  |
| Incremental Current Real-Time Clock and Calendar (ΔRTCC) <sup>(2)</sup>     |                        |      |   |                       |      |                                  |
| DC77  | 0.3                    | 1.0  | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 2.0V | ΔRTCC (with SOSC) <sup>(2)</sup> |
|   | 0.35                   | 1.0  | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 3.3V |                                  |
| DC77A   | 0.3                    | 1.0  | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 2.0V | ΔRTCC (with LPRC) <sup>(2)</sup> |
|   | 0.35                   | 1.0  | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 3.3V |                                  |
| Incremental Current Deep Sleep BOR (ΔDSBOR) <sup>(2)</sup>                  |                        |      |   |                       |      |                                  |
| DC81  | 0.11                   | 0.40 | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 2.0V | ΔDeep Sleep BOR <sup>(2)</sup>   |
|   | 0.12                   | 0.40 | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 3.3V |                                  |
| Incremental Current Deep Sleep Watchdog Timer Reset (ΔDSWDT) <sup>(2)</sup> |                        |      |   |                       |      |                                  |
| DC80  | 0.24                   | 0.40 | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 2.0V | ΔDeep Sleep WDT <sup>(2)</sup>   |
|   | 0.24                   | 0.40 | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 3.3V |                                  |
| VBAT A/D Monitor <sup>(3)</sup>   |                        |      |   |                       |      |                                  |
| DC91  | 1.5                    | —    | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 3.3V | VBAT = 2V                        |
|   | 4                      | —    | μA  | -40°C to +125°C       | 3.3V | VBAT = 3.3V                      |

**Note 1:** Data in the Typical column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated. Parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**2:** Incremental current while the module is enabled and running.

**3:** The A/D channel is connected to the V<sub>BAT</sub> pin internally; this is the current during A/D V<sub>BAT</sub> operation.

**4:** The  $\Delta$  current is the additional current consumed when the module is enabled. This current should be added to the base I<sub>PD</sub> current.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-8: DC CHARACTERISTICS: I/O PIN INPUT SPECIFICATIONS**

| DC CHARACTERISTICS |                 |  | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |                    |                      |       |   |
|--------------------|-----------------|--|---|--------------------|----------------------|-------|---|
| Param No.          | Symbol          | Characteristic   | Min   | Typ <sup>(1)</sup> | Max                  | Units | Conditions  |
| DI10               | V <sub>IL</sub> | <b>Input Low Voltage<sup>(3)</sup></b><br>I/O Pins with ST Buffer                            | V <sub>SS</sub>   | —                  | 0.2 V <sub>DD</sub>  | V     |   |
| DI11               |                 | I/O Pins with TTL Buffer   | V <sub>SS</sub>   | —                  | 0.15 V <sub>DD</sub> | V     |   |
| DI15               |                 | MCLR   | V <sub>SS</sub>   | —                  | 0.2 V <sub>DD</sub>  | V     |   |
| DI16               |                 | OSCI (XT mode)   | V <sub>SS</sub>   | —                  | 0.2 V <sub>DD</sub>  | V     |   |
| DI17               |                 | OSCI (HS mode)   | V <sub>SS</sub>   | —                  | 0.2 V <sub>DD</sub>  | V     |   |
| DI18               |                 | I/O Pins with I <sup>2</sup> C™ Buffer   | V <sub>SS</sub>   | —                  | 0.3 V <sub>DD</sub>  | V     |   |
| DI19               |                 | I/O Pins with SMBus Buffer   | V <sub>SS</sub>   | —                  | 0.8                  | V     | SMBus enabled   |
| DI20               | V <sub>IH</sub> | <b>Input High Voltage<sup>(3)</sup></b><br>I/O Pins with ST Buffer:<br>with Analog Functions | 0.8 V <sub>DD</sub>   | —                  | V <sub>DD</sub>      | V     |   |
|                    |                 | Digital Only   | 0.8 V <sub>DD</sub>   | —                  | 5.5                  | V     |   |
| DI21               |                 | I/O Pins with TTL Buffer:<br>with Analog Functions   | 0.25 V <sub>DD</sub> + 0.8  | —                  | V <sub>DD</sub>      | V     |   |
|                    |                 | Digital Only   | 0.25 V <sub>DD</sub> + 0.8  | —                  | 5.5                  | V     |   |
| DI25               |                 | MCLR   | 0.8 V <sub>DD</sub>   | —                  | V <sub>DD</sub>      | V     |   |
| DI26               |                 | OSCI (XT mode)   | 0.7 V <sub>DD</sub>   | —                  | V <sub>DD</sub>      | V     |   |
| DI27               |                 | OSCI (HS mode)   | 0.7 V <sub>DD</sub>   | —                  | V <sub>DD</sub>      | V     |   |
| DI28               |                 | I/O Pins with I <sup>2</sup> C Buffer:<br>with Analog Functions                              | 0.7 V <sub>DD</sub>   | —                  | V <sub>DD</sub>      | V     |   |
|                    |                 | Digital Only   | 0.7 V <sub>DD</sub>   | —                  | 5.5                  | V     |   |
| DI29               |                 | I/O Pins with SMBus Buffer:<br>with Analog Functions   | 2.1   | —                  | V <sub>DD</sub>      | V     | 2.5V ≤ V <sub>PIN</sub> ≤ V <sub>DD</sub>                                       |
|                    |                 | Digital Only   | 2.1   | —                  | 5.5                  | V     |   |
| DI30               | ICNPU           | <b>CNxx Pull-up Current</b>  | 150   | 340                | 550                  | μA    | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.3V, V <sub>PIN</sub> = V <sub>SS</sub>                      |
| DI30A              | ICNPD           | <b>CNxx Pull-Down Current</b>  | 150   | 310                | 550                  | μA    | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.3V, V <sub>PIN</sub> = V <sub>DD</sub>                      |
| DI50               | I <sub>IL</sub> | <b>Input Leakage Current<sup>(2)</sup></b><br>I/O Ports                                      | —   | —                  | ±1                   | μA    | V <sub>SS</sub> ≤ V <sub>PIN</sub> ≤ V <sub>DD</sub> ,<br>pin at high-impedance |
| DI51               |                 | Analog Input Pins  | —   | —                  | ±1                   | μA    | V <sub>SS</sub> ≤ V <sub>PIN</sub> ≤ V <sub>DD</sub> ,<br>pin at high-impedance |
| DI55               |                 | MCLR   | —   | —                  | ±1                   | μA    | V <sub>SS</sub> ≤ V <sub>PIN</sub> ≤ V <sub>DD</sub>                            |
| DI56               |                 | OSCI/CLKI  | —   | —                  | ±1                   | μA    | V <sub>SS</sub> ≤ V <sub>PIN</sub> ≤ V <sub>DD</sub> ,<br>EC, XT and HS modes   |

**Note 1:** Data in the “Typ” column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated. Parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**2:** Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

**3:** Refer to [Table 1-3](#) for I/O pin buffer types.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-9: DC CHARACTERISTICS: I/O PIN OUTPUT SPECIFICATIONS**

| DC CHARACTERISTICS   |        |   | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |                    |     |       |                           |
|----------------------|--------|---|---|--------------------|-----|-------|---------------------------|
| Param No.            | Symbol | Characteristic                          | Min   | Typ <sup>(1)</sup> | Max | Units | Conditions                |
| DO10<br><br>DO16     | VOL    | <b>Output Low Voltage</b><br>I/O Ports  | —   | —                  | 0.4 | V     | IOL = 6.6 mA, VDD = 3.6V  |
|                      |        |   | —   | —                  | 0.4 | V     | IOL = 5.0 mA, VDD = 2V    |
|                      |        | OSCO/CLKO                               | —   | —                  | 0.4 | V     | IOL = 6.6 mA, VDD = 3.6V  |
|                      |        |   | —   | —                  | 0.4 | V     | IOL = 5.0 mA, VDD = 2V    |
| DO20<br><br><br>DO26 | VOH    | <b>Output High Voltage</b><br>I/O Ports | 3.0   | —                  | —   | V     | IOH = -3.0 mA, VDD = 3.6V |
|                      |        |   | 2.4   | —                  | —   | V     | IOH = -6.0 mA, VDD = 3.6V |
|                      |        |   | 1.65  | —                  | —   | V     | IOH = -1.0 mA, VDD = 2V   |
|                      |        |   | 1.4   | —                  | —   | V     | IOH = -3.0 mA, VDD = 2V   |
|                      |        | OSCO/CLKO                               | 2.4   | —                  | —   | V     | IOH = -6.0 mA, VDD = 3.6V |
|                      |        |   | 1.4   | —                  | —   | V     | IOH = -1.0 mA, VDD = 2V   |

**Note 1:** Data in the “Typ” column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated. Parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**TABLE 33-10: DC CHARACTERISTICS: PROGRAM MEMORY**

| DC CHARACTERISTICS          |        |                                   | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |                    |     |       |   |
|-----------------------------|--------|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------|-----|-------|---|
| Param No.                   | Symbol | Characteristic                    | Min   | Typ <sup>(1)</sup> | Max | Units | Conditions                              |
| <b>Program Flash Memory</b> |        |                                   |   |                    |     |       |   |
| D130                        | EP     | Cell Endurance                    | 20000   | —                  | —   | E/W   | -40°C to +125°C                         |
| D131                        | VPR    | VDD for Read                      | VMIN  | —                  | 3.6 | V     | VMIN = Minimum Operating Voltage        |
| D132B                       |        | VDD for Self-Timed Write          | VMIN  | —                  | 3.6 | V     | VMIN = Minimum Operating Voltage        |
| D133A                       | TIW    | Self-Timed Word Write Cycle Time  | —   | 20                 | —   | μs    |   |
|                             |        | Self-Timed Row Write Cycle Time   | —   | 1.5                | —   | ms    |   |
| D133B                       | TIE    | Self-Timed Page Erase Time        | 20  | —                  | 40  | ms    |   |
| D134                        | TRETD  | Characteristic Retention          | 20  | —                  | —   | Year  | If no other specifications are violated |
| D135                        | IDDP   | Supply Current during Programming | —   | 5                  | —   | mA    |   |
| D136                        | VOTP   | OTP Programming                   | 3.1   | —                  | 3.6 | V     |   |
| D137                        | TOTP   | OTP Memory Write/Bit              | —   | 500                | —   | μs    |   |

**Note 1:** Data in the “Typ” column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-11: INTERNAL VOLTAGE REGULATOR SPECIFICATIONS**

| <b>Operating Conditions:</b><br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |        |                                      |     |     |     |               |   |
|---|--------|--------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|---------------|---|
| Param No.   | Symbol | Characteristics                      | Min | Typ | Max | Units         | Comments  |
| DVR   | TVREG  | Voltage Regulator Start-up Time      | —   | 10  | —   | $\mu\text{s}$ | VREGS = 1 with any POR or BOR                                   |
| DVR10   | VBG    | Internal Band Gap Reference          | —   | 1.2 | —   | V             |   |
| DVR11   | TBG    | Band Gap Reference Start-up Time     | —   | 1   | —   | ms            |   |
| DVR20   | VRGOUT | Regulator Output Voltage             | —   | 1.8 | —   | V             | $V_{DD} > 1.9\text{V}$  |
| DVR21   | CEFC   | External Filter Capacitor Value      | 4.7 | 10  | —   | $\mu\text{F}$ | Series resistance $< 3\Omega$ recommended; $< 5\Omega$ required |
| DVR30   | VLVR   | Low-Voltage Regulator Output Voltage | —   | 1.2 | —   | V             | RETEN = 1, LPCFG = 0  |

**TABLE 33-12: HIGH/LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT CHARACTERISTICS**

| Operating Conditions: |        |   |                                  |      |       |      |       |            |
|-----------------------|--------|---|----------------------------------|------|-------|------|-------|------------|
| Operating temperature |        | -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |                                  |      |       |      |       |            |
| Param No.             | Symbol | Characteristic  |                                  | Min  | Typ   | Max  | Units | Conditions |
| DC18                  | VHLVD  | HLVD Voltage on VDD Transition  | HLVDL<3:0> = 0100 <sup>(1)</sup> | 3.45 | 3.59  | 3.74 | V     |            |
|                       |        |   | HLVDL<3:0> = 0101                | 3.33 | 3.45  | 3.58 | V     |            |
|                       |        |   | HLVDL<3:0> = 0110                | 3.0  | 3.125 | 3.25 | V     |            |
|                       |        |   | HLVDL<3:0> = 0111                | 2.8  | 2.92  | 3.04 | V     |            |
|                       |        |   | HLVDL<3:0> = 1000                | 2.7  | 2.81  | 2.93 | V     |            |
|                       |        |   | HLVDL<3:0> = 1001                | 2.50 | 2.6   | 2.70 | V     |            |
|                       |        |   | HLVDL<3:0> = 1010                | 2.4  | 2.52  | 2.64 | V     |            |
|                       |        |   | HLVDL<3:0> = 1011                | 2.30 | 2.4   | 2.50 | V     |            |
|                       |        |   | HLVDL<3:0> = 1100                | 2.20 | 2.29  | 2.39 | V     |            |
|                       |        |   | HLVDL<3:0> = 1101                | 2.1  | 2.19  | 2.28 | V     |            |
|                       |        |   | HLVDL<3:0> = 1110                | 2.0  | 2.08  | 2.17 | V     |            |
| DC101                 | VTHL   | HLVD Voltage on HLVDIN Pin Transition                                 | HLVDL<3:0> = 1111                | —    | 1.2   | —    | V     |            |

**Note 1:** Trip points for values of HLVD<3:0>, from '0000' to '0011', are not implemented.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-13: COMPARATOR DC SPECIFICATIONS**

| <b>Operating Conditions:</b> $2.0V < V_{DD} < 3.6V$<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}C \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}C$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}C \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}C$ for Extended |                    |   |     |     |                 |       |                    |
|--|--------------------|---|-----|-----|-----------------|-------|--------------------|
| Param No.  | Symbol             | Characteristic                                    | Min | Typ | Max             | Units | Comments           |
| D300   | V <sub>IOFF</sub>  | Input Offset Voltage                              | —   | 20  | ±40             | mV    | (Note 1)           |
| D301   | V <sub>ICM</sub>   | Input Common-Mode Voltage                         | 0   | —   | V <sub>DD</sub> | V     | (Note 1)           |
| D302   | CMRR               | Common-Mode Rejection Ratio                       | 55  | —   | —               | dB    | (Note 1)           |
| D306   | I <sub>QCOMP</sub> | A <sub>VDD</sub> Quiescent Current per Comparator | —   | 27  | —               | µs    | Comparator enabled |
| D307   | T <sub>RESP</sub>  | Response Time                                     | —   | 300 | —               | ns    | (Note 2)           |
| D308   | T <sub>MC2OV</sub> | Comparator Mode Change to Valid Output            | —   | —   | 10              | µs    |                    |

**Note 1:** Parameters are characterized but not tested.

**Note 2:** Measured with one input at V<sub>DD</sub>/2 and the other transitioning from V<sub>SS</sub> to V<sub>DD</sub>, 40 mV step, 15 mV overdrive.

**TABLE 33-14: COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE DC SPECIFICATIONS**

| <b>Operating Conditions:</b> $2.0V < V_{DD} < 3.6V$<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}C \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}C$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}C \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}C$ for Extended |                   |                         |      |     |     |       |          |
|--|-------------------|-------------------------|------|-----|-----|-------|----------|
| Param No.  | Symbol            | Characteristic          | Min  | Typ | Max | Units | Comments |
| VR310  | T <sub>SET</sub>  | Settling Time           | —    | —   | 10  | µs    | (Note 1) |
| VRD311   | C <sub>VRAA</sub> | Absolute Accuracy       | -100 | —   | 100 | mV    |          |
| VRD312   | C <sub>VRUR</sub> | Unit Resistor Value (R) | —    | 4.5 | —   | kΩ    |          |

**Note 1:** Measures the interval while CVR<4:0> transitions from '11111' to '00000'.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-15: VBAT OPERATING VOLTAGE SPECIFICATIONS**

| Param No. | Symbol | Characteristic   | Min | Typ | Max | Units | Comments   |
|-----------|--------|--|-----|-----|-----|-------|--|
| DVB01     | VBT    | Operating Voltage  | 1.6 | —   | 3.6 | V     | Battery connected to the VBAT pin                          |
| DVB10     | VBTADC | VBAT A/D Monitoring Voltage Specification <sup>(1)</sup> | 1.6 | —   | 3.6 | V     | A/D monitoring the VBAT pin using the internal A/D channel |

**Note 1:** Measuring the A/D value using the A/D is represented by the equation:  
 Measured Voltage = ((VBAT/2)/VDD) \* 4096) for 12-bit A/D

**TABLE 33-16: CTMU CURRENT SOURCE SPECIFICATIONS**

| DC CHARACTERISTICS |       |   | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |                    |                    |       |                                   |                     |
|--------------------|-------|---|--|--------------------|--------------------|-------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| Param No.          | Sym   | Characteristic                                      | Min  | Typ <sup>(1)</sup> | Max <sup>(3)</sup> | Units | Comments                          | Conditions          |
| DCT10              | Iout1 | CTMU Current Source, Base Range                     | 208  | 550                | 797                | nA    | CTMUICON<9:8> = 00                | 2.5V < VDD < VDDMAX |
| DCT11              | Iout2 | CTMU Current Source, 10x Range                      | 3.32   | 5.5                | 7.67               | μA    | CTMUICON<9:8> = 01                |                     |
| DCT12              | Iout3 | CTMU Current Source, 100x Range                     | 32.22  | 55                 | 77.78              | μA    | CTMUICON<9:8> = 10                |                     |
| DCT13              | Iout4 | CTMU Current Source, 1000x Range                    | 322  | 550                | 777                | μA    | CTMUICON<9:8> = 11 <sup>(2)</sup> |                     |
| DCT21              | VΔ    | Temperature Diode Voltage Change per Degree Celsius | —  | -3                 | —                  | mV/°C |                                   |                     |

**Note 1:** Nominal value at the center point of the current trim range (CTMUICON<15:10> = 000000).  
**Note 2:** Do not use this current range with a temperature sensing diode.  
**Note 3:** Maximum values are tested for +85°C.

**TABLE 33-17: USB ON-THE-GO MODULE SPECIFICATIONS**

| DC CHARACTERISTICS       |         |                    | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial |     |     |       |  |
|--------------------------|---------|--------------------|--|-----|-----|-------|--|
| Param No.                | Symbol  | Characteristic     | Min  | Typ | Max | Units | Comments   |
| <b>Operating Voltage</b> |         |                    |  |     |     |       |  |
| DUS01                    | VUSB3V3 | USB Supply Voltage | Greater of:<br>3.0 or<br>(VDD – 0.3V)  | 3.3 | 3.6 | V     | USB module enabled   |
|                          |         |                    | (VDD – 0.3V) <sup>(1)</sup>  | —   | 3.6 | V     | USB disabled, D+/D- are unused and externally pulled low or left in a high-impedance state |
|                          |         |                    | (VDD – 0.3V)   | VDD | 3.6 | V     | USB disabled, D+/D- are used as general purpose I/Os                                       |

**Note 1:** The VUSB3V3 pin may also be left in a high-impedance state under these conditions. However, if the voltage floats below (VDD – 0.3V), this may result in higher I<sub>PD</sub> currents than specified.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

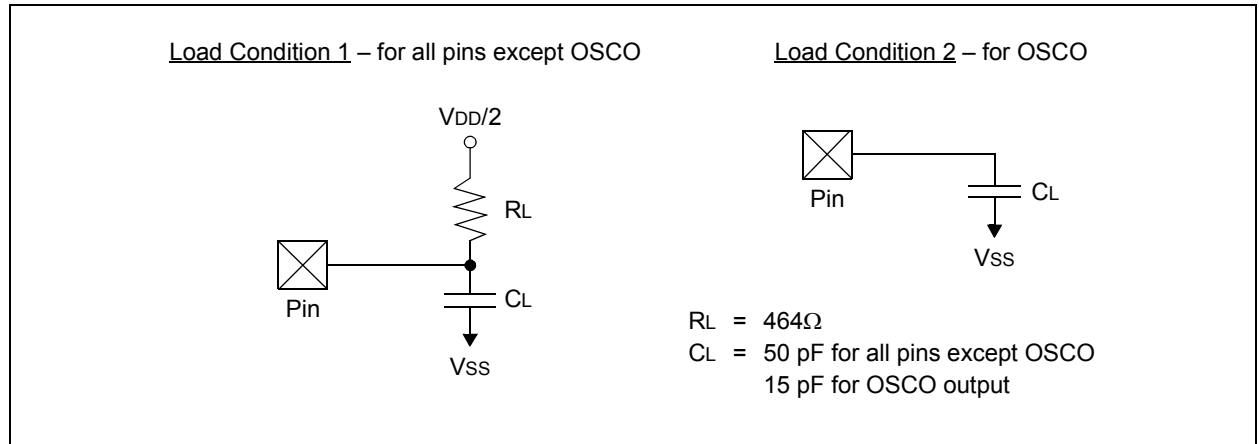
## 33.2 AC Characteristics and Timing Parameters

The information contained in this section defines the PIC24FJ128GB204 family AC characteristics and timing parameters.

**TABLE 33-18: TEMPERATURE AND VOLTAGE SPECIFICATIONS – AC**

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| AC CHARACTERISTICS | <b>Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V (unless otherwise stated)</b>                         |
|                    | Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial         |
|                    | $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended                                |
|                    | Operating voltage $V_{DD}$ range as described in <a href="#">Section 33.1 “DC Characteristics”</a> . |

**FIGURE 33-2: LOAD CONDITIONS FOR DEVICE TIMING SPECIFICATIONS**



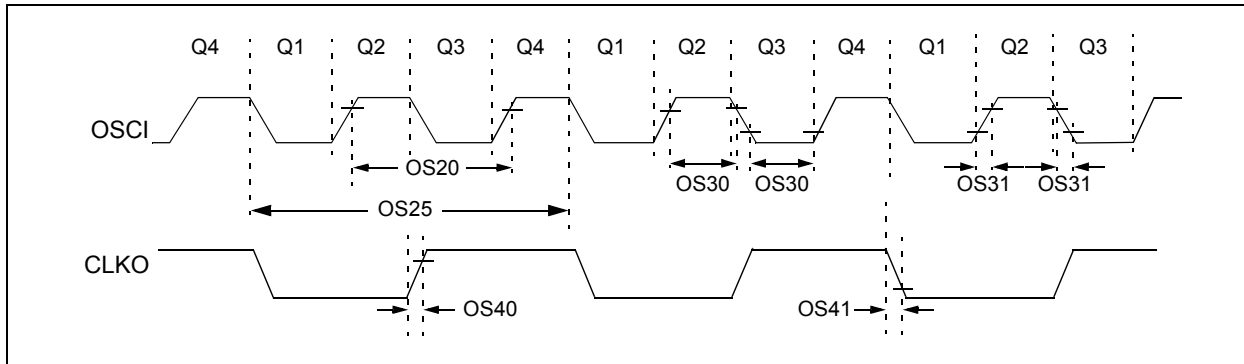
**TABLE 33-19: CAPACITIVE LOADING REQUIREMENTS ON OUTPUT PINS**

| Param No. | Symbol | Characteristic        | Min | Typ <sup>(1)</sup> | Max | Units | Conditions   |
|-----------|--------|-----------------------|-----|--------------------|-----|-------|--|
| DO50      | Cosco  | OSCO/CLKO Pin         | —   | —                  | 15  | pF    | In XT and HS modes when external clock is used to drive OSC1 |
| DO56      | Cio    | All I/O Pins and OSCO | —   | —                  | 50  | pF    | EC mode  |
| DO58      | CB     | SCLx, SDAx            | —   | —                  | 400 | pF    | In I <sup>2</sup> C™ mode                                    |

**Note 1:** Data in the “Typ” column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated. Parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-3: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING**



**TABLE 33-20: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |            |  | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |                       |                           |                                 |  |
|--------------------|------------|--|---|-----------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| Param No.          | Symbol     | Characteristic   | Min   | Typ <sup>(1)</sup>    | Max                       | Units                           | Conditions                               |
| OS10               | Fosc       | External CLKI Frequency<br>(External clocks allowed only in EC mode) | DC<br>4   | —<br>—                | 32<br>48                  | MHz<br>MHz                      | EC<br>ECPLL ( <b>Note 2</b> )            |
|                    |            | Oscillator Frequency   | 3.5<br>4<br>10<br>12<br>31  | —<br>—<br>—<br>—<br>— | 10<br>8<br>32<br>32<br>33 | MHz<br>MHz<br>MHz<br>MHz<br>kHz | XT<br>XTPLL<br>HS<br>HSPLL<br>SOSC       |
|                    |            | Tosc = 1/Fosc  | —   | —                     | —                         | —                               | See Parameter <b>OS10</b> for Fosc value |
|                    |            | Instruction Cycle Time <sup>(3)</sup>                                | 62.5  | —                     | DC                        | ns                              |  |
|                    |            | External Clock in (OSCI) High or Low Time                            | 0.45 x Tosc   | —                     | —                         | ns                              | EC                                       |
| OS31               | TosR, TosF | External Clock in (OSCI) Rise or Fall Time                           | —   | —                     | 20                        | ns                              | EC                                       |
| OS40               | TckR       | CLKO Rise Time <sup>(4)</sup>  | —   | 6                     | 10                        | ns                              |  |
| OS41               | TckF       | CLKO Fall Time <sup>(4)</sup>  | —   | 6                     | 10                        | ns                              |  |

**Note 1:** Data in the “Typ” column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated. Parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**2:** Represents input to the system clock prescaler. PLL dividers and postscalers must still be configured so that the system clock frequency does not exceed the maximum frequency shown in [Figure 33-1](#).

**3:** Instruction cycle period (Tcy) equals two times the input oscillator time base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type, under standard operating conditions, with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at “Min.” values with an external clock applied to the OSCI/CLKI pin. When an external clock input is used, the “Max.” cycle time limit is “DC” (no clock) for all devices.

**4:** Measurements are taken in EC mode. The CLKO signal is measured on the OSCO pin. CLKO is low for the Q1-Q2 period (1/2 Tcy) and high for the Q3-Q4 period (1/2 Tcy).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-21: PLL CLOCK TIMING SPECIFICATIONS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |           |                                   | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |                    |      |               |            |
|--------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|--|--------------------|------|---------------|------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol    | Characteristic                    | Min  | Typ <sup>(1)</sup> | Max  | Units         | Conditions |
| OS50               | FPLLI     | USB PLL Input Frequency Range     | 2  | 4                  | 4    | MHz           | ECPLL mode |
|                    |           |                                   | 2  | 4                  | 4    | MHz           | HSPLL mode |
|                    |           |                                   | 2  | 4                  | 4    | MHz           | XTPLL mode |
| OS52               | TLOCK     | USB PLL Start-up Time (Lock Time) | —  | —                  | 128  | $\mu\text{s}$ |            |
| OS53               | DCLK      | CLKO Stability (Jitter)           | -0.25  | —                  | 0.25 | %             |            |
| OS54               | F4xPLL    | 4x PLL Input Frequency Range      | 2  | —                  | 8    | MHz           | 4xPLL      |
| OS55               | F6xPLL    | 6x PLL Input Frequency Range      | 2  | —                  | 5    | MHz           | 6xPLL      |
| OS56               | F8xPLL    | 8x PLL Input Frequency Range      | 2  | —                  | 4    | MHz           | 8xPLL      |
| OS57               | TxPLLLOCK | PLL Start-up Time (Lock Time)     | —  | —                  | 24   | $\mu\text{s}$ |            |
| OS58               | DxPLLCLK  | PLL CLKO Stability (Jitter)       | -2   | —                  | 2    | %             |            |

**Note 1:** These parameters are characterized but not tested in manufacturing.

**TABLE 33-22: INTERNAL RC ACCURACY**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |                         | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature    -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |       |       |       |  |
|--------------------|-------------------------|---|-------|-------|-------|--|
| Param No.          | Characteristic          | Min   | Typ   | Max   | Units | Conditions   |
| F20                | FRC Accuracy @ 8 MHz    | -1  | ±0.15 | 1     | %     | 2.0V ≤ VDD ≤ 3.6V, 0°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C (Note 1)                                 |
|                    |                         | 1.5   | —     | 1.5   | %     | 2.0V ≤ VDD ≤ 3.6V, -40°C ≤ TA ≤ 0°C  |
|                    |                         | -0.20   | ±0.05 | -0.20 | %     | 2.0V ≤ VDD ≤ 3.6V, -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C, self-tune enabled and locked (Note 2) |
|                    |                         | —   | 3     | 5     | %     | 2.0V ≤ VDD ≤ 3.6V, TA = +125°C   |
| F21                | LPRC @ 31 kHz           | -20   | —     | 20    | %     | VCAP Output Voltage = 1.8V   |
| F22                | OSCTUN Step-Size        | —   | 0.05  | —     | %/bit |  |
| F23                | FRC Self-Tune Lock Time | —   | <5    | 8     | ms    | (Note 3)   |

**Note 1:** To achieve this accuracy, physical stress applied to the microcontroller package (ex., by flexing the PCB) must be kept to a minimum.

**2:** Accuracy is measured with respect to the reference source.

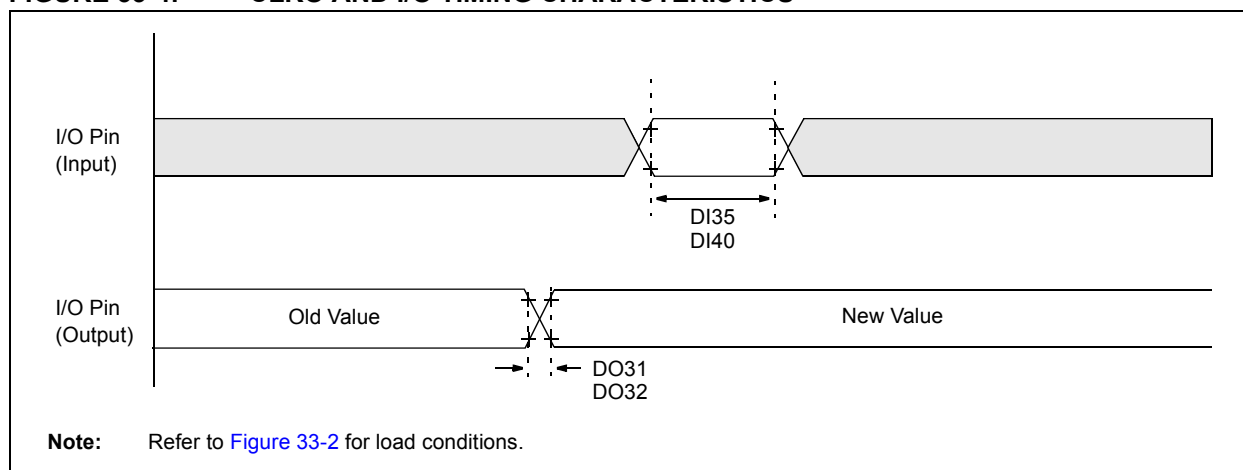
**3:** Time from reference clock stable, and in range, to FRC tuned within range specified by F20 (with self-tune).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-23: RC OSCILLATOR START-UP TIME**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |        |                                       | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |     |     |               |            |
|--------------------|--------|---------------------------------------|---|-----|-----|---------------|------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol | Characteristic                        | Min   | Typ | Max | Units         | Conditions |
| FR0                | TFRC   | FRC Oscillator Start-up Time          | —   | 15  | —   | $\mu\text{s}$ |            |
| FR1                | TLPRC  | Low-Power RC Oscillator Start-up Time | —   | 50  | —   | $\mu\text{s}$ |            |

**FIGURE 33-4: CLKO AND I/O TIMING CHARACTERISTICS**



**TABLE 33-24: CLKO AND I/O TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |        |                                   | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |                    |     |       |            |
|--------------------|--------|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------|-----|-------|------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol | Characteristic                    | Min   | Typ <sup>(1)</sup> | Max | Units | Conditions |
| DO31               | TiOR   | Port Output Rise Time             | —   | 10                 | 25  | ns    |            |
| DO32               | TiOF   | Port Output Fall Time             | —   | 10                 | 25  | ns    |            |
| DI35               | TiNP   | INTx Pin High or Low Time (input) | 20  | —                  | —   | ns    |            |
| DI40               | TRBP   | CNxx High or Low Time (input)     | 2   | —                  | —   | Tcy   |            |

**Note 1:** Data in the “Typ” column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated.

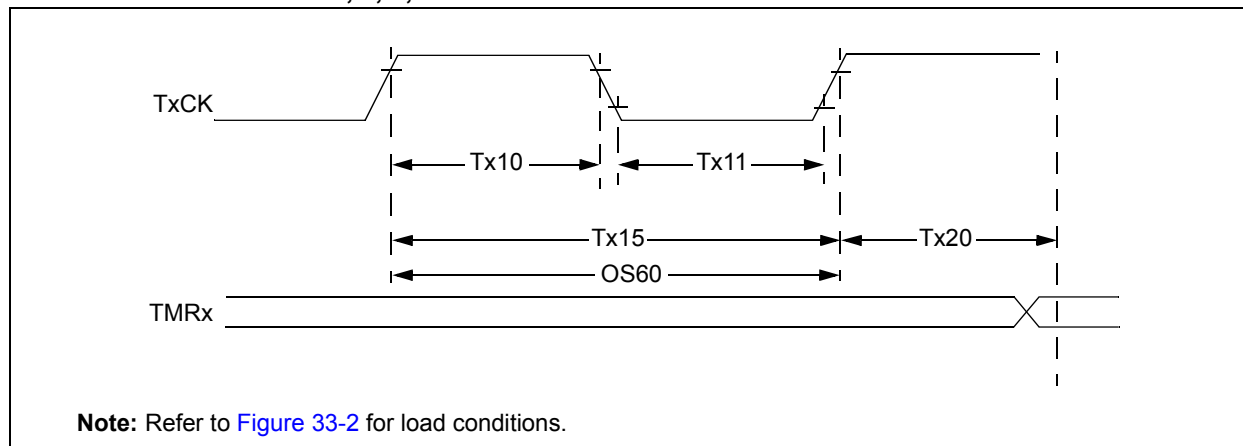
# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-25: RESET AND BROWN-OUT RESET REQUIREMENTS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |        |  | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |     |             |               |  |
|--------------------|--------|--|---|-----|-------------|---------------|--|
| Param No.          | Symbol | Characteristic   | Min   | Typ | Max         | Units         | Conditions                                       |
| SY10               | TMCL   | MCLR Pulse Width (Low)                                   | 2   | —   | —           | $\mu\text{s}$ |  |
| SY12               | TPOR   | Power-on Reset Delay                                     | —   | 2   | —           | $\mu\text{s}$ |  |
| SY13               | TIOZ   | I/O High-Impedance from MCLR Low or Watchdog Timer Reset | Lesser of:<br>(3 Tcy + 2)<br>or 700   | —   | (3 Tcy + 2) | $\mu\text{s}$ |  |
| SY25               | TBOR   | Brown-out Reset Pulse Width                              | 1   | —   | —           | $\mu\text{s}$ | $V_{DD} \leq V_{BOR}$                            |
| SY45               | TRST   | Internal State Reset Time                                | —   | 50  | —           | $\mu\text{s}$ |  |
| SY70               | TDSWU  | Deep Sleep Wake-up Time                                  | —   | 200 | —           | $\mu\text{s}$ | V <sub>CAP</sub> fully discharged before wake-up |
| SY71               | TPM    | Program Memory Wake-up Time                              | —   | 20  | —           | $\mu\text{s}$ | Sleep wake-up with VREGS = 0                     |
|                    |        |  | —   | 1   | —           | $\mu\text{s}$ | Sleep wake-up with VREGS = 1                     |
| SY72               | TLVR   | Low-Voltage Regulator Wake-up Time                       | —   | 90  | —           | $\mu\text{s}$ | Sleep wake-up with VREGS = 0                     |
|                    |        |  | —   | 70  | —           | $\mu\text{s}$ | Sleep wake-up with VREGS = 1                     |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-5: TIMER1, 2, 3, 4 AND 5 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING CHARACTERISTICS**



**TABLE 33-26: TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING REQUIREMENTS<sup>(1)</sup>**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |           |   |                             | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |     |         |       |                                    |
|--------------------|-----------|---|-----------------------------|---|-----|---------|-------|------------------------------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol    | Characteristic  |                             | Min   | Typ | Max     | Units | Conditions                         |
| TA10               | TtxH      | T1CK High Time  | Synchronous, No Prescaler   | 0.5 Tcy + 20  | —   | —       | ns    | Must also meet Parameter TA15      |
|                    |           |   | Synchronous, with Prescaler | 10  | —   | —       | ns    |                                    |
|                    |           |   | Asynchronous                | 10  | —   | —       | ns    |                                    |
| TA11               | TtxL      | T1CK Low Time   | Synchronous, No Prescaler   | 0.5 Tcy + 20  | —   | —       | ns    | Must also meet Parameter TA15      |
|                    |           |   | Synchronous, with Prescaler | 10  | —   | —       | ns    |                                    |
|                    |           |   | Asynchronous                | 10  | —   | —       | ns    |                                    |
| TA15               | TtxP      | T1CK Input Period   | Synchronous, No Prescaler   | Tcy + 40  | —   | —       | ns    | N = Prescale Value (1, 8, 64, 256) |
|                    |           |   | Synchronous, with Prescaler | Greater of:<br>20 ns or<br>(Tcy + 40)/N   | —   | —       | —     |                                    |
|                    |           |   | Asynchronous                | 20  | —   | —       | ns    |                                    |
| OS60               | Ft1       | SOSC1/T1CK Oscillator Input Frequency Range (oscillator enabled by setting bit, TCS (T1CON<1>)) |                             | DC  | —   | 50      | kHz   |                                    |
| TA20               | TCKEXTMRL | Delay from External T1CK Clock Edge to Timer Increment  |                             | 0.5 Tcy   | —   | 1.5 Tcy | —     |                                    |

**Note 1:** Timer1 is a Type A.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-27: TIMER2 AND TIMER4 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

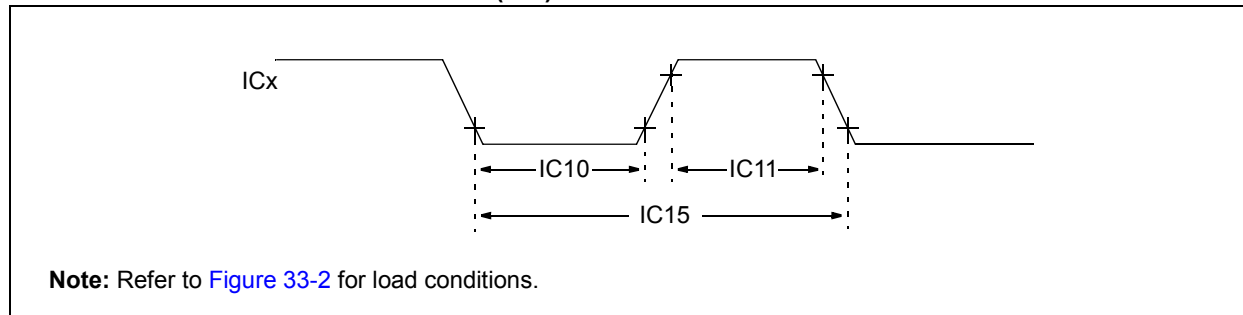
| AC CHARACTERISTICS |                       |  |                             | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |     |              |       |                                    |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--|-----------------------------|---|-----|--------------|-------|------------------------------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol                | Characteristic   |                             | Min   | Typ | Max          | Units | Conditions                         |
| TB10               | T <sub>TxH</sub>      | TxCK High Time   | Synchronous, No Prescaler   | $0.5 T_{CY} + 20$   | —   | —            | ns    | Must also meet Parameter TB15      |
|                    |                       |  | Synchronous, with Prescaler | 10  | —   | —            | ns    |                                    |
| TB11               | T <sub>TxL</sub>      | TxCK Low Time  | Synchronous, No Prescaler   | $0.5 T_{CY} + 20$   | —   | —            | ns    | Must also meet Parameter TB15      |
|                    |                       |  | Synchronous, with Prescaler | 10  | —   | —            | ns    |                                    |
| TB15               | T <sub>TxP</sub>      | TxCK Input Period                                      | Synchronous, No Prescaler   | $T_{CY} + 40$   | —   | —            | ns    | N = Prescale Value (1, 8, 64, 256) |
|                    |                       |  | Synchronous, with Prescaler | Greater of:<br>20 ns or<br>$(T_{CY} + 40)/N$  |     |              |       |                                    |
| TB20               | T <sub>CKEXTMRL</sub> | Delay from External TxCK Clock Edge to Timer Increment |                             | $0.5 T_{CY}$  | —   | $1.5 T_{CY}$ | —     |                                    |

**TABLE 33-28: TIMER3 AND TIMER5 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |                       |  |                             | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |     |              |       |                                    |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--|-----------------------------|---|-----|--------------|-------|------------------------------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol                | Characteristic   |                             | Min   | Typ | Max          | Units | Conditions                         |
| TC10               | T <sub>TxH</sub>      | TxCK High Time   | Synchronous                 | $0.5 T_{CY} + 20$   | —   | —            | ns    | Must also meet Parameter TC15      |
| TC11               | T <sub>TxL</sub>      | TxCK Low Time  | Synchronous                 | $0.5 T_{CY} + 20$   | —   | —            | ns    | Must also meet Parameter TC15      |
| TC15               | T <sub>TxP</sub>      | TxCK Input Period                                      | Synchronous, No Prescaler   | $T_{CY} + 40$   | —   | —            | ns    | N = Prescale Value (1, 8, 64, 256) |
|                    |                       |  | Synchronous, with Prescaler | Greater of:<br>20 ns or<br>$(T_{CY} + 40)/N$  |     |              |       |                                    |
| TC20               | T <sub>CKEXTMRL</sub> | Delay from External TxCK Clock Edge to Timer Increment |                             | $0.5 T_{CY}$  | —   | $1.5 T_{CY}$ | —     |                                    |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-6: INPUT CAPTURE x (ICx) TIMING CHARACTERISTICS**

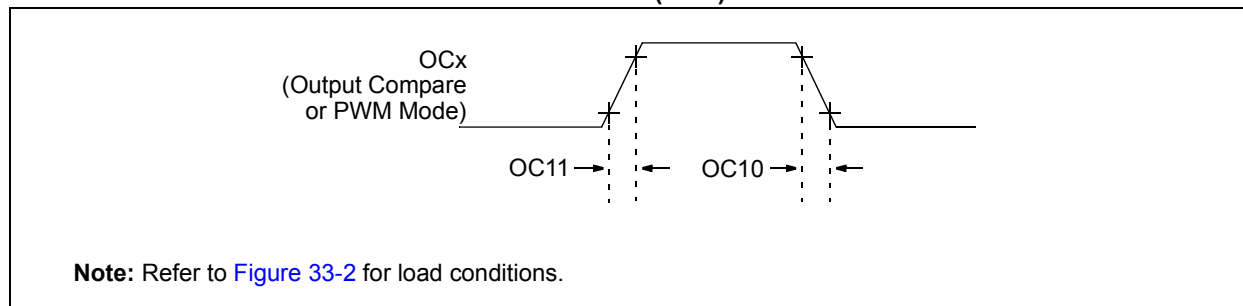


**TABLE 33-29: INPUT CAPTURE x TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |        |                               |                | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |     |       |                               |
|--------------------|--------|-------------------------------|----------------|---|-----|-------|-------------------------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol | Characteristic <sup>(1)</sup> |                | Min   | Max | Units | Conditions                    |
| IC10               | TccL   | ICx Input Low Time            | No Prescaler   | $0.5 T_{CY} + 20$   | —   | ns    |                               |
|                    |        |                               | With Prescaler | 10  | —   | ns    |                               |
| IC11               | TccH   | ICx Input High Time           | No Prescaler   | $0.5 T_{CY} + 20$   | —   | ns    |                               |
|                    |        |                               | With Prescaler | 10  | —   | ns    |                               |
| IC15               | TccP   | ICx Input Period              |                | $(T_{CY} + 40)/N$   | —   | ns    | N = Prescale Value (1, 4, 16) |

**Note 1:** These parameters are characterized but not tested in manufacturing.

**FIGURE 33-7: OUTPUT COMPARE x MODULE (OCx) TIMING CHARACTERISTICS**



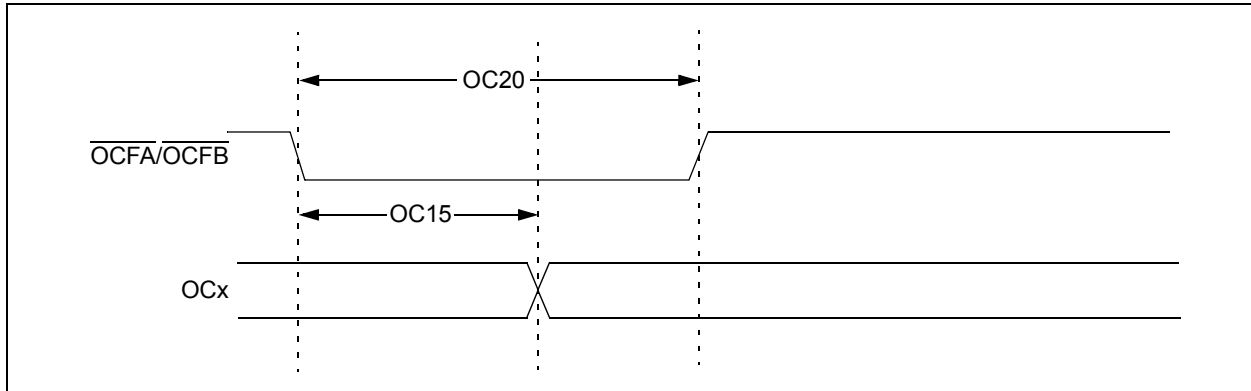
**TABLE 33-30: OUTPUT COMPARE x MODULE TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |        |                               |  | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |     |     |       |
|--------------------|--------|-------------------------------|--|---|-----|-----|-------|
| Param No.          | Symbol | Characteristic <sup>(1)</sup> |  | Min   | Typ | Max | Units |
| OC10               | TccF   | OCx Output Fall Time          |  | —   | —   | —   | ns    |
| OC11               | TccR   | OCx Output Rise Time          |  | —   | —   | —   | ns    |

**Note 1:** These parameters are characterized but not tested in manufacturing.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-8: OCx/PWM MODULE TIMING CHARACTERISTICS**



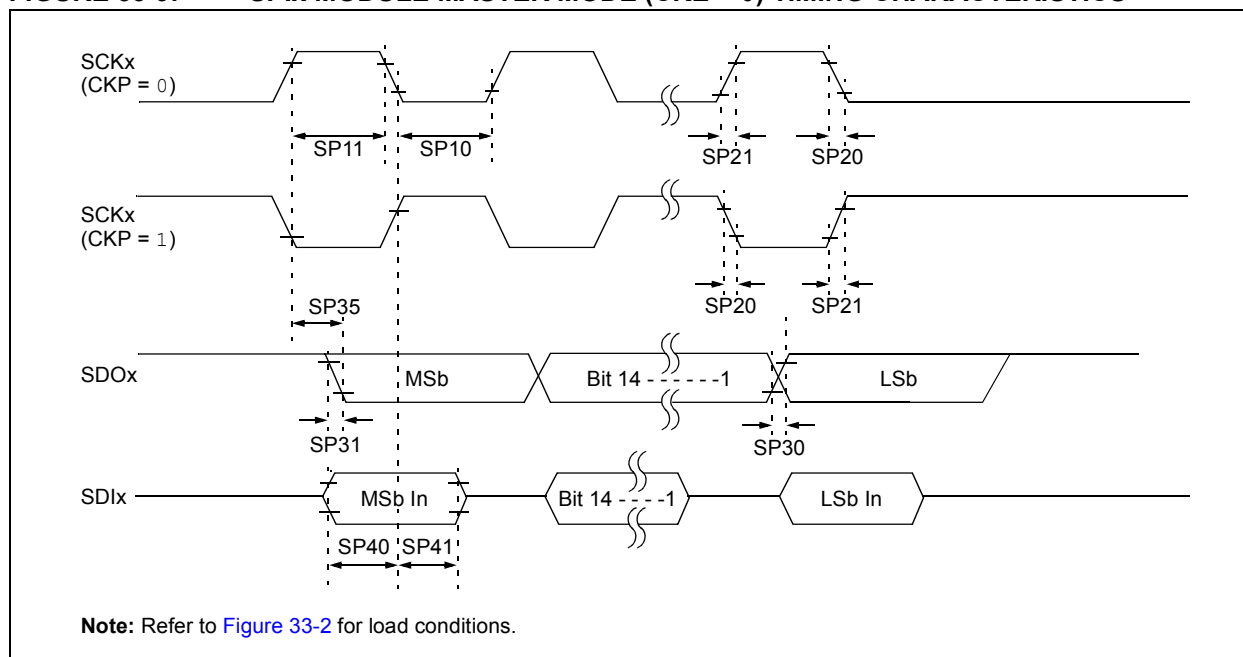
**TABLE 33-31: SIMPLE OCx/PWM MODE TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |        |                               | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |     |     |       |            |
|--------------------|--------|-------------------------------|---|-----|-----|-------|------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol | Characteristic <sup>(1)</sup> | Min   | Typ | Max | Units | Conditions |
| OC15               | TFD    | Fault Input to PWM I/O Change | —   | —   | 50  | ns    |            |
| OC20               | TFLT   | Fault Input Pulse Width       | 50  | —   | —   | ns    |            |

**Note 1:** These parameters are characterized but not tested in manufacturing.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-9: SPIx MODULE MASTER MODE (CKE = 0) TIMING CHARACTERISTICS**



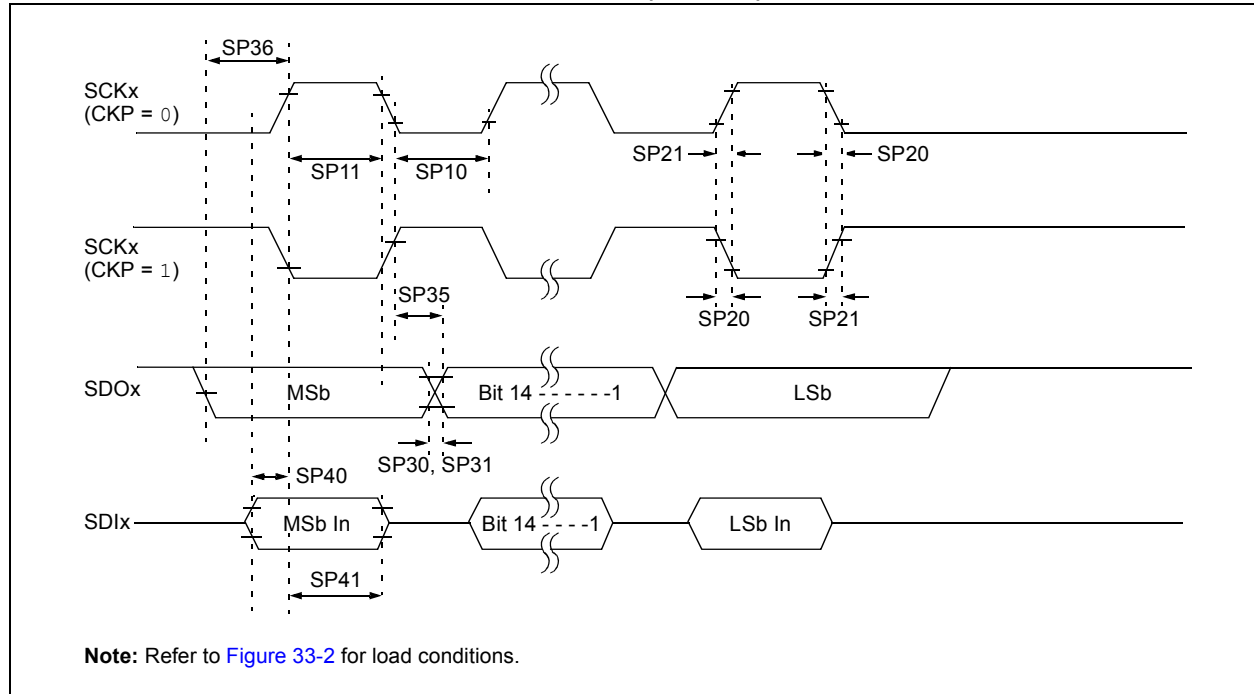
**TABLE 33-32: SPIx MASTER MODE (CKE = 0) TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |                       |  | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |                    |     |       |                             |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--|---|--------------------|-----|-------|-----------------------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol                | Characteristic <sup>(1)</sup>              | Min   | Typ <sup>(2)</sup> | Max | Units | Conditions                  |
| SP10               | TscL                  | SCKx Output Low Time                       | Tcy/2   | —                  | —   | ns    | (Note 3)                    |
| SP11               | TscH                  | SCKx Output High Time                      | Tcy/2   | —                  | —   | ns    | (Note 3)                    |
| SP20               | TscF                  | SCKx Output Fall Time                      | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter DO32 (Note 4) |
| SP21               | TscR                  | SCKx Output Rise Time                      | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter DO31 (Note 4) |
| SP30               | TdoF                  | SDOx Data Output Fall Time                 | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter DO32 (Note 4) |
| SP31               | TdoR                  | SDOx Data Output Rise Time                 | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter DO31 (Note 4) |
| SP35               | Tsch2doV,<br>TscL2doV | SDOx Data Output Valid After SCKx Edge     | —   | 6                  | 20  | ns    |                             |
| SP40               | TdiV2sch,<br>TdiV2scL | Setup Time of SDIx Data Input to SCKx Edge | 23  | —                  | —   | ns    |                             |
| SP41               | Tsch2diL,<br>TscL2diL | Hold Time of SDIx Data Input to SCKx Edge  | 30  | —                  | —   | ns    |                             |

- Note 1:** These parameters are characterized but not tested in manufacturing.
- Note 2:** Data in “Typ” column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated.
- Note 3:** The minimum clock period for SCKx is 100 ns. Therefore, the clock generated in Master mode must not violate this specification.
- Note 4:** Assumes 50 pF load on all SPIx pins.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-10: SPIx MODULE MASTER MODE (CKE = 1) TIMING CHARACTERISTICS**



**TABLE 33-33: SPIx MODULE MASTER MODE (CKE = 1) TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |                       |  | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |                    |     |       |                                    |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--|---|--------------------|-----|-------|------------------------------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol                | Characteristic <sup>(1)</sup>              | Min   | Typ <sup>(2)</sup> | Max | Units | Conditions                         |
| SP10               | TscL                  | SCKx Output Low Time <sup>(3)</sup>        | Tcy/2   | —                  | —   | ns    |                                    |
| SP11               | TscH                  | SCKx Output High Time <sup>(3)</sup>       | Tcy/2   | —                  | —   | ns    |                                    |
| SP20               | TscF                  | SCKx Output Fall Time <sup>(4)</sup>       | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter <a href="#">DO32</a> |
| SP21               | TscR                  | SCKx Output Rise Time <sup>(4)</sup>       | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter <a href="#">DO31</a> |
| SP30               | TdoF                  | SDOx Data Output Fall Time <sup>(4)</sup>  | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter <a href="#">DO32</a> |
| SP31               | TdoR                  | SDOx Data Output Rise Time <sup>(4)</sup>  | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter <a href="#">DO31</a> |
| SP35               | Tsch2doV,<br>TscL2doV | SDOx Data Output Valid After SCKx Edge     | —   | 6                  | 20  | ns    |                                    |
| SP36               | TdoV2sc,<br>TdoV2scL  | SDOx Data Output Setup to First SCKx Edge  | 30  | —                  | —   | ns    |                                    |
| SP40               | TdiV2sch,<br>TdiV2scL | Setup Time of SDIx Data Input to SCKx Edge | 23  | —                  | —   | ns    |                                    |
| SP41               | Tsch2diL,<br>TscL2diL | Hold Time of SDIx Data Input to SCKx Edge  | 30  | —                  | —   | ns    |                                    |

**Note 1:** These parameters are characterized but not tested in manufacturing.

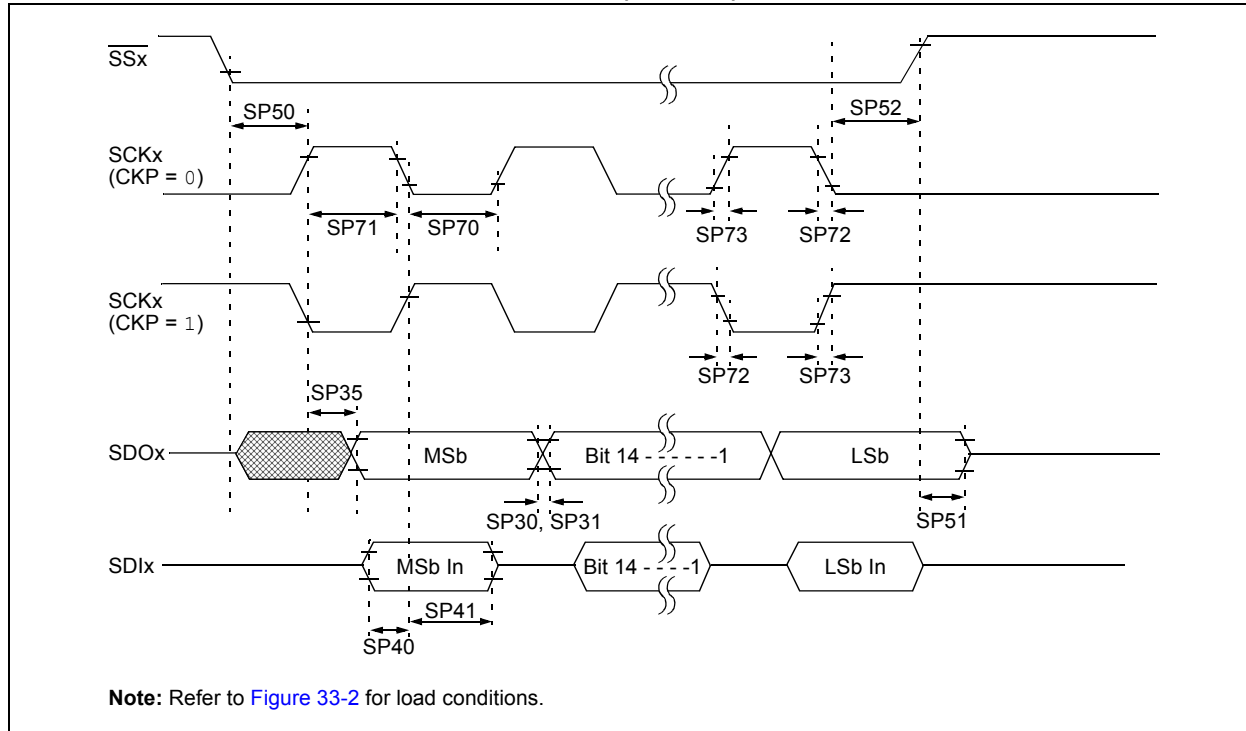
**2:** Data in “Typ” column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated.

**3:** The minimum clock period for SCKx is 100 ns. Therefore, the clock generated in Master mode must not violate this specification.

**4:** Assumes 50 pF load on all SPIx pins.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-11: SPIx MODULE SLAVE MODE (CKE = 0) TIMING CHARACTERISTICS**



**TABLE 33-34: SPIx MODULE SLAVE MODE (CKE = 0) TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |                       |   | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |                    |     |       |                    |
|--------------------|-----------------------|---|---|--------------------|-----|-------|--------------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol                | Characteristic <sup>(1)</sup>                               | Min   | Typ <sup>(2)</sup> | Max | Units | Conditions         |
| SP70               | TscL                  | SCKx Input Low Time   | 30  | —                  | —   | ns    |                    |
| SP71               | TscH                  | SCKx Input High Time  | 30  | —                  | —   | ns    |                    |
| SP72               | TscF                  | SCKx Input Fall Time <sup>(3)</sup>                         | —   | 10                 | 25  | ns    |                    |
| SP73               | TscR                  | SCKx Input Rise Time <sup>(3)</sup>                         | —   | 10                 | 25  | ns    |                    |
| SP30               | TdoF                  | SDOx Data Output Fall Time <sup>(3)</sup>                   | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter DO32 |
| SP31               | TdoR                  | SDOx Data Output Rise Time <sup>(3)</sup>                   | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter DO31 |
| SP35               | Tsch2doV,<br>TscL2doV | SDOx Data Output Valid After SCKx Edge                      | —   | —                  | 30  | ns    |                    |
| SP40               | TdiV2scH,<br>TdiV2scL | Setup Time of SDIx Data Input to SCKx Edge                  | 20  | —                  | —   | ns    |                    |
| SP41               | Tsch2diL,<br>TscL2diL | Hold Time of SDIx Data Input to SCKx Edge                   | 20  | —                  | —   | ns    |                    |
| SP50               | TssL2scH,<br>TssL2scL | SSx $\downarrow$ to SCKx $\uparrow$ or SCKx Input           | 120   | —                  | —   | ns    |                    |
| SP51               | TssH2doZ              | SSx $\uparrow$ to SDOx Output High-Impedance <sup>(3)</sup> | 10  | —                  | 50  | ns    |                    |
| SP52               | Tsch2ssH,<br>TscL2ssH | SSx After SCKx Edge   | $1.5 T_{CY} + 40$   | —                  | —   | ns    |                    |

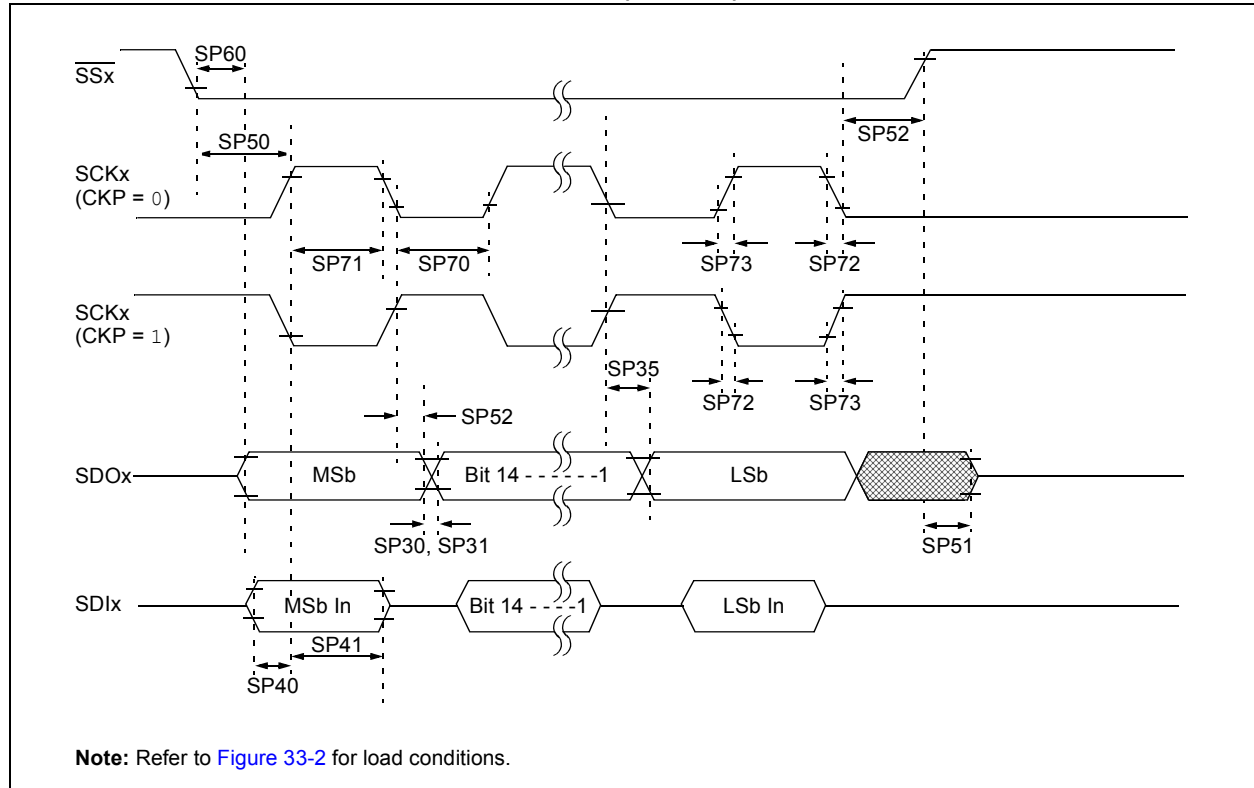
**Note 1:** These parameters are characterized but not tested in manufacturing.

**Note 2:** Data in "Typ" column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated.

**Note 3:** Assumes 50 pF load on all SPIx pins.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-12: SPIx MODULE SLAVE MODE (CKE = 1) TIMING CHARACTERISTICS**



# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-35: SPIx MODULE SLAVE MODE (CKE = 1) TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |                       |   | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |                    |     |       |                                    |
|--------------------|-----------------------|---|---|--------------------|-----|-------|------------------------------------|
| Param No.          | Symbol                | Characteristic <sup>(1)</sup>                                   | Min   | Typ <sup>(2)</sup> | Max | Units | Conditions                         |
| SP70               | TscL                  | SCKx Input Low Time   | 30  | —                  | —   | ns    |                                    |
| SP71               | TscH                  | SCKx Input High Time  | 30  | —                  | —   | ns    |                                    |
| SP72               | TscF                  | SCKx Input Fall Time <sup>(3)</sup>                             | —   | 10                 | 25  | ns    |                                    |
| SP73               | TscR                  | SCKx Input Rise Time <sup>(3)</sup>                             | —   | 10                 | 25  | ns    |                                    |
| SP30               | TdoF                  | SDOx Data Output Fall Time <sup>(3)</sup>                       | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter <a href="#">DO32</a> |
| SP31               | TdoR                  | SDOx Data Output Rise Time <sup>(3)</sup>                       | —   | —                  | —   | ns    | See Parameter <a href="#">DO31</a> |
| SP35               | Tsch2doV,<br>TscL2doV | SDOx Data Output Valid After SCKx Edge                          | —   | —                  | 30  | ns    |                                    |
| SP40               | TdiV2sch,<br>TdiV2scl | Setup Time of SDIx Data Input to SCKx Edge                      | 20  | —                  | —   | ns    |                                    |
| SP41               | Tsch2diL,<br>TscL2diL | Hold Time of SDIx Data Input to SCKx Edge                       | 20  | —                  | —   | ns    |                                    |
| SP50               | TssL2sch,<br>TssL2scl | $\overline{SSx}$ ↓ to SCKx ↓ or SCKx ↑ Input                    | 120   | —                  | —   | ns    |                                    |
| SP51               | TssH2doZ              | $\overline{SSx}$ ↑ to SDOx Output High-Impedance <sup>(4)</sup> | 10  | —                  | 50  | ns    |                                    |
| SP52               | Tsch2ssH,<br>TscL2ssH | $\overline{SSx}$ ↑ After SCKx Edge                              | 1.5 Tcy + 40  | —                  | —   | ns    |                                    |
| SP60               | TssL2doV              | SDOx Data Output Valid After $\overline{SSx}$ Edge              | —   | —                  | 50  | ns    |                                    |

**Note 1:** These parameters are characterized but not tested in manufacturing.

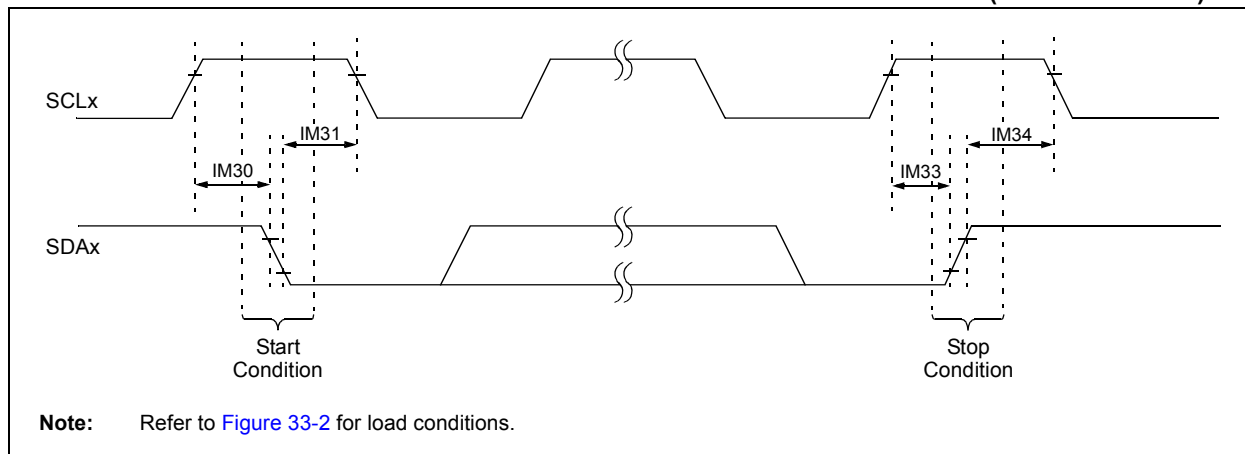
**2:** Data in “Typ” column is at 3.3V, +25°C unless otherwise stated.

**3:** The minimum clock period for SCKx is 100 ns. Therefore, the clock generated in Master mode must not violate this specification.

**4:** Assumes 50 pF load on all SPIx pins.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-13: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING CHARACTERISTICS (MASTER MODE)**



**TABLE 33-36: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS START/STOP BIT TIMING REQUIREMENTS (MASTER MODE)**

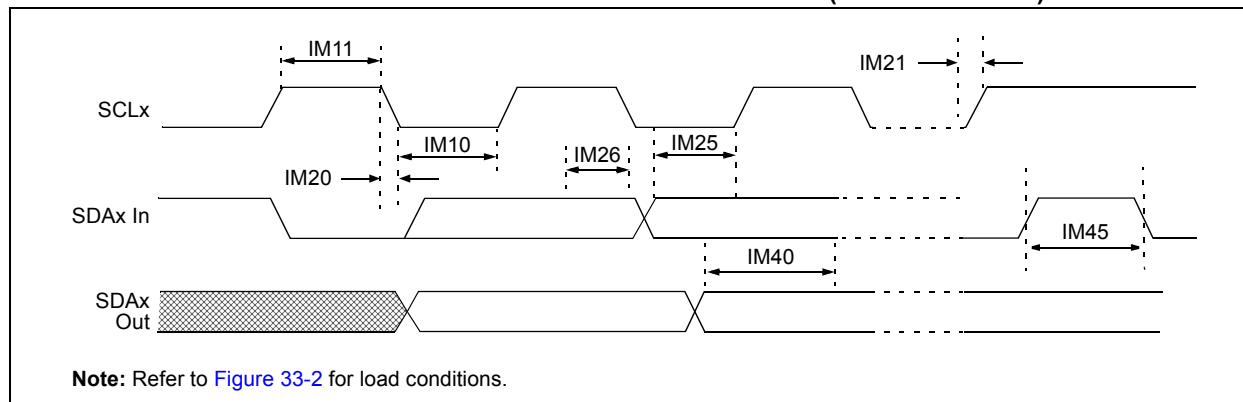
| AC CHARACTERISTICS |         |                            |                           | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |     |       |   |
|--------------------|---------|----------------------------|---------------------------|---|-----|-------|---|
| Param No.          | Symbol  | Characteristic             |                           | Min <sup>(1)</sup>  | Max | Units | Conditions  |
| IM30               | TSU:STA | Start Condition Setup Time | 100 kHz mode              | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | μs    | Only relevant for Repeated Start condition            |
|                    |         |                            | 400 kHz mode              | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | μs    |   |
| IM31               | THD:STA | Start Condition Hold Time  | 100 kHz mode              | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | μs    | After this period, the first clock pulse is generated |
|                    |         |                            | 400 kHz mode              | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | μs    |   |
| IM33               | TSU:STO | Stop Condition Setup Time  | 100 kHz mode              | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 400 kHz mode              | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | μs    |   |
| IM34               | THD:STO | Stop Condition Hold Time   | 100 kHz mode              | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 400 kHz mode              | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | TcY (BRG + 1)   | —   | ns    |   |

**Note 1:** BRG is the value of the I<sup>2</sup>C Baud Rate Generator. Refer to [Section 17.2 “Setting Baud Rate When Operating as a Bus Master”](#) for details.

**Note 2:** Maximum Pin Capacitance = 10 pF for all I<sup>2</sup>C pins (for 1 MHz mode only).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-14: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS DATA TIMING CHARACTERISTICS (MASTER MODE)**



**TABLE 33-37: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS DATA TIMING REQUIREMENTS (MASTER MODE)**

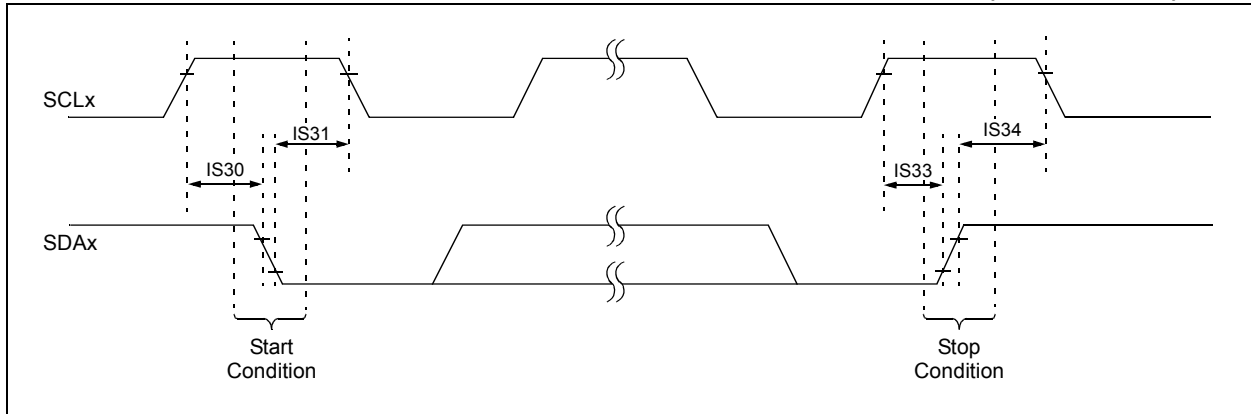
| AC CHARACTERISTICS |         |                         |                           | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |      |       |   |
|--------------------|---------|-------------------------|---------------------------|---|------|-------|---|
| Param No.          | Symbol  | Characteristic          |                           | Min <sup>(1)</sup>  | Max  | Units | Conditions  |
| IM10               | TLO:SCL | Clock Low Time          | 100 kHz mode              | Tcy (BRG + 1)   | —    | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | Tcy (BRG + 1)   | —    | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | Tcy (BRG + 1)   | —    | μs    |   |
| IM11               | THI:SCL | Clock High Time         | 100 kHz mode              | Tcy (BRG + 1)   | —    | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | Tcy (BRG + 1)   | —    | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | Tcy (BRG + 1)   | —    | μs    |   |
| IM20               | TF:SCL  | SDAx and SCLx Fall Time | 100 kHz mode              | —   | 300  | ns    | Cb is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF                       |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 20 + 0.1 Cb   | 300  | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | —   | 100  | ns    |   |
| IM21               | TR:SCL  | SDAx and SCLx Rise Time | 100 kHz mode              | —   | 1000 | ns    | Cb is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF                       |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 20 + 0.1 Cb   | 300  | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | —   | 300  | ns    |   |
| IM25               | TSU:DAT | Data Input Setup Time   | 100 kHz mode              | 250   | —    | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 100   | —    | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | 40  | —    | ns    |   |
| IM26               | THD:DAT | Data Input Hold Time    | 100 kHz mode              | 0   | —    | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 0   | 0.9  | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | 0.2   | —    | ns    |   |
| IM40               | TAA:SCL | Output Valid From Clock | 100 kHz mode              | —   | 3500 | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | —   | 1000 | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | —   | 400  | ns    |   |
| IM45               | TBF:SDA | Bus Free Time           | 100 kHz mode              | 4.7   | —    | μs    | Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 1.3   | —    | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(2)</sup> | 0.5   | —    | μs    |   |
| IM50               | Cb      | Bus Capacitive Loading  |                           | —   | 400  | pF    |   |

**Note 1:** BRG is the value of the I<sup>2</sup>C Baud Rate Generator. Refer to [Section 17.2 “Setting Baud Rate When Operating as a Bus Master”](#) for details.

**Note 2:** Maximum Pin Capacitance = 10 pF for all I<sup>2</sup>C pins (for 1 MHz mode only).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-15: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING CHARACTERISTICS (SLAVE MODE)**



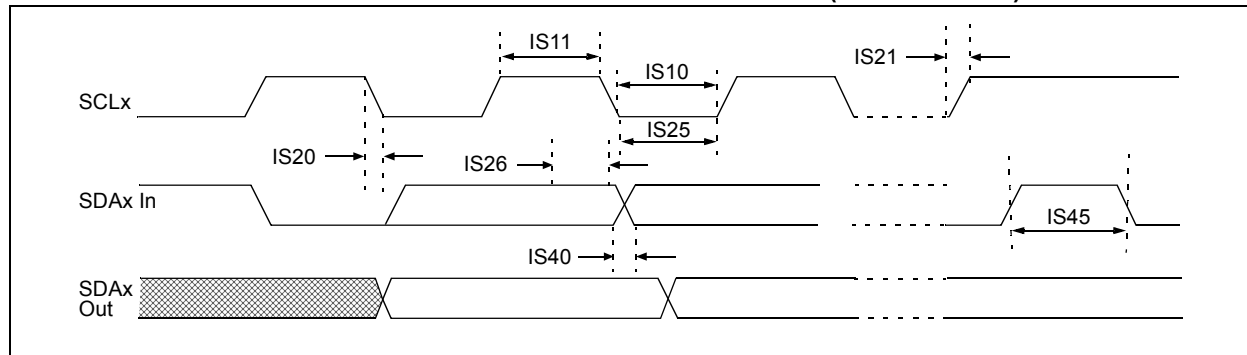
**TABLE 33-38: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING REQUIREMENTS (SLAVE MODE)**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |         |                            |                           | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated) |     |       | Conditions  |
|--------------------|---------|----------------------------|---------------------------|--|-----|-------|---|
| Param No.          | Symbol  | Characteristic             |                           | Min  | Max | Units |   |
| IS30               | TSU:STA | Start Condition Setup Time | 100 kHz mode              | 4.7  | —   | μs    | Only relevant for Repeated Start condition            |
|                    |         |                            | 400 kHz mode              | 0.6  | —   | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | 0.25   | —   | μs    |   |
| IS31               | THD:STA | Start Condition Hold Time  | 100 kHz mode              | 4.0  | —   | μs    | After this period, the first clock pulse is generated |
|                    |         |                            | 400 kHz mode              | 0.6  | —   | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | 0.25   | —   | μs    |   |
| IS33               | TSU:STO | Stop Condition Setup Time  | 100 kHz mode              | 4.7  | —   | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 400 kHz mode              | 0.6  | —   | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | 0.6  | —   | μs    |   |
| IS34               | THD:STO | Stop Condition Hold Time   | 100 kHz mode              | 4000   | —   | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 400 kHz mode              | 600  | —   | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                            | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | 250  | —   | ns    |   |

**Note 1:** Maximum Pin Capacitance = 10 pF for all I<sup>2</sup>C pins (for 1 MHz mode only).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**FIGURE 33-16: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS DATA TIMING CHARACTERISTICS (SLAVE MODE)**



**TABLE 33-39: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS DATA TIMING REQUIREMENTS (SLAVE MODE)**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS |         |                         |                           | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |      |       |   |
|--------------------|---------|-------------------------|---------------------------|---|------|-------|---|
| Param No.          | Symbol  | Characteristic          |                           | Min   | Max  | Units | Conditions  |
| IS10               | TLO:SCL | Clock Low Time          | 100 kHz mode              | 4.7   | —    | μs    | Device must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz                   |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 1.3   | —    | μs    | Device must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz                    |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | 0.5   | —    | μs    |   |
| IS11               | THI:SCL | Clock High Time         | 100 kHz mode              | 4.0   | —    | μs    | Device must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz                   |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 0.6   | —    | μs    | Device must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz                    |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | 0.5   | —    | μs    |   |
| IS20               | TF:SCL  | SDAx and SCLx Fall Time | 100 kHz mode              | —   | 300  | ns    | Cb is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF                       |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 20 + 0.1 Cb   | 300  | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | 100  | ns    |   |
| IS21               | TR:SCL  | SDAx and SCLx Rise Time | 100 kHz mode              | —   | 1000 | ns    | Cb is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF                       |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 20 + 0.1 Cb   | 300  | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | —   | 300  | ns    |   |
| IS25               | TSU:DAT | Data Input Setup Time   | 100 kHz mode              | 250   | —    | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 100   | —    | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | 100   | —    | ns    |   |
| IS26               | THD:DAT | Data Input Hold Time    | 100 kHz mode              | 0   | —    | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 0   | 0.9  | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | 0   | 0.3  | μs    |   |
| IS40               | TAA:SCL | Output Valid From Clock | 100 kHz mode              | 0   | 3500 | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 0   | 1000 | ns    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | 0   | 350  | ns    |   |
| IS45               | TBF:SDA | Bus Free Time           | 100 kHz mode              | 4.7   | —    | μs    | Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start |
|                    |         |                         | 400 kHz mode              | 1.3   | —    | μs    |   |
|                    |         |                         | 1 MHz mode <sup>(1)</sup> | 0.5   | —    | μs    |   |
| IS50               | Cb      | Bus Capacitive Loading  |                           | —   | 400  | pF    |   |

**Note 1:** Maximum Pin Capacitance = 10 pF for all I<sup>2</sup>C pins (for 1 MHz mode only).

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-40: A/D MODULE SPECIFICATIONS**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS      |           |  | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for Extended |           |  |          |   |
|-------------------------|-----------|--|---|-----------|--|----------|---|
| Param No.               | Symbol    | Characteristic                                 | Min.  | Typ       | Max.                                   | Units    | Conditions  |
| <b>Device Supply</b>    |           |  |   |           |  |          |   |
| AD01                    | AVDD      | Module VDD Supply                              | Greater of:<br>$V_{DD} - 0.3$<br>or 2.2   | —         | Lesser of:<br>$V_{DD} + 0.3$<br>or 3.6 | V        |   |
| AD02                    | AVSS      | Module Vss Supply                              | $V_{SS} - 0.3$  | —         | $V_{SS} + 0.3$                         | V        |   |
| <b>Reference Inputs</b> |           |  |   |           |  |          |   |
| AD05                    | VREFH     | Reference Voltage High                         | $AV_{SS} + 1.7$   | —         | AVDD                                   | V        |   |
| AD06                    | VREFL     | Reference Voltage Low                          | AVSS  | —         | $AV_{DD} - 1.7$                        | V        |   |
| AD07                    | VREF      | Absolute Reference Voltage                     | $AV_{SS} - 0.3$   | —         | $AV_{DD} + 0.3$                        | V        |   |
| <b>Analog Input</b>     |           |  |   |           |  |          |   |
| AD10                    | VINH-VINL | Full-Scale Input Span                          | VREFL   | —         | VREFH                                  | V        | (Note 2)  |
| AD11                    | VIN       | Absolute Input Voltage                         | $AV_{SS} - 0.3$   | —         | $AV_{DD} + 0.3$                        | V        |   |
| AD12                    | VINL      | Absolute VINL Input Voltage                    | $AV_{SS} - 0.3$   | —         | $AV_{DD}/3$                            | V        |   |
| AD13                    |           | Leakage Current                                | —   | $\pm 1.0$ | $\pm 610$                              | nA       | $V_{INL} = AV_{SS} = V_{REFL} = 0V$ ,<br>$AV_{DD} = V_{REFH} = 3V$ ,<br>Source Impedance = 2.5 k $\Omega$ |
| AD17                    | RIN       | Recommended Impedance of Analog Voltage Source | —   | —         | 2.5K                                   | $\Omega$ | 10-bit  |
| <b>A/D Accuracy</b>     |           |  |   |           |  |          |   |
| AD20B                   | Nr        | Resolution                                     | —   | 12        | —                                      | bits     |   |
| AD21B                   | INL       | Integral Nonlinearity                          | —   | $\pm 1$   | $< \pm 2$                              | LSb      | $V_{INL} = AV_{SS} = V_{REFL} = 0V$ ,<br>$AV_{DD} = V_{REFH} = 3V$  |
| AD22B                   | DNL       | Differential Nonlinearity                      | —   | —         | $< \pm 1$                              | LSb      | $V_{INL} = AV_{SS} = V_{REFL} = 0V$ ,<br>$AV_{DD} = V_{REFH} = 3V$  |
| AD23B                   | GERR      | Gain Error                                     | —   | $\pm 1$   | $\pm 3$                                | LSb      | $V_{INL} = AV_{SS} = V_{REFL} = 0V$ ,<br>$AV_{DD} = V_{REFH} = 3V$  |
| AD24B                   | EOFF      | Offset Error                                   | —   | $\pm 1$   | $\pm 2$                                | LSb      | $V_{INL} = AV_{SS} = V_{REFL} = 0V$ ,<br>$AV_{DD} = V_{REFH} = 3V$  |
| AD25B                   |           | Monotonicity <sup>(1)</sup>                    | —   | —         | —                                      | —        | Guaranteed  |

**Note 1:** The A/D conversion result never decreases with an increase in the input voltage and has no missing codes.

**2:** Measurements are taken with the external VREF+ and VREF- used as the A/D voltage reference.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

**TABLE 33-41: A/D CONVERSION TIMING REQUIREMENTS<sup>(1)</sup>**

| AC CHARACTERISTICS      |        |   | Standard Operating Conditions: 2.0V to 3.6V<br>(unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for Industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for Extended |     |      |       |                                       |
|-------------------------|--------|---|---|-----|------|-------|---------------------------------------|
| Param No.               | Symbol | Characteristic                                    | Min.  | Typ | Max. | Units | Conditions                            |
| <b>Clock Parameters</b> |        |   |   |     |      |       |                                       |
| AD50                    | TAD    | A/D Clock Period                                  | 75  | —   | —    | ns    | Tcy = 75 ns, AD1CON3 in default state |
| AD51                    | tRC    | A/D Internal RC Oscillator Period                 | —   | 250 | —    | ns    |                                       |
| <b>Conversion Rate</b>  |        |   |   |     |      |       |                                       |
| AD55                    | tCONV  | Conversion Time                                   | —   | 14  | —    | TAD   |                                       |
| AD56                    | FCNV   | Throughput Rate                                   | —   | —   | 200  | ksps  | AVDD > 2.7V                           |
| AD57                    | tSAMP  | Sample Time                                       | —   | 1   | —    | TAD   |                                       |
| <b>Clock Parameters</b> |        |   |   |     |      |       |                                       |
| AD61                    | tPSS   | Sample Start Delay from Setting Sample bit (SAMP) | 2   | —   | 3    | TAD   |                                       |

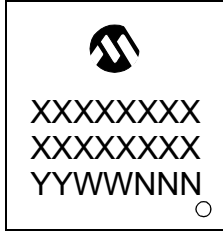
**Note 1:** Because the sample caps will eventually lose charge, clock rates below 10 kHz can affect linearity performance, especially at elevated temperatures.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 34.0 PACKAGING INFORMATION

### 34.1 Package Marking Information

28-Lead QFN-S



Example



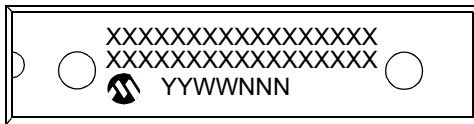
28-Lead SOIC (.300")



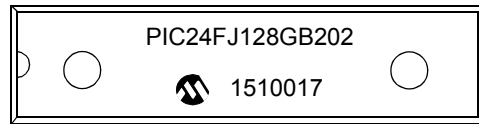
Example



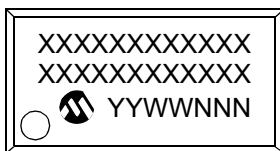
28-Lead SPDIP



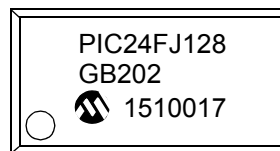
Example



28-Lead SSOP



Example



**Legend:** XX...X Customer-specific information  
Y Year code (last digit of calendar year)  
YY Year code (last 2 digits of calendar year)  
WW Week code (week of January 1 is week '01')  
NNN Alphanumeric traceability code

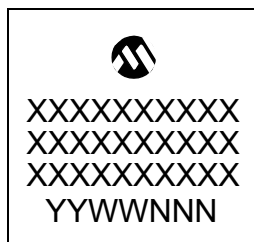
**Note:** In the event the full Microchip part number cannot be marked on one line, it will be carried over to the next line, thus limiting the number of available characters for customer-specific information.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

## 34.1 Package Marking Information (Continued)

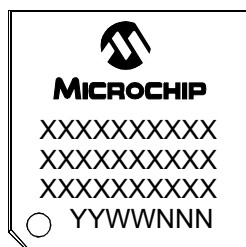
44-Lead QFN



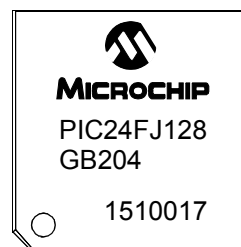
Example



44-Lead TQFP



Example



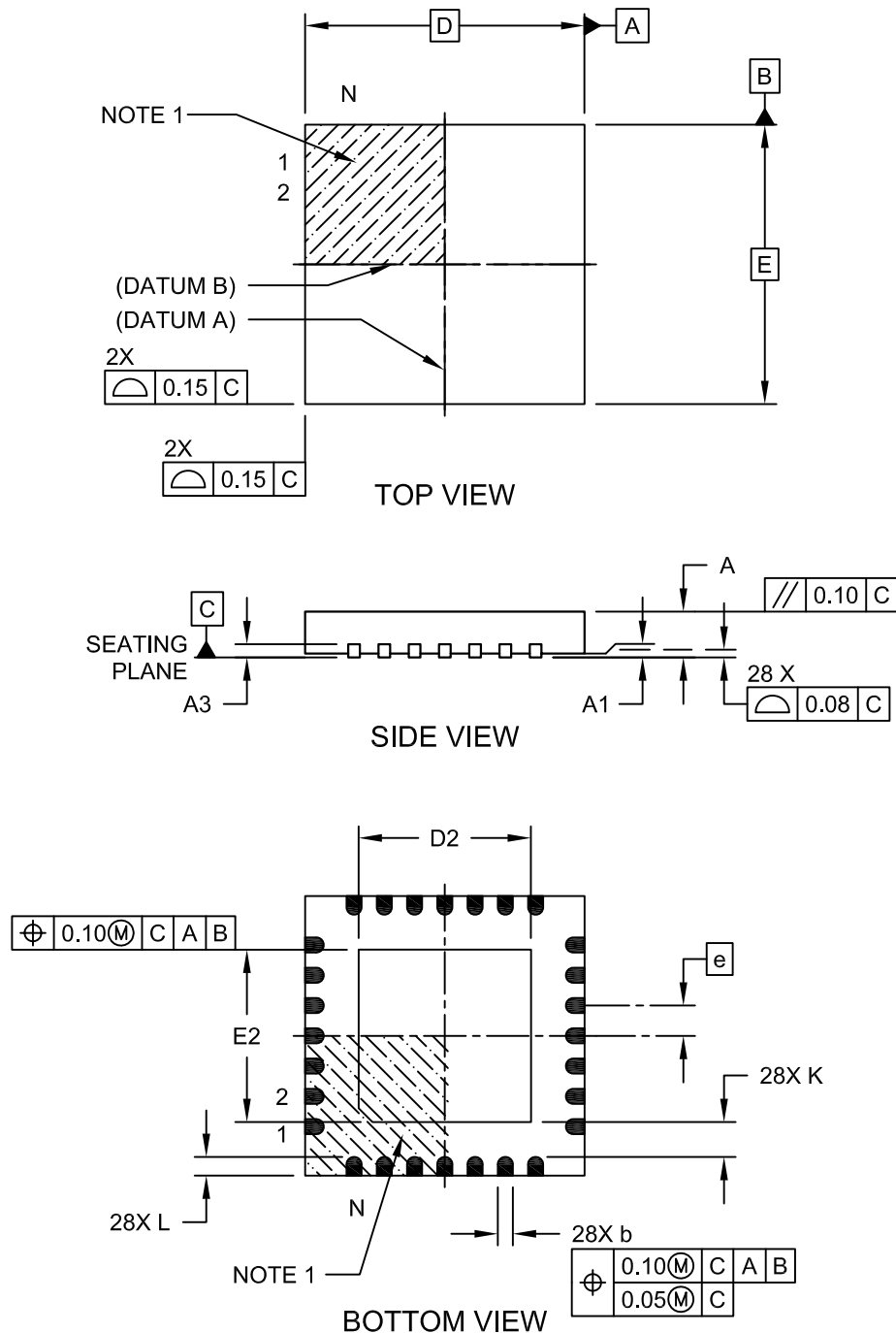
# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 34.2 Package Details

The following sections give the technical details of the packages.

### 28-Lead Plastic Quad Flat, No Lead Package (MM) - 6x6x0.9mm Body [QFN-S] With 0.40 mm Terminal Length

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>

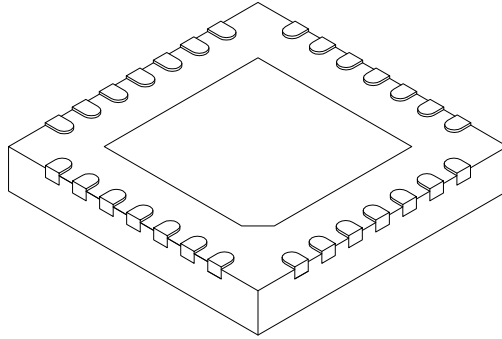


Microchip Technology Drawing C04-124C Sheet 1 of 2

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 28-Lead Plastic Quad Flat, No Lead Package (MM) - 6x6x0.9mm Body [QFN-S] With 0.40 mm Terminal Length

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Units                   |    | MILLIMETERS |      |      |
|-------------------------|----|-------------|------|------|
| Dimension Limits        |    | MIN         | NOM  | MAX  |
| Number of Pins          | N  | 28          |      |      |
| Pitch                   | e  | 0.65 BSC    |      |      |
| Overall Height          | A  | 0.80        | 0.90 | 1.00 |
| Standoff                | A1 | 0.00        | 0.02 | 0.05 |
| Terminal Thickness      | A3 | 0.20 REF    |      |      |
| Overall Width           | E  | 6.00 BSC    |      |      |
| Exposed Pad Width       | E2 | 3.65        | 3.70 | 4.70 |
| Overall Length          | D  | 6.00 BSC    |      |      |
| Exposed Pad Length      | D2 | 3.65        | 3.70 | 4.70 |
| Terminal Width          | b  | 0.23        | 0.30 | 0.35 |
| Terminal Length         | L  | 0.30        | 0.40 | 0.50 |
| Terminal-to-Exposed Pad | K  | 0.20        | -    | -    |

**Notes:**

1. Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
2. Package is saw singulated
3. Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

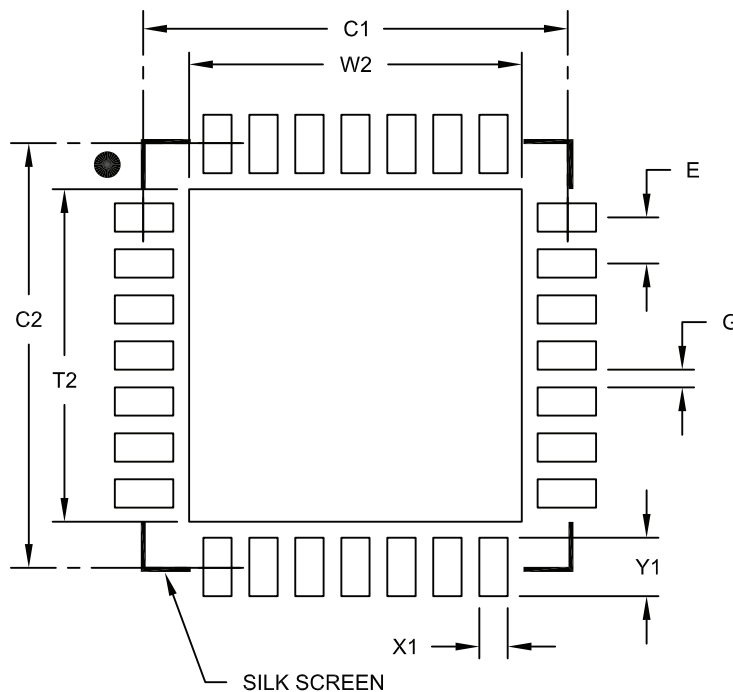
REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-124C Sheet 2 of 2

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 28-Lead Plastic Quad Flat, No Lead Package (MM) – 6x6x0.9 mm Body [QFN-S] with 0.40 mm Contact Length

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



RECOMMENDED LAND PATTERN

| Units                      |    | MILLIMETERS |      |      |
|----------------------------|----|-------------|------|------|
| Dimension Limits           |    | MIN         | NOM  | MAX  |
| Contact Pitch              | E  | 0.65 BSC    |      |      |
| Optional Center Pad Width  | W2 |             |      | 4.70 |
| Optional Center Pad Length | T2 |             |      | 4.70 |
| Contact Pad Spacing        | C1 |             | 6.00 |      |
| Contact Pad Spacing        | C2 |             | 6.00 |      |
| Contact Pad Width (X28)    | X1 |             |      | 0.40 |
| Contact Pad Length (X28)   | Y1 |             |      | 0.85 |
| Distance Between Pads      | G  | 0.25        |      |      |

**Notes:**

1. Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M

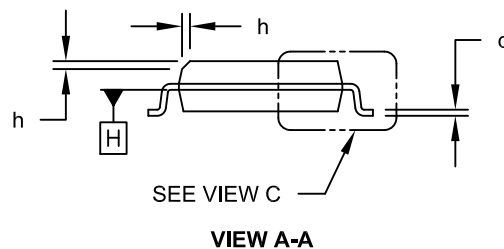
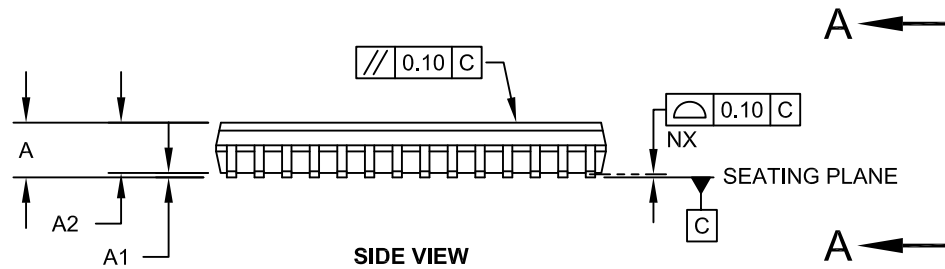
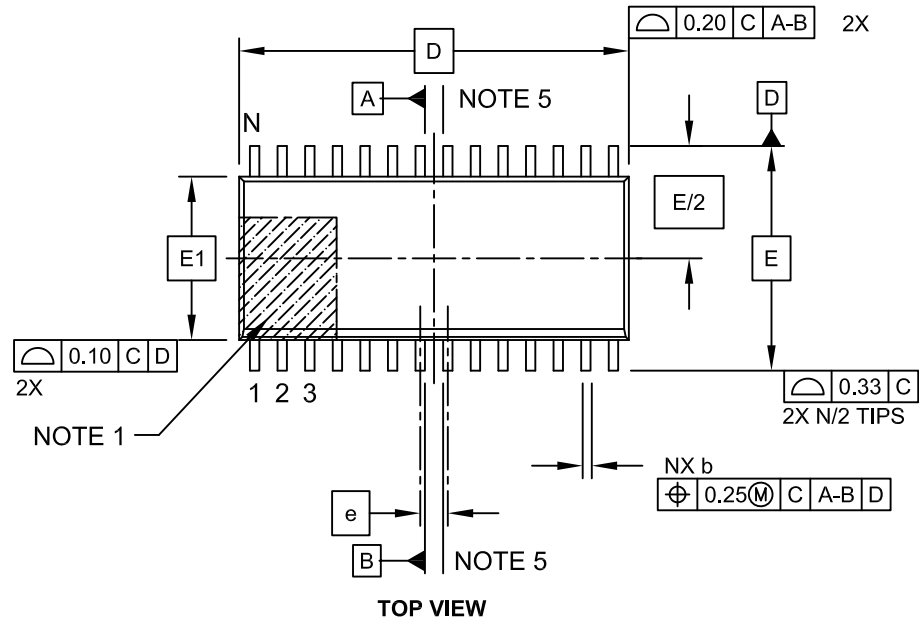
BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

Microchip Technology Drawing No. C04-2124A

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 28-Lead Plastic Small Outline (SO) - Wide, 7.50 mm Body [SOIC]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>

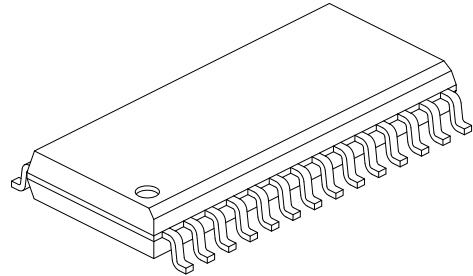
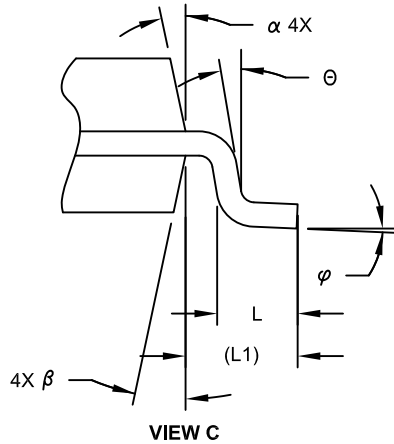


Microchip Technology Drawing C04-052C Sheet 1 of 2

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 28-Lead Plastic Small Outline (SO) - Wide, 7.50 mm Body [SOIC]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Units                    |    | MILLIMETERS |     |      |
|--------------------------|----|-------------|-----|------|
| Dimension Limits         |    | MIN         | NOM | MAX  |
| Number of Pins           | N  | 28          |     |      |
| Pitch                    | e  | 1.27 BSC    |     |      |
| Overall Height           | A  | -           | -   | 2.65 |
| Molded Package Thickness | A2 | 2.05        | -   | -    |
| Standoff §               | A1 | 0.10        | -   | 0.30 |
| Overall Width            | E  | 10.30 BSC   |     |      |
| Molded Package Width     | E1 | 7.50 BSC    |     |      |
| Overall Length           | D  | 17.90 BSC   |     |      |
| Chamfer (Optional)       | h  | 0.25        | -   | 0.75 |
| Foot Length              | L  | 0.40        | -   | 1.27 |
| Footprint                | L1 | 1.40 REF    |     |      |
| Lead Angle               | Θ  | 0°          | -   | -    |
| Foot Angle               | φ  | 0°          | -   | 8°   |
| Lead Thickness           | c  | 0.18        | -   | 0.33 |
| Lead Width               | b  | 0.31        | -   | 0.51 |
| Mold Draft Angle Top     | α  | 5°          | -   | 15°  |
| Mold Draft Angle Bottom  | β  | 5°          | -   | 15°  |

### Notes:

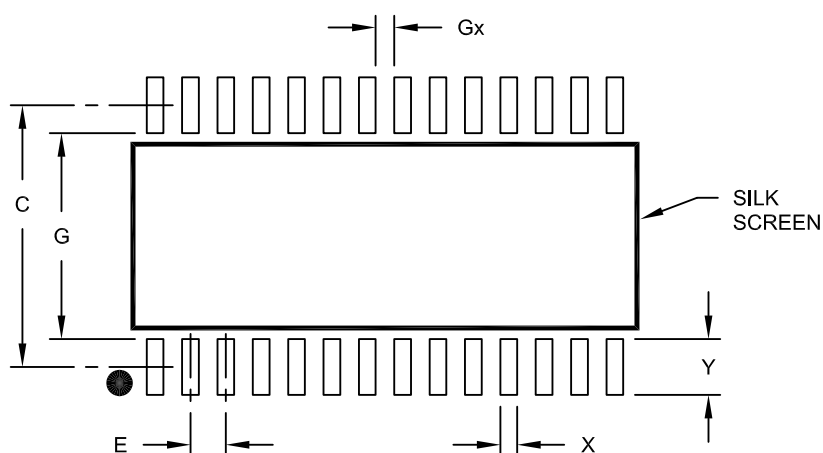
- Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
- § Significant Characteristic
- Dimension D does not include mold flash, protrusions or gate burrs, which shall not exceed 0.15 mm per end. Dimension E1 does not include interlead flash or protrusion, which shall not exceed 0.25 mm per side.
- Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M
  - BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.
  - REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.
- Datums A & B to be determined at Datum H.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-052C Sheet 2 of 2

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

28-Lead Plastic Small Outline (SO) - Wide, 7.50 mm Body [SOIC]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



## RECOMMENDED LAND PATTERN

| Units                    |    | MILLIMETERS |      |      |
|--------------------------|----|-------------|------|------|
| Dimension Limits         |    | MIN         | NOM  | MAX  |
| Contact Pitch            | E  | 1.27 BSC    |      |      |
| Contact Pad Spacing      | C  |             | 9.40 |      |
| Contact Pad Width (X28)  | X  |             |      | 0.60 |
| Contact Pad Length (X28) | Y  |             |      | 2.00 |
| Distance Between Pads    | Gx | 0.67        |      |      |
| Distance Between Pads    | G  | 7.40        |      |      |

### Notes:

1. Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M

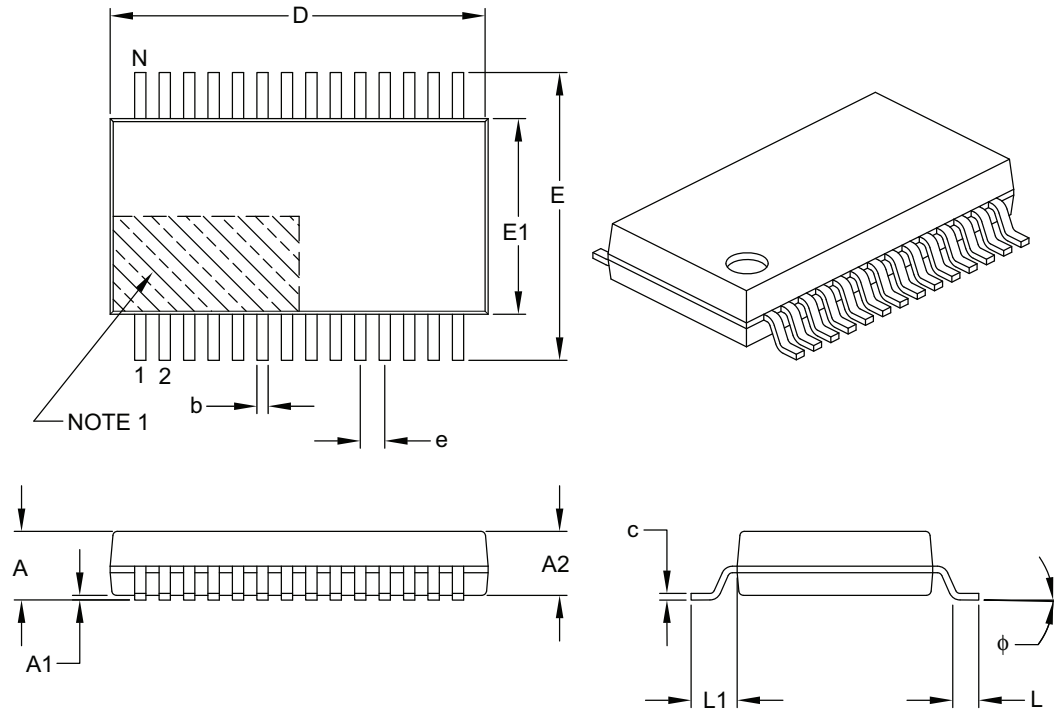
BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

Microchip Technology Drawing No. C04-2052A

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 28-Lead Plastic Shrink Small Outline (SS) – 5.30 mm Body [SSOP]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Units                    |    | MILLIMETERS |       |       |
|--------------------------|----|-------------|-------|-------|
| Dimension Limits         |    | MIN         | NOM   | MAX   |
| Number of Pins           | N  | 28          |       |       |
| Pitch                    | e  | 0.65 BSC    |       |       |
| Overall Height           | A  | –           | –     | 2.00  |
| Molded Package Thickness | A2 | 1.65        | 1.75  | 1.85  |
| Standoff                 | A1 | 0.05        | –     | –     |
| Overall Width            | E  | 7.40        | 7.80  | 8.20  |
| Molded Package Width     | E1 | 5.00        | 5.30  | 5.60  |
| Overall Length           | D  | 9.90        | 10.20 | 10.50 |
| Foot Length              | L  | 0.55        | 0.75  | 0.95  |
| Footprint                | L1 | 1.25 REF    |       |       |
| Lead Thickness           | c  | 0.09        | –     | 0.25  |
| Foot Angle               | φ  | 0°          | 4°    | 8°    |
| Lead Width               | b  | 0.22        | –     | 0.38  |

### Notes:

- Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
- Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed 0.20 mm per side.
- Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

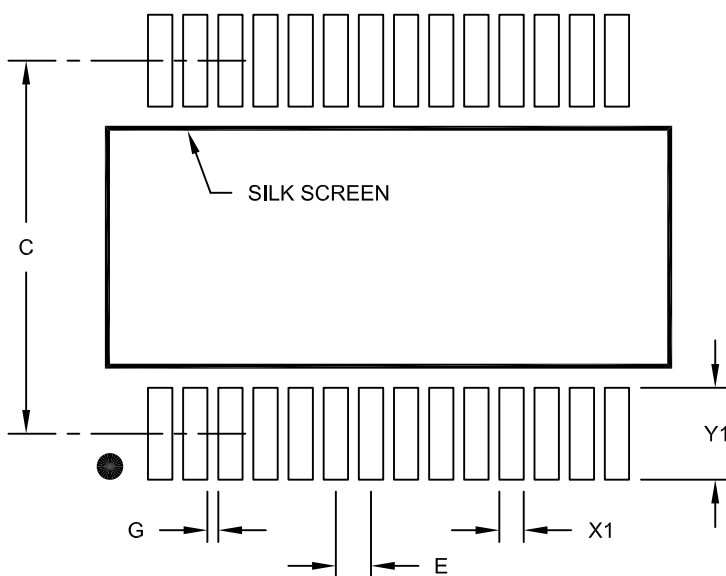
REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-073B

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

28-Lead Plastic Shrink Small Outline (SS) - 5.30 mm Body [SSOP]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



RECOMMENDED LAND PATTERN

| Units                    |    | MILLIMETERS |      |      |
|--------------------------|----|-------------|------|------|
| Dimension Limits         |    | MIN         | NOM  | MAX  |
| Contact Pitch            | E  | 0.65 BSC    |      |      |
| Contact Pad Spacing      | C  |             | 7.20 |      |
| Contact Pad Width (X28)  | X1 |             |      | 0.45 |
| Contact Pad Length (X28) | Y1 |             |      | 1.75 |
| Distance Between Pads    | G  | 0.20        |      |      |

Notes:

1. Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M

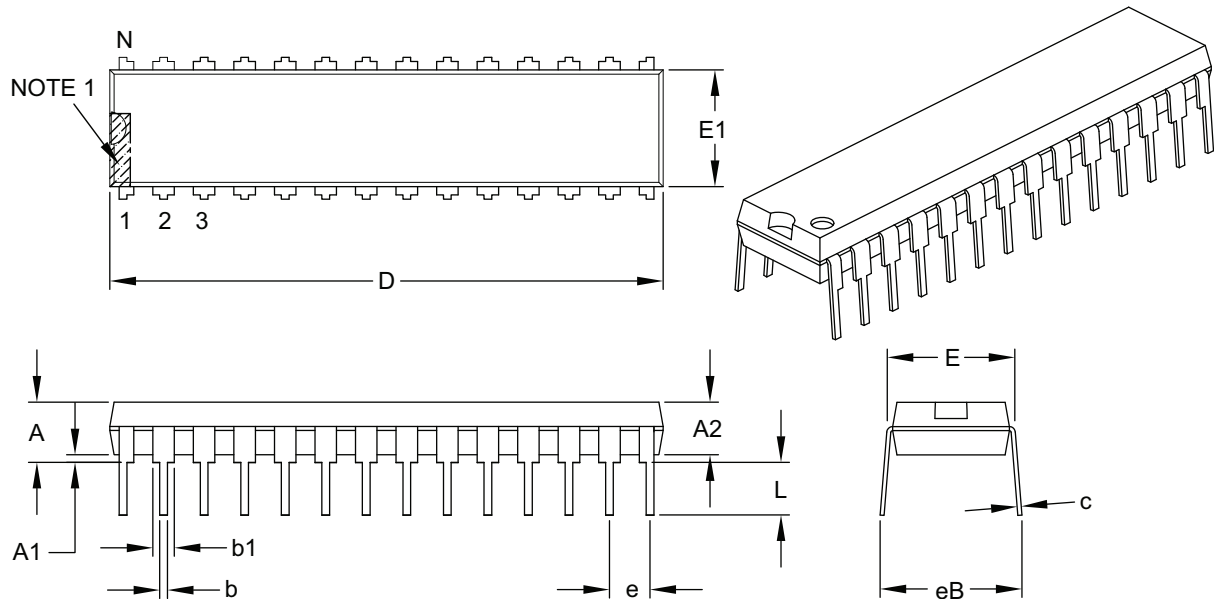
BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

Microchip Technology Drawing No. C04-2073A

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 28-Lead Skinny Plastic Dual In-Line (SP) – 300 mil Body [SPDIP]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Units                      |    | INCHES   |       |       |
|----------------------------|----|----------|-------|-------|
| Dimension Limits           |    | MIN      | NOM   | MAX   |
| Number of Pins             | N  | 28       |       |       |
| Pitch                      | e  | .100 BSC |       |       |
| Top to Seating Plane       | A  | —        | —     | .200  |
| Molded Package Thickness   | A2 | .120     | .135  | .150  |
| Base to Seating Plane      | A1 | .015     | —     | —     |
| Shoulder to Shoulder Width | E  | .290     | .310  | .335  |
| Molded Package Width       | E1 | .240     | .285  | .295  |
| Overall Length             | D  | 1.345    | 1.365 | 1.400 |
| Tip to Seating Plane       | L  | .110     | .130  | .150  |
| Lead Thickness             | c  | .008     | .010  | .015  |
| Upper Lead Width           | b1 | .040     | .050  | .070  |
| Lower Lead Width           | b  | .014     | .018  | .022  |
| Overall Row Spacing §      | eB | —        | —     | .430  |

### Notes:

- Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
- § Significant Characteristic.
- Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" per side.
- Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.

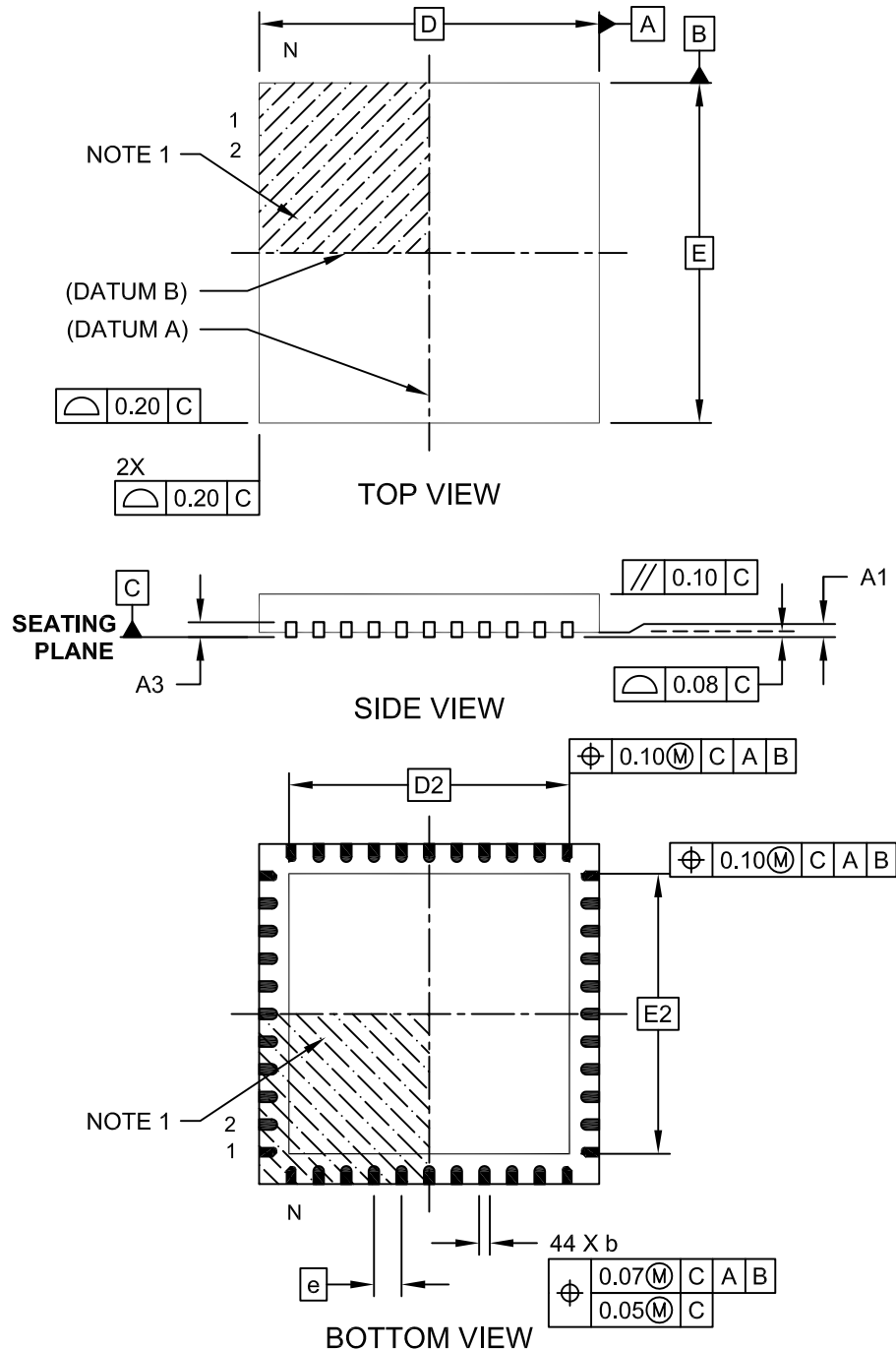
BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-070B

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 44-Lead Plastic Quad Flat, No Lead Package (ML) - 8x8 mm Body [QFN]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>

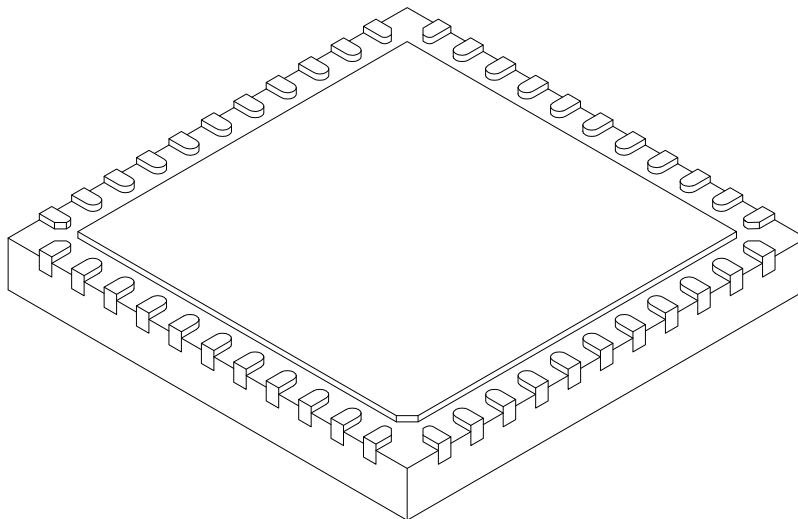


Microchip Technology Drawing C04-103C Sheet 1 of 2

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 44-Lead Plastic Quad Flat, No Lead Package (ML) - 8x8 mm Body [QFN]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Units                   |    | MILLIMETERS |      |      |
|-------------------------|----|-------------|------|------|
| Dimension Limits        |    | MIN         | NOM  | MAX  |
| Number of Pins          | N  | 44          |      |      |
| Pitch                   | e  | 0.65 BSC    |      |      |
| Overall Height          | A  | 0.80        | 0.90 | 1.00 |
| Standoff                | A1 | 0.00        | 0.02 | 0.05 |
| Terminal Thickness      | A3 | 0.20 REF    |      |      |
| Overall Width           | E  | 8.00 BSC    |      |      |
| Exposed Pad Width       | E2 | 6.25        | 6.45 | 6.60 |
| Overall Length          | D  | 8.00 BSC    |      |      |
| Exposed Pad Length      | D2 | 6.25        | 6.45 | 6.60 |
| Terminal Width          | b  | 0.20        | 0.30 | 0.35 |
| Terminal Length         | L  | 0.30        | 0.40 | 0.50 |
| Terminal-to-Exposed-Pad | K  | 0.20        | -    | -    |

**Notes:**

1. Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
2. Package is saw singulated
3. Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

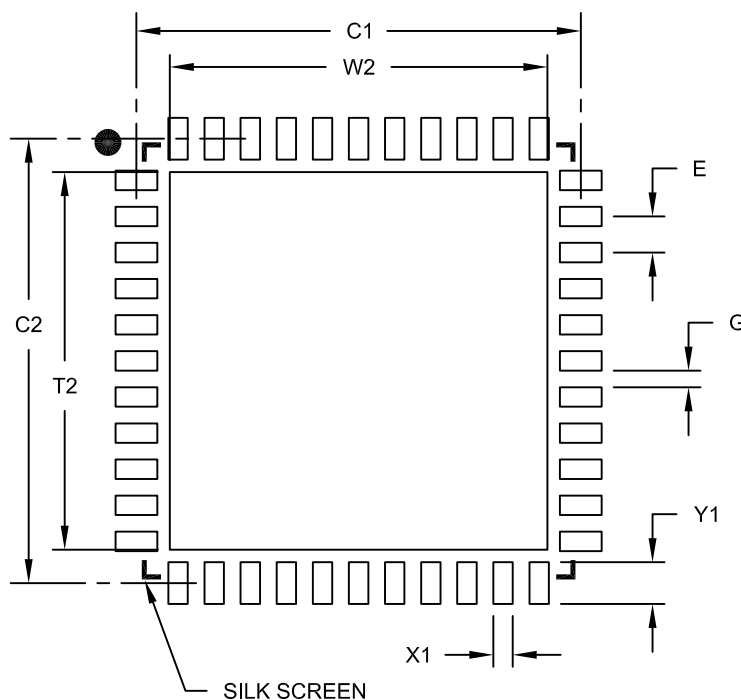
REF: Reference Dimension. usually without tolerance. for information purposes only.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-103C Sheet 2 of 2

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

44-Lead Plastic Quad Flat, No Lead Package (ML) - 8x8 mm Body [QFN]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



RECOMMENDED LAND PATTERN

| Dimension Limits           | Units | MILLIMETERS |      |      |
|----------------------------|-------|-------------|------|------|
|                            |       | MIN         | NOM  | MAX  |
| Contact Pitch              | E     | 0.65 BSC    |      |      |
| Optional Center Pad Width  | W2    |             |      | 6.60 |
| Optional Center Pad Length | T2    |             |      | 6.60 |
| Contact Pad Spacing        | C1    |             | 8.00 |      |
| Contact Pad Spacing        | C2    |             | 8.00 |      |
| Contact Pad Width (X44)    | X1    |             |      | 0.35 |
| Contact Pad Length (X44)   | Y1    |             |      | 0.85 |
| Distance Between Pads      | G     | 0.25        |      |      |

Notes:

1. Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M

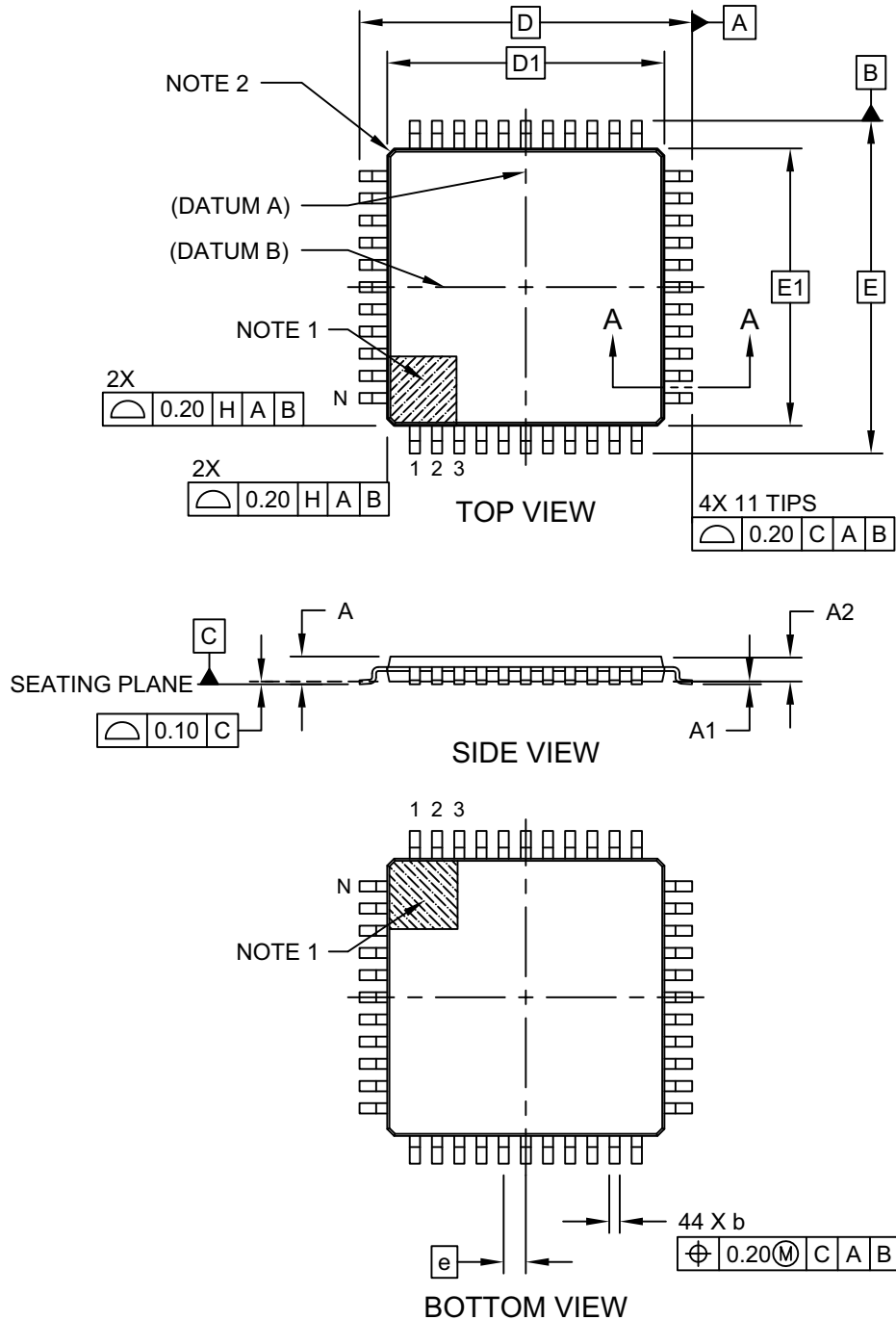
BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

Microchip Technology Drawing No. C04-2103B

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 44-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) - 10x10x1.0 mm Body [TQFP]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>

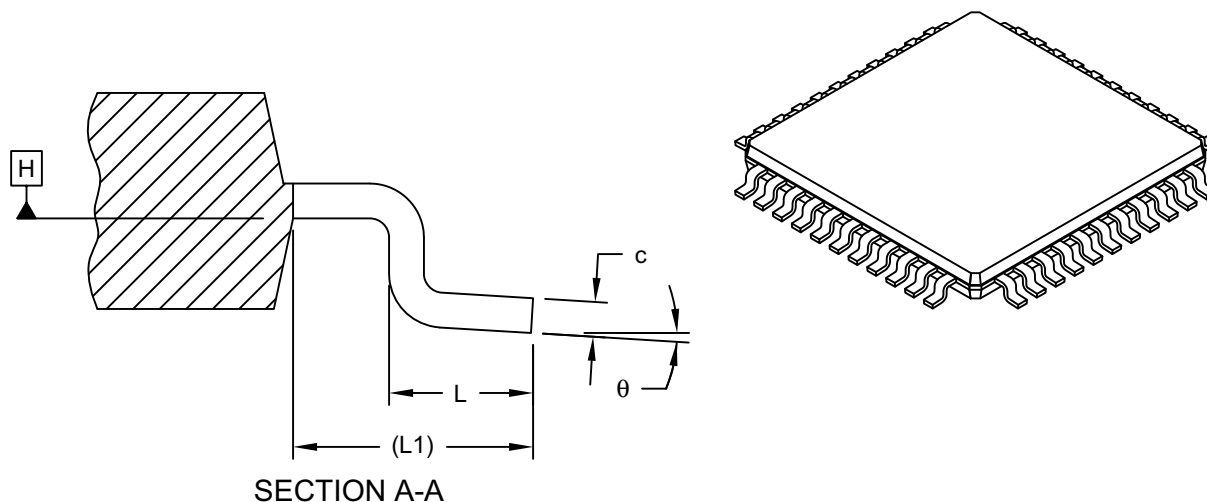


Microchip Technology Drawing C04-076C Sheet 1 of 2

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## 44-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) - 10x10x1.0 mm Body [TQFP]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Units                    |    | MILLIMETERS |      |      |
|--------------------------|----|-------------|------|------|
| Dimension Limits         |    | MIN         | NOM  | MAX  |
| Number of Leads          | N  | 44          |      |      |
| Lead Pitch               | e  | 0.80 BSC    |      |      |
| Overall Height           | A  | -           | -    | 1.20 |
| Standoff                 | A1 | 0.05        | -    | 0.15 |
| Molded Package Thickness | A2 | 0.95        | 1.00 | 1.05 |
| Overall Width            | E  | 12.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Molded Package Width     | E1 | 10.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Overall Length           | D  | 12.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Molded Package Length    | D1 | 10.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Lead Width               | b  | 0.30        | 0.37 | 0.45 |
| Lead Thickness           | c  | 0.09        | -    | 0.20 |
| Lead Length              | L  | 0.45        | 0.60 | 0.75 |
| Footprint                | L1 | 1.00 REF    |      |      |
| Foot Angle               | θ  | 0°          | 3.5° | 7°   |

**Notes:**

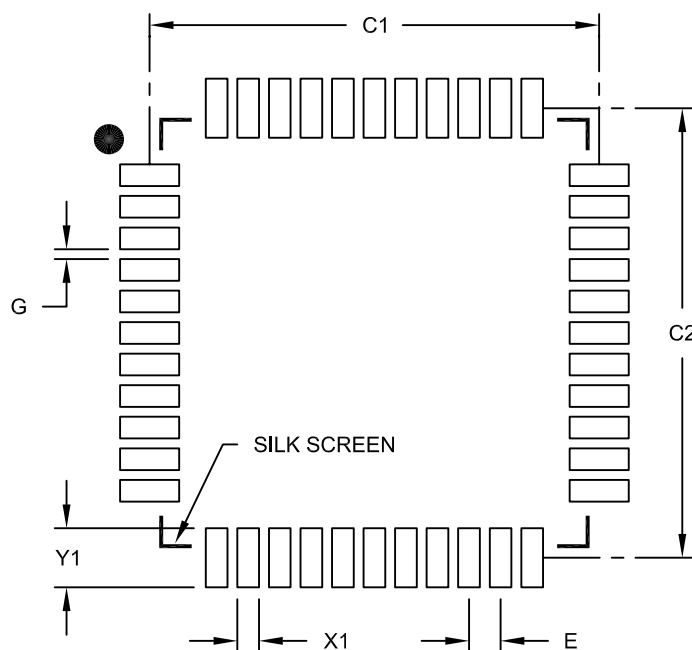
1. Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
2. Exact shape of each corner is optional.
3. Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M  
BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.  
REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-076C Sheet 2 of 2

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

44-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) 10X10X1 mm Body, 2.00 mm Footprint [TQFP]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



RECOMMENDED LAND PATTERN

| Units                    |    | MILLIMETERS |       |      |
|--------------------------|----|-------------|-------|------|
| Dimension Limits         |    | MIN         | NOM   | MAX  |
| Contact Pitch            | E  | 0.80 BSC    |       |      |
| Contact Pad Spacing      | C1 |             | 11.40 |      |
| Contact Pad Spacing      | C2 |             | 11.40 |      |
| Contact Pad Width (X44)  | X1 |             |       | 0.55 |
| Contact Pad Length (X44) | Y1 |             |       | 1.50 |
| Distance Between Pads    | G  | 0.25        |       |      |

Notes:

1. Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

Microchip Technology Drawing No. C04-2076B

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

## APPENDIX A: REVISION HISTORY

### Revision A (May 2013)

Original data sheet for the PIC24FJ128GB204 family of devices.

### Revision B (May 2014)

This revision incorporates the following updates:

- Sections:
  - Inserted new bulleted list in “**Cryptographic Engine**”
  - Updated a unit in “**Analog Features**”
  - Updated note in [Section 16.0 “Serial Peripheral Interface \(SPI\)”](#), [Section 17.0 “Inter-Integrated Circuit™ \(I<sup>2</sup>C™\)”](#), [Section 18.0 “Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter \(UART\)”](#), [Section 23.0 “Cryptographic Engine”](#) and [Section 27.0 “Comparator Voltage Reference”](#)
  - Updated [Section 17.3 “Slave Address Masking”](#)
  - Updated [Section 23.0 “Cryptographic Engine”](#)
  - Inserted new [Section 23.5.6 “Generating a Random Number”](#)
  - Updated [Section 30.3.1 “Windowed Operation”](#)
  - Updated packaging information in [Section 34.0 “Packaging Information”](#)
- Registers:
  - Updated [Register 8-45](#), [Register 16-1](#), [Register 16-4](#), [Register 17-1](#), [Register 18-1](#), [Register 20-1](#), [Register 23-1](#) and [Register 23-5](#)
  - Updated the title of [Register 18-2](#) and [Register 18-4](#)
  - Updated bit 10 register description in [Register 23-5](#)
- Tables:
  - Updated [Table 1-3](#), [Table 4-5](#), [Table 4-9](#), [Table 4-10](#), [Table 4-11](#), [Table 4-12](#), [Table 4-13](#), [Table 4-14](#), [Table 4-29](#), [Table 33-1](#), [Table 33-3](#), [Table 33-4](#), [Table 33-5](#), [Table 33-6](#), [Table 33-7](#), [Table 33-8](#), [Table 33-10](#), [Table 33-12](#), [Table 33-13](#), [Table 33-14](#), [Table 33-15](#), [Table 33-16](#), [Table 33-21](#)
  - Added [Table 33-26](#) through [Table 33-39](#)
- Figures:
  - Added [Figure 9-1](#), [Figure 33-5](#), [Figure 33-6](#), [Figure 33-7](#), [Figure 33-8](#), [Figure 33-9](#), [Figure 33-10](#), [Figure 33-11](#) and [Figure 33-12](#).
- Examples:
  - [Example 22-1](#)

### Revision C (March 2015)

This revision incorporates the following updates:

- Registers:
  - [Register 26-1](#)
- Tables:
  - [Table 33-4](#), [Table 33-5](#), [Table 33-6](#) and [Table 33-21](#)
- Package marking examples and package diagrams in [Section 34.0 “Packaging Information”](#) were updated

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## INDEX

### A

#### A/D

|                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Control Registers .....       | 354 |
| Extended DMA Operations ..... | 353 |
| Operation .....               | 351 |
| Transfer Functions            |     |
| 10-Bit .....                  | 370 |
| 12-Bit .....                  | 369 |

#### AC Characteristics

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| A/D Conversion Timing Requirements .....                                       | 446 |
| A/D Specifications .....   | 445 |
| and Timing Parameters .....  | 427 |
| Capacitive Loading on Output Pins .....  | 427 |
| CLKO and I/O Timing Requirements .....   | 430 |
| External Clock Timing Requirements .....                                       | 428 |
| I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Data (Master Mode) Requirements .....                     | 442 |
| I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Data (Slave Mode) Requirements .....                      | 444 |
| I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Start/Stop Bit Timing Requirements<br>(Master Mode) ..... | 441 |
| I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Start/Stop Bits (Slave Mode)<br>Requirements .....        | 443 |
| Input Capture x Requirements .....   | 434 |
| Internal RC Accuracy .....   | 429 |
| Load Conditions and Requirements for<br>Specifications .....                   | 427 |
| Output Compare x Requirements .....  | 434 |
| PLL Clock Timing Specifications .....  | 429 |
| RC Oscillator Start-up Time .....  | 430 |
| Reset and Brown-out Reset Requirements .....                                   | 431 |
| Simple OCx/PWM Mode Requirements .....   | 435 |
| SPIx Master Mode (CKE = 0) Requirements .....                                  | 436 |
| SPIx Master Mode (CKE = 1) Requirements .....                                  | 437 |
| SPIx Slave Mode (CKE = 0) Requirements .....                                   | 438 |
| SPIx Slave Mode (CKE = 1) Requirements .....                                   | 440 |
| Timer1 External Clock Requirements .....                                       | 432 |
| Timer2 and Timer4 External Clock<br>Requirements .....                         | 433 |
| Timer3 and Timer5 External Clock<br>Requirements .....                         | 433 |

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Alternate Interrupt Vector Table (AIVT) ..... | 91 |
|---|----|

#### Assembler

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| MPASM Assembler ..... | 404 |
|-----------------------|-----|

### B

#### Block Diagrams

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 10-Bit A/D Converter Analog Input Model .....             | 368 |
| 12-Bit A/D Converter .....                                | 352 |
| 16-Bit Asynchronous Timer3 and Timer5 .....               | 207 |
| 16-Bit Synchronous Timer2 and Timer4 .....                | 207 |
| 16-Bit Timer1 Module .....                                | 201 |
| Accessing Program Space Using<br>Table Instructions ..... | 67  |
| Addressing for Table Registers .....                      | 79  |
| BDT Mapping for Endpoint Buffering Modes .....            | 270 |
| Buffer Address Generation in PIA Mode .....               | 355 |
| CALL Stack Frame .....                                    | 64  |
| Comparator Voltage Reference Module .....                 | 377 |
| CPU Programmer's Model .....                              | 31  |
| CRC Module .....  | 345 |
| CRC Shift Engine Detail .....                             | 345 |
| Cryptographic Engine .....                                | 329 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| CTMU Connections and Internal Configuration<br>for Capacitance Measurement ..... | 380 |
| CTMU Connections and Internal Configuration<br>for Pulse Delay Generation .....  | 381 |
| CTMU Connections and Internal Configuration<br>for Time Measurement .....        | 381 |
| Data Access from Program Space<br>Address Generation .....                       | 66  |
| Data Signal Modulator .....  | 299 |
| Direct Memory Access (DMA) .....   | 71  |
| EDS Address Generation for Read .....  | 62  |
| EDS Address Generation for Write .....   | 63  |
| Extended Data Space (EDS) .....  | 61  |
| High/Low-Voltage Detect (HLVD) Module .....                                      | 387 |
| I <sup>2</sup> C Module .....  | 246 |
| Individual Comparator Configurations,<br>CREF = 0 .....                          | 372 |
| Individual Comparator Configurations,<br>CREF = 1, CVREFP = 0 .....              | 373 |
| Individual Comparator Configurations,<br>CREF = 1, CVREFP = 1 .....              | 373 |
| Input Capture x .....  | 211 |
| MCLR Pin Connections .....   | 24  |
| On-Chip Regulator Connections .....  | 399 |
| Oscillator Circuit Placement .....   | 27  |
| Output Compare x (16-Bit Mode) .....   | 218 |
| Output Compare x (Double-Buffered,<br>16-Bit PWM Mode) .....                     | 220 |
| PIC24F CPU Core .....  | 30  |
| PIC24FJ128GB204 Family (General) .....   | 14  |
| PSV Operation Access (Lower Word) .....  | 69  |
| PSV Operation Access (Upper Word) .....  | 69  |
| Recommended Minimum Connections .....  | 23  |
| Reset System .....   | 85  |
| RTCC Module .....  | 315 |
| Shared I/O Port Structure .....  | 173 |
| Smart Card Subsystem Connection .....  | 257 |
| SPIx Master, Frame Master Connection .....                                       | 242 |
| SPIx Master, Frame Slave Connection .....  | 243 |
| SPIx Master/Slave Connection<br>(Enhanced Buffer Modes) .....                    | 242 |
| SPIx Master/Slave Connection<br>(Standard Mode) .....                            | 241 |
| SPIx Module (Enhanced Mode) .....  | 229 |
| SPIx Module (Standard Mode) .....  | 228 |
| SPIx Slave, Frame Master Connection .....  | 243 |
| SPIx Slave, Frame Slave Connection .....   | 243 |
| System Clock .....   | 147 |
| Timer2/3 and Timer4/5 (32-Bit) .....   | 206 |
| Triple Comparator Module .....   | 371 |
| UARTx (Simplified) .....   | 254 |
| USB Host Interface Example .....   | 268 |
| USB OTG Bus Power Only .....   | 267 |
| USB OTG Dual Power Example .....   | 267 |
| USB OTG External Pull-up for Full-Speed<br>Device Mode .....                     | 267 |
| USB OTG Interface Example .....  | 268 |
| USB OTG Interrupt Funnel .....   | 274 |
| USB OTG Module .....   | 266 |
| USB OTG Self-Power Only .....  | 267 |
| USB PLL .....  | 155 |
| Watchdog Timer (WDT) .....   | 400 |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## C

|   |         |
|---|---------|
| C Compilers                                       |         |
| MPLAB XC .....                                    | 404     |
| Charge Time Measurement Unit. <i>See</i> CTMU.    |         |
| Code Examples                                     |         |
| Basic Clock Switching Sequence .....              | 154     |
| Configuring UART1 Input/Output Functions .....    | 182     |
| EDS Read from Program Memory in Assembly .....    | 68      |
| EDS Read in Assembly .....                        | 62      |
| EDS Write in Assembly .....                       | 63      |
| Erasing a Program Memory Block (Assembly) .....   | 82      |
| Erasing a Program Memory Block (C Language) ..... | 83      |
| Initiating a Programming Sequence .....           | 83      |
| Loading the Write Buffers .....                   | 83      |
| Port Read/Write in Assembly .....                 | 177     |
| Port Read/Write in C .....                        | 177     |
| PWRSAV Instruction Syntax .....                   | 162     |
| Repeat Sequence .....                             | 164     |
| Setting the RTCWREN Bit .....                     | 316     |
| Single-Word Flash Programming .....               | 84      |
| Single-Word Flash Programming (C Language) .....  | 84      |
| Code Protection .....                             | 401     |
| Code Segment Protection .....                     | 401     |
| Configuration Options .....                       | 401     |
| Configuration Register Protection .....           | 402     |
| General Segment Protection .....                  | 401     |
| Comparator Voltage Reference .....                | 377     |
| Configuring .....                                 | 377     |
| Configuration Bits .....                          | 389     |
| Core Features .....                               | 9       |
| CPU   |         |
| Arithmetic Logic Unit (ALU) .....                 | 34      |
| Control Registers .....                           | 32      |
| Core Registers .....                              | 30      |
| Programmer's Model .....                          | 29      |
| CRC   |         |
| Interrupt Operation .....                         | 347     |
| Polynomials .....                                 | 346     |
| Setup Examples for 16/32-Bit Polynomials .....    | 346     |
| Typical Operation .....                           | 347     |
| User Interface .....                              | 346     |
| Cryptographic Engine .....                        | 10, 329 |
| Control Registers .....                           | 335     |
| Data Register Spaces .....                        | 330     |
| Decrypting Data .....                             | 331     |
| Enabling .....                                    | 330     |
| Encrypting Data .....                             | 331     |
| Key Source Selection                              |         |
| AES .....   | 343     |
| DES/3DES .....                                    | 342     |
| Operation Modes .....                             | 330     |
| Idle .....  | 330     |
| Sleep .....                                       | 330     |
| Programming                                       |         |
| CFGPAGE Configuration Bits .....                  | 334     |
| Keys .....  | 334     |
| Verifying Keys .....                              | 334     |
| Pseudorandom Number (PRN) Generation .....        | 333     |
| Random Number Generation .....                    | 333     |
| Session Keys                                      |         |
| Encrypting .....                                  | 332     |
| Receiving .....                                   | 332     |
| Testing Key Source Configuration .....            | 333     |

## CTMU

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Measuring Capacitance .....                | 379 |
| Measuring Time .....                       | 381 |
| Pulse Delay and Generation .....           | 381 |
| Customer Change Notification Service ..... | 473 |
| Customer Notification Service .....        | 473 |
| Customer Support .....                     | 473 |

## D

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Data Memory                                       |     |
| Address Space .....                               | 37  |
| Extended Data Space (EDS) .....                   | 61  |
| Memory Map .....                                  | 37  |
| Near Data Space .....                             | 38  |
| SFR Space .....                                   | 38  |
| Software Stack .....                              | 64  |
| Space Organization, Alignment .....               | 38  |
| Data Signal Modulator (DSM) .....                 | 299 |
| Data Signal Modulator. <i>See</i> DSM.            |     |
| DC Characteristics                                |     |
| Comparator Specifications .....                   | 425 |
| Comparator Voltage Reference Specifications ..... | 425 |
| CTMU Current Source Specifications .....          | 426 |
| $\Delta$ Current (BOR, WDT, DSBOR, DSWDT) .....   | 421 |
| High/Low-Voltage Detect .....                     | 424 |
| I/O Pin Input Specifications .....                | 422 |
| I/O Pin Output Specifications .....               | 423 |
| Idle Current (IDLE) .....                         | 419 |
| Internal Voltage Regulator Specifications .....   | 424 |
| Operating Current (IDD) .....                     | 418 |
| Power-Down Current (IPD) .....                    | 420 |
| Program Memory .....                              | 423 |
| Temperature and Voltage Specifications .....      | 417 |
| Thermal Operating Conditions .....                | 416 |
| Thermal Packaging .....                           | 416 |
| USB On-The-Go Specifications .....                | 426 |
| VBAT Operating Voltage Specifications .....       | 426 |
| Development Support .....                         | 403 |
| Device Features                                   |     |
| 28-Pin Devices .....                              | 13  |
| 44-Pin Devices .....                              | 12  |
| Device Programmer                                 |     |
| MPLAB PM3 .....                                   | 405 |
| Direct Memory Access. <i>See</i> DMA.             |     |
| DMA   |     |
| Channel Trigger Sources .....                     | 78  |
| Control Registers .....                           | 74  |
| Peripheral Module Disable (PMD) .....             | 74  |
| Summary of Operations .....                       | 72  |
| Types of Data Transfers .....                     | 73  |
| Typical Setup .....                               | 74  |
| DMA Controller .....                              | 10  |
| DSM   |     |
| E   |     |
| Electrical Characteristics                        |     |
| Absolute Maximum Ratings .....                    | 415 |
| V/F Graph (Industrial) .....                      | 416 |
| Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP) .....        | 303 |
| Enhanced Parallel Master Port. <i>See</i> EPMP.   |     |
| EPMP  |     |
| Key Features .....                                | 303 |
| Memory Addressable in Different Modes .....       | 303 |
| Pin Descriptions .....                            | 305 |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

|  |          |  |
|--|----------|--|
| Equations  |          |  |
| 16-Bit, 32-Bit CRC Polynomials                         | 346      |  |
| A/D Conversion Clock Period                            | 368      |  |
| Baud Rate Reload Calculation                           | 247      |  |
| Calculating the PWM Period                             | 220      |  |
| Calculation for Maximum PWM Resolution                 | 221      |  |
| Estimating USB Transceiver                             |          |  |
| Current Consumption                                    | 269      |  |
| Fractional Divisor for ROTRIMx Bits                    | 156      |  |
| Relationship Between Device and                        |          |  |
| SPIx Clock Speed                                       | 243      |  |
| UARTx Baud Rate with BRGH = 0                          | 255      |  |
| UARTx Baud Rate with BRGH = 1                          | 255      |  |
| Errata   | 7        |  |
| Extended Data Space (EDS)                              | 303      |  |
| <b>F</b>   |          |  |
| Flash Configuration Word Locations                     | 389      |  |
| Flash Configuration Words                              | 36       |  |
| Flash Program Memory                                   | 79       |  |
| and Table Instructions                                 | 79       |  |
| Control Registers                                      | 80       |  |
| Enhanced ICSP Operation                                | 80       |  |
| JTAG Operation   | 80       |  |
| Programming Algorithm                                  | 82       |  |
| Programming Operations                                 | 80       |  |
| RTSP Operation   | 80       |  |
| Single-Word Programming                                | 84       |  |
| <b>G</b>   |          |  |
| Getting Started with 16-Bit MCUs                       | 23       |  |
| Analog/Digital Pins Configuration During               |          |  |
| ICSP Operations  | 28       |  |
| Connection Requirements                                | 23       |  |
| External Oscillator Pins                               | 27       |  |
| ICSP Programming Pins                                  | 26       |  |
| Master Clear (MCLR) Pin                                | 24       |  |
| Power Supply Pins                                      | 24       |  |
| Unused I/Os  | 28       |  |
| Voltage Regulator Pins                                 | 25       |  |
| <b>H</b>   |          |  |
| High/Low-Voltage Detect (HLVD)                         | 387      |  |
| High/Low-Voltage Detect. <i>See</i> HLVD.              |          |  |
| <b>I</b>   |          |  |
| I/O Ports  |          |  |
| Analog Port Pins Configuration (ANSx)                  | 174      |  |
| Analog/Digital Function of an I/O Pin                  | 174      |  |
| Input Change Notification (ICN)                        | 177      |  |
| Open-Drain Configuration                               | 174      |  |
| Parallel (PIO)   | 173      |  |
| Peripheral Pin Select                                  | 178      |  |
| Pull-ups and Pull-Downs                                | 177      |  |
| Write/Read Timing                                      | 174      |  |
| I <sup>2</sup> C                                       |          |  |
| Communicating as Master in Single                      |          |  |
| Master Environment                                     | 245      |  |
| Reserved Addresses                                     | 247      |  |
| Setting Baud Rate as Bus Master                        | 247      |  |
| Slave Address Masking                                  | 247      |  |
| In-Circuit Debuggers                                   |          |  |
| MPLAB ICD 3  | 405      |  |
| PICKIT 3   | 405      |  |
| In-Circuit Emulator System                             |          |  |
| MPLAB REAL ICE   | 405      |  |
| Input Capture  |          |  |
| 32-Bit Cascaded Mode                                   | 212      |  |
| Operations   | 212      |  |
| Synchronous and Trigger Modes                          | 211      |  |
| Input Capture with Dedicated Timers                    | 211      |  |
| Input Voltage Levels for Port or Pin Tolerated         |          |  |
| Description Input                                      | 174      |  |
| Instruction Set  |          |  |
| Overview   | 409      |  |
| Summary  | 407      |  |
| Symbols Used in Opcode Descriptions                    | 408      |  |
| Interfacing Program and Data Spaces                    | 65       |  |
| Inter-Integrated Circuit. <i>See</i> I <sup>2</sup> C. |          |  |
| Internet Address                                       | 473      |  |
| Interrupt Vector Table (IVT)                           | 91       |  |
| Interrupts   |          |  |
| Control and Status Registers                           | 95       |  |
| Implemented Vectors                                    | 93       |  |
| Reset Sequence   | 91       |  |
| Setup and Service Procedures                           | 145      |  |
| Trap Vectors   | 92       |  |
| Vector Table   | 92       |  |
| Peripheral Pin Select (PPS)                            |          |  |
| Selectable Input Sources                               | 179      |  |
| <b>J</b>   |          |  |
| JTAG Interface   | 402      |  |
| <b>K</b>   |          |  |
| Key Features   | 389      |  |
| <b>L</b>   |          |  |
| Low-Voltage/Retention Regulator                        | 163, 399 |  |
| <b>M</b>   |          |  |
| Memory Organization                                    | 35       |  |
| Microchip Internet Web Site                            | 473      |  |
| MPLAB Assembler, Linker, Librarian                     | 404      |  |
| MPLAB X Integrated Development                         |          |  |
| Environment Software                                   | 403      |  |
| MPLINK Object Linker/MPLIB Object Librarian            | 404      |  |
| <b>N</b>   |          |  |
| Near Data Space  | 38       |  |
| <b>O</b>   |          |  |
| On-Chip Voltage Regulator                              | 399      |  |
| POR  | 399      |  |
| Standby Mode   | 399      |  |
| On-The-Go. <i>See</i> OTG.                             |          |  |
| Oscillator   |          |  |
| Clock Switching  | 153      |  |
| Sequence   | 153      |  |
| Configuration Bit Values for Clock Selection           | 148      |  |
| Control Registers                                      | 149      |  |
| FRC Self-Tuning  | 154      |  |
| Initial Configuration on POR                           | 148      |  |
| Initial CPU Clocking Scheme                            | 148      |  |
| On-Chip PLL  | 159      |  |
| Reference Clock Output                                 | 156      |  |
| USB Operation  | 155      |  |
| Special Considerations                                 | 156      |  |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Output Compare                       |     |
| 32-Bit Cascaded Mode                 | 217 |
| Compare Mode Operations              | 218 |
| Synchronous and Trigger Modes        | 217 |
| Output Compare with Dedicated Timers | 217 |

## P

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Packaging                               | 447 |
| Details                                 | 449 |
| Marking                                 | 447 |
| Peripheral Pin Select (PPS)             | 178 |
| Available Peripherals and Pins          | 178 |
| Configuration Control                   | 181 |
| Considerations for Use                  | 182 |
| Control Registers                       | 183 |
| Input Mapping                           | 179 |
| Mapping Exceptions                      | 181 |
| Output Mapping                          | 180 |
| Peripheral Priority                     | 178 |
| Selectable Output Sources               | 180 |
| Pinout Description                      | 15  |
| Power-Saving Features                   | 161 |
| Clock Frequency, Clock Switching        | 171 |
| Doze Mode                               | 171 |
| Instruction-Based Modes                 | 162 |
| Deep Sleep                              | 164 |
| Idle                                    | 163 |
| Sleep                                   | 163 |
| Overview of Modes                       | 161 |
| VBAT Mode                               | 166 |
| Product Identification System           | 475 |
| Program Memory                          |     |
| Access Using Table Instructions         | 67  |
| Address Space                           | 35  |
| Addressing Program Space                | 65  |
| Flash Configuration Words               | 36  |
| Hard Memory Vectors                     | 36  |
| Memory Maps                             | 35  |
| Organization                            | 36  |
| Reading from Program Memory Using EDS   | 68  |
| Program Verification                    | 401 |
| Pulse-Width Modulation (PWM) Mode       | 219 |
| Pulse-Width Modulation. <i>See</i> PWM. |     |
| PWM                                     |     |
| Duty Cycle and Period                   | 220 |

## R

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Real-Time Clock and Calendar (RTCC)            | 315 |
| Real-Time Clock and Calendar. <i>See</i> RTCC. |     |
| Register Maps                                  |     |
| A/D Converter                                  | 51  |
| Analog Configuration                           | 52  |
| Comparators                                    | 56  |
| CPU Core                                       | 39  |
| CRC  | 57  |
| Cryptographic Engine                           | 59  |
| CTMU   | 52  |
| Data Signal Modulator (DSM)                    | 56  |
| Deep Sleep                                     | 59  |
| DMA  | 53  |
| Enhanced Parallel Master/Slave Port            | 55  |
| I <sup>2</sup> C                               | 46  |
| ICN  | 40  |
| Input Capture                                  | 44  |
| Interrupt Controller                           | 41  |
| NVM  | 59  |

|                                     |    |
|-------------------------------------|----|
| Output Compare                      | 45 |
| Pad Configuration (PADCFG1)         | 50 |
| Peripheral Module Disable (PMD)     | 60 |
| Peripheral Pin Select (PPS)         | 57 |
| PORTA                               | 50 |
| PORTB                               | 50 |
| PORTC                               | 50 |
| Real-Time Clock and Calendar (RTCC) | 56 |
| SPI1                                | 48 |
| SPI2                                | 48 |
| SPI3                                | 49 |
| System Control (Clock and Reset)    | 58 |
| Timers                              | 43 |
| UART                                | 47 |
| USB OTG                             | 54 |

## Registers

|   |        |
|---|--------|
| AD1CHITL (ADC1 Scan Compare Hit,<br>Low Word)               | 365    |
| AD1CHS (ADC1 Sample Select)                                 | 363    |
| AD1CON1 (ADC1 Control 1)                                    | 356    |
| AD1CON2 (ADC1 Control 2)                                    | 358    |
| AD1CON3 (ADC1 Control 3)                                    | 360    |
| AD1CON4 (ADC1 Control 4)                                    | 361    |
| AD1CON5 (ADC1 Control 5)                                    | 362    |
| AD1CSSH (ADC1 Input Scan Select,<br>High Word)              | 366    |
| AD1CSSL (ADC1 Input Scan Select,<br>Low Word)               | 366    |
| AD1CTMENL (ADC1 CTMU Enable,<br>Low Word)                   | 367    |
| ALCFGPRPT (Alarm Configuration)                             | 320    |
| ALMINSEC (Alarm Minutes and<br>Seconds Value)               | 324    |
| ALMTHDY (Alarm Month and Day Value)                         | 323    |
| ALWDHR (Alarm Weekday and Hours Value)                      | 323    |
| ANCFG (A/D Band Gap Reference<br>Configuration)             | 364    |
| ANSA (PORTA Analog Function Selection)                      | 175    |
| ANSB (PORTB Analog Function Selection)                      | 175    |
| ANSC (PORTC Analog Function Selection)                      | 176    |
| BDnSTAT (Buffer Descriptor n Status Prototype,<br>CPU Mode) | 273    |
| BDnSTAT (Buffer Descriptor n Status Prototype,<br>USB Mode) | 272    |
| CFGPAGE (Secure Array Configuration Bits)                   | 340    |
| CLKDIV (Clock Divider)                                      | 151    |
| CMSTAT (Comparator Status)                                  | 375    |
| CMxCON (Comparator x Control,<br>Comparators 1-3)           | 374    |
| CORCON (CPU Core Control)                                   | 33, 97 |
| CRCCON1 (CRC Control 1)                                     | 348    |
| CRCCON2 (CRC Control 2)                                     | 349    |
| CRCXORH (CRC XOR Polynomial, High Byte)                     | 350    |
| CRCXORL (CRC XOR Polynomial, Low Byte)                      | 350    |
| CRYCONH (Cryptographic Control High)                        | 337    |
| CRYCONL (Cryptographic Control Low)                         | 335    |
| CRYOTP (Cryptographic OTP Page<br>Program Control)          | 339    |
| CRYSTAT (Cryptographic Status)                              | 338    |
| CTMUCON1 (CTMU Control 1)                                   | 382    |
| CTMUCON2 (CTMU Control 2)                                   | 383    |
| CTMUICON (CTMU Current Control)                             | 385    |
| CVRCON (Comparator Voltage<br>Reference Control)            | 378    |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

|  |     |   |         |
|--|-----|---|---------|
| CW1 (Flash Configuration Word 1).....          | 390 | MTHDY (RTCC Month and Day Value).....           | 321     |
| CW2 (Flash Configuration Word 2).....          | 392 | NVMCON (Flash Memory Control).....              | 81      |
| CW3 (Flash Configuration Word 3).....          | 394 | OCxCON1 (Output Compare x Control 1).....       | 222     |
| CW4 (Flash Configuration Word 4).....          | 396 | OCxCON2 (Output Compare x Control 2).....       | 224     |
| DEVID (Device ID).....                         | 398 | OSCCON (Oscillator Control).....                | 149     |
| DEVREV (Device Revision).....                  | 398 | OSCTUN (FRC Oscillator Tune).....               | 152     |
| DMACHn (DMA Channel n Control).....            | 76  | PADCFG1 (Pad Configuration Control).....        | 314     |
| DMACON (DMA Engine Control).....               | 75  | PMCON1 (EPMP Control 1).....                    | 306     |
| DMANTn (DMA Channel n Interrupt).....          | 77  | PMCON2 (EPMP Control 2).....                    | 307     |
| DSCON (Deep Sleep Control).....                | 168 | PMCON3 (EPMP Control 3).....                    | 308     |
| DSWAKE (Deep Sleep Wake-up Source).....        | 169 | PMCON4 (EPMP Control 4).....                    | 309     |
| HLVDCON (High/Low-Voltage Detect Control)..... | 388 | PMCSxBS (Chip Select x Base Address).....       | 311     |
| I2CxCONH (I2Cx Control High).....              | 250 | PMCSxCF (EPMP Chip Select x Configuration)..... | 310     |
| I2CxCONL (I2Cx Control Low).....               | 248 | PMCSxMD (EPMP Chip Select x Mode).....          | 312     |
| I2CxMSK (I2Cx Slave Mode Address Mask).....    | 252 | PMSTAT (EPMP Status, Slave Mode).....           | 313     |
| I2CxSTAT (I2Cx Status).....                    | 251 | RCFGCAL (RTCC Calibration                       |         |
| ICxCON1 (Input Capture x Control 1).....       | 213 | and Configuration).....                         | 317     |
| ICxCON2 (Input Capture x Control 2).....       | 214 | RCON (Reset Control).....                       | 86      |
| IEC0 (Interrupt Enable Control 0).....         | 111 | RCON2 (Reset and System Control 2).....         | 88, 170 |
| IEC1 (Interrupt Enable Control 1).....         | 113 | REFOCONH (Reference Oscillator                  |         |
| IEC2 (Interrupt Enable Control 2).....         | 115 | Control High).....                              | 158     |
| IEC3 (Interrupt Enable Control 3).....         | 117 | REFOCONL (Reference Oscillator                  |         |
| IEC4 (Interrupt Enable Control 4).....         | 119 | Control Low).....                               | 157     |
| IEC5 (Interrupt Enable Control 5).....         | 120 | REFOTRIML (Reference Oscillator Trim).....      | 159     |
| IEC6 (Interrupt Enable Control 6).....         | 121 | RPINR0 (PPS Input 0).....                       | 183     |
| IEC7 (Interrupt Enable Control 7).....         | 121 | RPINR1 (PPS Input 1).....                       | 183     |
| IFS0 (Interrupt Flag Status 0).....            | 100 | RPINR11 (PPS Input 11).....                     | 186     |
| IFS1 (Interrupt Flag Status 1).....            | 102 | RPINR17 (PPS Input 17).....                     | 186     |
| IFS2 (Interrupt Flag Status 2).....            | 104 | RPINR18 (PPS Input 18).....                     | 187     |
| IFS3 (Interrupt Flag Status 3).....            | 106 | RPINR19 (PPS Input 19).....                     | 187     |
| IFS4 (Interrupt Flag Status 4).....            | 108 | RPINR2 (PPS Input 2).....                       | 184     |
| IFS5 (Interrupt Flag Status 5).....            | 109 | RPINR20 (PPS Input 20).....                     | 188     |
| IFS6 (Interrupt Flag Status 6).....            | 110 | RPINR21 (PPS Input 21).....                     | 188     |
| IFS7 (Interrupt Flag Status 7).....            | 110 | RPINR22 (PPS Input 22).....                     | 189     |
| INTCON1 (Interrupt Control 1).....             | 98  | RPINR23 (PPS Input 23).....                     | 189     |
| INTCON2 (Interrupt Control 2).....             | 99  | RPINR27 (PPS Input 27).....                     | 190     |
| INTTREG (Interrupt Controller Test).....       | 144 | RPINR28 (PPS Input 28).....                     | 190     |
| IPC0 (Interrupt Priority Control 0).....       | 122 | RPINR29 (PPS Input 29).....                     | 191     |
| IPC1 (Interrupt Priority Control 1).....       | 123 | RPINR30 (PPS Input 30).....                     | 191     |
| IPC10 (Interrupt Priority Control 10).....     | 132 | RPINR31 (PPS Input 31).....                     | 192     |
| IPC11 (Interrupt Priority Control 11).....     | 133 | RPINR7 (PPS Input 7).....                       | 184     |
| IPC12 (Interrupt Priority Control 12).....     | 134 | RPINR8 (PPS Input 8).....                       | 185     |
| IPC13 (Interrupt Priority Control 13).....     | 135 | RPINR9 (PPS Input 9).....                       | 185     |
| IPC14 (Interrupt Priority Control 14).....     | 136 | RPOR0 (PPS Output 0).....                       | 193     |
| IPC15 (Interrupt Priority Control 15).....     | 137 | RPOR1 (PPS Output 1).....                       | 193     |
| IPC16 (Interrupt Priority Control 16).....     | 138 | RPOR10 (PPS Output 10).....                     | 198     |
| IPC18 (Interrupt Priority Control 18).....     | 139 | RPOR11 (PPS Output 11).....                     | 198     |
| IPC19 (Interrupt Priority Control 19).....     | 139 | RPOR12 (PPS Output 12).....                     | 199     |
| IPC2 (Interrupt Priority Control 2).....       | 124 | RPOR2 (PPS Output 2).....                       | 194     |
| IPC20 (Interrupt Priority Control 20).....     | 140 | RPOR3 (PPS Output 3).....                       | 194     |
| IPC21 (Interrupt Priority Control 21).....     | 141 | RPOR4 (PPS Output 4).....                       | 195     |
| IPC22 (Interrupt Priority Control 22).....     | 142 | RPOR5 (PPS Output 5).....                       | 195     |
| IPC26 (Interrupt Priority Control 26).....     | 143 | RPOR6 (PPS Output 6).....                       | 196     |
| IPC29 (Interrupt Priority Control 29).....     | 143 | RPOR7 (PPS Output 7).....                       | 196     |
| IPC3 (Interrupt Priority Control 3).....       | 125 | RPOR8 (PPS Output 8).....                       | 197     |
| IPC4 (Interrupt Priority Control 4).....       | 126 | RPOR9 (PPS Output 9).....                       | 197     |
| IPC5 (Interrupt Priority Control 5).....       | 127 | RTCCSWT (RTCC Power Control and                 |         |
| IPC6 (Interrupt Priority Control 6).....       | 128 | Sample Window Timer).....                       | 325     |
| IPC7 (Interrupt Priority Control 7).....       | 129 | RTCPWC (RTCC Power Control).....                | 319     |
| IPC8 (Interrupt Priority Control 8).....       | 130 | SPIxCON1H (SPIx Control 1 High).....            | 233     |
| IPC9 (Interrupt Priority Control 9).....       | 131 | SPIxCON1L (SPIx Control 1 Low).....             | 231     |
| MDCAR (DSM Carrier Control).....               | 302 | SPIxCON2L (SPIx Control 2 Low).....             | 235     |
| MDCON (DSM Control).....                       | 300 | SPIxIMSKH (SPIx Interrupt Mask High).....       | 240     |
| MDSRC (DSM Source Control).....                | 301 | SPIxIMSKL (SPIx Interrupt Mask Low).....        | 239     |
| MINSEC (RTCC Minutes and Seconds Value).....   | 322 | SPIxSTATH (SPIx Status High).....               | 238     |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

|  |        |   |     |
|--|--------|---|-----|
| SPIxSTATL (SPIx Status Low) .....              | 236    | RTCVAl Register Mappings.....                                 | 321 |
| SR (ALU STATUS) .....                          | 32, 96 | Source Clock .....  | 315 |
| T1CON (Timer1 Control).....                    | 202    | VBAT Operation.....   | 327 |
| TxCON (Timer2 and Timer4 Control).....         | 208    | Write Lock.....   | 316 |
| TyCON (Timer3 and Timer5 Control).....         | 210    | <b>S</b>  |     |
| U1ADDR (USB Address) .....                     | 286    | Selective Peripheral Module Control .....                     | 171 |
| U1CNFG1 (USB Configuration 1) .....            | 288    | Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) .....                       | 227 |
| U1CNFG2 (USB Configuration 2) .....            | 289    | Serial Peripheral Interface. <i>See</i> SPI.                  |     |
| U1CON (USB Control, Device Mode) .....         | 284    | SFR Space .....   | 38  |
| U1CON (USB Control, Host Mode) .....           | 285    | Software Simulator  |     |
| U1EIE (USB Error Interrupt Enable) .....       | 296    | MPLAB X SIM.....  | 405 |
| U1EIR (USB Error Interrupt Status) .....       | 295    | Software Stack.....   | 64  |
| U1EPn (USB Endpoint n Control) .....           | 297    | Special Features.....   | 10  |
| U1IE (USB Interrupt Enable, All Modes) .....   | 294    | SPI   |     |
| U1IR (USB Interrupt Status, Device Mode) ..... | 292    | Audio Mode .....  | 230 |
| U1IR (USB Interrupt Status, Host Mode) .....   | 293    | Control Registers .....                                       | 230 |
| U1OTGCON (USB OTG Control) .....               | 281    | Enhanced Master Mode.....                                     | 229 |
| U1OTGIE (USB OTG Interrupt Enable,             |        | Enhanced Slave Mode .....                                     | 229 |
| Host Mode) .....                               | 291    | Standard Master Mode .....                                    | 228 |
| U1OTGIR (USB OTG Interrupt Status,             |        | Standard Slave Mode .....                                     | 228 |
| Host Mode) .....                               | 290    | <b>T</b>  |     |
| U1OTGSTAT (USB OTG Status, Host Mode) .....    | 280    | Timer1.....   | 201 |
| U1PWRC (USB Power Control).....                | 282    | Timer2/3 and Timer4/5 .....                                   | 205 |
| U1SOF (USB OTG SOF Count, Host Mode) .....     | 287    | Timing Diagrams   |     |
| U1STAT (USB Status) .....                      | 283    | CLKO and I/O Characteristics .....                            | 430 |
| U1TOK (USB Token, Host Mode).....              | 286    | External Clock.....   | 428 |
| UxADMD (UARTx Address Match Detect).....       | 262    | I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Data (Master Mode) .....                 | 442 |
| UxMODE (UARTx Mode).....                       | 258    | I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Data (Slave Mode) .....                  | 444 |
| UxSCCON (UARTx Smart Card Control).....        | 263    | I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Start/Stop Bits (Master Mode).....       | 441 |
| UxSCINT (UARTx Smart Card Interrupt) .....     | 264    | I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Start/Stop Bits (Slave Mode).....        | 443 |
| UxSTA (UARTx Status and Control).....          | 260    | Input Capture x (ICx) .....                                   | 434 |
| UxTXREG (UARTx Transmit) .....                 | 262    | OCx/PWM Characteristics .....                                 | 435 |
| WKDYHR (RTCC Weekday and Hours Value).....     | 322    | Output Compare x (OCx).....                                   | 434 |
| YEAR (RTCC Year Value).....                    | 321    | SPIx Master Mode (CKE = 0) .....                              | 436 |
| <b>Resets</b>                                  |        | SPIx Master Mode (CKE = 1) .....                              | 437 |
| and Fail-Safe Clock Monitor.....               | 90     | SPIx Slave Mode (CKE = 0) .....                               | 438 |
| BOR (Brown-out Reset) .....                    | 85     | SPIx Slave Mode (CKE = 1) .....                               | 439 |
| Brown-out Reset (BOR).....                     | 89     | Timer1, 2, 3, 4, 5 External Clock .....                       | 432 |
| Clock Source Selection .....                   | 89     | Triple Comparator.....  | 371 |
| CM (Configuration Mismatch Reset).....         | 85     | Triple Comparator Module .....                                | 371 |
| Delay Times .....                              | 90     | <b>U</b>  |     |
| Device Times .....                             | 89     | UART  |     |
| IOPUWR (Illegal Opcode Reset) .....            | 85     | Baud Rate Generator (BRG) .....                               | 255 |
| MCLR (Master Clear Pin Reset) .....            | 85     | Control Registers .....                                       | 258 |
| POR (Power-on Reset) .....                     | 85     | Infrared Support.....   | 256 |
| RCON Flags, Operation.....                     | 88     | Operation of UxCTS and UxRTS Pins.....                        | 256 |
| SFR States.....                                | 89     | Receiving   |     |
| SWR (RESET Instruction).....                   | 85     | 8-Bit or 9-Bit Data Mode .....                                | 256 |
| TRAPR (Trap Conflict Reset).....               | 85     | Smart Card ISO 7816 Support.....                              | 257 |
| UWR (Uninitialized W Register Reset).....      | 85     | Transmitting  |     |
| WDT (Watchdog Timer Reset).....                | 85     | 8-Bit Data Mode.....  | 256 |
| Revision History .....                         | 465    | 9-Bit Data Mode.....  | 256 |
| <b>RTCC</b>                                    |        | Break and Sync Sequence .....                                 | 256 |
| Alarm Configuration .....                      | 326    | Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter. <i>See</i> UART. |     |
| Alarm Mask Settings (figure).....              | 327    | Universal Serial Bus. <i>See</i> USB OTG.                     |     |
| ALRMVAL Register Mappings .....                | 323    | USB On-The-Go (OTG).....                                      | 10  |
| Calibration .....                              | 326    |   |     |
| Clock Source Selection .....                   | 316    |   |     |
| Control Registers .....                        | 317    |   |     |
| Module Registers .....                         | 316    |   |     |
| Power Control .....                            | 327    |   |     |
| Register Mapping .....                         | 316    |   |     |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| USB OTG .....                                 | 265 |
| Buffer Descriptors                            |     |
| Assignment in Different Buffering Modes ..... | 271 |
| Buffer Descriptors and BDT .....              | 270 |
| Control Registers .....                       | 279 |
| Controller-Centric Data Direction for Host    |     |
| or Target .....                               | 265 |
| Device Mode Operation .....                   | 275 |
| DMA Interface .....                           | 271 |
| Hardware Configuration .....                  | 267 |
| Calculating Transceiver Power                 |     |
| Requirements .....                            | 269 |
| Device Mode .....                             | 267 |
| Host and OTG Modes .....                      | 268 |
| Power Modes                                   |     |
| Bus Power Only .....                          | 267 |
| Dual Power with Self-Power                    |     |
| Dominance .....                               | 267 |
| Self-Power Only .....                         | 267 |
| VBUS Voltage Generation .....                 | 269 |
| Host Mode Operation .....                     | 276 |
| Interrupts .....                              | 274 |
| and USB Transactions .....                    | 275 |
| Operation .....                               | 278 |
| Host Negotiation Protocol (HNP) .....         | 279 |
| Session Request Protocol (SRP) .....          | 278 |

## W

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Watchdog Timer (WDT) ..... | 400 |
| Control Register .....     | 400 |
| Windowed Operation .....   | 400 |
| WWW Address .....          | 473 |
| WWW, On-Line Support ..... | 7   |

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

## THE MICROCHIP WEB SITE

Microchip provides online support via our WWW site at [www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com). This web site is used as a means to make files and information easily available to customers. Accessible by using your favorite Internet browser, the web site contains the following information:

- **Product Support** – Data sheets and errata, application notes and sample programs, design resources, user's guides and hardware support documents, latest software releases and archived software
- **General Technical Support** – Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), technical support requests, online discussion groups, Microchip consultant program member listing
- **Business of Microchip** – Product selector and ordering guides, latest Microchip press releases, listing of seminars and events, listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors and factory representatives

## CUSTOMER CHANGE NOTIFICATION SERVICE

Microchip's customer notification service helps keep customers current on Microchip products. Subscribers will receive e-mail notification whenever there are changes, updates, revisions or errata related to a specified product family or development tool of interest.

To register, access the Microchip web site at [www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com). Under "Support", click on "Customer Change Notification" and follow the registration instructions.

## CUSTOMER SUPPORT

Users of Microchip products can receive assistance through several channels:

- Distributor or Representative
- Local Sales Office
- Field Application Engineer (FAE)
- Technical Support

Customers should contact their distributor, representative or Field Application Engineer (FAE) for support. Local sales offices are also available to help customers. A listing of sales offices and locations is included in the back of this document.

**Technical support is available through the web site at: <http://microchip.com/support>**

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

## PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

To order or obtain information, e.g., on pricing or delivery, refer to the factory or the listed sales office.

|                                    | <u>PIC 24 FJ 128 GB2 04 T - I / PT - XXX</u> |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Microchip Trademark                | _____  |
| Architecture                       | _____  |
| Flash Memory Family                | _____  |
| Program Memory Size (KB)           | _____  |
| Product Group                      | _____  |
| Pin Count                          | _____  |
| Tape and Reel Flag (if applicable) | _____  |
| Temperature Range                  | _____  |
| Package                            | _____  |
| Pattern                            | _____  |

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Architecture        | 24 = 16-bit modified Harvard without DSP  |
| Flash Memory Family | FJ = Flash program memory   |
| Product Group       | GB2 = General purpose microcontrollers with USB On-The-Go (OTG)   |
| Pin Count           | 02 = 28-pin<br>04 = 44-pin  |
| Temperature Range   | I = -40°C to +85°C (Industrial)<br>E = -40°C to +125°C (Extended)   |
| Package             | MM = 28-lead (6x6x0.9 mm) QFN-S (Plastic Quad Flat)<br>ML = 44-lead (8x8 mm) QFN (Plastic Quad Flat)<br>PT = 44-lead (10x10x1 mm) TQFP (Thin Quad Flatpack)<br>SO = 28-lead (7.50 mm wide) SOIC (Small Outline)<br>SP = 28-lead (300 mil) SPDIP (Skinny Plastic Dual In-Line)<br>SS = 28-lead (5.30 mm) SSOP (Plastic Shrink Small Outline) |
| Pattern             | Three-digit QTP, SQTP, Code or Special Requirements (blank otherwise)<br>ES = Engineering Sample  |

**Examples:**

a) PIC24FJ128GB202-I/MM:  
PIC24F device with USB On-The-Go,  
128-Kbyte program memory, 8-Kbyte data  
memory, 28-pin, Industrial temp.,  
QFN-S package.

b) PIC24FJ128GB204-I/PT:  
PIC24F device with USB On-The-Go,  
128-Kbyte program memory, 8-Kbyte data  
memory, 44-pin, Industrial temp.,  
TQFP package.

# PIC24FJ128GB204 FAMILY

---

NOTES:

---

**Note the following details of the code protection feature on Microchip devices:**

- Microchip products meet the specification contained in their particular Microchip Data Sheet.
- Microchip believes that its family of products is one of the most secure families of its kind on the market today, when used in the intended manner and under normal conditions.
- There are dishonest and possibly illegal methods used to breach the code protection feature. All of these methods, to our knowledge, require using the Microchip products in a manner outside the operating specifications contained in Microchip's Data Sheets. Most likely, the person doing so is engaged in theft of intellectual property.
- Microchip is willing to work with the customer who is concerned about the integrity of their code.
- Neither Microchip nor any other semiconductor manufacturer can guarantee the security of their code. Code protection does not mean that we are guaranteeing the product as "unbreakable."

Code protection is constantly evolving. We at Microchip are committed to continuously improving the code protection features of our products. Attempts to break Microchip's code protection feature may be a violation of the Digital Millennium Copyright Act. If such acts allow unauthorized access to your software or other copyrighted work, you may have a right to sue for relief under that Act.

---

Information contained in this publication regarding device applications and the like is provided only for your convenience and may be superseded by updates. It is your responsibility to ensure that your application meets with your specifications. MICROCHIP MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WRITTEN OR ORAL, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, RELATED TO THE INFORMATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ITS CONDITION, QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR PURPOSE. Microchip disclaims all liability arising from this information and its use. Use of Microchip devices in life support and/or safety applications is entirely at the buyer's risk, and the buyer agrees to defend, indemnify and hold harmless Microchip from any and all damages, claims, suits, or expenses resulting from such use. No licenses are conveyed, implicitly or otherwise, under any Microchip intellectual property rights.

#### **Trademarks**

The Microchip name and logo, the Microchip logo, dsPIC, FlashFlex, flexPWR, JukeBlox, KEELOQ, KEELOQ logo, Klear, LANCheck, MediaLB, MOST, MOST logo, MPLAB, OptoLyzer, PIC, PICSTART, PIC<sup>32</sup> logo, RightTouch, SpyNIC, SST, SST Logo, SuperFlash and UNI/O are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

The Embedded Control Solutions Company and mTouch are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

Analog-for-the-Digital Age, BodyCom, chipKIT, chipKIT logo, CodeGuard, dsPICDEM, dsPICDEM.net, ECAN, In-Circuit Serial Programming, ICSP, Inter-Chip Connectivity, KlearNet, KlearNet logo, MiWi, MPASM, MPF, MPLAB Certified logo, MPLIB, MPLINK, MultiTRAK, NetDetach, Omniscient Code Generation, PICDEM, PICDEM.net, PICkit, PICtail, RightTouch logo, REAL ICE, SQI, Serial Quad I/O, Total Endurance, TSHARC, USBCheck, VariSense, ViewSpan, WiperLock, Wireless DNA, and ZENA are trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

SQTP is a service mark of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

Silicon Storage Technology is a registered trademark of Microchip Technology Inc. in other countries.

GestIC is a registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Germany II GmbH & Co. KG, a subsidiary of Microchip Technology Inc., in other countries.

All other trademarks mentioned herein are property of their respective companies.

© 2013-2015, Microchip Technology Incorporated, Printed in the U.S.A., All Rights Reserved.

ISBN: 978-1-63277-204-6

**QUALITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM**  
**CERTIFIED BY DNV**  
**== ISO/TS 16949 ==**

*Microchip received ISO/TS-16949:2009 certification for its worldwide headquarters, design and wafer fabrication facilities in Chandler and Tempe, Arizona; Gresham, Oregon and design centers in California and India. The Company's quality system processes and procedures are for its PIC® MCUs and dsPIC® DSCs, KEELOQ® code hopping devices, Serial EEPROMs, microperipherals, nonvolatile memory and analog products. In addition, Microchip's quality system for the design and manufacture of development systems is ISO 9001:2000 certified.*

## Worldwide Sales and Service

### AMERICAS

**Corporate Office**  
2355 West Chandler Blvd.  
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199  
Tel: 480-792-7200  
Fax: 480-792-7277  
Technical Support:  
<http://www.microchip.com/support>  
Web Address:  
[www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com)

**Atlanta**  
Duluth, GA  
Tel: 678-957-9614  
Fax: 678-957-1455

**Austin, TX**  
Tel: 512-257-3370

**Boston**  
Westborough, MA  
Tel: 774-760-0087  
Fax: 774-760-0088

**Chicago**  
Itasca, IL  
Tel: 630-285-0071  
Fax: 630-285-0075

**Cleveland**  
Independence, OH  
Tel: 216-447-0464  
Fax: 216-447-0643

**Dallas**  
Addison, TX  
Tel: 972-818-7423  
Fax: 972-818-2924

**Detroit**  
Novi, MI  
Tel: 248-848-4000

**Houston, TX**  
Tel: 281-894-5983

**Indianapolis**  
Noblesville, IN  
Tel: 317-773-8323  
Fax: 317-773-5453

**Los Angeles**  
Mission Viejo, CA  
Tel: 949-462-9523  
Fax: 949-462-9608

**New York, NY**  
Tel: 631-435-6000

**San Jose, CA**  
Tel: 408-735-9110

**Canada - Toronto**  
Tel: 905-673-0699  
Fax: 905-673-6509

### ASIA/PACIFIC

**Asia Pacific Office**  
Suites 3707-14, 37th Floor  
Tower 6, The Gateway  
Harbour City, Kowloon  
Hong Kong  
Tel: 852-2943-5100  
Fax: 852-2401-3431

**Australia - Sydney**  
Tel: 61-2-9868-6733  
Fax: 61-2-9868-6755

**China - Beijing**  
Tel: 86-10-8569-7000  
Fax: 86-10-8528-2104

**China - Chengdu**  
Tel: 86-28-8665-5511  
Fax: 86-28-8665-7889

**China - Chongqing**  
Tel: 86-23-8980-9588  
Fax: 86-23-8980-9500

**China - Dongguan**  
Tel: 86-769-8702-9880

**China - Hangzhou**  
Tel: 86-571-8792-8115  
Fax: 86-571-8792-8116

**China - Hong Kong SAR**  
Tel: 852-2943-5100  
Fax: 852-2401-3431

**China - Nanjing**  
Tel: 86-25-8473-2460  
Fax: 86-25-8473-2470

**China - Qingdao**  
Tel: 86-532-8502-7355  
Fax: 86-532-8502-7205

**China - Shanghai**  
Tel: 86-21-5407-5533  
Fax: 86-21-5407-5066

**China - Shenyang**  
Tel: 86-24-2334-2829  
Fax: 86-24-2334-2393

**China - Shenzhen**  
Tel: 86-755-8864-2200  
Fax: 86-755-8203-1760

**China - Wuhan**  
Tel: 86-27-5980-5300  
Fax: 86-27-5980-5118

**China - Xian**  
Tel: 86-29-8833-7252  
Fax: 86-29-8833-7256

### ASIA/PACIFIC

**China - Xiamen**  
Tel: 86-592-2388138  
Fax: 86-592-2388130

**China - Zhuhai**  
Tel: 86-756-3210040  
Fax: 86-756-3210049

**India - Bangalore**  
Tel: 91-80-3090-4444  
Fax: 91-80-3090-4123

**India - New Delhi**  
Tel: 91-11-4160-8631  
Fax: 91-11-4160-8632

**India - Pune**  
Tel: 91-20-3019-1500

**Japan - Osaka**  
Tel: 81-6-6152-7160  
Fax: 81-6-6152-9310

**Japan - Tokyo**  
Tel: 81-3-6880-3770  
Fax: 81-3-6880-3771

**Korea - Daegu**  
Tel: 82-53-744-4301  
Fax: 82-53-744-4302

**Korea - Seoul**  
Tel: 82-2-554-7200  
Fax: 82-2-558-5932 or  
82-2-558-5934

**Malaysia - Kuala Lumpur**  
Tel: 60-3-6201-9857  
Fax: 60-3-6201-9859

**Malaysia - Penang**  
Tel: 60-4-227-8870  
Fax: 60-4-227-4068

**Philippines - Manila**  
Tel: 63-2-634-9065  
Fax: 63-2-634-9069

**Singapore**  
Tel: 65-6334-8870  
Fax: 65-6334-8850

**Taiwan - Hsin Chu**  
Tel: 886-3-5778-366  
Fax: 886-3-5770-955

**Taiwan - Kaohsiung**  
Tel: 886-7-213-7828

**Taiwan - Taipei**  
Tel: 886-2-2508-8600  
Fax: 886-2-2508-0102

**Thailand - Bangkok**  
Tel: 66-2-694-1351  
Fax: 66-2-694-1350

### EUROPE

**Austria - Wels**  
Tel: 43-7242-2244-39  
Fax: 43-7242-2244-393

**Denmark - Copenhagen**  
Tel: 45-4450-2828  
Fax: 45-4485-2829

**France - Paris**  
Tel: 33-1-69-53-63-20  
Fax: 33-1-69-30-90-79

**Germany - Dusseldorf**  
Tel: 49-2129-3766400

**Germany - Munich**  
Tel: 49-89-627-144-0  
Fax: 49-89-627-144-44

**Germany - Pforzheim**  
Tel: 49-7231-424750

**Italy - Milan**  
Tel: 39-0331-742611  
Fax: 39-0331-466781

**Italy - Venice**  
Tel: 39-049-7625286

**Netherlands - Drunen**  
Tel: 31-416-690399  
Fax: 31-416-690340

**Poland - Warsaw**  
Tel: 48-22-3325737

**Spain - Madrid**  
Tel: 34-91-708-08-90  
Fax: 34-91-708-08-91

**Sweden - Stockholm**  
Tel: 46-8-5090-4654

**UK - Wokingham**  
Tel: 44-118-921-5800  
Fax: 44-118-921-5820

# Mouser Electronics

Authorized Distributor

Click to View Pricing, Inventory, Delivery & Lifecycle Information:

## Microchip:

[PIC24FJ128GB204-I/PT](#) [PIC24FJ128GB202-I/MM](#) [PIC24FJ128GB204-I/ML](#) [PIC24FJ128GB202-I/SS](#)  
[PIC24FJ128GB202-I/SO](#) [PIC24FJ128GB202-I/SP](#) [PIC24FJ64GB204-E/PT](#) [PIC24FJ128GB202-E/SO](#)  
[PIC24FJ128GB204-E/PT](#) [PIC24FJ64GB202-E/SO](#) [PIC24FJ128GB202-E/MM](#) [PIC24FJ64GB202-E/SP](#)  
[PIC24FJ64GB204-E/ML](#) [PIC24FJ64GB202-E/MM](#) [PIC24FJ128GB202-E/SP](#) [PIC24FJ128GB204-E/ML](#)  
[PIC24FJ64GB202-E/SS](#) [PIC24FJ128GB202-E/SS](#) [PIC24FJ64GB204-I/PT](#) [PIC24FJ128GB204T-I/ML](#)  
[PIC24FJ128GB202T-I/SS](#) [PIC24FJ64GB202T-I/MM](#) [PIC24FJ64GB202-I/SP](#) [PIC24FJ64GB202-I/SO](#)  
[PIC24FJ64GB202-I/SS](#) [PIC24FJ64GB202T-I/SO](#) [PIC24FJ64GB202-I/MM](#) [PIC24FJ128GB204T-I/PT](#)  
[PIC24FJ128GB202T-I/SO](#) [PIC24FJ128GB202T-I/MM](#) [PIC24FJ64GB202T-I/SS](#) [PIC24FJ64GB204-I/ML](#)  
[PIC24FJ64GB204T-I/ML](#) [PIC24FJ64GB204T-I/PT](#)



Компания «ЭлектроПласт» предлагает заключение долгосрочных отношений при поставках импортных электронных компонентов на взаимовыгодных условиях!

Наши преимущества:

- Оперативные поставки широкого спектра электронных компонентов отечественного и импортного производства напрямую от производителей и с крупнейших мировых складов;
- Поставка более 17-ти миллионов наименований электронных компонентов;
- Поставка сложных, дефицитных, либо снятых с производства позиций;
- Оперативные сроки поставки под заказ (от 5 рабочих дней);
- Экспресс доставка в любую точку России;
- Техническая поддержка проекта, помощь в подборе аналогов, поставка прототипов;
- Система менеджмента качества сертифицирована по Международному стандарту ISO 9001;
- Лицензия ФСБ на осуществление работ с использованием сведений, составляющих государственную тайну;
- Поставка специализированных компонентов (Xilinx, Altera, Analog Devices, Intersil, Interpoint, Microsemi, Aeroflex, Peregrine, Syfer, Eurofarad, Texas Instrument, Miteq, Cobham, E2V, MA-COM, Hittite, Mini-Circuits, General Dynamics и др.);

Помимо этого, одним из направлений компании «ЭлектроПласт» является направление «Источники питания». Мы предлагаем Вам помощь Конструкторского отдела:

- Подбор оптимального решения, техническое обоснование при выборе компонента;
- Подбор аналогов;
- Консультации по применению компонента;
- Поставка образцов и прототипов;
- Техническая поддержка проекта;
- Защита от снятия компонента с производства.



#### Как с нами связаться

**Телефон:** 8 (812) 309 58 32 (многоканальный)

**Факс:** 8 (812) 320-02-42

**Электронная почта:** [org@eplast1.ru](mailto:org@eplast1.ru)

**Адрес:** 198099, г. Санкт-Петербург, ул. Калинина, дом 2, корпус 4, литера А.